



Graduate Texts in Contemporary Physics

Series Editors:

R. Stephen Berry
Joseph L. Birman
Mark P. Silverman
H. Eugene Stanley
Mikhail Voloshin

Springer

*New York
Berlin
Heidelberg
Barcelona
Hong Kong
London
Milan
Paris
Singapore
Tokyo*

This page intentionally left blank

Roger G. Newton

Quantum Physics

A Text for Graduate Students

With 27 Figures



Springer

Roger G. Newton
Department of Physics
Evans Hall West 113
Indiana University
Bloomington, IN 47406
USA
newton@indiana.edu

Series Editors
B. Stephen Dery
Department of Chemistry
University of Chicago
Chicago, IL 60637
USA

H. Eugene Stanley
Center for Polymer Studies,
Physics Department
Boston University
Boston, MA 02215
USA

Joseph L. Sengen
Department of Physics
City College of CUNY
New York, NY 10031
USA

Michael Vucelja
Theoretical Physics Institute
The Laboratory of Physics
The University of Minnesota
Minneapolis, MN 55455
USA

Mark P. Silverman
Department of Physics
Trinity College
Hartford, CT 06106
USA

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data
Newton, Roger G.

Quantum physics / a text for graduate students / Roger G. Newton.

p. cm. — (Frontiers in contemporary physics)

Includes bibliographical references and index.

ISBN 0-387-94475-2 (pbk. paper)

1. Quantum theory. I. Title. II. Series.

QC713 .N47 1994

530.1—dc20

94040492

ISBN 0-387-94475-2

Printed on acid-free paper

© 1994 Springer-Verlag New York, Inc.

All rights reserved. This work may not be translated, reprinted, or copied in whole or in part without the written permission of the publisher Springer-Verlag New York, Inc., 175 Fifth Avenue, New York, NY 10010, USA, except for brief excerpts in connection with reviews or scholarly analysis. Use in connection with any form of information storage and retrieval, electronic adaptation, computer software, or by similar or dissimilar methodology now known or hereafter developed is forbidden. The use in this publication of trade names, trademarks, service marks, and similar terms, even if they are not identified as such, is not to be taken as an expression of opinion as to whether or not they are subject to proprietary rights.

Printed in the United States of America

9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

0394 10876011

Typesetting: Pages constructed by the author using a Springer $\text{\LaTeX}$ macro package.

www.springer-ny.com

Springer-Verlag New York Berlin Heidelberg
A member of BertelsmannSpringer Science+Business Media GmbH

To Daniel,

in the hope that he, too, will grow up to love science

This page intentionally left blank

Preface

The combination of quantum mechanics and quantum field theory constitutes the most revolutionary and influential physical theory of the twentieth century. Its impact is felt not only in almost all other sciences, but the fruits of its application are ubiquitous in everyday life. This textbook is designed to teach graduate students the underlying quantum-physical ideas, their mathematical formulations, and the basic problem-solving techniques of the discipline. It assumes they have taken at least one introductory course in quantum mechanics as undergraduate and are familiar with the history of the subject and the basic experimental evidence that led to its adoption, as well as with many of its fundamental notions. In contrast to most other authors, I am therefore not introducing the quantum theory via an historical survey of its early successes. Instead, following the models of books on classical mechanics or electromagnetism, I develop the theory from its basic assumptions, beginning with statics, followed by the dynamics and details of its specific areas-of-use as well as the needed mathematical techniques.

Although this book, inevitably, deals largely with the behavior of point particles under various conditions, I do not regard particles as the fundamental entities of the universe: the most basic object is the quantum field, with the observed particles arising from the field as its quanta. For this reason I introduce quantum fields right from the beginning and demonstrate, in the first chapter, how particles originate. However, this volume is not intended to be a full-fledged text of quantum field theory, confining itself to the fundamental ideas of field theory and their consequences, glossing over its mathematical difficulties and pitfalls, it does not deal with any of the

subtleties of that huge subject. For the development of the basic quantum dynamics, the book employs the Lagrangian technique with the principle of stationary action. The roots of this approach, which includes generating the canonical commutation rules, go back to a course taught long ago by Julian Schwinger, filtered through and modified by many years of teaching the subject. Similarly for the manner of introducing the γ -matrices in Chapter 10.

The general physics preparation of the students for whom this book is intended should comprise classical mechanics (including its Lagrangian and Hamiltonian formulations), Maxwell's theory of electrodynamics, and the special theory of relativity, as well as some understanding of statistical mechanics. As far as mathematics is concerned, they are expected to have a basic knowledge of linear algebra, linear differential equations—both ordinary and partial—and the theory of functions of a complex variable. The book's extensive mathematical appendix contains the needed elements of vector spaces (including Hilbert spaces), the Dirac delta function, linear integral equations, the required classical special functions, and group representations.

Rather than mixing this mathematical material with the explanation of the physics—though some details that the occasion demands are interspersed, not off by horizontal lines and printed in a smaller font—(collected it is at the end, and the instructor will have to present or assign it when needed. These appendices are not meant to take the place of mathematics courses appropriate for graduate students in physics or chemistry; they can serve at best as crutches or reminders. However, the inclusion of group representations allows me to apply this invaluable tool more extensively than do most other comparable graduate texts. A large number of exercises are sprinkled as boldfaced footnotes throughout the text, others collected at the end of each chapter.

A word about notation: Many books and research articles employ the very convenient *Dirac* notation, in which a general state vector Ψ is denoted by $|\rangle$, an operator Ψ_A of A with the eigenvalue A is written $|A\rangle$, and the inner product becomes $\langle\Psi_A|\Psi\rangle = \langle A|$. Although I shall not always use this notation, when it comes in handy, I shall employ it.

Since the subject of this book now pervades almost all of physics, it is hard to pin down my diffuse indebtedness. I certainly owe much to the four teachers from whom I learned quantum mechanics and quantum field theory as a student: Norman Ramsey, Walter Kohn, John H. Van Vleck, and, above all, Julian Schwinger. Others to whom I owe a debt of gratitude for their infusion of wisdom over the years are Ben Jost, Joseph Jauch, and my colleagues at Indiana University, especially Brad Konopinski, John Chubbuck, and Don Lieberman.

Contents

Preface	vii
I Physics	xi
1 Quantum Basics: Statics	1
1.1 States and Dynamical Variables	1
1.1.1 Measurements	3
1.1.2 Fields as dynamical variables	4
1.2 Probabilities	6
1.2.1 Correlations	7
1.2.2 Interference	9
1.2.3 Expectation values and variance	11
1.3 Mixed States	12
1.4 Representations	16
1.4.1 The configuration representation	16
1.4.2 The momentum representation	21
1.4.3 The number representations	23
1.5 Transformation Theory	27
1.6 Problems and Exercises	29
2 Quantum Basics: Dynamics	33
2.1 Time Dependence and Commutation Rules	33
2.1.1 The principle of stationary action	34
2.1.2 The Lagrangian equations of motion	36

2.1.3	The canonical commutation relations	37
2.1.4	The Hamiltonian equations of motion	39
2.1.5	The Schrödinger picture	40
2.2	Systems of Particles	43
2.2.1	Linear and angular momentum	43
2.2.2	The equations of motion	44
2.2.3	The time-independent Schrödinger equation	46
2.2.4	Example: Gaussian wave packets	48
2.3	Fields	51
2.3.1	The matter field	51
2.3.2	Infinitely many particles as a field	56
2.3.3	The electromagnetic field	58
2.4	Canonical and Gauge Transformations	63
2.5	Problems and Exercises	66
3	The Schrödinger Equation in One Dimension	67
3.1	A Free Particle	67
3.2	A Particle With Potential Energy	69
3.2.1	The square potential barrier	69
3.2.2	The potential well	74
3.2.3	General transmission and reflection	77
3.2.4	The double well	78
3.2.5	The Kravay-Pearcy potential	80
3.2.6	The simple harmonic oscillator	82
3.2.7	Coherent states	85
3.3	Problems and Exercises	86
4	One- and Two-Particle Systems in Three Dimensions	91
4.1	Free Particles	91
4.1.1	The propagator	95
4.1.2	Two particles	96
4.2	Potentials with Spherical Symmetry	99
4.2.1	The three-dimensional square well	100
4.2.2	The scattering amplitude	103
4.2.3	Transformation to the laboratory system	109
4.2.4	The Coulomb potential	112
4.2.5	The hydrogen atom	113
4.2.6	Coulomb scattering	117
4.3	The Inverse Problem	121
4.3.1	Solution procedure	123
4.3.2	The phase of the scattering amplitude	126
4.4	Potentials without Spherical Symmetry	127
4.4.1	Green's functions	127
4.4.2	The scattering amplitude	131
4.4.3	Solving the Lippmann-Schwinger equation	134

4.5	Problems and Exercises	187
5	Symmetries	189
5.1	The Angular-Momentum Operator	193
5.1.1	Active and passive rotations	194
5.1.2	An oscillator model	199
5.1.3	States of spin-1 and spin-1/2	203
5.2	The Rotation Group	191
5.2.1	Angular momentum and the vector space	193
5.2.2	Polarization and the spin density matrix	199
5.2.3	The magnetic moment	191
5.2.4	Addition of angular momenta	193
5.2.5	Spherical tensors and selection rules	197
5.3	Time Reversal	173
5.3.1	The time-reversal operator	173
5.3.2	Time-reversed interference	174
5.4	Problems and Exercises	177
6	Stationary Approximation Methods	191
6.1	The WKB Approximation	191
6.1.1	The connecting formulae	194
6.1.2	Examples	197
6.1.3	Scattering in the WKB approximation	199
6.2	Bound-State Perturbation Theory	195
6.2.1	The nondegenerate case	196
6.2.2	Closely spaced levels	199
6.2.3	The case of degeneracy	199
6.2.4	Second-order shifts from first-order states	203
6.2.5	Effects of symmetry	204
6.2.6	Relativistic correction to hydrogenic levels	205
6.2.7	The Stark effect	206
6.3	Variational Methods	209
6.3.1	Bound states	209
6.3.2	The helium atom	210
6.3.3	Scattering	212
6.4	Problems and Exercises	214
7	Static Magnetic Fields	217
7.1	The Larmor Precession	217
7.2	The Aharonov-Bohm Effect	221
7.3	Charged Particles with Spin	223
7.3.1	Spin-orbit coupling and the fine structure	225
7.3.2	The Zeeman effect	226
7.3.3	The hyperfine structure	229
7.4	Problems and Exercises	232

8 Time-Dependent Hamiltonians	236
8.1 Perturbation Theory	237
8.1.1 Application to exponential decay	240
8.1.2 Application to scattering	242
8.1.3 Second order perturbation theory	243
8.1.4 Interaction with electromagnetic fields	244
8.2 Slowly Changing Hamiltonians	253
8.3 Problems and Exercises	256
9 Multiparticle Systems	257
9.1 Two Particles Interacting with a Center	257
9.2 Identical particles	264
9.2.1 Fock space	265
9.2.2 Bose-Einstein and Fermi-Dirac distributions	270
9.3 Problems and Exercises	273
10 Relativistic Electron Theory	276
10.1 Preliminaries	276
10.1.1 Relativistic spin	281
10.1.2 The γ -matrices	282
10.2 The Dirac Equation	282
10.2.1 Electrons in an electromagnetic field	285
10.3 The Dirac Equation for a Central Potential	289
10.3.1 The hydrogen atom	295
10.4 Problems and Exercises	298
II Mathematical Appendices	309
A The Dirac Delta Function	311
B Hilbert Space	313
B.1 Linear Vector Spaces	313
B.2 Infinite-Dimensional Linear Vector Spaces	319
B.3 Operators	319
B.3.1 Hermitian operators and their spectra	323
B.3.2 More on operators	329
B.4 Problems and Exercises	332
C Linear Integral Equations	339
C.1 Fredholm Methods	339
C.2 The Born Series	347
C.3 Application to the Lippmann-Schwinger Equation	353
D Special Functions	361
D.1 Spherical Harmonics	361

D.1.1	Legendre polynomials	342
D.1.2	Associated Legendre functions	343
D.1.3	Spherical harmonics	345
D.1.4	Zonal harmonics	346
D.2	Spherical Bessel Functions	347
D.3	Hermite Polynomials	348
D.4	The Hypergeometric Function	350
D.5	Laguerre Polynomials	351
D.6	Problems and Exercises	353
E	Group Representations	355
E.1	Groups	355
E.2	Representations	357
E.2.1	Character	361
E.2.2	Real representations	364
E.2.3	Kronecker products	365
E.2.4	Carrier space	367
E.2.5	Clebsch-Gordan coefficients	371
E.3	Lie Groups	375
E.3.1	Coordinate transformations	375
E.3.2	Infinitesimal generators	374
E.3.3	The Lie algebra	375
E.4	Representations of Lie Groups	380
E.4.1	Multiple valuations	385
E.4.2	The group $SO(2)$	386
E.4.3	The group $SO(3)$	389
E.5	Problems and Exercises	397
	References	399
	Index	402

This page intentionally left blank

Part I

Physics

This page intentionally left blank

1

Quantum Basics: Statics

1.1 States and Dynamical Variables

The aim of quantum physics, like that of classical physics, is to give an explanatory and predictive description of the motions of physical systems: we want to understand their actions and be able to predict their future behavior. Therefore, the first two tasks (though not necessarily historically the first as the theory developed) are to define the parameters in terms of which such systems are to be described and to lay down the equations of motion of those parameters so that the future course of any given system can be determined. The two are not independent, because a wrong choice in the first will prevent the second from being realized. Thus the most basic decision is how to specify the state of any physical system at a given time.

Whereas in classical physics the state of a system, defined as precisely as nature allows, is described by a point in the system's phase space, in quantum physics, such a state (called a *pure state*) is described by a point (i.e., a vector) in an appropriate Hilbert space $\mathfrak{H}$. Just as the precise form of the phase space depends on the details of the system—the number of its degrees of freedom, the range of its dynamical variables, etc.—so does $\mathfrak{H}$. Conversely, every vector in $\mathfrak{H}$ is assumed to describe a possible state of the system,¹ with Ψ and $e\Psi$ denoting the same state, when in isolation, for any

¹There are a few exceptions to this, called *superselection rules*, but they need not concern us for the time being.

complex constant α , which is mathematically expressed by the statement that an isolated state is specified by a ray in Hilbert space.³

The Hilbert-space description implies that the states are additive: if Ψ_1 and Ψ_2 are two states of a given system, $\Phi = \Psi_1 + \Psi_2$ is also a possible state of the system. You should especially note that this superposition principle, whose physical significance will emerge gradually, implies that if the two states Ψ_1 and Ψ_2 are combined into another state $\Psi = \Psi_1 + \Psi_2$ by superposition, they are, in Ψ , in some sense correlated, and although Ψ_1 and $\alpha\Psi_1$ specify the same state in isolation, the state $\Psi' = \alpha\Psi_1 + \Psi_2$ generally differs from Ψ . (Both the magnitude and the phase of the inner product $\langle\Psi_1, \Psi_2\rangle$ of the two entangled states Ψ_1 and Ψ_2 have observational consequences, as we shall see.) In other words, in order to describe a state “as precisely as nature allows” it has to be specified not just in isolation, but in such a way that its potential relation to all other possible “completely specified” states of the same system is also given, and for this it is not sufficient to describe it as a ray in $\mathcal{H}$; it must be given as a vector. In a figurative sense, the vector Φ “has hair,” while the ray spanned by Φ “is shaved.” It is the hair on Ψ_1 and Ψ_2 that describes their correlation and entanglement when their superposition forms Ψ .

For example, consider the famous two-slit experiment with electrons. If only slit #1 is open, the electron is in the state Ψ_1 ; if only slit #2 is open, it is in the state Ψ_2 . Both of these states by themselves are equally well described by $\alpha\Psi_1$ and $\beta\Psi_2$, respectively, with arbitrary α and β . However, if both slits are open, the electron is in the state $\Psi = c_1\Psi_1 + c_2\Psi_2$, with a fixed ratio c_1/c_2 ; the two states Ψ_1 and Ψ_2 in Ψ are now entangled.

A vector in Hilbert space therefore describes the state of a system not only as precisely specified in physical isolation but also its readiness for any potential correlation with other systems and states. There is no analogue of such an entanglement for classical particle states, but for wave systems such as light, its analogue is the phase information contained in the full description of light by means of the electromagnetic field, as necessary, for example, for the description of Young’s two-slit experiment. (In this sense all quantum systems behave analogously to both “particles” and “waves”—the notorious particle-wave duality—though this analogy must not be pushed too far.)

When two physical systems I and II, whose Hilbert spaces are $\mathcal{H}^I$ and $\mathcal{H}^{II}$, respectively, are combined into one, the Hilbert space of the combined system is the tensor product (see Appendix B) $\mathcal{H} = \mathcal{H}^I \otimes \mathcal{H}^{II}$, and its states are linear combinations of those special tensor-product states of the form $\Psi = \Psi^I \otimes \Psi^{II}$ in which the two subsystems are independent of one another. For example, the Hilbert space of a two-particle system is the

³A ray $\mathcal{R}$ is a one-dimensional subspace in $\mathcal{H}$. Consequently there exists a vector $\Phi \in \mathcal{R}$ that spans $\mathcal{R}$, so that $\mathcal{R}$ consists of all vectors of the form $\alpha\Phi$.

tensor product of the two Hilbert spaces of its two one-particle subsystems, formed out of linear combinations $\Psi = \sum_{\alpha,\beta} c_{\alpha\beta} \Phi_{\alpha}^I \otimes \Phi_{\beta}^{II}$ of special states $\Phi_{\alpha}^I \otimes \Phi_{\beta}^{II}$ of two independent particles, the first one in state Φ_{α}^I and the second in Φ_{β}^{II} . Whatever correlation there is between the states of the two particles in the combined system is expressed in the coefficients $c_{\alpha\beta}$. After the two subsystems cease to interact, they may retain information about their earlier conjunction even when they are far apart, information that expresses itself in a correlation, so that none of these subsystems by itself is then specified “as precisely as nature allows”. It is not in a pure state and cannot be described by a state vector. (We shall discuss the appropriate means for its description a little later.)

The radioactive decay of an atomic nucleus in which an electron and an antineutrino are emitted is a typical example. If the original nucleus was in a pure state, so is the state of the combined nucleus-electron-antineutrino system after the decay. However, the state of the electron (and, which is the observationally most easily accessible subsystem, is correlated with those of the recoiling nucleus and the antineutrino and, regarded without attention to the antineutrino and the nucleus, is not pure and cannot be described by a state vector.

The dynamical variables that are observable, such as the locations and momenta of point particles, which are conventionally denoted by the vectors $\vec{q}$ and $\vec{p}$, are quantum-mechanically represented by Hermitian operators,¹ such as $\hat{q}$ and $\hat{p}$ (boldface letters will be used to denote operators), acting on the vectors in $\mathfrak{H}$. The most fundamental difference between classical and quantum physics arises from the fact that, whereas a classical state at a given time t_0 uniquely determines the values of all dynamical variables at t_0 , a quantum state determines one of them only as a nonsharp probability distribution. From this follow many of the important differences between classical and quantum physics, and in particular, the probabilistic rather than strictly causal predictions of the latter. The unusual nature of quantum physics arises not from any non-deterministic features in its dynamics, but from the very definition of the quantum state of a system.

1.1.1 Measurements

When it comes to performing measurements, quantum physics poses three basic postulates, schematically stated as follows:

¹Mathematicians distinguish between symmetric and self-adjoint operators, the distinction depending on their domain of definition. The word *Hermitian*, universally customary among physicists, is meant to be essentially equivalent to self-adjoint, although we are not always so careful about the domain of definition as we should be. See Appendix B.3 for more details on this.

1. The result of a measurement of the observable A can only be an eigenvalue A of the corresponding Hermitian operator $\hat{A}$.
2. After the measurement with the outcome A , a system originally in the state Ψ is left in the eigenstate $P_A\Psi$ of $\hat{A}$ with the eigenvalue A , where P_A is the projection on the eigenspace of $\hat{A}$ at A . (i.e., the space spanned by the eigenstates Ψ_A (this is called the *preparation postulate*).
3. If the system is in an eigenstate of $\hat{A}$ with the eigenvalue A , the outcome of a measurement of A is A with certainty.

The physical justification of the second assumption, together with the third, is that an immediate repetition of the measurement had better yield the same result, else the measurement would have no significance; if the system were not left in an eigenstate, there would be no such assurance. It follows from the second postulate that a measurement is, in effect, identical to the preparation of a state: by measuring the variable A and finding the value A , we have prepared the system in an eigenstate of the operator $\hat{A}$ with the eigenvalue A . (This is really no different from the classical situation. To prepare a system in a precisely specified state implies that all the dynamical variables needed for its unique determination have been measured, and vice versa.) As a result, the states before and after the measurement are generally different, and this is not necessarily because of a disturbance caused by the measurement. Although the nature of this change is special to quantum physics, the intrusive effect of measurements is a common feature of probabilistic theories. (In classical statistical mechanics, probabilistic predictions after a measurement are based on the assumption of uniform distribution within the phase-space coarse grains of the measurement, even though without the measurement that distribution might have been quite nonuniform.)

These postulates, however, must be regarded as no more than schemata, because they cannot always be implemented literally. The reason is that most of the operators representing observables, for example, the $\hat{q}$ and $\hat{p}$, have spectra that are, at least in part, continuous, and “eigenstates” or “eigenvectors” corresponding to points in a continuous spectrum, which we shall refer to as *quasi-eigenstates* and *quasi-eigenvalues*, respectively, are not normalizable and hence are not members of the system’s Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$. If points in the continuous spectrum of the Hermitian operator $\hat{A}$ are denoted by A , the quasi-eigenstates $|A\rangle$ are such that their inner products $\langle A|$ with all vectors $|\psi\rangle$ in $\mathcal{H}$ are well defined as square-integrable functions of A . (In other words, they are not necessarily finite for such A ; for more about their definition, see Appendix B.2.1.) If we are to avoid idealized measurements of such variables, which would result in quantities described outside $\mathcal{H}$ —the inclusion of the descriptions of such idealized measurements and quantities, however, is often very convenient, and we shall

not go out of our way to avoid them—the postulates have to be formulated more carefully as follows: (1) The result A of a measurement of an observable A must lie in the spectrum of the operator $\hat{A}$ (the spectrum of a Hermitian operator always lies along the real line), and (2), (3) If A is the result of a measurement of $\hat{A}$ with an expected error $\leq \Delta A$ and A lies in the continuous spectrum of $\hat{A}$, the system is left in a state in which A has the expected value A with the variance (or mean-square deviation, also sometimes called *dispersion*) ΔA . (If you don't know what "expected value" and "variance" are, they will be defined shortly.) However, such a state, as we shall see explicitly in Section 2.3.2, is not determined to within a constant factor; it takes at least the measurement of a second observable to make it so.

Since the necessary and sufficient condition for two Hermitian operators to have a complete set of eigenstates in common is that they commute (see Appendix B), a state can in general not be prepared so as to lead, with certainty, to specified outcomes of the measurement of two different observables A and B unless the corresponding operators $\hat{A}$ and $\hat{B}$ commute. In order to identify states of a given physical system uniquely by means of measurements we have to have a complete set of commuting observables at our disposal, so that there exists a complete set of states in $\mathcal{H}$, each of which is labeled by the eigenvalues—and therefore the measurement outcomes—of these simultaneously measurable dynamical variables. Other observables of the system, which fail to commute with this set, are then not sharply defined.

1.1.2 Fields as dynamical variables

While the dynamical variables of particle systems, the $\hat{q}$'s and $\hat{p}$'s, are observables, this need not be the case for all systems. The most fundamental description of submicroscopic physics is given in terms of a *field*, which we shall denote by $\hat{\Phi}(\vec{r})$, an operator-function of space.⁴ This operator is generally not Hermitian and hence does not describe an observable. If we think of $\hat{\Phi}$ as analogous to $\hat{q}$ for a particle, then the Hermitian conjugate $\hat{\Phi}^\dagger$ turns out to be the analogue of $\hat{p}$, as we shall see in Section 2.3.1. Since the spatial coordinate vector $\vec{r}$ in $\hat{\Phi}(\vec{r})$, which you should think of as analogous to the index i in $\hat{q}_i$, $i = 1, \dots, n$, for an n -particle system, ranges over a continuum, the number of degrees of freedom of a system described by a field is necessarily infinite.

⁴Certain mathematical difficulties make it necessary to define $\hat{\Phi}$, strictly speaking, not at a point but in a small measured-out region, thus making it a distribution, but we shall ignore this problem here.

1.2 Probabilities

The probabilistic nature of quantum states implies that two different states need not be mutually exclusive: If a system is in state Φ , it may also have many of the characteristics of the linearly independent state Ψ . Indeed, the probabilistic assumption stated earlier is made explicit and precise by the postulate that if the system is in the state Φ , the probability $P(\Phi|\Psi)$ that it also simultaneously has the properties of the state Ψ is given by

$$P(\Phi|\Psi) = |\langle \Psi, \Phi \rangle|^2 / \|\Phi\|^2 \|\Psi\|^2. \quad (1.1)$$

In particular, the probability for a measurement of the observable A to come up with the result A is $\|\Phi_{A,A}\|^2 / \|\Phi_{A,A}\|^2 + \|\Phi\|^2$, where $\Phi_{A,A}$ is the eigenvector of A corresponding to the eigenvalue A . (It is therefore often convenient to normalize all state vectors so that $\|\Phi_{A,A}\| = 1$ and $\|\Phi\| = 1$.) Note that the probability (1.1) depends only on the rays determined by Φ and Ψ ; it does not depend on their "hair." In case A has several mutually orthogonal eigenvectors $\Phi_{A,i}$ with the same eigenvalue A , which is called degeneracy, this probability reads $\sum_i |\langle \Phi_{A,i}, \Phi \rangle|^2 / \|\Phi_{A,i}\|^2 + \|\Phi\|^2$.

If $P(\Phi, \Psi) = 1$, so that the state Φ is certain to have all the characteristics of the state Ψ , then you expect physically that the two states must be identical (at least in isolation), and this expectation is mathematically reflected in Schwarz's inequality (see Appendix B), according to which $P(\Phi, \Psi) = 1$ implies $\Phi = c\Psi$ for some $c \neq 0$. Only if two state vectors are orthogonal, i.e., if $\langle \Phi, \Psi \rangle = 0$, are the corresponding states mutually exclusive: if the system is in one of these states, the probability of finding that it has the characteristics of the other is zero. The mathematical formalism incorporates this in the fact that two eigenvectors of a Hermitian operator A that correspond to different eigenvalues are necessarily orthogonal to one another: If the result of a measurement is A_1 , the probability of obtaining the result $A_2 \neq A_1$ immediately afterwards vanishes, as it physically should. It is also noteworthy that $P(\Phi, \Psi) = P(\Psi, \Phi)$: the probability that the state Ψ has the properties of the state Φ is the same as the probability that Φ has those of Ψ .

That all measurement results of an observable have to lie in the spectrum of the corresponding operator is mathematically reflected in the completeness property of the spectra of all Hermitian operators, which means that any vector Φ in $\mathcal{H}$ can be expanded on the basis of the eigenvectors $\Phi_{A,i}$ of any Hermitian operator A :

$$\Phi = \sum_i c_i \Phi_{A,i} \quad (1.2)$$

where the sum runs over the spectrum of A , which we assume for the moment to consist of discrete points only. If Φ and all the eigenvectors $\Phi_{A,i}$ are normalized to unity, it follows from the mutual orthogonality of the

later [just take the inner product of (1.2) with Ψ_A] that

$$c_A = \langle \Psi_A | \Psi \rangle, \quad (1.3)$$

which implies $\sum_A |c_A|^2 = 1$ and $|c_A|^2$ is the probability $P(A|\Psi)$ of obtaining the result A upon measurement of A in the state Ψ , so that appropriately $\sum_A P(A|\Psi) = 1$. Thus every state of a system can be decomposed into eigenstates of any given observable A of the system, and the coefficients c_A are the "probability amplitudes" (the squares of whose magnitudes are the probabilities) of obtaining the results A upon measurement of A : $P(A|\Psi) = |c_A|^2 = |\langle \Psi_A | \Psi \rangle|^2$. If the spectrum of A is continuous, the sum in (1.2) has to be replaced by an integral, analogous to replacing a Fourier series by a Fourier integral,

$$\Psi = \int dA c(A) \Phi_{A,0}, \quad (1.4)$$

where Φ_A is a quasi-eigenstate of A that satisfies the equation $A\Phi_A = A\Phi_A$ with the quasi-eigenvalue A . Here, however, $\Phi_A \notin \mathcal{H}$ since it does not have a finite norm, it is not normalizable. [The quasi-eigenstates are analogous to $\exp(ikx)$, with (1.4) analogous to a Fourier integral.] These quasi-eigenstates are still mutually orthogonal, and they can be so chosen that

$$\langle \Phi_A | \Phi_B \rangle = \delta(A - B), \quad (1.5)$$

where $\delta(A - B)$ is Dirac's delta function (see Appendix A for the definition). We shall call them "delta-normalized" and refer to a set of vectors that satisfy (1.4) and (1.5) as an *orthonormal quasi-basis*. Equations (1.4) and (1.5) imply that

$$c(A) = \int dA' \langle \Phi_{A'} | \Psi \rangle,$$

and the physical interpretation of $|c(A)|^2$ is that of a *probability density*: $|c(A)|^2 dA$ is the probability of finding the result of a measurement of the observable A to lie in the interval dA around A . If an operator has a spectrum that is in part discrete and in part continuous, or if we wish to write a formula applicable to either kind of spectrum, we shall indicate the summation over the spectrum by the symbol $\sum$.

1.2.1 Correlations

Suppose a system with the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ consists of two subsystems with the Hilbert spaces $\mathcal{H}^I$ and $\mathcal{H}^{II}$, so that $\mathcal{H} = \mathcal{H}^I \otimes \mathcal{H}^{II}$, and a pure state of the combined system is of the form $\Psi = \sum_{i,j} a_{ij} \Phi_i^I \otimes \Phi_j^{II}$. (We will assume that Ψ is normalized and the sets of states $\{\Phi_i^I\}$ and $\{\Phi_j^{II}\}$ are orthonormal bases in $\mathcal{H}^I$ and $\mathcal{H}^{II}$, respectively.) In such a state the probability of finding the two subsystems in states Φ_k^I and Φ_l^{II} , respectively

is $P(a_i, a_j | \Psi) = |a_{ij}|^2$, and the probability of obtaining the results A and B upon measurement of the variable A of system I and of B of system II, respectively, is given by

$$P(A, B | \Psi) = |\langle \Psi_A^A \otimes \Psi_B^B | \Psi \rangle|^2 = \left| \sum_{i,j} a_{ij} \langle \Psi_A^A | \Psi_{iA}^I \rangle \langle \Psi_B^B | \Psi_{jB}^II \rangle \right|^2.$$

Therefore the probability of finding system I in the state Ψ_{iA}^I , irrespective of what state the other system is in, is given by $\sum_{j,j'} |a_{ij}|^2$. If the two systems are totally independent and uncorrelated, we should have $P(a_i, a_j | \Psi) = P(a_i^I)P(a_j^{II} | \Psi)$, which will be the case if and only if a_{ij} is a product $a_{ij} = b_i a_j$, in which instance Ψ is of the form

$$\Psi = \Psi^I \otimes \Psi^{II}, \quad (1.6)$$

in that case the probability of finding system I in the state Ψ^I is independent of the state of system II.

The general state of the form $\Psi = \sum_{i,j} a_{ij} \Psi_{iA}^I \otimes \Psi_{jB}^{II}$ of the combined system may also be written in the alternative form

$$\Psi = \sum_{\alpha} c_{\alpha} \Psi_{\alpha}^I \otimes \Psi_{\alpha}^{II}, \quad (1.7)$$

where $c_{\alpha} \Psi_{\alpha}^I \equiv \sum_{i,j} a_{ij} \Psi_{iA}^I$; the states Ψ_{α}^I can be assumed to be normalised but they are not necessarily mutually orthogonal. Eq.(1.7) clearly shows the two systems to be so entangled, even though they may no longer be in interaction with one another, that when a test finds system II in state Ψ_{α}^{II} , then system I must be in state Ψ_{α}^I , no matter how far separated the two systems may be. The states Ψ_{α}^I may, for example, be eigenstates of an operator A with the eigenvalue A_{α} , i.e., the result of a measurement of A on system II with the outcome A_{α} , and the states Ψ_{α}^{II} may be eigenstates of B with the eigenvalue B_{α} . When the entire system is in the state Ψ , neither system I nor system II can be said to be in any eigenstate of A or B . However, a measurement of A on system II allows us to infer what the result of a measurement of B on system I would have been, had it been performed, and then casting it into an eigenstate of B without ever coming near the latter, and therefore never disturbing it.

An example of such a situation was used in the famous EPR paper[EPR]. In the somewhat simpler version given by David Bohm,⁵ the Gedanken experiment goes as follows. A particle of spin 0 at rest decays into two spin-1/2 fragments, which fly off in opposite directions. If at a later time, when they are far apart, the vertical spin projection of fragment A is measured, the probability for it to be found up is $\frac{1}{2}$, and similarly for fragment B. But

⁵[Bohm, D.] p. 614.

since angular-momentum conservation dictates that the total angular momentum of the two must be 0, the spin states of the two fragments must be correlated so as to be opposite to one another. Therefore, if the vertical spin projection of A is found to be up, we know for certain, without coming near B for a measurement, that its spin must be down. On the other hand, if the horizontal spin component of A had been measured and found to be left, we would know with equal certainty, without approaching B, that the horizontal spin component of B is right. (Since, by EPR's definition, these two statements about the vertical and horizontal spin projections of B imply that both spin projections are "elements of reality" but quantum mechanics does not allow them to be simultaneously specified because they fail to commute, the authors conclude that this theory cannot be a "complete description of reality," a conclusion that rests on their specific initial, philosophically based definition of reality.)

All philosophical presuppositions aside, the existence of such correlations between distant entities that allow reliable inferences to reproducible physical measurements demonstrates that quantum mechanics does not necessarily imply some irreducible disturbance in the act of measurement, as is sometimes claimed. Notice also that if two systems are correlated as in (1.7), a measurement on one of them instantaneously changes the state of the other, although there may be no interaction (at the present time) between the constituents of the two systems and no matter how great the distance between them. This feature, too, of quantum mechanics is a simple consequence of its probabilistic nature and not of its Hilbert-space formalism.

1.2.2 Interference

The obvious physical interpretation of the superposition of two vectors, as in $\Phi = (\Psi_1 + \Psi_2)/\sqrt{2}$, is that if the system is in the state Φ , it can be found to have the properties both of the state Ψ_1 and of the state Ψ_2 . Assuming that Ψ_1 and Ψ_2 are both normalized and mutually orthogonal, the probability of finding that the system has the characteristics of either state is $\frac{1}{2}$, which would be equally true, however, for the linearly independent state $\Phi' = (e^{i\theta}\Psi_1 + \Psi_2)/\sqrt{2}$ with any real $\theta \neq 0$.

Suppose now that a system is in the state described by the normalized vector Φ and we are asking for the probability that, upon measurement, it will be found in agreement with the state $\Phi = (\Psi_1 + \Psi_2)/\sqrt{2}$. This probability is

$$\begin{aligned} P(\Phi|\Phi) &= |\langle\Phi, \Phi\rangle|^2 = \frac{1}{2} |\langle\Psi_1, \Phi\rangle + \langle\Psi_2, \Phi\rangle|^2 \\ &= \frac{1}{2} |\langle\Psi_1, \Phi\rangle|^2 + \frac{1}{2} |\langle\Psi_2, \Phi\rangle|^2 + \Re[\langle\Psi_1, \Phi\rangle^* \langle\Psi_2, \Phi\rangle], \quad (1.8) \end{aligned}$$

where R denotes the real part of a complex number and the *c.c.* indicates the complex conjugate. So the probability of finding the state of the system in agreement with Φ is not necessarily equal to the sum of the probabilities $P(\Phi_1|\Phi)$ of finding it in agreement with Φ_1 and $P(\Phi_2|\Phi)$ of finding it in agreement with Φ_2 , even if the two states Φ_1 and Φ_2 are mutually exclusive. Instead there is an interference term $2R(\Phi_1|\Phi)^*(\Phi_2|\Phi)$, an effect that is characteristic of quantum physics and which indicates the correlation between the two states Φ_1 and Φ_2 when they form a superposition. Since the interference term is the real part of the product of the two complex numbers $(\Phi_1|\Phi)^*$ and $(\Phi_2|\Phi)$, the correlation would be different for $\Phi' = (e^{i\theta}\Phi_1 + \Phi_2)/\sqrt{2}$. For example, if $P(\Phi_1, \Phi) = P(\Phi_2, \Phi) = p$, then $P(\Phi', \Phi)$ may vary between 0 and $1/2$, depending upon the relative phase of $(\Phi_1|\Phi)$ and $(\Phi_2|\Phi)$.

Although this result appears to differ from the classical addition of probabilities for independent systems, it is important to remember that for two states of a given system to form another state by superposition means that they are entangled; they are not independent. As already noted earlier, this kind of quantum entanglement has its analogue in wave systems [the spectral decomposition, giving the magnitude of the weight of each spectral component, of an electromagnetic wave is not sufficient to specify the wave uniquely], but it has no classical analogue for systems consisting of particles. It should therefore be emphasized that the interference term in (1.5), rather than showing the inapplicability of classical probability theory to quantum mechanics, represents the effect of a kind of correlation between states of quantum systems that most classical systems lack (and those classical systems that have such correlations, such as wave systems, are not usually treated probabilistically). There is no need to invent a special theory of probability applicable only to quantum physics.

The kind of correlation between states of physical systems—even between systems that may be far apart from one another—expressed by the superposition principle and the resulting interference effects implies a certain nonlocality inherent in quantum physics. Such nonlocal action-at-a-distance, if postulated as existing between classical particles, is usually regarded as physically unacceptable; for waves, however, we do not object to it and indeed are quite accustomed to its presence. There is, therefore, no reason to find puzzling such nonlocal effects as are implied by the quantum superposition principle, and the concomitant, experimentally well confirmed interferences. They simply indicate that quanta, though we call them "particles," are not little billiard balls.*

*In the alternative interpretation of quantum physics put forward by David Bohm, which tries to avoid the quantum nonlocality by postulating an underlying quasi-classical substratum described by hidden variables, the unacceptable nonlocality appears as a result of an action-at-a-distance between noncommuting particles that behave classically, which is physically much more objectionable. The flaw being initially more apparent,

1.2.1 Expectation values and variance

The average value (also called the mean, the expectation value or the expected value) of the observable A in the state Φ is, by definition, given by

$$\langle A \rangle \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \int_{\mathcal{R}} A P(A|\Phi),$$

the right-hand side of which is easily evaluated by means of (1.2) and (1.3), with the result

$$\langle A \rangle = \frac{(\Phi, A\Phi)}{\|\Phi\|^2} = \frac{(\langle A \rangle)}{\langle 1 \rangle}. \quad (1.6)$$

The mean value, of course, depends on the state Φ , but this dependence is customarily not indicated in the notation $\langle A \rangle$. The variance, dispersion, or root-mean-square deviation of A in the state Φ is defined by

$$\Delta A \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \sqrt{(\langle A^2 \rangle - \langle A \rangle^2)} = \sqrt{(\langle A^2 \rangle) - (\langle A \rangle)^2}. \quad (1.7)$$

If Φ is an eigenstate of A , its variance is zero: it is sharp. To see this, assume that $A\Phi = A\Phi$ and $\|\Phi\| = 1$, then

$$\langle A^2 \rangle = (\Phi, A^2\Phi) = A^2 = \langle A \rangle^2,$$

and hence $\Delta A = 0$. Conversely, it follows from the Hermiticity of A and Schwarz's inequality⁷ that if $\Delta A = 0$, Φ must be an eigenstate of A , assuming that $A\Phi$ and Φ are linearly independent, so that Φ is not an eigenstate of A , and that $\|\Phi\| = 1$, we have

$$\langle A \rangle^2 = (\langle \Phi, A\Phi \rangle)^2 \leq \|\Phi\|^2 \|A\Phi\|^2 = \langle A\Phi, A\Phi \rangle = \langle \Phi, A^2\Phi \rangle = \langle A^2 \rangle,$$

and therefore $\Delta A = 0$. Thus the only states that are dispersion-free for a given observable are its eigenstates; in the eigenstate of a given observable A , the probability distributions of other observables that do not commute with A cannot be sharp (see the remark at the end of Section 1.1.1).

A general result with an important special case is that the product of the dispersions of two Hermitian operators is bounded below by one-half of the average of their commutator, $\langle [A, B] \rangle \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} AB - BA$. In order to prove this, let us subtract from these operators their expectation values in the state to be considered (which we take normalized to unity) and define $A' \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} A - \langle A \rangle$ [this should really be written as $A' \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} A - \langle A \rangle \mathbb{I}$, where $\mathbb{I}$ is the unit operator (which has the property that for all $\Phi \in \mathcal{R}$, $\mathbb{I}\Phi = \Phi$), but we shall forgo this bit of pedantry] and $B' \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} B - \langle B \rangle$, so that $(\Delta A)^2 =$

⁷ In fact, the Schwarz theory is, on these grounds alone, apart from dispersions based on its hidden variables, more counterintuitive than the orthodox quantum theory.

⁸ See Appendix B.

$\langle A^2 \rangle = \langle A^*A \rangle$ and $\langle B^2 \rangle = \langle B^*B \rangle$, as well as $[A, B] = [A^*, B^*]$. We then have by Schwarz's inequality

$$\begin{aligned} |\langle \Psi, [A, B] \Psi \rangle| &= |\langle \Psi, A^*B^*\Psi \rangle - \langle \Psi, B^*A^*\Psi \rangle| \\ &\leq |\langle \Psi, A^*B^*\Psi \rangle| + |\langle \Psi, B^*A^*\Psi \rangle| \\ &\leq 2 \|A^*\Psi\| \|B^*\Psi\| = 2\Delta A \Delta B; \end{aligned}$$

so

$$\Delta A \Delta B \geq \frac{1}{2} |[A, B]|. \quad (3.11)$$

In this inequality, the right-hand side as well as the variances on the left are generally state-dependent, except when the commutator between A and B is a constant (that is, a multiple of the unit operator), as it is in the special case of a particle's position q and momentum p . In that instance we have for each component, as we shall justify in Section 2.1.2,

$$[q_k, p_l] = i\delta_{kl} \quad k, l = 1, 2, 3, \quad (3.12)$$

(where δ_{kl} is the Kronecker symbol, which equals 1 when $k = l$ and 0 otherwise) and therefore, by (3.11),

$$\Delta q_k \Delta p_k \geq \frac{1}{2} \hbar, \quad k = 1, 2, 3, \quad (3.13)$$

the right-hand side of which is universal, that is, state-independent. This, of course, is nothing but Heisenberg's uncertainty (or indeterminacy) relation.

If the two observables A and B commute, (3.11) shows that there is no lower bound on their uncertainty product. There are, then, states in which both are specified as sharply as the precision of the measurement apparatus permits, in agreement with the fact that such commuting Hermitian operators have a complete set of eigenvectors in common. Commuting observables for a given system are physically compatible with one another and can be specified simultaneously. This may be necessary, for example, if there is degeneracy in their spectra, so that giving the eigenvalue of only one of them does not determine a state to within a constant factor.

1.3 Mixed States

The states of physical systems are, of course, not always specified as precisely as nature allows. In order to represent such less-than-precisely given states of particle systems, classical statistical mechanics uses the technique of coarse graining: the phase space is subdivided into small grains, whose size depends on the accuracy of an experimenter's measuring instruments or on the coarseness of an observer's focus. When a system is specified to be in one of these grains, its dynamical variables are fixed only approximately

and it is the task of statistical mechanics to formulate the laws governing its behavior. Analogously in quantum physics, a system may be specified only to be in a “coarse grain of the Hilbert space Ω ,” that is, to be in one of the mutually exclusive (normalized) states $\Phi_n = |n\rangle$ with the probability p_n . In that case, instead of using (1.1) to calculate the probability for the state of the system to agree with some given (normalized) state $\Phi = |\rangle$, one would calculate this probability by

$$P(\Phi) = \sum_n p_n P(\Phi|\Phi_n) = \sum_n p_n |\langle\Phi, \Phi_n\rangle|^2 = \langle|\sum_n p_n \Phi_n\rangle| \langle|\rangle.$$

Now $P_n \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} |n\rangle\langle n|$ may be regarded as an operator in the sense that $P_n \Phi \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} |\Phi_n, \Phi\rangle \Phi_n$. Because it projects any arbitrary vector on Φ_n , P_n is called a projection operator, whose two defining characteristics are that it is Hermitian and idempotent, which means that $P_n^2 = P_n$.

It is therefore convenient to define the density operator of a system by

$$\rho \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \sum_n p_n |n\rangle\langle n| = \sum_n p_n P_n \quad (1.14)$$

where the numbers p_n are non-negative, such that $\sum_n p_n = 1$, and $P_n P_m = P_n \delta_{nm}$. If the state of a given system is described by ρ , the probability of finding it to have the properties of the state Φ is expressed by

$$P(\Phi, \rho) = \langle\Phi, \rho \Phi\rangle = \langle|\rho\rangle| \langle|\Phi\rangle. \quad (1.15)$$

In the special instance in which $p_n = 0$ for all n but one, the density operator degenerates into a single projection onto the ray representing an isolated, “purest” state of the system.

For example, if the system is definitely in one of the two uncorrelated, truly independent states $|1\rangle = \Phi_1$ or $|2\rangle = \Phi_2$ with probability $\frac{1}{2}$ each, its density operator is $\rho = \frac{1}{2}(P_1 + P_2)$ and the probability of finding it to agree with the state Φ is $P(\Phi, \rho) = \frac{1}{2}[|\langle\Phi, \Phi_1\rangle|^2 + |\langle\Phi, \Phi_2\rangle|^2]$, without the interference term present if it were in a superposition of the two states Φ_1 and Φ_2 . Equation (1.15) also implies that if a system is in the state described by ρ , the probability of obtaining the result A upon measurement of the variable A is given by

$$P(A|\rho) = \frac{\langle\Phi_A, \rho \Phi_A\rangle}{\langle\Phi_A, \Phi_A\rangle} = \frac{\langle A, \rho A\rangle}{\langle A, A\rangle} = \text{tr}(\rho A), \quad (1.16)$$

where P_A is the projection on the eigenspace of A at the eigenvalue A and tr denotes the trace (see Appendix B).

Suppose we perform a measurement of the variable A on a system in a pure state Φ (assumed normalized), so that the probability of obtaining the result A is given by $P(A|\Phi) = |\langle\Phi_A, \Phi\rangle|^2$ if Φ_A is a normalized eigenstate

of A with the eigenvalue A . (Assume for simplicity that the spectrum of A is discrete and without degeneracies.) After the measurement with the outcome A , the state of the system is pure and given by $P_A\Phi = \Phi_A/\|\Phi_A\|$. On the other hand, the state of the system after the measurement (irrespective of the outcome)¹ is not pure but, described by the density operator

$$\rho_A = \sum_A |\langle \Phi_A, \Phi \rangle|^2 P_A = \sum_A |\langle A | \langle A \rangle| \langle A | \langle A \rangle, \quad (3.17)$$

whose eigenvalues are $|\langle \Phi_A, \Phi \rangle|^2$ and whose eigenfunctions are $\Phi_A = |A\rangle$.² After the measurement, the system is therefore no longer in a pure state but in a mixed state.³ More generally, if the state of the system before the measurement is described by the density operator ρ , then its state after the measurement of A , with the outcome ignored,⁴ is described by

$$\rho_A = \sum_A P_A \rho P_A. \quad (3.18)$$

If a system, consisting of two subsystems with Hilbert spaces $\mathcal{H}^I$ and $\mathcal{H}^{II}$, is in the pure state $\Phi = \sum_{nm} a_{nm} \Phi_n^I \otimes \Phi_m^{II}$, then the state of system I , with system II ignored, is described by the density operator⁵

$$\rho^I = \sum_n b_{nn} P_{nn}^I, \quad b_{nn} = \sum_m a_{nm} a_{nm}^*, \quad (3.19)$$

where

$$P_{nn}^I = |\varphi_n^I\rangle \langle \varphi_n^I|,$$

meaning that $P_{nn}^I \Phi^I = \Phi_n^I \langle \Phi_n^I, \Phi^I \rangle$. This may be expressed in the more general form applicable also to instances in which the system as a whole is in a mixed state,

$$\rho^I = \text{tr}_2 \rho, \quad (3.20)$$

where tr_2 means that the trace is taken only over the states in $\mathcal{H}^{II}$. Even when the complete system is in a pure state, a given subsystem is generally in a mixed state, represented by a density operator.

¹This is often expressed by saying “the outcome is ignored.” Such a formulation, however, gives the misleading impression that what the experimenter knows or has in mind influences the state of the physical system. No such influence should be there.

²Suppose a standard two-slit experiment is performed with electrons made visible on a screen and photographed. Describe the state in which “the outcome is ignored?” How would you record it?

³In terms of ensembles, the measurement of A , with the result A yields a new ensemble of states in each of which A has the same value A (this ensemble is described by an eigenstate of A with the eigenvalue A). The measurement of A “with the result ignored” yields an ensemble in which each of the possible eigenvalues A is represented in proportion to the number of times A was obtained in the measurement. This set is described by the density operator (3.17).

⁴Prove this as an exercise.

As an illustration, consider the example of the radiative decay of an infinitely massive (therefore nonrecoiling) nucleus in a pure state, with the emission of an electron and an antineutrino, so that the final state of the two-particle system consisting of the electron and the antineutrino is schematically given by

$$\Phi = \sum_{\alpha_1, \alpha_2} f(\alpha_1, \alpha_2) \Phi_{\alpha_1}(\alpha_1) \otimes \Phi_{\alpha_2}(\alpha_2),$$

where $\Phi_{\alpha_1}(\alpha_1)$ is the state of the electron, $\Phi_{\alpha_2}(\alpha_2)$ is the state of the antineutrino, and α_1 and α_2 denote the eigenvalues or quasi-eigenvalues of the needed dynamical variables: the energy, the momentum direction, the angular momentum, etc. If the antineutrino is ignored, the probability of obtaining the result β upon a measurement on the electron alone is given by

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\Gamma} |\langle \Phi, \Phi_{\beta}(\beta) \rangle \Phi_{\text{ant}}(\gamma)|^2 d\gamma &= \int_{\Gamma} \left| \sum_{\alpha_1, \alpha_2} f(\alpha_1, \alpha_2) \langle \Phi_{\beta}(\beta), \Phi_{\alpha_1}(\alpha_1) \rangle \right. \\ &\quad \times \langle \Phi_{\text{ant}}(\gamma), \Phi_{\alpha_2}(\alpha_2) \rangle \Big|^2 d\gamma \\ &= \langle \Phi_{\beta}(\beta), \rho_{\beta} \Phi_{\beta}(\beta) \rangle, \end{aligned}$$

where

$$\rho_{\beta} = \sum_{\alpha_1, \alpha_2} \left[\sum_{\gamma} f(\alpha_1, \alpha_2) \langle \alpha_1, \alpha_2 | \gamma \rangle \right] |\alpha_1, \alpha_2\rangle \langle \alpha_1, \alpha_2|.$$

This shows that, as remarked earlier, the state of the electron will be a mixture, rather than a superposition, of different momenta and angular momentum projections.

For another example, take the vectors $|E_n\rangle = \Phi_n$ to be normalized eigenstates of the Hamiltonian H (the energy operator), and let $P_n \equiv |E_n\rangle \langle E_n|$ be the projection on $|E_n\rangle$. If the probability of finding the system in the state $|E_n\rangle$ is $p(E_n)$, then the density operator of the mixed state in which there are no correlations between these eigenstates of H is given by

$$\rho = \sum_n p(E_n) P_n = \sum_n p(H) P_n = p(H)$$

because $HP_n = E_n P_n$ and $\sum_n P_n = 1$ [see (1.23) below]. For a system in thermodynamic equilibrium at the temperature T , with coefficients distributed according to the Boltzmann distribution $p(E) = e^{-E/kT}$ (where k is the Boltzmann constant), the density operator can therefore be written in the simple form

$$\rho = e^{-H/kT}. \quad (1.31)$$

The density operator is the most general representation of an isolated quantum state. Because we had assumed that the states Φ_n in (1.14) are

mutually exclusive, which means these vectors are mutually orthogonal, $(\Psi_{n_1}, \Psi_{n_2}) = \delta_{n_1 n_2}$. (1.14) shows that they are the eigenvectors and the p_n are the eigenvalues of ρ . Since $p_n \geq 0$ for all n , the density operator is positive semi-definite, and since the probabilities p_n have to add up to unity, $\sum_n p_n = 1$, its trace, i.e., the sum of its eigenvalues, equals unity:

$$\text{tr} \rho = 1. \quad (1.22)$$

Furthermore we have $\rho^2 = \sum_n p_n^2 |\psi\rangle\langle\psi|$, so that $(\rho - \rho^2) = \sum_n (p_n - p_n^2) |\psi\rangle\langle\psi| \geq 0$, because for all n , $0 \leq p_n \leq 1$, and therefore $p_n - p_n^2 \geq 0$ unless $p_n = 0$ or 1. Only if a single $p_n = 1$ and all others vanish can we have $(\rho - \rho^2) = 0$. This is the special case in which the system can be represented by a ray spanned by the vector $\Psi \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} |\psi\rangle$, and the density operator degenerates to a single projection on this ray: $\rho = |\psi\rangle\langle\psi|$. The density operator of such a state has the special property of being idempotent: $\rho^2 = \rho$ and hence being a projection (on the ray representing the normalized, isolated state).¹² The trace of ρ^2 is a number between 0 and 1: $0 \leq \text{tr} \rho^2 = \sum_n p_n^2 \leq \sum_n p_n = 1$, where the equality holds if and only if one of the $p_n = 1$ while all the others vanish, which means that ρ denotes a non-mixed state. Therefore, for any given system, $\text{tr} \rho^2$ may be taken to be a relative measure of the “degree of mixing” or “inhomogeneity” of its state. How small the minimum value of $\text{tr} \rho^2$ is when the state is completely inhomogeneous, however, depends on the number of states available to the system: if there are n states, the minimum of $\text{tr} \rho^2$ is $1/n$.¹³

1.4 Representations

The spectrum of every Hermitian operator on a Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ spans the space: this is the mathematical expression of the physical requirement that the measurement of an observable on any system must yield some result. Suppose, to begin with, that the Hermitian operator A corresponding to the observable A has a discrete point spectrum only, and that to each of its eigenvalues A there corresponds a one-dimensional eigenspace spanned by Ψ_A , i.e., there is no degeneracy; then every $\Psi \in \mathcal{H}$ can be expanded on the basis of these mutually orthogonal vectors in the form (1.2). The sequence of coefficients given by (1.3) as $c_A = (\Psi_A, \Psi) = (A\Psi, \Psi_A)$ therefore uniquely represents the vector Ψ ; the set of numbers $\{(A\Psi, \Psi_A)\}$, where A runs over the spectrum of A , is the A -representation of $|\Psi\rangle$. If there is degeneracy, i.e., if some, or all, of the eigenspaces are multidimensional, then more than one

¹²I am using the term “normalized” rather than “pure” because the state is not as well defined as not one possibly; it is isolated and has “no hair.” States represented by a density operator never have “hair.”

¹³Prove this as an exercise.

physical variable is needed to specify each possible state of the system and a complete set of commuting observables has to be used to label the basis vectors.

A very convenient way of expressing the completeness (1.2) together with (1.3) is in the formula (assuming $\langle A|A \rangle = 1$ for all A ; see (B.16) in Appendix B)

$$\sum_A |A\rangle\langle A| = \mathbb{I}, \quad (1.28)$$

where $\mathbb{I}$ stands for the unit operator on $\mathcal{H}$. The meaning of (1.28) becomes clear when both sides act on an arbitrary vector $|\psi\rangle \in \mathcal{H}$, in which case it reads

$$|\psi\rangle = \sum_A |A\rangle\langle A|\psi\rangle$$

combining (1.2) with (1.3). The use of (1.28) becomes particularly convenient when we want to express an arbitrary inner product of two vectors $\Phi_A = |\Phi\rangle$ and $\Psi_A = |\Psi\rangle$ in the A -representation:

$$\langle \Phi_A, \Psi_A \rangle = \langle \Psi|\Phi \rangle = \langle \Psi|\mathbb{I}|\Phi \rangle = \sum_A \langle \Psi|A\rangle\langle A|\Phi \rangle = \sum_A \langle A|\Psi\rangle^* \langle A|\Phi \rangle. \quad (1.29)$$

The two quantities appearing on the right-hand side are simply the A -representations of the vectors $|\Phi\rangle$ and $|\Psi\rangle$. As a special case of (1.29) we have, for $\Phi = \Psi$,

$$\langle \Phi_A, \Phi_A \rangle = \| \Phi_A \|^2 = \langle \Phi|\Phi \rangle = \sum_A |\langle A|\Phi \rangle|^2,$$

or, more generally,

$$\| \Phi \|^2 = \sum_A |\langle A|\Phi \rangle|^2,$$

expressing the norm of an arbitrary state vector in terms of its A -representation.

Similarly for an arbitrary operator $\mathbf{X}$:

$$\langle \Phi_A, \mathbf{X}\Psi_A \rangle = \langle \Psi|\mathbf{X}|\Phi \rangle = \langle \Psi|\mathbf{X}\mathbb{I}|\Phi \rangle = \sum_{A,A'} \langle \Psi|A\rangle\langle A|\mathbf{X}|A'\rangle\langle A'|\Phi \rangle,$$

which expresses the left-hand side completely in terms of the set of numbers $\langle A|\mathbf{X}|A'\rangle$ and the A -representations of $|\Phi\rangle$ and $|\Psi\rangle$. In other words, in the A -representation the abstract operator is replaced by a matrix, whose elements are given by $X_{AA'} = \langle A|\mathbf{X}|A'\rangle$. Since operator multiplication now simply becomes matrix multiplication,

$$\langle A|\mathbf{X}\mathbf{Y}|A'\rangle = \langle A|\mathbf{X}\mathbf{Y}|A'\rangle = \sum_{A''} \langle A|\mathbf{X}|A''\rangle\langle A''|\mathbf{Y}|A'\rangle,$$

all abstract calculations in §) can be replaced by ordinary numerical matrix calculations.

These things become a little stickier if the Hermitian operator $\hat{A}$ has a continuous spectrum, in which case the quasi-eigenvectors are not in $\mathcal{H}$. (See Appendix B.3.1 for details.) The Dirac notation, however, is designed to allow us to manipulate all the formulas given above just as for discrete spectra, simply replacing sums by integrals: Eq. (1.20) is replaced by (B.20) in the Appendix, and with the “normalization” (B.22) we obtain the generalized Fourier integral

$$|i\rangle = \int dA |A\rangle \langle A|i\rangle,$$

in which $|A\rangle$ plays a role analogous to the exponential $\exp(i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r})$ and the integral extends over the continuous spectrum of $\hat{A}$.

The “matrix” representing the operator $\hat{X}$ becomes the kernel $X(A', A'')$ of an integral operator, since by (B.20)

$$\begin{aligned} \langle A|\hat{X}|A'\rangle &= \langle A|\hat{X}\mathbf{1}|A'\rangle = \int dA'' dA''' \langle A|A''\rangle \langle A''|\hat{X}|A'''\rangle \langle A'''|A'\rangle \\ &\stackrel{\text{B.22}}{=} \int dA'' dA''' \langle A|A''\rangle X(A'', A''') \langle A'''|A'\rangle. \end{aligned}$$

As we shall see, however, in some instances they become equivalent to differential operators.

Suppose that $|A_1\rangle$ is an eigenvector of the operator $\hat{A}$ with the discrete-eigenvalue A_1 . Then its $\mathcal{A}$ -representation $\langle A|A_1\rangle$ is a sequence with $\langle A_1|A_1\rangle = 1$ and zeros everywhere else. (This is on the assumption that there is no degeneracy; if there is, there may be several nonzero entries in the sequence.) In the $\mathcal{A}$ -representation, the operator $\hat{A}$ acting on an arbitrary vector $|i\rangle$ becomes simply the number A multiplying the entry $\langle A|i\rangle$ in the sequence,

$$\langle A|\hat{A}|i\rangle = A\langle A|i\rangle,$$

which may be viewed as expressing the fact that the matrix representing the operator $\hat{A}$ in the $\mathcal{A}$ -representation is diagonal, with the eigenvalues of $\hat{A}$ on the diagonal, because $\langle A|\hat{A}|A'\rangle = A'\langle A|A'\rangle = A'\delta_{A,A'}$. One therefore refers to the problem of finding all the eigenvalues of an observable also as the problem of diagonalizing the matrix representing it on an arbitrary basis. (We shall discuss this in more detail a little later, see also Appendix B.)

For continuous spectra, these things are formally the same, even though there are no actual eigenvectors. The $\mathcal{A}$ -representation of a quasi-eigenvector $|A_1\rangle$ is the Dirac delta function $\delta(A - A_1)$, a “function” that differs effectively from zero only at the point $A = A_1$. As for the integral kernel representing $\hat{A}$, it becomes a multiple of the delta function: $\langle A'|\hat{A}|A''\rangle = A'\delta(A' - A'')$. Here are some specific examples of particular importance.

1.4.1 The configuration representation

Let us begin with the simple case of a single point particle, a system of three degrees of freedom. The three parameters needed to identify the location of the particle are denoted by $\vec{q}$, the vector whose components are equal to its three Cartesian coordinates in Euclidean space. However, the vector $\vec{q}$, as a dynamical variable, does not denote a point in physical space but a point in configuration space. For two particles, a system of 6 degrees of freedom, the 6 needed dynamical variables are the Cartesian coordinates $\vec{q}_1$ and $\vec{q}_2$ which identify the locations of particles q_1 and q_2 in physical space and which make up a vector in the six-dimensional configuration space. Only for a single particle are the dimensions of the physical space equal to those of the configuration space, even in that case, however, the two spaces are distinct and must not be confused.

So the dynamical variables of a single particle in its configuration space are the three components of $\vec{q}$, and the corresponding mutually commuting (see Section 2.1.3) Hermitian operators will be denoted by $\vec{q}$. We are now going to construct their spectra.

Let the eigenvector or quasi-eigenvector of the three components of $\vec{q}$ with the eigenvalue or quasi-eigenvalue q be $|q\rangle$, so that $\vec{q}|q\rangle = q|q\rangle$. Using the canonical commutation relation (1.12), we then find for any small real ϵ , to first order in ϵ , that

$$\epsilon \vec{p} [1 - i\epsilon/2(\vec{p}\vec{q})] |q\rangle = [\epsilon \vec{p} - i\epsilon^2/2\epsilon \vec{p}\vec{q}] |q\rangle + \epsilon |q\rangle = [\epsilon \vec{p} + \epsilon] [1 - i\epsilon/2(\vec{p}\vec{q})] |q\rangle,$$

which implies that $[1 - i\epsilon/2(\vec{p}\vec{q})] |q\rangle$ is an eigenvector or quasi-eigenvector of $\epsilon \vec{p}$ with the eigenvalue or quasi-eigenvalue $q + \epsilon$,

$$[1 - i\epsilon/2(\vec{p}\vec{q})] |q\rangle = |q + \epsilon\rangle. \quad (1.34)$$

This equation, for the derivation of which we used nothing but the commutation relations (1.12), allows us to draw three important conclusions. The first is that the spectrum of all three components of $\vec{q}$ must be continuous: If q is a quasi-eigenvalue of the i -component q_i of the particle-position operator, then so is $q + \epsilon$ for any small real ϵ . Furthermore, this spectrum must fill the real line from $-\infty$ to $+\infty$, because the only way in which (1.34) could break down is for $[1 - i\epsilon/2(\vec{p}\vec{q})] |q\rangle$ to vanish. But this would require that the Hermitian operator $\epsilon \vec{p}_i/\hbar$ have the quasi-eigenvalue $-\epsilon$, which is impossible. Hence the spectrum of q_i has to be unbounded above and below.

Since $\vec{q}$ is Hermitian and its three components commute, the simultaneous quasi-eigenvectors $|q\rangle$ of its three components form a quasi-basis, so that any vector $|\rangle \in \mathcal{H}$ can be expanded as in a Fourier integral:

$$|\rangle = \int d^3q |q\rangle \langle q|\rangle. \quad (1.35)$$

an equation that we can write symbolically as

$$\int d^3q |q\rangle\langle q| = 1. \quad (1.37)$$

Since $\langle q|q\rangle = \delta(0)$, the operator q in this representation is simply the numerical vector q .

The second conclusion we can draw from (1.35) is that, since a rearrangement of it reads

$$i\hbar \frac{|q+\epsilon\rangle - |q\rangle}{\epsilon} = p|q\rangle,$$

we find in the limit as $\epsilon \rightarrow 0$, $p|q\rangle = i\hbar \nabla_q |q\rangle$, or

$$\langle q|p = i\hbar \nabla_q \langle q|.$$

Therefore we obtain for matrix elements $\langle q|p\rangle = \langle q|i\hbar \nabla_q |q\rangle = i\hbar \nabla_q \langle q|q\rangle$, but $\langle q|$ is the complex conjugate of the configuration representation of the vector $|q\rangle$, that is, of the configuration-space wave function

$$\psi(q) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \langle q|$$

representing the state $|q\rangle$. We have therefore found that in the configuration representation, the momentum operator is given by $\hat{p} = -i\hbar \nabla_q$,

$$\hat{p}\psi(q) = -i\hbar \nabla_q \psi(q), \quad (1.38)$$

and the expectation value of the momentum is calculated by means of the formula

$$\langle p \rangle = \int d^3q \psi(q)^* (-i\hbar \nabla_q) \psi(q),$$

assuming that $\int d^3q \psi(q)^* \psi(q) = 1$.

The third conclusion we can draw from (1.35) is to extend it to all finite shifts a of q by setting $\epsilon = a/\alpha$, applying (1.35) to them, and letting $\alpha \rightarrow \infty$. This leads to the result

$$|\hat{q} + a\rangle = \lim_{\alpha \rightarrow \infty} [1 - i\alpha(\hat{p} - \hat{q})a/\hbar] |\hat{q}\rangle = e^{i\alpha(\hat{p} - \hat{q})a/\hbar} |\hat{q}\rangle, \quad (1.39)$$

which identifies the momentum operator $\hat{p}$ as the generator of translations. (Note that a power series expansion of the exponential in (1.39) and the use of (1.38) yields the Heisenberg version of the left-hand side.)

In the configuration representation, the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ of a one-particle system is the space of square-integrable functions of three real variables (also called $L^2(\mathbb{R}^3)$), and the state vector of the system is represented by a square-integrable function $\psi(q)$ of the particle's position q in its configuration space, with an inner product defined by

$$\langle \psi, \varphi \rangle = \int d^3q \psi^*(q) \varphi(q). \quad (1.40)$$

The physical interpretation of the wave function $\psi(\mathbf{q})$ is that of a probability-density amplitude; in other words that the probability of finding the particle in the infinitesimal neighborhood d^3q of the point $\mathbf{q}$ in its configuration space is given by $|\psi(\mathbf{q})|^2 d^3q$. It is also customary to define the probability-current density of a particle of mass M in its configuration space by

$$\mathbf{J}(\mathbf{q}) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} -\frac{i\hbar}{2M} [\nabla^* (\psi^* \psi) - (\nabla \psi^*) (\psi \psi^*)], \quad (1.14)$$

an expression which makes good physical sense in that the operator $-(i\hbar/M)\nabla$ has the significance of the velocity $\mathbf{p}/M$, and the two terms are needed to make the current density real. The density matrix in the configuration representation is given in terms of the density operator by

$$\rho(\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{q}') = \langle \mathbf{q} | \hat{\rho} | \mathbf{q}' \rangle = \int d\mathbf{p} \, e^{i\mathbf{p} \cdot (\mathbf{q} - \mathbf{q}')} \rho(\mathbf{p}), \quad (1.15)$$

It is extremely important to keep in mind that the wave function ψ is not a function on physical space but on the configuration space of a particle; ψ must certainly not be thought of as a condition of space. [The configuration representation is also often referred to as “coordinate representation”; this name, however, is misleading, because the “coordinate-space” wave function is not defined on physical space but on the configuration space of particles; for two particles, it is a function of six variables (see below) and thus lives on a six-dimensional space, the configuration space of the two particles. In order to emphasize this point, we denote the particle coordinates as $\mathbf{q}$ rather than $\mathbf{r}$ in this chapter.] Without a clear recognition of the distinction between physical space and configuration space one is easily led into puzzling paradoxes, particularly in connection with the description of measurements. Remember that after a system in a pure state Ψ is subjected to a measurement of an observable A with the outcome A , its new state is an eigenstate Ψ_A of A with the eigenvalue A , i.e., its state is instantly changed from Ψ to Ψ_A . If this basic assumption of quantum physics is described in terms of “coordinate space” wave functions, it leads to the notorious “collapse of the wave function,” which has been endlessly discussed over the years because it appears to be an instantaneous action-at-a-distance effect characteristic of the quantum world. In reality it should be recognized as the inevitable effect of the probabilistic nature of quantum physics. Whenever a probabilistic prediction is confronted with an individual experimental result, the probability distribution instantaneously “collapses” to a single point. If you are playing roulette and bet your last \$10 on #17, when the ball comes to rest, your state instantly changes from one in which the probability of owning \$20 is 1/38, either to a state in which you definitely own \$20 or to a state in which you are broke. This becomes puzzling only if wave functions or probability densities are thought to be analogous to electric fields, defined as conditions of physical space, so that the collapse appears to be a large-scale physical effect.

For n particles these results are easily generalized. The configuration space is now $3n$ -dimensional, and ψ is the space of square-integrable functions of $3n$ variables $\mathbf{q}_k$, $k = 1, \dots, n$, while the momentum of the k^{th} particle is represented by the differential operator $\mathbf{p}_k = -i\hbar\nabla_{\mathbf{q}_k}$, and $|\psi(\mathbf{q}_1, \dots, \mathbf{q}_n)|^2 d^3q_1 \cdots d^3q_n$ is the probability for the particles to be found in the volume element $d^3q_1 \cdots d^3q_n$ near the point $\mathbf{q}_1, \dots, \mathbf{q}_n$ of their joint configuration space. The probability density of one of these particles is obtained from this by integrating $|\psi(\mathbf{q}_1, \dots, \mathbf{q}_n)|^2$ over the coordinates of the others. More generally, if the n -particle system is in a pure state with the (normalized) configuration wave function $\psi(\mathbf{q}_1, \dots, \mathbf{q}_n)$, then particle #1, considered by itself and isolated, is in a mixed state and its density matrix is given by

$$\rho(\mathbf{q}_1', \mathbf{q}_1) = \int d^3q_2 \cdots d^3q_n \psi(\mathbf{q}_1', \mathbf{q}_2, \dots) \psi^*(\mathbf{q}_1, \mathbf{q}_2, \dots). \quad (1.33)$$

Since the Hilbert space of an n -particle system is the tensor product of n Hilbert spaces of single-particle systems, every n -particle wave function can be expanded in a series of products of single-particle wave functions in the form

$$\psi(\mathbf{q}_1, \dots, \mathbf{q}_n) = \sum_{i_1, \dots, i_n} a_{i_1, \dots, i_n} \psi_{i_1}(\mathbf{q}_1) \cdots \psi_{i_n}(\mathbf{q}_n), \quad (1.34)$$

if the functions $\psi_{i_k}(\mathbf{q})$ form a basis in the one-particle Hilbert space.¹⁴

1.4.2 The momentum representation

Since all our results concerning the configuration representation were based on the commutation relation (1.12), which, apart from a sign, is symmetrical between $\mathbf{p}$ and $\mathbf{q}$, we can draw similar conclusions for the momentum representation. Thus we find that the spectra of the three components of $\mathbf{p}$ must generally be continuous, ranging from $-\infty$ to $+\infty$, and a one-particle system's Hilbert space can be represented by the space of square-integrable functions $\tilde{\psi}(\mathbf{p}) \equiv \langle \mathbf{p} | \psi \rangle$ representing the states $|\psi\rangle = | \rangle$, with the inner product

$$\langle \psi, \tilde{\psi} \rangle = \int d^3p \tilde{\psi}^* \langle \mathbf{p} | \tilde{\psi} \rangle. \quad (1.35)$$

The momentum operator is here represented simply by the numerical vector $\mathbf{p}$ multiplying $\tilde{\psi}(\mathbf{p})$, and the operator $\mathbf{q}_k$ operating on a momentum-space wave function, is represented by the differential operator

$$\mathbf{q}_k \tilde{\psi}(\mathbf{p}) = i\hbar \nabla_{\mathbf{p}_k} \tilde{\psi}(\mathbf{p}),$$

¹⁴As an exercise, prove that $\tilde{\psi}^\dagger \equiv \tilde{\psi}^*$ is mapped into the product $\psi^\dagger \psi^*$ of the corresponding wave functions.

so that the expectation value of $\hat{q}$ is given by

$$\langle \hat{q} \rangle = \int d^3p \, \tilde{\psi}(\mathbf{p}) \hat{q} \psi(\mathbf{p}) \delta^3(\mathbf{p}_0 - \mathbf{p}).$$

The physical interpretation of the momentum-space wave function is analogous to that in configuration space: $|\tilde{\psi}(\mathbf{p})|^2 d^3p$ is the probability for the particle to have its momentum in the neighborhood d^3p of $\mathbf{p}$.

Again, these things are easily generalized to n particles. The Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ is the space of squareintegrable functions of the variables $\mathbf{p}_k$, $k = 1, \dots, n$, and the position of the k^{th} particle in its configuration space is represented by the differential operator $\hat{\mathbf{q}}_k = i\hbar \nabla_{\mathbf{p}_k}$. The physical interpretation of $\tilde{\psi}(\mathbf{p}_1, \dots, \mathbf{p}_n)$ is that, if a probability-density multiplies the probability that the momenta of the particles lie in the neighborhood $d^3p_1 \cdots d^3p_n$ of the point $\mathbf{p}_1, \dots, \mathbf{p}_n$ is $|\tilde{\psi}(\mathbf{p}_1, \dots, \mathbf{p}_n)|^2 d^3p_1 \cdots d^3p_n$.

There is, however, an important exception to the continuity of the spectrum of the momentum operator, if the particle is confined to a finite spatial region such as a box. Let us, for simplicity, take a one-dimensional situation and assume the “box” has length b . Such a case is handled most simply by repeating the “box” periodically, writing $(p + \hbar) = e^{2\pi i} p$, where p is a constant. As a result we obtain by (1.24)

$$\langle p|p + \hbar\rangle = e^{i\hbar} \langle p|p\rangle = \langle p|e^{-i\hbar/\lambda} p\rangle = e^{-i\hbar/\lambda} \langle p|p\rangle,$$

from which we may conclude that $\hbar p/\lambda = 2\pi n = \mu$; the spectrum of p must therefore consist of the points $p_n = \frac{\hbar}{\lambda} 2\pi n + \text{const.}$, $n = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots$. Thus confining the particle to a “box” has discretized the momentum spectrum. The same result, of course, holds in three dimensions if the coordinate axes are chosen along the sides of the box with orthogonal edges of lengths b_i , $i = 1, 2, 3$, the i^{th} component of the momentum $\mathbf{p}_i$ has the eigenvalues $p_{i,n_i} = \frac{\hbar}{\lambda_i} 2\pi n_i + \text{const.}$, $n_i = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots$. The integral in (1.25) then has to be replaced by a sum, quite analogous to the fact that, whereas Fourier integrals are used to analyze functions defined on an infinite region, the appropriate tool for functions on finite intervals is the Fourier series. (In that case, too, any extension of the series outside the interval of definition is necessarily periodic.)

1.4.3 The number representation

Just as (1.12) was the essential tool for determining the spectrum and representations of $\hat{q}$ and $\hat{p}$, so to get at the properties of the field operator $\hat{\Phi}$, we shall use the commutation relations

$$[\hat{\Phi}(x'), \hat{\Phi}^\dagger(x'')] = \delta^3(x' - x''), \quad [\hat{\Phi}(x'), \hat{\Phi}(x'')] = 0, \quad (1.26)$$

which will be justified, along with (1.12), in Chapter 7 in the context of dynamics. (We do not explicitly indicate the fact that the field operators generally depend on the time; they are all taken at the same time.)

First of all, it will facilitate the physical interpretation to perform a Fourier transformation,

$$\phi(x) = (2\pi)^{-3/2} \int d^3k e^{ikx} \tilde{\phi}(k), \quad (1.37)$$

so that

$$\tilde{\phi}(k) = (2\pi)^{-3/2} \int d^3x e^{-ikx} \phi(x), \quad (1.38)$$

which casts the commutation relations into

$$[\tilde{\phi}(k), \tilde{\phi}^\dagger(k')] = \delta^3(k - k'), \quad [\tilde{\phi}(k), \tilde{\phi}(k')] = 0. \quad (1.39)$$

It will also be helpful for the moment to confine the system to a large box, thereby replacing the Fourier integral by a Fourier series, so that $\tilde{\phi}(k)$ is replaced by $\tilde{\phi}_k$ and (1.39) takes the form

$$[\tilde{\phi}_k, \tilde{\phi}_k^\dagger] = \delta_{k,0}, \quad [\tilde{\phi}_k, \tilde{\phi}_k] = 0. \quad (1.40)$$

Now consider the Hamiltonian operator

$$H_1 \equiv \tilde{\phi}_k^\dagger \tilde{\phi}_k, \quad (1.41)$$

which, according to (1.40), satisfies the commutation relations

$$[H_1, \tilde{\phi}_k] = -\tilde{\phi}_k, \quad [H_1, \tilde{\phi}_k^\dagger] = \tilde{\phi}_k^\dagger, \quad (1.42)$$

and let $|n_k\rangle$ be an eigenvector of H_1 with the eigenvalue n_k . It follows from (1.42) that

$$H_1 \tilde{\phi}_k |n_k\rangle = (\tilde{\phi}_k^\dagger \tilde{\phi}_k - \tilde{\phi}_k) |n_k\rangle = (n_k - 1) \tilde{\phi}_k |n_k\rangle,$$

which implies that $\tilde{\phi}_k |n_k\rangle$ is an eigenvector of H_1 with the eigenvalue $n_k - 1$. Therefore, whenever n_k is an eigenvalue of H_1 , then so is $n_k - 1$, except when $\tilde{\phi}_k |n_k\rangle = 0$. But the spectrum of the operator H_1 is non-negative, because for all $\Phi \in \Omega$, $\langle \Phi, H_1 \Phi \rangle = \langle \Phi, \tilde{\phi}_k^\dagger \tilde{\phi}_k \Phi \rangle = \langle \tilde{\phi}_k \Phi, \tilde{\phi}_k \Phi \rangle \geq 0$, except when $\tilde{\phi}_k \Phi = 0$, in which case $H_1 \Phi = 0$. Consequently, the downward sequence, in integral steps, of eigenvalues of H_1 must terminate before it becomes negative, and that can happen only when $\tilde{\phi}_k \Phi = 0$, which also means that $H_1 \Phi = 0$. We therefore conclude that the eigenvalues of H_1 must be the non-negative integers $0, 1, \dots$. Similarly we find from (1.42) that

$$H_1 \tilde{\phi}_k^\dagger |n_k\rangle = (\tilde{\phi}_k^\dagger H_1 + \tilde{\phi}_k^\dagger) |n_k\rangle = (n_k + 1) \tilde{\phi}_k^\dagger |n_k\rangle.$$

This sequence can terminate at the upper end only at some value of n_k for which $\tilde{\phi}_k^\dagger |n_k\rangle = 0$, which would imply that $0 = \langle n_k | \tilde{\phi}_k \tilde{\phi}_k^\dagger |n_k \rangle = \langle n_k | H_1 + 1 |n_k \rangle = (n_k + 1) \langle n_k | n_k \rangle$, and therefore $|n_k\rangle = 0$. It follows that the sequence

cannot terminate and the signed sum of $\mathbf{N}_i$ are all the non-negative integers.

As for the normalizations, if $|n_1\rangle$ and $|n_1 + 1\rangle$ are normalized, then $c(n_1 + 1) = \hat{B}_1^\dagger |n_1\rangle$, and hence $|c|^2 = \langle n_1 | \hat{B}_1 \hat{B}_1^\dagger | n_1 \rangle = \langle n_1 | \mathbf{N}_1 + \mathbf{1} | n_1 \rangle = n_1 + 1$, hence we may choose $c = \sqrt{n_1 + 1}$, so that

$$\hat{B}_1^\dagger |n_1\rangle = \sqrt{n_1 + 1} |n_1 + 1\rangle. \quad (1.43)$$

We then have $|1_2\rangle = \hat{B}_1^\dagger |0_1\rangle |0_2\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \hat{B}_1^\dagger |0_1\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (\hat{B}_1^\dagger)^2 |0\rangle$, $|2_2\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \hat{B}_1^\dagger |1_2\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \hat{B}_1^\dagger \hat{B}_1^\dagger |0\rangle$, and

$$|n_2\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{n_2!}} (\hat{B}_1^\dagger)^{n_2} |0\rangle, \quad (1.44)$$

where $|0\rangle$ is determined by

$$\hat{B}_i |0\rangle = 0 \quad (1.45)$$

for all i , and we assume $|0\rangle$ to be normalized. We will tentatively interpret this result (subject to later verification that this makes sense as far as the energy is concerned) by saying that $|n_1\rangle$ is the state that has n quanta of wave vectors $\hat{k}_1$ (which, as we shall see in Chapter 2, means they have momenta $\hbar \hat{k}_1$) and no others. The state $|0\rangle$ is the vacuum state; it has no particles. Since all the $\mathbf{N}_i$ commute with one another,¹¹

$$[\mathbf{N}_i, \mathbf{N}_j] = 0, \quad (1.46)$$

there is a complete set of common eigenfunctions.

A general one-particle state is now given by $\Phi_1 = |1\rangle_1 = \sum_i a_i \hat{B}_i^\dagger |0\rangle$, so that the probability of finding the particle to have momentum $\hbar \hat{k}_1$ is, by (1.43) and (1.45),

$$|\langle 1_1 | \sum_i a_i \hat{B}_i^\dagger | 0 \rangle|^2 = |\langle 0 | \sum_i a_i \hat{B}_i \hat{B}_i^\dagger | 0 \rangle|^2 = |a_i|^2.$$

If we abandon the Fourier series, going back to physical space, the general one-particle state is given by

$$\Phi_1 = |1\rangle_1 = \int d^3r \, f(\mathbf{r}) \hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\mathbf{r}) |0\rangle, \quad (1.47)$$

and the probability of finding the quantum in the region d^3q in its configuration space is correspondingly given by $|f(q)|^2 d^3q$. By (1.38), the inner product with another one-particle state $\Phi_1 = \int d^3q \, g(q) \hat{\Psi}^\dagger(q) |0\rangle$, is given by

$$\langle \Phi_1, \Phi_1 \rangle = \int d^3q \, d^3q' \, f^*(q') f(q) \langle 0 | \hat{\Psi}(q') \hat{\Psi}^\dagger(q) | 0 \rangle = \int d^3q \, f^*(q) f(q).$$

¹¹ Prove this as an exercise.

Hence we may conclude that the function $\psi(\mathbf{q})$ is nothing but the configuration-space wave function of the one-particle state $\Phi_1 = |\downarrow_1\rangle$, and we have

$$|\Phi_1\rangle = \hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\mathbf{q})|0\rangle, \quad (1.45)$$

as well as

$$\langle\Phi_1| = \langle 0|\hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{q}) = \langle 0|\hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\mathbf{q})^\dagger. \quad (1.46)$$

For a two-particle state the configuration-space function is obtained in the same manner,

$$\langle\Phi_2|\Phi_2\rangle = \langle 0|\hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\mathbf{q}_1)\hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\mathbf{q}_2)|0\rangle. \quad (1.47)$$

Notice that it follows from (1.46) that the right-hand side of this equation is symmetric under an exchange of $\mathbf{q}_1$ and $\mathbf{q}_2$, and so must therefore be the left-hand side. In fact, the variables $\mathbf{q}_1$ and $\mathbf{q}_2$ do not refer to the coordinates of two different particles at all; they refer, instead, to the two locations in configuration space that are occupied by quanta. (This is why the number representation is also referred to as the occupation-number representation.) Thus the number representation, obtained from the field, automatically has built into it one of the basic differences between classical and quantum particles, namely their indistinguishability, which has profound consequences for their statistics: instead of being subject to Maxwell-Boltzmann statistics, they obey those of Bose and Einstein (see Chapter 5). You should notice that whereas the field operator $\hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{r})$ lives on physical space—it denotes a condition of space—at the point of converting its action on the vacuum state, as in (1.45), to a wave function, the argument of the field operator changes to denoting a point in configuration space occupied by a particle; that is why the variables in (1.46) were changed from $\mathbf{r}$ to $\mathbf{q}$.

There is, however, an alternative to the commutation relation (1.36) for the field, and that is

$$\{\hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{r}), \hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\mathbf{r}')\} = \delta(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'), \quad \{\hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{r}), \hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{r}')\} = 0, \quad (1.48)$$

where $\{\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B}\} \equiv \mathbf{AB} + \mathbf{BA}$ is the anti-commutator, or for the Fourier-transformed operators in the discrete form,

$$\{\hat{b}_\alpha, \hat{b}_\beta^\dagger\} = \delta_{\alpha\beta}, \quad \{\hat{b}_\alpha, \hat{b}_\beta\} = 0, \quad (1.49)$$

the second equation of which implies that $\hat{b}_\alpha^2 = 0$. Again defining $\hat{N}_\alpha = \hat{b}_\alpha^\dagger\hat{b}_\alpha$, we now obtain $\hat{N}_\alpha\hat{b}_\alpha = 0$, $\hat{b}_\alpha\hat{N}_\alpha = \hat{b}_\alpha$, and $\hat{N}_\alpha^2 = \hat{N}_\alpha$. The last equation implies that $\hat{N}_\alpha$ has only two eigenvalues, 0 and 1 (because the eigenvalues have to obey the same equation, $\alpha_i^2 = \alpha_i$), while we get, from the first $\hat{b}_\alpha|\downarrow\rangle = 0$ and from the Hermitian adjoint of the last, $\hat{b}_\alpha\hat{b}_\alpha^\dagger|\downarrow\rangle = \hat{b}_\alpha^\dagger|\downarrow\rangle$, which implies that $\hat{b}_\alpha^\dagger|\downarrow\rangle = c|\uparrow_\alpha\rangle$. Assuming both $|\downarrow\rangle$ and $|\uparrow_\alpha\rangle$ to be normalized, we find furthermore that $\langle\alpha|\uparrow\rangle = \langle\alpha|\hat{b}_\alpha^\dagger\hat{b}_\alpha|\downarrow\rangle = \langle\alpha|\downarrow\rangle = 1$. So the two normalized eigenstates of $\hat{N}_\alpha$ are defined by

$$|\downarrow_\alpha\rangle = 0, \quad |\uparrow_\alpha\rangle = \hat{b}_\alpha^\dagger|\downarrow\rangle, \quad (1.50)$$

while $\hat{N}_i^2|1_i\rangle = 0$. Again, all the number operators commute, i.e., (1.40) holds, and there is a complete set of common eigenstates.

Returning to space coordinates, we may proceed as before to define one-particle configuration wave functions by

$$\psi(\underline{r}) = \langle \hat{r} \rangle = \langle 0 | \hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\underline{r}) | 1 \rangle \quad (1.44)$$

and two-particle wave functions by

$$\psi(\underline{r}_1, \underline{r}_2) = \langle 0 | \hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\underline{r}_1) \hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\underline{r}_2) | 2 \rangle. \quad (1.45)$$

Now, however, this wave function is anti-symmetric in its two arguments rather than symmetric; furthermore, because $\psi(\underline{r}_1, \underline{r}_1) = 0$, the two particles satisfy the exclusion principle. In the aggregate, they therefore obey Fermi-Dirac rather than Bose-Einstein statistics. We shall return to a more detailed discussion of multiparticle systems and their properties in Chapter 8.

What have we learned from the introduction of the number representation? Whereas earlier we had started by assuming the existence of point particles and described systems by means of the positions and momenta of these particles as dynamical variables, the new point of departure was the quantum field. The operator properties of this field then generated quanta or particles on its own, and the description of physical systems ended up exactly as before. It may therefore be deemed a matter of choice whether to regard the particles as the fundamental entities, or the field, or both, as was the classical approach. The quantum field description, however, automatically produces particles with quantum properties such as indistinguishability and the two alternatives of symmetric and anti-symmetric wave functions, properties that would otherwise have to be artificially introduced into the formalism as separate postulates. The field should therefore be considered the more fundamental starting point for the quantum description of nature, with particles arising as a result of the commutation rules. Indeed the entire notion of the existence of visible objects called particles is a consequence of the properties of the quantum field.

1.5 Transformation Theory

Suppose that we have a representation $\{a_n = \langle A_n \rangle, n = 1, 2, \dots\}$ of a given vector $|\rangle$ on an orthonormal basis $\{|A_n\rangle$, i.e., $|\rangle = \sum_n a_n |A_n\rangle$, so that all states of a system are represented in terms of their probability amplitudes for finding the results A_n upon measurement of the dynamical variable A . In order to understand the system, we have to be able to relate this given representation to others, based on measurements of other variables B . For instance, B may be the same physical parameter as A ,

but expressed with respect to another coordinate frame, or, to allow us to describe the dynamics of the system, it may be the same variable A at a later time, or else it may be quite unrelated to A .

To represent $|\psi\rangle$ in another basis of orthonormal vectors $\{|B_n\rangle$, i.e., to use the probability amplitudes for the measurement outcomes of another variable B rather than A , takes a unitary transformation, which we find by expanding each new basis vector on the old basis

$$|B_n\rangle = \sum_m \langle A_m | B_n \rangle U_{nm}^{(AB)}, \quad (1.55)$$

where

$$U_{nm}^{(AB)} \equiv \langle A_m | B_n \rangle. \quad (1.56)$$

That this transformation is unitary is easily checked by using (1.55):

$$(U^{(AB)} U^{(AB)})_{mn} = \sum_k \langle A_m | B_n \rangle \langle B_k | A_m \rangle = \langle A_m | A_m \rangle = \delta_{mn}$$

and similarly for the matrix $U^{(AB)} U^{(AB)\dagger}$.

Another way of looking at this basis transformation (see also Appendix E) is to regard $U^{(AB)}$ as the operator that maps every basis vector of the first basis into its counterpart in the second,

$$U^{(AB)} |A_n\rangle \equiv |B_n\rangle. \quad (1.57)$$

As (1.57) shows, the operator so defined has $U_{nm}^{(AB)}$ as its matrix elements in the basis $\{|A_n\rangle\}$:

$$U_{nm}^{(AB)} = \langle A_m | U^{(AB)} | A_n \rangle.$$

The same transformation then allows us to express the matrix $X_{mn}^{(AB)}$ representing the operator $\hat{X}$ on the second basis in terms of its representation $X_{mn}^{(AC)}$ on the first. With $X_{mn}^{(AB)} = \langle B_n | \hat{X} | B_m \rangle$, inserting (1.56) yields

$$X_{mn}^{(AB)} = \sum_k U_{km}^{(AB)} X_{kl}^{(AC)} U_{ln}^{(AC)} = \sum_l U_{lm}^{(AB)} U_{ln}^{(AC)} X_{kl}^{(AC)}. \quad (1.58)$$

Since $U^{(AB)\dagger} = U^{(AB)-1} = U^{(BA)}$, this can also be written in the form

$$X_{mn}^{(AB)} = \sum_l U_{lm}^{(BA)} X_{kl}^{(AC)} U_{ln}^{(AC)}. \quad (1.59)$$

Alternatively, this transformation may be viewed as using (1.57) and writing

$$X_{mn}^{(AB)} = \langle A_m | U^{(AB)\dagger} \hat{X} U^{(AB)} | A_n \rangle, \quad (1.60)$$

¹⁰Remember that in order for an operator $\hat{O}$ to be unitary it is necessary and sufficient that both $\hat{O}^\dagger \hat{O} = \hat{O} \hat{O}^\dagger = \hat{I}$ and $\hat{O}^\dagger \hat{O} = \hat{I}$. Similarly for an infinite-dimensional matrix.

which means that $X_{ab}^{(U)}$ is the matrix, on the old basis, of the unitarily transformed operator $U^{(U)\dagger} \mathbf{X} U^{(U)}$. Such transformations are called *unitary*, and we shall return to them later. If the new basis is an orthonormal set of eigenfunctions of $\mathbf{X}$, $\{|X_n\rangle = |X_n\rangle\}$, then the eigenvectors of the transformed operator $U^{(U)} \mathbf{X} U^{(U)\dagger}$, which has the same eigenvalues as $\mathbf{X}$, are $\{|X_n\rangle = U^{(U)} |X_n\rangle\}$, and the transformed operator is diagonal on the old basis.

These transformations work analogously for continuous spectra of Hermitian operators and their quasi-eigenfunctions satisfying (R.23) and (R.24). Supposing that another set satisfies

$$U(B') = U(B - B'), \quad \text{and} \quad \int dB |B\rangle \langle B| = 1, \quad (1.62)$$

we define an integral kernel¹⁷ or transformation function $U^{(U)}(A, B) \equiv \langle A|U|B\rangle$, so that

$$|B\rangle = \int dA |A\rangle U^{(U)\dagger}(A, B). \quad (1.63)$$

Again, this kernel is unitary in the sense that

$$\begin{aligned} \int dB U^{(U)\dagger}(A, B) U^{(U)}(B', B) &= \delta(A - B'), \\ \int dA U^{(U)}(A, B) U^{(U)\dagger}(A, B') &= \delta(B - B'), \end{aligned}$$

and it also serves to transform the integral kernel of an operator $\mathbf{X}$, given in the A -representation, into the corresponding integral operator in the B -representation:

$$\begin{aligned} X^{(U)}(B, B') &= \langle B|\mathbf{X}|B'\rangle = \int dA dA' U^{(U)\dagger}(A, B) \langle A|\mathbf{X}|A'\rangle U^{(U)}(A', B') \\ &= \int dA dA' U^{(U)\dagger}(A, B) X^{(X)}(A, A') U^{(U)}(A', B'). \end{aligned} \quad (1.64)$$

Suppose now that we are given a Hermitian operator $\mathbf{H}$ and its representation on a basis $\{|A_n\rangle\}$, namely $H_{ab}^{(A)} = \langle A_a|\mathbf{H}|A_b\rangle$. On the basis of its own orthonormal eigenfunctions, the matrix representing $\mathbf{H}$ is diagonal $\langle A_a|\mathbf{H}|A_b\rangle = E_a \delta_{ab}$. Therefore, the unitary transformation that takes us from the A -representation to the B -representation diagonalizes the Hermitian matrix $H_{ab}^{(A)}$:

$$\sum_{a'} U^{(U)\dagger}(b, a') H_{a'a}^{(A)} U^{(U)}(a', c) = H_{bc}^{(B)} = E_b \delta_{bc}. \quad (1.65)$$

¹⁷ Strictly speaking, it is not an integral kernel in the mathematical sense; it really has a component that is a Dirac delta function (in other words, it is a distribution).

Thus, for a Hermitian operator given as a matrix in some representation, the problem of finding its eigenvalues and eigenvectors is equivalent to finding the unitary transformation that diagonalizes the matrix, as we already noted earlier.

In view of the formal similarity of the equations of these transformations, independently of whether the matrix elements are between vectors or quasi-vectors, it is most convenient always to write the transformation functions in the form $\langle A|B\rangle$, irrespective of whether the values of A or B run over discrete or continuous sets. The summations and/or integrations will then be indicated by Σ with a subscript.

Finally, note the composition law obeyed by the transformation functions. If we perform a transformation from one basis (or continuous quasi-basis) to a second, followed by a transformation to a third, the total transformation is the product, in a matrix sense, of the two, as in

$$\int_A \langle B|C\rangle \langle A|B\rangle = \langle B|C\rangle, \quad (1.66)$$

which follows from (B.23) in the Appendix.

Let us take a specific case and construct the transformation function that leads from the configuration representation to the momentum representation of a one-particle system, that is, the function $\langle p|q\rangle$. In that case we have

$$\langle p|H|q\rangle = (1/2\pi)^{1/2} \langle p|q\rangle = p^2 \langle p|q\rangle.$$

This differential equation for $\langle p|q\rangle$ is easily solved, with the result

$$\langle p|q\rangle = (2\pi h)^{-1/2} e^{-i p q / h}, \quad (1.67)$$

the constant $(2\pi h)^{-1/2}$ being chosen to make the transformation unitary, so that both quasi-bases are denormalized. Consequently, we have

$$|q\rangle = (2\pi h)^{-1/2} \int d^3p e^{-i p q / h} |p\rangle, \quad |p\rangle = (2\pi h)^{-1/2} \int d^3q e^{i p q / h} |q\rangle, \quad (1.68)$$

which shows that the momentum-space wave function and the configuration-space wave function are simply one another's Fourier transforms:

$$\tilde{\psi}(p) = \langle p|\psi\rangle = (2\pi h)^{-1/2} \int d^3q e^{-i p q / h} \psi(q) = (2\pi h)^{-1/2} \int d^3q e^{-i p q / h} \psi(q), \quad (1.69)$$

$$\psi(q) = \langle q|\psi\rangle = (2\pi h)^{-1/2} \int d^3p e^{i p q / h} \tilde{\psi}(p) = (2\pi h)^{-1/2} \int d^3p e^{i p q / h} \tilde{\psi}(p). \quad (1.70)$$

The configuration representations of the quasi-eigenfunctions of the momentum are nothing but the transformation functions $\langle q|p\rangle$, which are the complex conjugates of (1.67):

$$\langle q|p\rangle = \langle p|q\rangle^* = (2\pi h)^{-1/2} e^{i p q / h}, \quad (1.71)$$

and these are appropriately δ -normalized. Since these wave functions are not square integrable and thus not in the Hilbert space L^2 , they do not represent states of a particle in the ordinary sense. The fact that their norms are infinite might be interpreted as an indication that they may be regarded as representing a collection of infinitely many particles infinitely long and wide focused particles with the momentum p , which is consistent with the fact that (1.71) implies a uniform current density, as defined by (1.31), of $p^2/(4\pi\hbar^2)$.

For particles confined to a line, a one-dimensional space, these equations become

$$\tilde{\psi}(p) = \langle p | = (2\pi\hbar)^{-1/2} \int dx e^{-ipx/\hbar} \psi(x) = (2\pi\hbar)^{-1/2} \int dx e^{-ipx/\hbar} \psi(x), \quad (1.72)$$

$$\psi(x) = |x\rangle = (2\pi\hbar)^{-1/2} \int dp e^{ipx/\hbar} \tilde{\psi}(p) = (2\pi\hbar)^{-1/2} \int dp e^{ipx/\hbar} \tilde{\psi}(p), \quad (1.73)$$

and

$$\psi_p(x) = \langle p | x \rangle = (2\pi\hbar)^{-1/2} e^{ipx/\hbar}. \quad (1.74)$$

Analogous relations hold for n -particle systems:

$$\langle p_1, \dots, p_n | = (2\pi\hbar)^{-n/2} \int d^3r_1 \dots d^3r_n e^{-i \sum_{j=1}^n p_j r_j / \hbar} \psi(r_1, \dots, r_n),$$

$$\psi(r_1, \dots, r_n) = (2\pi\hbar)^{-n/2} \int d^3p_1 \dots d^3p_n e^{i \sum_{j=1}^n p_j r_j / \hbar} \langle p_1, \dots, p_n |.$$

1.6 Problems and Exercises

1. Show how (1.14) implies that ρ_n are the eigenvalues of the density operator.
2. Calculate the Fourier transform of the function $e^{-a|x|} \cos(kx)$, where $a > 0$, and of the function $\frac{1}{x^2+x}$.
3. Calculate the three-dimensional Fourier transform of the function $e^{-a|x|} \cos(kx)$, where $a > 0$.
4. A 5-ounce rifle bullet takes 0.3 sec. to reach its target. Regarding the bullet as a mass point, and neglecting effects of air resistance and earth motion, find the order of magnitude of the minimal spread of successive shots at the target under optimal conditions of aiming and firing.
5. Suppose you try to balance an ice pick on its point, setting it up under optimal conditions. What is the longest time T you can expect it to stand more or less straight? If, performing this experiment, you manage to keep the pick standing for a longer time than T , have you thereby disproved quantum mechanics?
6. Consider a one-dimensional system near stable equilibrium. If you try to set it up at rest in its equilibrium position, what is its minimum energy on account of Heisenberg's uncertainty principle?
7. A wheel on a frictionless axle is made to rotate freely with a given angular momentum. We wish to predict the angular position of a mark on the wheel after a time t . If the wheel is set in motion under experimentally optimal conditions, how long does it take until the position of the mark is entirely uncertain?
8. Two independent physical systems can each exist in three eigenstates of the operator G_i , Φ_i , $i = 1, 2, 3$ with the eigenvalues G_i , i.e., $G_i\Phi_i = G_i\Phi_i$. They are combined into a total system S whose state is

$$\Psi = \frac{1}{3}\Phi_1^{(1)} \otimes \Phi_1^{(2)} + \frac{1}{3}\Phi_2^{(1)} \otimes \Phi_1^{(2)} + \frac{1}{3}\Phi_3^{(1)} \otimes \Phi_2^{(2)}.$$

Calculate the probability that a measurement on system a that ignores system b will yield the result G_a . Exhibit the density matrices for system a alone and for system b alone.

2.1 Time Dependence and Commutation Rules

Now that we have at our disposal the basic tools for the quantum representation of physical systems, we have to turn to the description of their development in the course of time, that is, their dynamics.¹ The basic idea is to adopt, for the given system, a complete set of commuting observables, which will be assumed schematically to be a single Hermitian operator $\mathbf{X}$, and let this operator change in the course of time so as to describe the development of the system. We will assume the function $\mathbf{X}(t)$ to be such that the possible outcomes of experiments do not depend on t , which implies that the spectrum of $\mathbf{X}(t)$ is time-independent. This does not mean, of course, that the actual results of measuring the observable $\mathbf{X}$ corresponding to $\mathbf{X}$ on a given system do not change in the course of time; it is precisely this change that we want to determine. In this way of looking at the quantum dynamics, called the **Heisenberg picture**, all the time dependence is carried by the dynamical variables, and the vector representing the state of a developing system remains unaltered. However, if we fix our attention on a given **quasi-eigenstate** of the operator $\mathbf{X}(t)$ with a specific **quasi-eigenvalue** X , that quasi-eigenstate will depend on t because $\mathbf{X}$ does.

So let $|X, t\rangle$ be a quasi-eigenstate of $\mathbf{X}(t)$ with the quasi-eigenvalue X . These quasi-eigenstates form a quasi-basis in $\mathcal{H}$, and we focus on the time-

¹For a different approach, known as **path integrals**, to generating the quantum-mechanical equations of motion, see [Feynman].

formation function $\langle X_2, t_2 | X_1, t_1 \rangle$, where X_1 and X_2 are *quasi*-eigenstates of the operators $X_2(t_1)$ and $X_2(t_2)$ the latter may have developed from $X_1(t_1)$ in the course of time, but not necessarily according to the physically correct equations of motion. We are looking for a principle that allows us to determine what the correct equations are. An essential tool for this search we will subject the development of the system from the time t_1 to the time t_2 , as well as possibly the endpoint variables, such as t_1 , t_2 , $X_1(t_1)$, and $X_2(t_2)$, to infinitesimal variations. The corresponding change of the transformation function can then be used to define an infinitesimal operator δW_{12} with the dimension of an action so that

$$\delta \langle X_2, t_2 | X_1, t_1 \rangle \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \frac{i}{\hbar} \langle X_2, t_2 | \delta W_{12} | X_1, t_1 \rangle.$$

The composition law (1.63)

$$\langle B | \rangle = \int_{X_0} \langle B | X_1, t_1 \rangle \langle X_1, t_1 | \rangle,$$

which holds for any arbitrary intervening time t_1 and where we have written for simplicity $|X_1, t_1\rangle \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} |1\rangle$, etc., therefore leads to

$$\begin{aligned} \delta \langle B | \rangle &= \int_{X_0} [\delta \langle B | \langle B | \rangle + \langle B | \delta \langle B | \rangle] \\ &= \frac{i}{\hbar} \int_{X_1} [\langle B | \delta W_{12} | \rangle \langle B | \rangle + \langle B | \rangle \langle B | \delta W_{12} | \rangle] \\ &= \frac{i}{\hbar} [\langle B | \delta W_{12} | \rangle + \langle B | \delta W_{12} | \rangle] = \frac{i}{\hbar} \langle B | \delta W_{12} + \delta W_{12} | \rangle, \end{aligned}$$

from which we conclude that

$$\delta W_{12} = \delta W_{12} + \delta W_{12}.$$

It follows that $\delta W_{12} = -\delta W_{12}$, since $\delta W_{12} = 0$. Furthermore, since $\langle B | \rangle = \langle B | \rangle^*$, we have $\delta \langle B | \rangle = \frac{i}{\hbar} \langle B | \delta W_{12} | \rangle = \delta \langle B | \rangle^* = -\frac{i}{\hbar} \langle B | \delta W_{12} | \rangle^* = -\frac{i}{\hbar} \langle B | \delta W_{12}^\dagger | \rangle = \frac{i}{\hbar} \langle B | \delta W_{12}^\dagger | \rangle$, which implies that

$$\delta W_{12} = \delta W_{12}^\dagger.$$

2.1.1 The principle of stationary action

We now make the crucial assumption that if $X_2(t_1)$ turned into $X_1(t_2)$ according to some given time-development and δW is an infinitesimal variation in the neighborhood of a “trajectory” compatible with the correct equations of motion and commutation relations, then δW is the first variation of an operator W that satisfies the corresponding relations

$$W_{12}^\dagger = W_{12}, \quad W_{12} = W_{12} + W_{12}.$$

Cutting the interval from t_1 to t_2 into n subintervals then leads to $M_{21} = \prod_{i=1}^n M_{i+1-i}$ and in the limit as $n \rightarrow \infty$, to

$$W_{21} = \int_{t_1}^{t_2} dt L(t), \quad (2.1)$$

for some $L(t)$, which is called the Lagrangian operator. In order for W , the action integral, to be Hermitian, L has to be Hermitian too.

Suppose, then, that the system is described by a number of independent dynamical variables which we schematically call q_i . (These may be the coordinates of point particles, but they need not be.) For the quantum description there are Hermitian operators on $\mathcal{H}$, and we assume that the Lagrangian is a function only of these q_i and their first time derivatives, so that $L(t) = L(q_1, \dots, q_n, \dots, \dot{q}_1, \dots, \dot{q}_n, \dots)$, implying that the time-dependence of L comes entirely from the fact that the q_i and $\dot{q}_i$ depend on the time. All of this is quite analogous to the usual mechanics in classical mechanics. Here, however, we have to worry about the order of the q_i and $\dot{q}_i$, which cannot be assumed to commute. Terms in the Lagrangian that have both q_i and $\dot{q}_i$ as factors, always assumed to be polynomials, will have to be symmetrically arranged in all possible orders, as a result of which L is Hermitian. For example, a term $q^2 \dot{q}$ in a polynomial will have to appear as $\frac{1}{2}(q\dot{q} + \dot{q}q + q^2\dot{q})$, similarly for $\dot{q}$ and $\ddot{q}$, etc.

The kinds of changes in the basis or quasi-basis vectors $|X\rangle$ we are concerned with are always such as to preserve their orthonormal character, which means that the new are connected to the old by a canonical transformation: the new set is $|X\rangle_{\text{new}} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} U|X\rangle_{\text{old}}$. Such an infinitesimal unitary transformation is necessarily of the form¹ $U = \mathbb{1} + \frac{i}{\hbar}F$, so that for small changes $\delta|X\rangle \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} |X\rangle_{\text{new}} - |X\rangle_{\text{old}} = \frac{i}{\hbar}F|X\rangle$, where the "small operator" F is Hermitian and the factor of $1/\hbar$, which gives F the dimension of an action, is inserted as a matter of convenience. The new operator $\mathbf{X}_{\text{new}}$ that has $|X\rangle_{\text{new}}$ as its eigenstates or quasi-eigenstates is then given by $\mathbf{X}_{\text{new}} = U\mathbf{X}_{\text{old}}U^\dagger$, which for infinitesimal changes means that

$$i\hbar \frac{d}{dt} \mathbf{X}_{\text{new}} = \mathbf{X}_{\text{old}} + \frac{i}{\hbar}[F, \mathbf{X}]. \quad (2.2)$$

You should keep in mind that this change δ in the operator $\mathbf{X}$ is of a very specific kind: the changed operator $\mathbf{X}_{\text{new}}$ is such that $|X\rangle_{\text{new}} = (\mathbb{1} + \frac{i}{\hbar}F)|X\rangle_{\text{old}}$ is an eigenstate or quasideigenstate of $\mathbf{X}_{\text{new}}$ with the same eigenvalue X as that of $|X\rangle_{\text{old}}$, with $\mathbf{X}_{\text{old}}|X\rangle_{\text{old}} = X|X\rangle_{\text{old}}$. The operator F is called the generator of the unitary transformation.

¹Wigner

Now any small change in $\langle \mathcal{H} \rangle$ must be due to small changes in the vectors $|1\rangle$ and $|2\rangle$. Hence we must have

$$\delta\langle \mathcal{H} \rangle = \frac{i}{\hbar} \langle \mathcal{H} \rangle (\mathbf{P}_1 - \mathbf{P}_2) = \frac{i}{\hbar} \langle \mathcal{H} \rangle \delta W_{21}(t),$$

and therefore, since the choice of $\mathbf{K}_1$ and $\mathbf{K}_2$ is arbitrary,

$$\delta W_{21} = \mathbf{P}_1 - \mathbf{P}_2, \quad (2.5)$$

which is the operator principle of stationary action,¹ the quantum generalization of Hamilton's principle. It says that in a neighborhood of any physically allowed time development, i.e., one that follows the correct equations of motion, the first variation of the action integral (2.4) depends only on changes at the initial and final times; it does not depend on variations in the intervening history. If the "end points" are kept fixed, the first variation of the action integral vanishes, δW is stationary. Just as in classical mechanics, this principle will generate the equations of motion that determine the "physically allowed time development" from a given Lagrangian.

2.1.2 The Lagrangian equations of motion

Let us then use (2.1) and the principle (2.2) to generate the equations of motion; we have

$$\delta W_{21} = i \int_{t_1}^{t_2} dt L = \int_{t_1}^{t_2} dt [L_2] \delta t_2 - i [L_1] \delta t_1, \quad (2.6)$$

where δt is a variation at fixed time. On the assumption that L depends only on the q 's and the $\dot{q}$'s (which, at this point, are all regarded as independent variables), this variation is given by

$$\delta L = \sum_i \left(\frac{\partial L}{\partial q_i} \delta q_i + \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}_i} \delta \dot{q}_i \right).$$

We have to be careful with the order in which the operators appear in this expression: the variations must always appear in the same position as the varied quantities, and they must be symmetrized. This is what the double brackets are meant to indicate. (For example, $\delta q \dot{q}^2 = \delta q \dot{q}^2 + \frac{1}{2} \delta \dot{q}_i \dot{q}_i + \frac{1}{2} \dot{q}_i \delta \dot{q}_i$.) Furthermore, in order for the varied $\dot{q}_i$ near the physically correct "trajectory" to be the velocity corresponding to the varied q_i , the first variation $\delta \dot{q}_i$ must be equal to $\frac{d}{dt} \delta q_i$. We therefore have

$$\delta L = \frac{d}{dt} \sum_i \left(\frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}_i} \delta q_i \right) + \sum_i \left[\frac{\partial L}{\partial q_i} - \frac{d}{dt} \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}_i} \right] \delta q_i.$$

¹This method of generating it is due to Julian Schwinger.

and consequently

$$\begin{aligned} \delta W_{11} = & \left[\sum_i \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial \dot{q}_i} \delta q_i \right) + L(t) \delta t \right]_{t_1}^{t_2} \\ & + \sum_i \int_{t_1}^{t_2} dt \left[\frac{\partial}{\partial \dot{q}_i} - \frac{d}{dt} \frac{\partial}{\partial q_i} \right] \delta q_i \dot{q}_i - F_1 - F_2 \end{aligned} \quad (2.2)$$

according to (2.8). The integral here depends on the history of the system and must therefore vanish in a neighborhood of physically allowed motions for arbitrary functions $\delta q_i(t)$, restricted only by their commutation relations. If we assume that the $\delta q_i(t)$ all commute with the operators in L , it follows that the bracket in the integral of (2.2) must vanish:

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \dot{q}_i} - \frac{d}{dt} \frac{\partial}{\partial q_i}, \quad i = 1, 2, \dots, n. \quad (2.3)$$

These are the Euler-Lagrange equations resulting from the principle of stationary action, the Lagrangian equations of motion, just as in classical mechanics.

2.1.1 The canonical commutation relations

For actual physical systems, i.e., those satisfying the equations of motion (2.3), for which, therefore, the last term in (2.2) vanishes, we can conclude that

$$F = - \sum_i \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}_i} \delta q_i - L(t) \delta t = - \sum_i p_i \delta q_i - L(t) \delta t, \quad (2.4)$$

where the canonical momenta have been defined by

$$p_i \equiv \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}_i}, \quad i = 1, 2, \dots, \quad (2.5)$$

and these equations have to be solved for the $\dot{q}_i$, thus expressing them in terms of the q_i and the p_i . Henceforth, the p_i and the q_i are to be treated as independent variables. This is what in classical mechanics is called a Legendre transformation; it is designed to lead to the Hamiltonian equations of motion, which are first-order differential equations in the time, whereas the Lagrangian equations are generally of second order.

We begin by keeping the time fixed, setting $\delta t = 0$, so that

$$F = - \sum_i p_i \delta q_i, \quad (2.6)$$

and we take δq_i to be q_j , so that (2.6) and (2.5) say that

$$p_j = \frac{\partial}{\partial q_i} \left(p_i \sum_j p_i q_j \right)$$

Whatever the precise relation between δq_k and δq_1 is going to turn out to be, since the different degrees of freedom are meant to be independent of one another, we may conclude from this that for $k \neq 1$, $[q_1, p_k] = 0$, and we are left with $\delta q_1 = \frac{1}{2}[q_1, p_1]\delta q_1$. (Remember we had assumed that the δq_k commute with all the operators in $\mathcal{L}$.) Now it is an easy matter of calculation⁸ to find that up to linear terms in the variations,

$$\langle q_1 - \delta q_1 | \Omega = \frac{1}{2}(\delta q_1 \delta q_1) \langle q_1 \rangle = \langle q_1 - \delta q_1 - \delta q_1 | \Omega = \frac{1}{2}(\delta q_1 \delta q_1) \langle q_1 \rangle, \quad (2.10)$$

which implies that in order for $|q_1\rangle_{\text{new}} = (1 - \frac{1}{2}\delta q_1 \delta q_1) |q_1\rangle$ to be an eigenstate of q_1 , we $\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} q_1 - \delta q_1$ with the eigenvalue q_1 , we must have $\delta q_1 = -\delta q_1$. It therefore follows that $[q_1, p_1] = 0$, or

$$[q_1, p_1] = i\delta q_1. \quad (2.11)$$

Similarly, taking $\mathbf{X}$ to be p_1 , (2.2) and (2.8) give us $\delta p_1 = -\delta p_1 = \frac{1}{2}(p_1 - \sum_k p_k \delta q_k)$. However, since the q_j and the p_k are to be treated as independent variables, so that variations of the q_k do not cause variations of the p_k , it follows that for all j and all k ,

$$[p_j, p_k] = 0. \quad (2.12)$$

At this point, note that if the Lagrangian is changed by a total time derivative,

$$\mathbf{L} = \mathbf{L} + \frac{d}{dt}W, \quad (2.13)$$

the Lagrangian equations and hence the dynamics are unchanged. We then have, by (2.4),

$$\tilde{W}_{21} = W_{21} + \tilde{W}_2 - W_1, \quad (2.14)$$

and by (2.5),

$$\tilde{F} = F + \delta W. \quad (2.15)$$

So, in order to find the commutation relations between the q_k , we change the Lagrangian by a total time derivative as in (2.13), choosing $W = -\sum_k p_k \delta q_k$. According to (2.13) this gives us a new generating function

$$\tilde{F} = \sum_j \delta q_j p_j,$$

in which we now assume that the δq_j commute with all the operators, which in turn leads to $\delta q_k = -\delta q_k = \frac{1}{2}[\sum_j \delta q_j p_j, q_k]$, from which we conclude by the same argument as before that we must have for all j and all k ,

$$[q_j, q_k] = 0. \quad (2.16)$$

⁸See 6.

because of the assumed independence of the q 's and the p 's.

Equations (2.11), (2.12), and (2.13) are the complete set of canonical commutation relations (often referred to as the *crr*), obtained on the assumption that the independent variations δq_α and δp_α commute with all the q 's and p 's. Note that, except for the factor of $i\hbar$ in (2.11), Eqs. (2.11), (2.12), and (2.13) are identical to the corresponding Poisson bracket equations in classical mechanics. Hence, originally employed this analogy to lay the case down as simple postulates.

2.1.4 The Hamiltonian equations of motion

The next step is to make an infinitesimal shift δt in the time, accompanied by a backward shift of the q 's, $\delta q_\alpha = -\dot{q}_\alpha \delta t$ to compensate for the change that q would continually undergo during δt , thus keeping it fixed. (These δq_α of course do not commute with all the operators in $\mathbf{L}$ and have to be moved to the right by means of the *crr*.) According to (2.7), the concomitant generator is given by

$$F = i\hbar H, \quad (2.17)$$

where the Hamiltonian operator

$$\mathbf{H} \equiv \sum_i \hbar \omega_i \mathbf{a}_i^\dagger \mathbf{a}_i = \mathbf{L} \quad (2.18)$$

is defined to be the Hamiltonian of the system, and it is understood to be expressed as a function of the q 's and the p 's rather than the q 's and the $\mathbf{a}$'s.

The first consequence of (2.17) is to yield the Hamiltonian equations of motion of all dynamical variables. Insertion of (2.17) in (2.2) gives

$$\frac{d\mathbf{X}}{dt} = \frac{i}{\hbar} [\mathbf{H}, \mathbf{X}], \quad (2.19)$$

on the assumption that the operator $\mathbf{X}$ does not depend on the time explicitly; if $\mathbf{X}$ has an additional explicit time dependence, (2.19) has to be replaced by

$$\frac{d\mathbf{X}}{dt} = \frac{\partial \mathbf{X}}{\partial t} + \frac{i}{\hbar} [\mathbf{H}, \mathbf{X}], \quad (2.20)$$

called Heisenberg's equation of motion. Equation (2.19) is easily solved, giving us, in the Heisenberg picture, the time dependence of all (not intrinsically time-dependent) dynamical variables of a system whose Hamiltonian is $\mathbf{H}$:

$$\mathbf{X}(t) = e^{i\mathbf{H}t/\hbar} \mathbf{X}(0) e^{-i\mathbf{H}t/\hbar}. \quad (2.21)$$

The time-development operator $e^{i\mathbf{H}t/\hbar}$ has to be regarded at this point as no more than a symbolic expression. However, an energy basis of eigenstates and/or quasisignatures of $\mathbf{H}$, together with (2.22), may be used to

expand it in the form

$$e^{iHt} = \int_{\mathbb{R}} e^{i\lambda t} \hat{E}(\lambda) d\lambda. \quad (2.12)$$

Other mathematical tools for the construction of the unitary time-development operator e^{iHt} will be discussed later.

The equations of motion can now be written in the Hamiltonian form. The commutation relations (2.11), (2.12), and (2.13) imply⁵ that for any differentiable function $f(q_1, \dots, p_1, \dots)$ of the q and p ,

$$[q_j, f] = -ik \frac{\partial f}{\partial p_j}, \quad [p_j, f] = ik \frac{\partial f}{\partial q_j}. \quad (2.14)$$

Equation (2.13) therefore leads to the equations

$$\dot{q}_j = -\frac{\partial H}{\partial p_j}, \quad \dot{p}_j = \frac{\partial H}{\partial q_j}, \quad j = 1, 2, \dots, n, \quad (2.15)$$

just as in classical physics.

What is more, equation (2.17) can be used to obtain the conservation laws. First of all, (2.18) tells us that any quantity that is not explicitly time-dependent and that commutes with the Hamiltonian is independent of the time; it is conserved. Specifically, of course, the Hamiltonian, whose eigenvalues are the possible energy values of the system, is constant: energy is conserved. Since this result is a consequence of the assumption that the Lagrangian (and hence also the Hamiltonian) does not depend explicitly on the time, it holds for all systems that are invariant under time translations. The conservation laws are always consequences of invariance properties of a system. (Recall Noether's theorem in classical mechanics.) We will shortly find more of them for specific kinds of systems.

2.1.1 The Schrödinger picture

The Heisenberg picture had been defined so as to keep the state vector of a developing physical system fixed, while the operators corresponding to dynamical variables change in the course of time, analogous to the classical description. However, this is not the only way of proceeding. Since ultimately all physically observable results are expressed as expectation values or probabilities, which are the squared magnitudes of matrix elements of observables, the quantities whose time-development really matters are all of the form $\langle \Phi, X(t) \rangle$. According to (2.18), such quantities are subject to the equation

$$\frac{d}{dt} \langle \Phi, X(t) \rangle = \langle \Phi, \frac{\partial X}{\partial t} \Phi \rangle + \langle \Phi, \frac{i}{\hbar} [H, X] \Phi \rangle, \quad (2.16)$$

⁵It will be one of your homework problems to prove this.

Because $\mathbf{H}$ is Hermitian, this same equation can also be obtained by assuming the state vectors Φ and $\bar{\Phi}$ to vary with time according to the equation

$$i\hbar \frac{d}{dt} \Phi = \mathbf{H} \Phi, \quad (2.29)$$

while $\mathbf{X}$ depends on the time only through its explicit time dependence. In other words, unless it depends explicitly on the time, the operator $\mathbf{X}$ does not vary.⁶ This is called the *Schrödinger picture*. Here the dynamical time dependence is carried by the state vectors, which satisfy the Schrödinger equation (2.28), whereas those dynamical variables that do not vary explicitly with t are time-independent. The two pictures are entirely equivalent and lead to the same physical predictions. However, for actual calculations, the Schrödinger picture is used almost exclusively and is of far greater utility. Just as (2.18) was solved symbolically by (2.21), so we can solve (2.28) to express the time development of the state vector of a system whose Hamiltonian is $\mathbf{H}$ in the Schrödinger picture,

$$\Phi(t) = e^{-i\mathbf{H}(t-t_0)/\hbar} \Phi(t_0). \quad (2.30)$$

If the state of a system is described by a density operator rather than a state vector, the Schrödinger equation of motion is obtained from (2.14) and the fact that the states Φ_n satisfy (2.29). As a result, the equation of motion of the density operator in the Schrödinger picture is given by

$$i\hbar \frac{d}{dt} \rho = [\mathbf{H}, \rho]. \quad (2.31)$$

Since $\text{tr} \mathbf{A} \mathbf{B} = \text{tr} \mathbf{B} \mathbf{A}$ for any two operators $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$, we have both $d(\text{tr} \rho)/dt = 0$ and $d(\text{tr} \rho^2)/dt = 0$, which implies that not only does the density operator retain its characteristic property $\text{tr} \rho = 1$ in the course of time, but the “degree of coherence” of a system remains unchanged. If it was in a pure state at one time, for example, it will remain that way.

By contrast, we saw in the last chapter that a measurement converts a pure state into a mixed one (or else, instantaneously into an eigenstate of the measured observable—the infamous “collapse of the wave function”), which is sometimes ascribed to the disturbance *any* measurement, no matter how carefully performed, produces in the measured system. As a result of this disturbance, the probability of finding a system in the state Φ_B at the time t_2 , given that it was in the state Φ_A at the time $t_1 < t_2$, depends upon whether or not a measurement was performed on it at some intermediate time $t_1 < t_2 < t_2$, even if the outcome of this measurement is ignored, a conclusion that is often depicted as one of the weird aspects

⁶Verify that (2.28) leads to (2.29).

⁷Here this.

of quantum mechanics. Such an effect, however, exists for any probabilistic theory, including classical statistical mechanics; it is not an intrinsic quantum phenomenon.⁴

The operator symbolically indicated in (2.25'), which solves the equation of motion (2.26) for $t > t'$, is called the *retarded propagator*. It is defined by

$$\hat{G}^+(t) = \begin{cases} e^{-iH(t-t')} & t > t' \\ 0 & t < t' \end{cases}. \quad (2.28)$$

This propagator allows us to express the state vector $\Psi(t)$ in terms of the state vector $\Psi(t')$ at any earlier time $t' < t$ by (2.27), or

$$\Psi(t) = \hat{G}^+(t) = t')\Psi(t'). \quad (2.29)$$

You will easily verify that $\hat{G}^+$ satisfies the equation

$$\left(i\hbar \frac{d}{dt} - H \right) \hat{G}^+(t) = \delta(t), \quad (2.31)$$

and furthermore, $\lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} \hat{G}^+(t) = 0$; as a result, the vector $\Psi(t)$ satisfies the time-dependent Schrödinger equation for $t > t'$ and approaches $\Psi(t')$ as $t \rightarrow t'$.⁵ Later we shall discuss various ways of constructing this propagator, which plays a central role in quantum dynamics.

The time dependence of the configuration space function $\psi(q_1, \dots, t)$, which is the inner product of an eigenstate of the $\hat{g}$ and the state Ψ of a system, can be expressed either in the Heisenberg or in the Schrödinger picture. If the Heisenberg operators and states are denoted by $\hat{g}$ and $\underline{\Omega}$, respectively, we have

$$\hat{g}(t)\Omega_f = \hat{g}\Omega_f$$

so that

$$\hat{g}(t)e^{-iH(t-t')}\hat{g}(t')e^{-iHt'}\Omega_f$$

or

$$\hat{g}(t)e^{-iH(t-t')}\Omega_f = \hat{g}e^{-iHt'}\Omega_f$$

⁴After coarse-graining, the probability $P(\Omega_1|\Omega_2)$ of finding a system that was in grain Ω_2 at t_2 in grain Ω_1 at the time t_1 is $P(\Omega_1|\Omega_2) = \rho(\Omega_1) \cap \rho(t_2|\hat{G}(t_1, t_2)\rho(\Omega_2))$ if $\rho(t_2|\hat{G}(t_1, t_2)\rho(\Omega_2))$ is where the Heisenbergian flow takes Ω_2 to the time from t_2 to t_1 , and $\rho(\Omega_1)$ is the volume of Ω_1 in phase space. This formula is based on the assumption that the initial grain Ω_2 is uniformly filled. The flow $\rho(t_2|\hat{G}(t_1, t_2)\rho(\Omega_2))$, on the other hand, will fill up one grain at a later time t only sparsely and generally nonuniformly. Therefore, if a measurement is performed at an intermediate time t_3 , the new probability of finding the system in Ω_1 , given the result of that measurement, is in a sense “renormalized,” and even if the result of the intermediate measurement is ignored and we sum over all the possible grains the system can visit on the way from Ω_2 to Ω_1 , the answer will generally differ from that without intermediate measurement. For more on this, see Section 6.5, pp. 139–141.

⁵The limits here have to be specified more precisely as having the meaning that $\|\Psi(t) - \hat{G}^+(t-t')\Psi(t')\| = 0$ and $\|\hat{G}^+(t) - 1\| = 0$.

But $\hat{q}(t)$ and $e^{-iH_0 t}\hat{q}_0$ are equal to the Schrödinger operators and states $\hat{q}$ and $\hat{q}_0(t)$, respectively. Thus we find

$$\langle \hat{q}^2(t), \hat{q} \rangle = \langle \hat{q}_0^2(t), \hat{q} \rangle = \langle \hat{q}_0, e^{-iH_0 t} \hat{q} \rangle = \langle \hat{q}_0, \hat{q}(t) \rangle,$$

which means either picture may be regarded as underlying the time-dependent configuration wave function. The same argument holds for momentum-space wave functions and any other representation. Therefore, the time dependence of a wave function is governed by the Schrödinger equation in both pictures.

2.2 Systems of Particles

2.2.1 Linear and angular momentum

For a system of point particles, whose locations in configuration space are denoted by $\mathbf{q}_i$, we can obtain a second conservation law from (2.3) and (2.8) by subjecting the system to a rigid spatial translation $d\mathbf{q}_i = d\mathbf{r}$. Such a translation is generated by $F = \sum_i \mathbf{p}_i \cdot d\mathbf{r} = \hat{\mathbf{P}} \cdot d\mathbf{r}$, where $\hat{\mathbf{P}} \equiv \sum_i \mathbf{p}_i$ is the total momentum. If the system is invariant under such a rigid translation, the generator F must commute with the Hamiltonian so that its eigenvalues remain unchanged, and it follows that momentum is conserved: $\hat{\mathbf{P}}|\psi_t\rangle = \hat{\mathbf{P}}|\psi_0\rangle$. Similarly, a third conservation law is obtained by rotating the entire system by the infinitesimal angle ϵ about a given axis $\hat{\mathbf{n}}$ (in a right-handed sense, say), which implies that $d\mathbf{q}_i = \epsilon \hat{\mathbf{n}} \times \mathbf{q}_i$. This leads to the generator $F = \epsilon \sum_i (\mathbf{p}_i \cdot \hat{\mathbf{n}} \times \mathbf{q}_i) = \epsilon \hat{\mathbf{n}} \cdot \sum_i \mathbf{q}_i \times \mathbf{p}_i = \epsilon \hat{\mathbf{n}} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{L}}$, where $\hat{\mathbf{L}} \equiv \sum_i \hat{\mathbf{L}}_i$ is the total angular momentum and $\hat{\mathbf{L}}_i \equiv \mathbf{q}_i \times \mathbf{p}_i$ are the angular momenta of the individual particles. It follows that if the system is invariant under the rotations $(\hat{\mathbf{n}})$, then the corresponding component of the angular momentum is conserved, and if it is invariant under all rotations, all components of the angular momentum are conserved. Note, however, that the three components of the angular momentum do not commute, so they cannot all be used to label a state. From the commutation relations (2.11), (2.12), and (2.16) we easily find¹⁰ that

$$[\mathbf{L}_1, \mathbf{L}_2] = i\hbar \mathbf{L}_3 \quad (2.22)$$

and its cyclical permutations, which can be written in the vector form

$$\hat{\mathbf{L}} \times \hat{\mathbf{L}} = i\hbar \hat{\mathbf{L}}. \quad (2.23)$$

(We shall return to further discussion of the angular momentum in Chapter 5.)

¹⁰Verify it.

2.2.1 The equations of motion

Let us apply our general results to specific kinds of particle systems, beginning with one consisting of a single point particle of mass M , subject to a conservative force, with the aim of obtaining the equation of motion. As in classical mechanics, the Lagrangian is given by

$$L = \frac{1}{2} M \dot{\mathbf{q}}^2 - V(\mathbf{q}),$$

where V is the potential energy. According to (2.8) and (2.10), the momentum is defined as $\hat{\mathbf{p}} = M\dot{\mathbf{q}}$ and the Hamiltonian is

$$H = \frac{\hat{\mathbf{p}}^2}{2M} + V(\mathbf{q}). \quad (2.34)$$

Taking expectation values of (2.34), and remembering that in the Heisenberg picture the state vector representing a system is independent of the time, therefore immediately leads to the equations

$$\frac{d}{dt}\langle \hat{\mathbf{p}} \rangle = -\langle \nabla V(\mathbf{q}) \rangle, \quad \frac{d}{dt}\langle \hat{\mathbf{q}} \rangle = \langle \frac{\hat{\mathbf{p}}}{M} \rangle, \quad (2.35)$$

which are obviously the quantum analogue of familiar equations of classical mechanics, implying furthermore that

$$M \frac{d^2}{dt^2} \langle \hat{\mathbf{q}} \rangle = -\langle \nabla V(\mathbf{q}) \rangle. \quad (2.36)$$

Equation (2.36), the quantum version of Newton's equation of motion, is known as Ehrenfest's theorem.

If, for a system subject to the Hamiltonian (2.34), Eq.(2.35) is applied to the operator $\hat{\mathbf{q}} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{p}}$ and (2.22) is used, the result is

$$\frac{d}{dt} \hat{\mathbf{q}} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{p}} = -\frac{i}{\hbar} [\hat{\mathbf{q}} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{p}}, H] = \frac{\hat{\mathbf{p}}^2}{M} - \hat{\mathbf{q}} \cdot \nabla V.$$

In a steady state, i.e., in an eigenstate of the Hamiltonian, however, we have $\langle \hat{\mathbf{q}} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{p}}, H \rangle = 0$. It therefore follows that

$$\langle \frac{\hat{\mathbf{p}}^2}{M} - \hat{\mathbf{q}} \cdot \nabla V \rangle = 0,$$

or, in terms of the kinetic energy $T = \hat{\mathbf{p}}^2/2M$ of the particle,

$$\langle T \rangle = \frac{1}{2} \langle \hat{\mathbf{q}} \cdot \nabla V \rangle. \quad (2.37)$$

In classical mechanics, $\frac{1}{2} \hat{\mathbf{q}} \cdot \nabla V$ is known as the virial of Clausius, thus (2.37) is the quantum version of the virial theorem.

In view of (2.34), the Schrödinger equation (2.25) for a single-particle system in the Schrödinger picture, reads,

$$i\hbar \frac{\partial \psi(\mathbf{q})}{\partial t} = \left[\frac{\mathbf{p}^2}{2M} + V(\mathbf{q}) \right] \psi. \quad (2.36)$$

This equation takes its most useful form in the configuration representation, in which the state of the system is represented by a wave function $\psi(\mathbf{q}, t)$, and, according to (1.25), the momentum operator $\mathbf{p}$ by $-i\hbar \nabla_{\mathbf{q}}$, so that the Schrödinger equation becomes the partial differential equation

$$i\hbar \frac{\partial \psi(\mathbf{q}, t)}{\partial t} = \left[-\frac{\hbar^2}{2M} \nabla_{\mathbf{q}}^2 + V(\mathbf{q}) \right] \psi(\mathbf{q}, t). \quad (2.37)$$

Recall that the physical interpretation of $\psi(\mathbf{q}, t)^* \psi(\mathbf{q}, t)^{1/2}$ is the probability density of finding the particle at the time t in the vicinity of $\mathbf{q}$ in configuration space; the Schrödinger equation (2.37) therefore allows us to define a "conservation of probability" in terms of the current density defined by (1.41). Provided the potential function V is real, it is a simple matter to verify⁴² by means of (2.37) that ρ and $\mathbf{j}$ satisfy the continuity equation

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{j} + \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} = 0. \quad (2.40)$$

These things are readily generalized to a particle at the position $\mathbf{q}^{(j)}$, for which the Lagrangian is given by

$$L = \sum_j \frac{1}{2} M_j \dot{\mathbf{q}}^{(j)2} - V(\mathbf{q}^{(1)}, \dots),$$

the momenta by $\mathbf{p}^{(j)} = M_j \dot{\mathbf{q}}^{(j)}$, and the Hamiltonian by

$$H = \sum_j \frac{\mathbf{p}^{(j)2}}{2M_j} + V(\mathbf{q}^{(1)}, \dots). \quad (2.41)$$

The Schrödinger equation in the configuration representation therefore reads

$$i\hbar \frac{\partial \psi(\mathbf{q}^{(1)}, \dots, t)}{\partial t} = \left[-\sum_j \frac{\hbar^2}{2M_j} \nabla_{\mathbf{q}^{(j)}}^2 + V(\mathbf{q}^{(1)}, \dots) \right] \psi(\mathbf{q}^{(1)}, \dots, t). \quad (2.42)$$

⁴² The $\mathbf{j}$ is an exercise.

2.2.1 The time-independent Schrödinger equation

For most applications it is extremely useful to separate the partial differential equations (2.38) and (2.42) as far as the time is concerned, that is, to make the ansatz that the solution ψ of (2.38) can be written as a product $\psi(q, t) = \psi(q) e^{iEt}$, and similarly for (2.42). It follows that $\psi(q)$ has to satisfy the equation¹⁷

$$i\hbar \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial t} = E\psi,$$

where E is a constant, and this is easily solved apart from a constant factor, $f(t) = e^{-iEt/\hbar}$. The function $\psi(q)$, therefore, must satisfy the time-independent Schrödinger equation

$$\left[-\frac{\hbar^2}{2M} \nabla_q^2 + V(q) \right] \psi(q) = E\psi(q) \quad (2.43)$$

in the one-particle case, and

$$\left[-\sum_i \frac{\hbar^2}{2M_i} \nabla_{q_i}^2 + V(q^{(1)}, \dots) \right] \psi(q^{(1)}, \dots) = E\psi(q^{(1)}, \dots) \quad (2.44)$$

in the n -particle case. In terms of the Hamiltonian differential operators

$$\mathbf{H}^{(1)} \left[-\frac{\hbar^2}{2M} \nabla_q^2 + V(q) \right]$$

or

$$\mathbf{H}^{(n)} \left[-\sum_i \frac{\hbar^2}{2M_i} \nabla_{q_i}^2 + V(q^{(1)}, \dots) \right],$$

which are the configuration representations of (2.38) and (2.42), respectively, these equations can be written as

$$\mathbf{H}\psi = E\psi, \quad (2.45)$$

which shows that ψ has to be an eigenstate or quasi-eigenstate of $\mathbf{H}$ with the eigenvalue or quasi-eigenvalue E . The physical significance of the separation constant E is therefore that it is the energy of the system.

Since $\mathbf{H}$ is Hermitian, its spectrum is complete. If this spectrum forms a discrete set of points, any arbitrary square-integrable function of q can be expanded in the basis of the eigenfunctions of $\mathbf{H}$,

$$\psi(q) = \sum_n c_n \psi_n(q).$$

¹⁷This is based on the assumption that the potential V is independent of the time, otherwise the separation is generally not possible.

so that $\mathbf{H}\psi(t) = \sum_n E_n c_n \psi_n(t)$, from which we may conclude that the general solution of (2.36) is given by

$$\psi(t) = \sum_n c_n e^{-iE_n t/\hbar} \psi_n(t), \quad (2.46)$$

and analogously for n -particle systems.

In many instances, however, the spectrum of $\mathbf{H}$ is, at least in part, continuous, with quasi-significance $\psi_E(\beta)$. In such cases the discrete sum is replaced by an integral, so that any square-integrable function of q can be written as a generalised Fourier integral,

$$\psi(\beta) = \int dE \alpha(E) \psi_E(\beta),$$

in which the integral ranges over the continuous spectrum. The general solution of (2.36) is then given by

$$\psi(\beta, t) = \int dE \alpha(E) e^{-iE t/\hbar} \psi_E(\beta), \quad (2.47)$$

and analogously for n -particle systems. If the spectrum is partly discrete and partly continuous, there will be both a sum and an integral.

The solutions (2.46) and (2.47) of the Schrödinger equation allow us to solve the initial-value problem of (2.36) or (2.41). If $\psi(0) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \psi(\beta, 0)$ is given, we expand it on the basis of the orthonormal set $\{\psi_n, 1\}$,

$$\psi(0) = \sum_n c_n \psi_n(0)$$

where the coefficients c_n are obtained by

$$c_n = \int d^3q \psi_n^*(0) \psi(0). \quad (2.48)$$

The solution of (2.36) that has $\psi(0)$ as its initial value is then (2.46), with the c_n of (2.48). For a continuous spectrum we assume the quasi-significance to be normalised so that

$$\int d^3q \psi_E^*(0) \psi_E(0) = \delta(E - E')$$

and calculate the function $\alpha(E)$ in (2.47) from $\psi(0)$ in a similar manner as in (2.48),

$$\alpha(E) = \int d^3q \psi_E^*(0) \psi(0). \quad (2.49)$$

Analogous relations hold for n -particle systems and for spectra that are partly discrete and partly continuous.

2.2.1 Example: Gaussian wave packets

Gaussian wavefunctions form particularly useful examples for which many of the needed mathematical manipulations can be carried out explicitly with results that often have general qualitative validity. Suppose that the normalized momentum-space wave function (in one dimension) is given by



FIGURE 2.1. The probability density of a Gaussian wave function centered at p_0 . The dashed lines show $p_0 \pm \Delta$.

$$\tilde{\psi}(p) = \Delta^{-1/2} \psi(\Delta p)^{-1/2} \exp[-(p-p_0)^2/(4\Delta^2)]. \quad (2.13)$$

The probability density in momentum space described by this function has the bell shape shown in Figure 2.1, centered at $p = p_0$ and decreasing to $\sim 1/e$ of its peak value at $p = p_0 \pm \Delta$. The variance (dispersion), defined by (2.10), of the momentum in this state is easily calculated¹ to be

$$\Delta p = \Delta. \quad (2.14)$$

The corresponding configuration space wave function is found by the one-dimensional version of (1.67) to be

$$\psi(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}} \int dp e^{ipx/\hbar} \tilde{\psi}(p) = \Delta^{1/2} \lambda^{-1/2} (\Delta/\hbar)^{1/2} \exp[-x^2/(4\Delta^2/\hbar^2)] \exp ip_0 x/\hbar. \quad (2.15)$$

Note that this too is a Gaussian. Furthermore, if the “half-width” of the momentum-space Gaussian is Δ , then that of the configuration-space Gaussian is $\tilde{\Delta} = \hbar/(2\Delta)$, and the variance of the particle position is accordingly

$$\Delta x = \hbar/(2\Delta) = \tilde{\Delta}. \quad (2.16)$$

¹The $\hbar$ is an oversight.

so that we find

$$\Delta p \Delta q = \Delta \mathbf{h} = \frac{1}{2} \hbar. \quad (2.34)$$

Comparison with (1.18) shows the important result that Gaussian wave packets saturate the uncertainty product.

There is a simple trick to evaluate the Gaussian integral

$$I = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dx e^{-ax^2},$$

namely,

$$I^2 = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dx dy e^{-a(x^2+y^2)} = \int_0^{2\pi} d\phi \int_0^{\infty} r dr e^{-ar^2} = \pi \int_0^{\infty} dr e^{-ar^2} = \frac{\pi}{a},$$

hence

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dx e^{-ax^2} = \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{a}}. \quad (2.35)$$

Moreover,

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dx x^2 e^{-ax^2} = -\frac{\partial}{\partial a} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dx e^{-ax^2} = -\frac{\partial}{\partial a} \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{a}}, \quad (2.36)$$

let us do it the form

$$I = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dx e^{-ax^2 - ibx},$$

we evaluated by completing the square, so that $ax^2 + bx = a(x + \frac{1}{2a}b)^2 - \frac{1}{4a}b^2$, and shifting the variable of integration, setting $y = x + \frac{1}{2a}b$, with the result

$$I = \sqrt{\pi/a} \exp(b^2/4a).$$

Let us next look at what happens to a freely developing Gaussian wave packet in the course of time. Since its time development follows the free Schrödinger equation (2.28) with $V = 0$, so that its Hamiltonian is given by $H = p^2/2M^2$, the momentum-space wave function $\tilde{\psi}(p, t)$ is simply

$$\tilde{\psi}(p, t) = \tilde{\psi}(p, 0) e^{-i(p^2/2M^2)t},$$

and this has to be inserted in (2.32) in place of $\tilde{\psi}(p)$,

$$\begin{aligned} \psi(x, t) &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}} \int dp \tilde{\psi}(p, t) e^{ipx/\hbar} \\ &= \frac{(2\pi\hbar)^{-1/2}}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar\Delta}} \int dp e^{-i(p-p_0)^2/(4\hbar^2)(1/(2M^2)t + 1/(4\Delta^2))} e^{ipx/\hbar}, \end{aligned} \quad (2.37)$$

an integral that I will let you do as an exercise.¹⁴ The most interesting part of the result is that the factor $e^{-i(p^2/2M^2)t}$ in (2.32) is replaced by

$$\exp \left[-\frac{\Delta^2}{\hbar^2} \frac{(x - \frac{p_0}{M}t)^2}{1 + \frac{\hbar^2 t^2}{4M^2 \Delta^2}} \right],$$

¹⁴The $\hbar$.

which means that two things happen in the course of time: 1) the center of the packet moves with velocity $p_0/\bar{M}$, and 2) while the packet retains the same width in momentum space, its width in configuration space spreads,

$$\Delta x \rightarrow \sqrt{\Delta x^2 + \left(\frac{\hbar t}{2M\Delta}\right)^2}. \quad (2.56)$$

That the center of the packet moves with the velocity $p_0/\bar{M}$ is, of course, easily physically understood. Its spreading in configuration space—and that the narrower Δ is, the faster it spreads—can be physically explained by the fact that an uncertainty of Δ in a particle's position implies an uncertainty of at least $\hbar/\Delta$ in its momentum; this is the physical origin of the spreading.

Equation (2.55) represents the configuration wavefunction as a superposition of plane waves traveling with a phase velocity equal to $p_0/2M$, because when q increases by $p_0/2M$, the phase of the integrand remains constant in time. However, the center of the packet, never here nor, moves with velocity $p_0/\bar{M}$. That these results hold not only for Gaussian wave packets but are of much more general validity can be seen by applying the stationary-phase argument to integrals of the form

$$\psi(x, t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dp f(p) e^{-i\omega(p)t + ipx}, \quad (2.57)$$

where $|f(p)|$ is assumed to have a maximum at $p = p_0$. As $|x|$ or $|t|$ tend to ∞ , the integrand on the right oscillates rapidly as a function of p and the integral will generally tend to zero,¹⁸ except when q is allowed to grow linearly with t . In that case, the limit of the integral need not vanish; its value will come predominantly from the neighborhood of the value (or values) of p for which the phase of the integrand is stationary, preventing it from rapidly oscillating; these values of p are determined by the equation

$$\frac{d}{dp} [p_0 t - \omega(p)t + px] = 0,$$

where q is the phase of the function $f(p)$ in (2.57). If this equation is satisfied at a value of p for which $|f(p)|$ is small, the resulting $|x|$ will still be relatively small, whereas $|x|$ will be large when q and t advance together at a rate at which the phase is stationary at the point p_0 at which $|f(p)|$ has its peak, i.e., when $q = \hbar \frac{d}{dp} \omega(p)|_{p=p_0} = \hbar \frac{d}{dp} \omega(p)|_{p=p_0}$, resulting in the group velocity

$$v_{\text{group}} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \hbar \frac{d\omega(p)}{dp} \bigg|_{p=p_0}. \quad (2.58)$$

In this particular case we have $\omega(p) = p^2/(2M\hbar)$ and therefore $v_{\text{group}} = p_0/\bar{M}$, which is equal to the velocity of the particle at the center of the

¹⁸The theorem, known as the Riemann-Lebesgue lemma, strictly holds if $|f(p)|$ is integrable.

packet: the group velocity of the wave packet is equal to the most probable classical velocity of the particles, a result that we might have expected on the basis of the correspondence principle. At the same time we see that if the phase φ of the weight function $\rho(p)$ depends on p , the center of the packet is shifted backward by the amount $\frac{1}{2} \frac{d\varphi}{dp} \big|_{p=p_0}$, so that its arrival is retarded by the time delay

$$t_0 \equiv \frac{d\varphi}{dp} \bigg|_{p=p_0} = \frac{\hbar M}{p_0} \frac{d\varphi}{dp} \bigg|_{p=p_0}. \quad (2.51)$$

As for the spreading of the packet with time, the stationary-phase argument shows that what matters for large times is only the shape of the function $|f(p)|$ near its peak. Therefore, let us expand $\log |f(p)|$ in a Taylor series around $p = p_0$, keeping only the first terms: $\log |f(p)| = -a(p - p_0)^2 + \dots$, and define $\Delta^2 \equiv 1/4a$. Then the integral in (2.50) has the same form as the one in (2.37'), and we obtain the same result (2.48) for the spreading of the configuration-space packet.

Equation (2.51) illustrates another important point: to measure the position of a particle with an accuracy Δ does not uniquely determine its state to within a constant factor. The last factor in the expansion on the right-hand side of (2.51) can be determined only by a simultaneous measurement of the particle's momentum, even though the latter is uncertain. This is a point emphasized in Chapter 1.

2.3 Fields

2.3.1 The matter field

In contrast to particle systems, where the dynamical variables are observables and hence Hermitian, the field is generally not a Hermitian operator, and both Ψ and $\Psi^\dagger$ enter into the Lagrangian in such a way that $\mathcal{L}$ is Hermitian. Rather than regarding the Hermitian and skew-Hermitian¹⁶ parts of Ψ as the independent variables, it will be convenient to take the independent variables to be Ψ and $\Psi^\dagger$, which is mathematically equivalent.¹⁷

In addition to depending on both Ψ and $\Psi^\dagger$, the Lagrangian will now also contain $\nabla\Psi$ and $\nabla\Psi^\dagger$; it will generally be of the form

$$\mathcal{L} = \int d^3x \, C(\Psi, \Psi^\dagger, \nabla\Psi, \nabla\Psi^\dagger, \partial_t\Psi, \partial_t\Psi^\dagger), \quad (2.52)$$

¹⁶A skew-Hermitian operator $\mathbf{K}$ is such that $\mathbf{K}^\dagger = -\mathbf{K}$; the Hermitian part of an operator $\mathbf{K}$ is $\frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{K} + \mathbf{K}^\dagger)$, and the skew-Hermitian part is $\frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{K} - \mathbf{K}^\dagger)$.

¹⁷If $\mathbf{A} = i\mathbf{A}^\dagger + \mathbf{B}$, then $\mathbf{A}^\dagger = -i\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}^\dagger$ and $\mathbf{A}^\dagger\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{A}^\dagger + \mathbf{B}^\dagger\mathbf{B}$. Similarly for operators and their Hermitian and skew-Hermitian parts.

where $\mathcal{L}$ is called the *Lagrangian density*, so that

$$\begin{aligned} \delta_0 L &= \int d^3x \left(\frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta \Phi} \delta_0 \Phi + \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta \Phi'} \delta_0 \Phi' + \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta \nabla \Phi} \cdot \delta_0 \nabla \Phi \right. \\ &\quad \left. + \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta \nabla \Phi'} \cdot \delta_0 \nabla \Phi' + \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta \Phi} \delta_0 \Phi + \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta \Phi'} \delta_0 \Phi' \right). \end{aligned}$$

Again, we have to take $\delta_0 \Phi = \frac{\delta}{\delta t} \delta_0 \Phi$ and $\delta_0 \Phi' = \frac{\delta}{\delta t} \delta_0 \Phi'$ as well as $\delta_0 \nabla \Phi = \nabla \delta_0 \Phi$ and $\delta_0 \nabla \Phi' = \nabla \delta_0 \Phi'$, and we perform integrations by parts, both in the time-integral in $\mathbb{W}$ and in the space-integral in $\mathbb{L}$, assuming that the boundary terms at spatial infinity vanish. In place of (2.4) we then obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \delta H_{\text{cl}} &= \int_{t_1}^{t_2} dt \int d^3x \left[\left(\frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta \Phi} - \nabla \cdot \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta \nabla \Phi} - \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta \Phi'} \right) \delta_0 \Phi \right. \\ &\quad \left. + \left(\frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta \Phi'} - \nabla \cdot \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta \nabla \Phi'} - \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta \Phi} \right) \delta_0 \Phi' \right] \\ &\quad + \left[\int d^3x \left(\frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta \Phi} \delta_0 \Phi + \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta \Phi'} \delta_0 \Phi' \right) + L \delta t \right]_{t_1}^{t_2}. \end{aligned} \quad (2.6)$$

Assuming that the $\delta_0 \Phi$ and $\delta_0 \Phi'$ commute with all the factors in $\mathcal{L}$, we can therefore conclude that the Lagrangian equations for Φ and Φ' read

$$\frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta \Phi} - \nabla \cdot \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta \nabla \Phi} - \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta \Phi'} = 0, \quad (2.6a)$$

$$\frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta \Phi'} - \nabla \cdot \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta \nabla \Phi'} - \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta \Phi} = 0. \quad (2.6b)$$

At this point we add the constraint that Φ' is the Hermitian conjugate of Φ , which makes (2.6b) redundant, since it is nothing but the Hermitian conjugate of (2.6a). The canonically conjugate field Π and the Hamiltonian are defined analogous to (1.8) and (1.9),

$$\Pi \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta \Phi'}, \quad H \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \int d^3x (\Pi \dot{\Phi} + \Phi' \Pi') = L, \quad (2.6c)$$

while the translation generator is obtained from (1.3) and (2.8),

$$P = -\frac{i\hbar}{2} (\Phi' \nabla \Phi - \nabla \Phi' \Phi) = \mathcal{P},$$

so that the total momentum

$$\vec{P} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} -\frac{i\hbar}{2} \int d^3x (\Phi' \nabla \Phi - \nabla \Phi' \Phi) \quad (2.6d)$$

is conserved if the system is translationally invariant.

To be specific, here is the Lagrangian density actually to be used for the matter field:

$$\mathcal{L} = \frac{i\hbar}{2} \bar{\psi} \dot{\psi} - \frac{i\hbar}{2} \dot{\bar{\psi}} \psi - \frac{\hbar^2}{2M} \nabla \bar{\psi} \cdot \nabla \psi + V \bar{\psi} \psi, \quad (2.68)$$

where V is a given function of space. The Lagrangian equation of motion (2.64) that follows from this reads

$$i\hbar \dot{\psi} = -\frac{\hbar^2}{2M} \nabla^2 \psi + V \psi, \quad (2.69)$$

which is the Schrödinger equation, applied not to the wave function, as in (2.58), but to the operator function $\hat{\psi}(t, \mathbf{x})$.

The replacement of the wave function ψ in (2.58) by the field operator $\hat{\psi}$ is often referred to as “second quantization,” because the replacement of the numerical ψ and $\bar{\psi}$ by the operators $\hat{\psi}$ and $\hat{\bar{\psi}}$ is regarded as the first “quantization” step from classical mechanics, and the replacement of the numerical wave functions ψ by the field operators $\hat{\psi}$ as the second step. However, though historically correct, this view should be regarded as an anachronism. Because of the argument given in Chapter 1, there is good reason to consider (2.68) as the more basic equation, in that the field $\hat{\psi}$ leads to the existence of particles whose wave functions satisfy the Schrödinger equation (2.69) because the field satisfies Eq. (2.69), as follows from (1.34).

According to (2.65), the canonically conjugate field is given by $\Pi = \frac{\hbar}{i} \frac{\delta}{\delta \psi^\dagger}$, and the Hamiltonian is found to be²³

$$H = \int d^3x \left[\frac{\hbar^2}{2M} \nabla \bar{\psi} \cdot \nabla \psi + V \bar{\psi} \psi \right], \quad (2.70)$$

which can also be written, after an integration by parts, assuming that $\bar{\psi} \psi$ vanishes sufficiently rapidly at infinity so that boundary terms do not appear,

$$H = \int d^3x \bar{\psi}^\dagger \left[-\frac{\hbar^2}{2M} \nabla^2 + V \right] \psi. \quad (2.71)$$

As for the canonical commutation relations, we arrive at the analogues of (2.11), (2.12), and (2.16) by analogous arguments.²⁴ For this purpose it is best to proceed as in Section 1.4.3, perform a Fourier transform as in (2.37) and replace the Fourier integral by a series, so that the functions $\hat{\psi}(\mathbf{x})$ and

²³Here is:

²⁴The derivation of (2.11) relied on the linearity of the dynamical variables. Therefore the Lagrangian has to be reexpressed in terms of the Hamiltonian and derive Hamiltonian pairs of $\hat{\psi}$ and $\hat{\psi}^\dagger$, as in (2.70) below, and the result of the calculation has to be reexpressed in terms of $\hat{\psi}$ and $\hat{\psi}^\dagger$.

$\hat{R}(\hat{q})$ are replaced by exponentials $\hat{\theta}_j$ and $\hat{\pi}_j$, respectively. The results are the commutation relations

$$[\hat{R}_i, \hat{R}_j] = 0, \quad [\hat{R}_i, \hat{\theta}_j^\dagger] = \delta_{ij}, \quad (2.72)$$

or, without the discretization,

$$[\hat{\theta}_1(\hat{q}), \hat{\theta}_1(\hat{q}')] = 0, \quad [\hat{\theta}_1(\hat{q}), \hat{\theta}_1^\dagger(\hat{q}')] = \delta(\hat{q} - \hat{q}'), \quad (2.73)$$

and

$$[\hat{\theta}_1(\hat{q}), \hat{\theta}_1^\dagger(\hat{q}')] = 0, \quad [\hat{\theta}_1(\hat{q}), \hat{\pi}_1^\dagger(\hat{q}')] = \delta(\hat{q} - \hat{q}'). \quad (2.74)$$

The appearance of Dirac delta functions in these relations shows that the fields cannot really be pointwise defined functions with values that are operators on the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$, as we will nevertheless continue to pretend as long as it causes no mathematical trouble.

It will be useful to expand the operator function $\hat{\theta}(\hat{q}, t)$ that solves (2.65) on the basis of the complete set of eigenfunctions of the Schrödinger equation (2.45),

$$\left[-\frac{\hbar^2}{2M} \nabla^2 + V \right] \psi_E(\vec{r}) = E \psi_E(\vec{r}),$$

with the normalization

$$\int d^3r \, \psi_E^\dagger(\vec{r}) \psi_{E'}(\vec{r}) = \delta_{EE'},$$

or, for continuous quasi-eigenvalues, with the Dirac $\delta(E - E')$ on the right. The expansion

$$\hat{\theta}(\vec{r}) = \int_E \psi_E(\vec{r}) \hat{\theta}_E, \quad (2.75)$$

which implies, for (2.74), that

$$[\hat{\theta}_E, \hat{\theta}_{E'}] = 0, \quad [\hat{\theta}_E, \hat{\theta}_{E'}^\dagger] = \delta_{EE'}, \quad (2.76)$$

(or with a Dirac $\delta(E - E')$ for continuous E) allows us to transform (2.71) into the form

$$\mathbb{H} = \sum_E \mathbb{H}_E, \quad \mathbb{H}_E \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} E \hat{\theta}_E^\dagger \hat{\theta}_E = E \mathbb{N}_E, \quad (2.77)$$

where $\mathbb{N}_E \stackrel{\text{def}}{=}} \hat{\theta}_E^\dagger \hat{\theta}_E$, as in (1.41). As we already saw in (1.46), the operators $\mathbb{N}_E$ all commute with one another. Therefore there is not only a complete set of common eigenstates, but all the $\mathbb{N}_E$ commutes with the Hamiltonian $\mathbb{H}$, which means they are constants of the motion: their eigenvalues are conserved.

Remarkably enough, the Hamiltonian $\mathbb{H}_E$ is, apart from a shift by a constant, identical to that of a simple harmonic oscillator

Field quanta and the harmonic oscillator. Split $\Phi_{\mathbf{p}}$ into its Hermitian and anti-Hermitian parts, which we will call, by definition, $\sqrt{\frac{\omega}{2\pi}}\hat{q}$ and $\sqrt{\frac{\omega}{2\pi}}\hat{p}$:

$$\Phi_{\mathbf{p}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \sqrt{\frac{\omega}{2\pi}} \left[\hat{q} + i \frac{\hat{p}}{\omega} \right], \quad (2.76)$$

where $\hat{q}$ and $\hat{p}$ are Hermitian and $\omega = \frac{1}{2\pi} E_{\mathbf{p}}(\lambda)$. We then find from (2.76) that $[\hat{q}, \hat{p}] = i$ and from (2.77),

$$H_{\mathbf{p}} = \frac{1}{2}(\hat{p}^2 + \omega^2 \hat{q}^2) = \frac{1}{2} \hbar \omega, \quad (2.78)$$

which, apart from a shift by the constant $-\frac{1}{2}\hbar\omega$, is the Hamiltonian of a simple harmonic oscillator of unit mass and frequency ω . Together with the results of our discussion in Section 1.4.3 we have therefore learned that the allowed energy levels of a simple harmonic oscillator of frequency ω are $E_n = (\frac{1}{2}n + 1/2)\hbar\omega$, with $n = 0, 1, \dots$, as follows from (2.77) and the fact that the eigenvalues of $\hat{N}$ are the non-negative integers: the energy levels are equally spaced, each a distance $\hbar\omega$ apart from the next, and the ground state has the energy $\frac{1}{2}\hbar\omega$.

Because the energy-eigenvalues of a simple harmonic oscillator are equally spaced in steps of $\hbar\omega$, the field gives rise to quanta, each of energy $\hbar\omega$. If it were not for that equal spacing, the infinitely many eigenvalues of the matter-field Hamiltonian for each fixed value of E in (2.77) could not be interpreted as simply adding another particles of that same energy E . [This has nothing to do with the spacing between the eigenvalues E of (2.25). We are adding here particles all with the same energies E .] It follows directly from (1.54) and (2.68) that the configuration-space wave function of these particles satisfies the Schrödinger equation, and similarly for multiparticle systems.

Anti-commutation relations

The results we have obtained are based on the assumption that the variations $\delta_0\Phi$ commute with all the operators in the Lagrangian. If, instead, these variations are assumed to anti-commute with the other operators, one readily finds all the commutators in (2.72), (2.73), and (2.74) have to be replaced by anti-commutators:

$$[\hat{\Phi}_1, \hat{\Phi}_2] = 0, \quad \{\hat{\Phi}_1, \hat{\Phi}_2^{\dagger}\} = \delta_{12}, \quad (2.80)$$

or without the differentiation,

$$\{\hat{\Phi}(x, t), \hat{\Phi}(x', t)\} = 0, \quad \{\hat{\Phi}(x, t), \hat{\Phi}^{\dagger}(x', t)\} = \delta(x - x'), \quad (2.81)$$

and

$$\{\hat{\Phi}(x, t), \hat{\Phi}(x', t')\} = 0, \quad \{\hat{\Phi}(x, t), \hat{\Phi}^{\dagger}(x', t')\} = \delta(x - x'). \quad (2.82)$$

As we have already seen in Chapter 1, these anti-commutation relations give rise to anti-symmetric multiparticle states obeying the Pauli exclusion principle.¹⁰

2.3.2 Infinitely many particles as a field

A collection of infinitely many classically coupled particles making up a solid can be treated as equivalent to a quantum field, so that their collective harmonic vibrations give rise to quanta called phonons. Let us consider a very simple one-dimensional model, in which the particles are all of equal mass and are coupled to one another with the same elastic constant. (Fig. 2.2). The Lagrangian of such a system is given by

$$L = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \left[\frac{1}{2} M \dot{q}_n^2 - \frac{1}{2} c (q_{n+1} - q_n)^2 \right] \quad (2.58)$$

If the position operators of the particles in their configuration space are

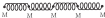


FIGURE 2.2. Equal masses coupled by equal oscillators.

denoted by q_n . The introduction of the function

$$\Phi(k) \equiv \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} q_n e^{ikn}, \quad (2.59)$$

which implies that

$$q_n = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} dk \Phi(k) e^{-ikn} \quad (2.60)$$

and therefore

$$q_{n+1} - q_n = -i \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} dk \Phi(k) \sin\left(\frac{1}{2} \pi k\right) e^{-i\pi(n+1/2)},$$

¹⁰Note, however, that the spin-statistics connection, to be discussed again later, requires that scalar and vector fields, giving rise to spin-0 and spin-1 particles, respectively, obey commutation relations, whereas spinor fields, which give rise to spin-1/2 particles, obey anti-commutation relations. Therefore, the anti-commutation relations (2.56), (2.57), and (2.58), though written for a scalar field, are possible only if the field Φ is a spinor field, which has two components, so that the right-hand sides of the second equations in (2.56), (2.57), and (2.58) should be multiplied by the unit matrix in spin space.

leads to²⁸

$$L = \int_{-L}^L dk \mathcal{L}(k) = \int_{-L}^L dk \left(\frac{1}{4} M \dot{\Phi}^2(k) \Phi^2(k) - \kappa \sin^2 \left(\frac{1}{2} \pi \right) \Phi^4(k) \Phi^2(k) \right). \quad (2.86)$$

The Lagrangian equation of motion obtained from this reads

$$\frac{1}{2} M \ddot{\Phi}(k) = -\kappa \sin^2 \left(\frac{1}{2} \pi \right) \Phi(k) \Phi^3(k),$$

the solution of which is

$$\Phi(k, t) = e^{-i\omega_k t} \Phi(k, 0), \quad (2.87)$$

where

$$\omega_k = 2\kappa/\kappa_0 \sqrt{M} \sin \left(\frac{1}{2} \pi \right) \Phi(k). \quad (2.88)$$

(We shall see that the choice of the sign in the exponential in (2.87) is needed for consistency.²⁹) The conjugate momentum operator turns out to be

$$\Pi(k) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}(k)}{\delta \dot{\Phi}(k)} = \frac{1}{4} M \dot{\Phi}^3(k) = \frac{t}{4} M \omega_k \Phi^3(k),$$

so that we obtain the commutation relation

$$i\hbar[\mu - \nu] = [\Phi(k), \Pi(k')] = \frac{t}{4} M \omega_k [\Phi(k), \Phi^3(k')],$$

or

$$[\Phi(k), \Phi^3(k')] = \frac{4\hbar}{M \omega_k} \delta(k - k'). \quad (2.89)$$

The number operator for the k -quanta of the field is therefore

$$N(k) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \frac{M \omega_k}{4\hbar} \Phi^4(k) [\Phi(k)]$$

and the field Hamiltonian is given by

$$H = \int_{-L}^L dk \kappa \sin^2 \left(\frac{1}{2} \pi \right) \Phi^4(k) \Phi^2(k) = \int_{-L}^L dk \hbar \omega_k N(k), \quad (2.90)$$

which leads to the Hamiltonian equation of motion³⁰

$$i\hbar \dot{\Phi}(k) = [\Phi(k), H] = \hbar \omega_k \Phi(k),$$

whose solution is (2.87).

The string of harmonically coupled point masses described by the Lagrangian (2.85) therefore, for each wave number k , quantum-mechanically produces quanta whose energy is given by $\hbar \omega_k = 2\kappa/\kappa_0 \sqrt{M} \sin \left(\frac{1}{2} \pi \right) \Phi(k)$ as a function of k . These quanta are called *phonons*.

²⁸ Show this.

²⁹ For the other sign and see what happens.

³⁰ Check this.

2.3.1 The electromagnetic field

The Lagrangian density $\mathcal{L}$ for the free-electromagnetic field is taken to be

$$\mathcal{L} = \frac{1}{8\pi} (\mathbf{E}^2 - \mathbf{B}^2), \quad (2.94)$$

in terms of the electric field $\mathbf{E}$ and the magnetic field $\mathbf{B}$, which in turn are expressed in terms of the scalar and vector potentials by

$$\mathbf{E} = -\frac{1}{c} \frac{\partial \mathbf{A}}{\partial t} - \nabla \phi, \quad \mathbf{B} = \nabla \times \mathbf{A}. \quad (2.95)$$

(Here c is the speed of light.) These potentials are regarded as the dynamical variables of the field, and $\mathbf{E}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ in (2.94) are to be expressed in terms of them. The Lagrangian equations of motion obtained from (2.94) via (2.95) are then found to be the Maxwell equations of the free electromagnetic field²⁰

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{E} = 0, \quad \nabla \times \mathbf{B} = \frac{1}{c} \frac{\partial \mathbf{E}}{\partial t},$$

while the other two Maxwell equations

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0, \quad \nabla \times \mathbf{E} = -\frac{1}{c} \frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t},$$

are identities that follow directly from (2.95).

The canonically conjugate momenta are defined by (2.63). Since the Lagrangian is independent of $\dot{\phi}$, there is no momentum conjugate to ϕ , but the canonical momenta conjugate to the vector potential $\mathbf{A}$ is the vector

$$\hat{\Pi} \equiv \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \dot{\mathbf{A}}} = -\frac{1}{4\pi c} \mathbf{E},$$

which leads to the Hamiltonian²¹

$$H_{\text{emag}} = \int d^3r \left[2\pi c^2 \hat{\Pi}^2 + \frac{1}{8\pi} \hat{\Pi}^2 + c(\nabla \times \mathbf{A})^2 \right],$$

where $\hat{\Pi}$ has to be expressed in terms of the vector potential by (2.95). Use of the Maxwell equations and the definition of $\hat{\Pi}$ makes the last term vanish, with the result that the energy operator, that is, the canonical Hamiltonian, is given in terms of the energy density H_{emag} by

$$H_{\text{emag}} = \int d^3r U_{\text{emag}}, \quad U_{\text{emag}} \equiv \frac{1}{8\pi} (\mathbf{E}^2 + \mathbf{B}^2). \quad (2.96)$$

²⁰Show this as an exercise. It requires some integrations by parts, in which the boundary terms at infinity are assumed to vanish.

²¹Show this as an exercise, and also verify that the Hamiltonian equations of motion are, again, the source-free Maxwell equations.

As in the case of the matter field, it is best to perform a spatial Fourier transform before turning to the canonical commutation relations. Thus we define

$$\hat{\mathbf{A}}(\mathbf{r}, 0) = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^3/2\pi} \int d^3x e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}} \hat{\mathbf{A}}_0(\mathbf{k}, 0), \quad \hat{\mathbf{A}}(\mathbf{r}, 0) = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^3/2\pi} \int d^3x e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}} \hat{\mathbf{A}}(\mathbf{k}, 0) \quad (2.54)$$

and express the Lagrangian directly in terms of the Fourier-transformed fields,

$$\mathcal{L} = \int d^3x \frac{1}{2\pi} (\dot{\hat{\mathbf{A}}} \cdot \dot{\hat{\mathbf{A}}} - \hat{\mathbf{A}} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{A}}'), \quad (2.55)$$

where $\hat{\mathbf{E}} = -\{\dot{\hat{\mathbf{A}}} - \partial\hat{\mathbf{A}}\}$ and $\hat{\mathbf{B}} = i\hat{\mathbf{A}} \times \hat{\mathbf{A}}'$. This leads to the Fourier-transformed Maxwell equations

$$\hat{\mathbf{E}} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{E}} = 1, \quad -\frac{1}{q} \hat{\mathbf{E}} = \hat{\mathbf{A}} \times \hat{\mathbf{B}}, \quad \hat{\mathbf{E}} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{B}} = 0, \quad \frac{1}{q} \hat{\mathbf{B}} = \hat{\mathbf{A}} \times \hat{\mathbf{E}},$$

and the momentum canonically conjugate to $\hat{\mathbf{A}}$

$$\hat{\mathbf{P}} = -\frac{1}{4\pi} \hat{\mathbf{E}}'.$$

The canonical commutation relations therefore are

$$[\hat{\mathbf{A}}_i(\hat{\mathbf{r}}), \hat{\mathbf{P}}_j(\hat{\mathbf{r}}')] = i\delta_{ij}\delta^3(\hat{\mathbf{r}} - \hat{\mathbf{r}}'),$$

or

$$[\hat{\mathbf{A}}_i(\hat{\mathbf{r}}), \hat{\mathbf{E}}'_j(\hat{\mathbf{r}}')] = -i\delta_{ij}\delta^3(\hat{\mathbf{r}} - \hat{\mathbf{r}}'), \quad (2.56)$$

all other commutators vanish.

The most suitable gauge to adopt is the radiation gauge, also called the Coulomb gauge, in which¹⁰ $\nabla \cdot \hat{\mathbf{A}} = 0$ and the scalar potential, which depends on distant charges instantaneously, is set equal to zero for a pure radiation field. In that case, the Fourier-transformed Maxwell equations for the vector potential simply read $\hat{\mathbf{E}} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{A}}(\mathbf{k}, \eta) = 0$, so that $\hat{\mathbf{A}}(\mathbf{k}, \eta)$ is transverse, i.e., orthogonal to $\hat{\mathbf{k}}$, and satisfies the equation of motion

$$\frac{d^2}{d\eta^2} \hat{\mathbf{A}} + \omega^2 \hat{\mathbf{A}} = 0 \quad (2.57)$$

with $\omega = \frac{1}{2}k^2$ in.

¹⁰There are certain mathematical difficulties associated with this, which we shall ignore.

The fact that the field operators $\hat{\mathbf{A}}$, $\hat{\mathbf{E}}$, and $\hat{\mathbf{B}}$ are Hermitian has the immediate consequence that their Fourier transforms are subject to the constraint

$$\hat{\mathbf{A}}(-\mathbf{k}, t) = \hat{\mathbf{A}}^\dagger(\mathbf{k}, t), \quad (2.92)$$

and similarly for the electric and magnetic fields. In order to take this restriction into account, it is most convenient to define the operators $\hat{E}(\mathbf{k}, t)$ for the equations

$$\hat{E}(\mathbf{k}, t) = i\sqrt{2\pi\hbar\omega}(\hat{A}(\mathbf{k}, t) + \hat{A}^\dagger(-\mathbf{k}, t)), \quad (2.93)$$

$$\hat{B}(\mathbf{k}, t) = -i\epsilon\sqrt{2\pi\hbar\omega}(\hat{A}(\mathbf{k}, t) - \hat{A}^\dagger(-\mathbf{k}, t)). \quad (2.94)$$

In terms of the vector potential, this means that¹⁷

$$\hat{E}(\mathbf{k}, t) = \frac{2}{i\sqrt{\hbar\omega}}(\hat{\mathbf{A}}\hat{\mathbf{k}}(\mathbf{k}, t) - \frac{1}{2}\hat{\mathbf{A}}(\mathbf{k}, t)), \quad (2.95)$$

they are transverse, $\hat{\mathbf{k}} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{E}}(\mathbf{k}, t) = 0$, and they satisfy the simple equation of motion $\dot{\hat{\mathbf{E}}} = -i\omega\hat{\mathbf{E}}$, implying that they can be expressed in terms of time-independent operators $\hat{E}(\mathbf{k})$ by

$$\hat{E}(\mathbf{k}, t) = e^{-i\omega t}\hat{E}(\mathbf{k}).$$

(Remember that $\omega = |\mathbf{k}|c \geq 0$, so that the operators $\hat{E}$ have positive frequencies.) Since $\hat{\mathbf{B}} = -\frac{1}{c}\dot{\hat{\mathbf{A}}} = \hat{B}\mathbf{e}_3$, the vector potential is given in terms of $\hat{E}$ by

$$\hat{A}(\mathbf{k}, t) = -i\epsilon\sqrt{\frac{2\pi\hbar}{\omega}}(\hat{E}(\mathbf{k})e^{-i\omega t} - \hat{E}^\dagger(-\mathbf{k})e^{i\omega t}). \quad (2.96)$$

The canonical commutation relations for the operators $\hat{E}$ are obtained by inserting (2.92) and (2.95) in (2.87), with the result

$$[\hat{E}_i(\hat{\mathbf{k}}), \hat{E}_j^\dagger(\hat{\mathbf{k}}')] = i_2\delta^{ij}(\hat{\mathbf{k}} - \hat{\mathbf{k}}'), \quad (2.97)$$

while all the other commutators vanish. Thus, again, we arrive at the commutation relations of simple harmonic oscillators, with the result that for each given $\hat{\mathbf{k}}$ (not discretized for this purpose), and for each of the two plane polarizations perpendicular to $\hat{\mathbf{k}}$ (remember that $\hat{\mathbf{k}} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{E}}(\mathbf{k}) = 0$), there are infinitely many states forming a ladder with equal-distance steps, $\hat{E}^\dagger$ acting as the raising operator and $\hat{E}$ as the lowering operator, and the ground state $|0\rangle$ defined by $\hat{E}|0\rangle = 0$. The number operator, which counts the number of quanta in each state of a given $\hat{\mathbf{k}}$ and plane polarization $\hat{\mathbf{e}}^{\perp} \perp \hat{\mathbf{k}}$, is

$$N_{\mathbf{k}}(\hat{\mathbf{e}}) = \hat{E}_i^\dagger(\hat{\mathbf{k}})\hat{E}_i(\hat{\mathbf{k}}). \quad (2.98)$$

¹⁷More fully an *ansatz*.

There remains the task of calculating the energy of this collection of oscillators.²⁸ Using (2.102), we find that²⁹

$$\begin{aligned} H_{\text{elect}} &= \frac{1}{8\pi} \int d^3r (\mathbf{E}^2 + \mathbf{B}^2) = \frac{1}{8\pi} \int d^3k [\mathbf{E}_k(\mathbf{k}) \cdot \mathbf{E}_k(-\mathbf{k}) + \mathbf{B}_k(\mathbf{k}) \cdot \mathbf{B}_k(-\mathbf{k})] \\ &= \int d^3k \hbar\omega \sum_j \hat{a}_j^\dagger \hat{a}_j (\mathbf{u}_j(\mathbf{k}) \cdot \mathbf{u}_j(\mathbf{k})) = \int d^3k \hbar\omega \sum_j \hat{a}_j^\dagger \hat{a}_j. \end{aligned}$$

Thus, the energy of a state $|n_{\mathbf{k},j}\rangle$ of n quanta of wave vector $\mathbf{k}$ and polarization j is

$$E = |n_{\mathbf{k},j}\rangle H_{\text{elect}} |n_{\mathbf{k},j}\rangle = n_{\mathbf{k},j} \hbar\omega,$$

as holds a state of n photons, each of energy $\hbar\omega$. Similarly we can calculate the electromagnetic momentum $\mathbf{P}$ of such a state by using either³⁰

$$\mathbf{P} = \frac{1}{4\pi c} \int d^3r \mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{B}, \quad (2.104)$$

or else (2.87), with the result³¹

$$(n_{\mathbf{k},j} | \mathbf{P} | n_{\mathbf{k},j}) = n_{\mathbf{k},j} \hbar \mathbf{k}.$$

Finally, we can find the angular momentum, using the operator form of the angular momentum of the electromagnetic field,³²

$$\mathbf{M} = \frac{1}{4\pi c} \int d^3r \mathbf{r} \times (\mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{B}), \quad (2.105)$$

and we obtain³³ for its z component

$$(n_{\mathbf{k},j} | M_z | n_{\mathbf{k},j}) = \langle n_{\mathbf{k},j} | \hat{a}_j^\dagger \hat{a}_j (\hat{\mathbf{L}} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{e}}_j) | n_{\mathbf{k},j} \rangle + \hbar \hat{a}_j^\dagger \hat{a}_j (\hat{\mathbf{L}} \cdot \mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{k},j}),$$

where the spin operator $\hat{\mathbf{L}}$ is defined by its action on any vector $\hat{\mathbf{f}}$,

$$\hat{L}_j \hat{f}^{(0)} = i \hbar \epsilon^{ijk} \hat{f}^{(k)} \equiv \hat{\mathbf{L}} \times \hat{\mathbf{f}} \quad (2.106)$$

and the operator $\hat{\mathbf{L}} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{e}}_j (\hat{\mathbf{L}} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{e}}_j) \equiv \hat{L}^2$ is interpreted as an analogue of the orbital angular momentum.³⁴ Since³⁵ $\sum_j \hat{L}_j^2 = 2\hat{L}^2$, the total finite spin of the photon equals $\hbar$, as $n(n+1) = 2$ means $n = 1$. (See Chapter 5 for further details.)

²⁸From the physical point of view it is again preferable here to discretize the wave vectors and replace the Fourier integrals by Fourier sums.

²⁹Verify this.

³⁰See [Jackson], p. 238.

³¹Verify this.

³²See [Jackson], p. 232.

³³There is.

³⁴Verify that $\hat{\mathbf{L}}$ satisfies the correct commutation relations (2.106).

³⁵Verify this.

The radiation field being transverse, $\vec{k} \cdot \vec{A}(\vec{k}) = 0$, for a given direction of $\vec{k}$ there are only two linearly independent $a_j(\vec{k})$ available. Supposing for the moment that a coordinate system is chosen in which $\vec{k}$ points in the positive z direction, we may call the two $a_1 \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} e^{i\lambda} a$ and $a_2 \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} e^{i\lambda} a'$ corresponding to plane polarisation in the x and y directions. Alternatively, however, one may choose the two opposite circular polarisations as fundamental and correspondingly adopt the complex unit vectors

$$\vec{e}^{\pm} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(\vec{e}^{(1)} \mp i\vec{e}^{(2)}),$$

which are eigenvectors of $\vec{k} \cdot \vec{S} = S_3$ with the eigenvalues $\pm\lambda\hbar/2$

$$S_3\vec{e}^{\pm} = \pm\lambda\hbar\vec{e}^{\pm}.$$

These are called helicity eigenstates, and they lead to the operators

$$a_{\pm} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \vec{e}^{\pm} \cdot \vec{a} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(a_1 \mp ia_2) \quad (2.106)$$

and the commutation relations¹⁷

$$[a_{\pm}(\vec{k}), a'_{\pm}(\vec{k}')] = [a_{\pm}(\vec{k}), a'_{\mp}(\vec{k}')] = \delta^3(\vec{k} - \vec{k}'), \quad (2.107)$$

while all the other commutators vanish. The number operators for the two helicity states are then defined by

$$N_{\pm}(\vec{k}) = a'_{\pm}(\vec{k})a_{\pm}(\vec{k}). \quad (2.108)$$

The advantage of using helicity, or circular polarisation, rather than plane polarisation for the labelling of the photon states is that, whereas the operators $a_{\pm}(\vec{k})$ and $N_{\pm}(\vec{k})$, $j = 1, 2$, depend on the choice of a coordinate system, the number operators $N_{\pm}(\vec{k})$ do not. This is seen by performing a rotation of the reference frame around $\vec{k}$. You then find that if the rotation is by an angle ξ , the new operators $a'_{\pm}(\vec{k})$ are given by¹⁸

$$a'_{\pm}(\vec{k}) = e^{i\xi/2}a_{\pm}(\vec{k}),$$

and as a result, the $N_{\pm}(\vec{k})$ remain unchanged, while their eigenvectors $|n_{\pm}\rangle$ undergo a phase change by $\pm\xi$.¹⁹

¹⁷Exercise 13b.

¹⁸Exercise 13c.

¹⁹Exercise 13d.

²⁰Since the phase of $a_{\pm}(\vec{k})$ varies in time as $-\omega t$, the circular polarisation can be regarded as a continual rotation of the plane of polarisation about $\vec{k}$.

So here is a summary of our results: $a_k^\dagger(\vec{k})$ is the creation operator of a photon of energy $\hbar\omega = \hbar ck > 0$, momentum $\hbar\vec{k}$, and helicity $\pm\hbar$, while $N_k(\vec{k})$ is the corresponding number operator. A normalized state of n_k photons of momentum $\hbar\vec{k}$ and helicity $\pm\hbar$ is, according to (2.41), given in terms of the normalized vacuum state $|0\rangle$ by

$$|n_k\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{n_k!}}[a_k^\dagger(\vec{k})]^{n_k}|0\rangle. \quad (2.111)$$

2.4 Canonical and Gauge Transformations

A canonical transformation is a unitary transformation of all the dynamical variables of a theory by the same operator U , so that, if the original operator was D , the new one is given by

$$D' = UDU^{-1}. \quad (2.112)$$

Such a transformation leaves all the canonical commutation relations unchanged, since

$$\begin{aligned} [D'_1, D'_2] &= U[D_1, D_2]U^{-1} = U[D_1, D_2]U^{-1} \\ &= U[D_1, D_2]U^{-1} = [D_1, D_2] \end{aligned}$$

If $[D_1, D_2]$ is simply a number (i.e., a multiple of the unit operator), then the commutation relations between the p 's and q 's are the same as those between the p 's and q 's. Furthermore, since U is unitary, D' is Hermitian whenever D is, and the spectrum—the possible results of measurements—of all observables are unchanged. Since the time-development of all dynamical variables in the Heisenberg picture is of the form (2.2), these variables can be viewed as undergoing, in the course of time, a continuous group of canonical transformations with $U(t) = e^{itH}$.

A canonical transformation of the form

$$U = e^{iF(q,p)},$$

where F is a function of q and the q 's only, is called a *gauge transformation of the first kind*. It leaves the particle-position operators q_k unchanged, while the momentum operators are changed from p_k to

$$p'_k = e^{iF} p_k e^{-iF} = e^{iF} [p_k, e^{-iF}] + p_k = -i \frac{\partial F}{\partial q_k} + p_k.$$

Consider, then, a system of particles of charge e . Recall that if the vector potential $A(\vec{r}, t)$ is replaced by $A'(\vec{r}, t) = A(\vec{r}, t) + \nabla f(\vec{r}, t)$ and if at the

even when the scalar potential is changed from $\phi(\mathbf{r}, t)$ to $\phi' = \phi - \frac{1}{c} \frac{\partial}{\partial t} f$, the electric and magnetic fields remain unchanged.⁴⁰ Such a change in the potentials is called a gauge transformation of the second kind. Therefore, if the canonical momentum operators for a particle of charge e always appear together with the vector potential in the combination $\mathbf{p}_k - \frac{e}{c} \mathbf{A}_k$, then a gauge transformation of the second kind changes

$$\mathbf{p}_k - \frac{e}{c} \mathbf{A}_k \rightarrow \mathbf{p}_k - \frac{e}{c} \mathbf{A}_k - \frac{e}{c} \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{p}_k} f,$$

which can be compensated by a gauge transformation of the first kind by setting $U = \exp(i \frac{e}{c} f)$:

$$\mathbf{p}_k - \frac{e}{c} \mathbf{A}_k = U \left(\mathbf{p}_k - \frac{e}{c} \mathbf{A}_k \right) U^{-1}. \quad (2.113)$$

This is why, just as in classical mechanics, the vector potential always has to appear together with the canonical momentum in the combination

$$\mathbf{p} - \frac{e}{c} \mathbf{A}, \quad (2.114)$$

called the “mechanical momentum.” Moreover, if the Hamiltonian of a particle of charge e in the presence of electric and magnetic fields reads

$$H = \frac{1}{2M} \left(\mathbf{p} - \frac{e}{c} \mathbf{A} \right)^2 + e\phi, \quad (2.115)$$

and similarly for multiparticle systems, then the Hamiltonian for the gauge-transformed potentials is given by

$$H' = \frac{1}{2M} \left(\mathbf{p} - \frac{e}{c} \mathbf{A}' \right)^2 + e\phi' = U H U^{-1} - i\hbar U \frac{\partial}{\partial t} U^{-1},$$

as a result of which $\Psi' \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} U \Psi$ satisfies the Schrödinger equation $i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \Psi' = H' \Psi'$ if Ψ satisfies $i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \Psi = H \Psi$. Since

$$\frac{1}{2M} \left(\mathbf{p} - \frac{e}{c} \mathbf{A} \right)^2 = \frac{1}{2M} \mathbf{p}^2 + \frac{e^2}{2Mc^2} \mathbf{A}^2 - \frac{e}{Mc} (\mathbf{p} \cdot \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{p}),$$

the interaction term in the Hamiltonian resulting from (2.115) is given by the last term, which is the equivalent of the classical $(1/c) \mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{j}$ for charged particles of velocity $\mathbf{p}/M$.

For the field, a gauge transformation of the first kind takes the form

$$\Psi(\mathbf{r}, t) \rightarrow \Psi'(\mathbf{r}, t) = e^{i\theta(\mathbf{r}, t)} \Psi(\mathbf{r}, t), \quad (2.116)$$

⁴⁰Where this, using (2.63).

so that

$$\nabla\Phi' = e^{i\lambda}[\nabla\Phi + i(\nabla\lambda)\Phi].$$

Therefore if ∇ appears in the form

$$\nabla + i\frac{e}{\hbar c}\hat{\mathbf{A}} \quad (2.117)$$

and whenever Φ is subjected to the gauge transformation (2.116), the vector potential undergoes the gauge transformation of the second kind, $\hat{\mathbf{A}} \rightarrow \hat{\mathbf{A}}' = \hat{\mathbf{A}} + \nabla\lambda$, where $\lambda = \frac{\hbar c}{e}\ell$; then

$$(\nabla + i\frac{e}{\hbar c}\hat{\mathbf{A}})\Phi \rightarrow (\nabla + i\frac{e}{\hbar c}\hat{\mathbf{A}}')\Phi' = e^{i\lambda}(\nabla + i\frac{e}{\hbar c}\hat{\mathbf{A}})\Phi.$$

Similarly, the combination

$$(\partial_t\frac{\partial}{\partial\mathbf{E}} - e\Phi) \quad (2.118)$$

is such that

$$\left(\partial_t\frac{\partial}{\partial\mathbf{E}} - e\Phi\right)\Phi \rightarrow \left(\partial_t\frac{\partial}{\partial\mathbf{E}} - e\Phi'\right)\Phi' = e^{i\lambda}\left(\partial_t\frac{\partial}{\partial\mathbf{E}} - e\Phi\right)\Phi.$$

Equation (2.88) shows that the Lagrangian remains invariant under such combined gauge transformations, from which it follows that the field equations are unchanged, and so are the canonical commutation relations.¹⁴ The Schrödinger equation (2.88) for the (charged, that is, coupled to the electromagnetic field) matter field therefore has to contain the vector potential in the same manner as the Schrödinger equation for the free vector.

In the equations governing the field or the state vector of charged particles, the electromagnetic potentials enter just in the form given by (2.114), (2.117), and (2.118), and in no additional terms; the result is called *minimal coupling to electromagnetism*.

¹⁴ This line of reasoning may be extended relativistically so that the presence of gauge invariance (of the first kind) of the matter-field equations leads to the need for the existence of an electromagnetic vector potential, coupled in such a way that its gauge invariance (of the second kind) compensates the first, and which, in turn, has to satisfy the Maxwell equations. From more generally, if the group of gauge transformations is taken to be non-abelian, the existence of other kinds of fields follows. All modern relativistic field theories are generated by arguments of this kind.

2.5 Problems and Exercises

1. Show that the commutation relations (2.11), (2.12), and (2.13) imply that for any differentiable function $f(\dots, q_k, \dots; \dots, p_k, \dots)$ of the q_k and p_k ,

$$[p_j, f] = -i\hbar \frac{\partial f}{\partial q_j}, \quad [q_k, f] = i\hbar \frac{\partial f}{\partial p_k}.$$

Hint: Begin by proving it for polynomials.

2. Show that if $f(q)$ is a differentiable function of q , then

$$f(q)e^{-i\hbar p/\hbar} = e^{-i\hbar p/\hbar} f(p) + \mathcal{O}.$$

3. Show that if $f(p)$ is a differentiable function of p , then

$$f(p)e^{i\hbar q/\hbar} = e^{i\hbar q/\hbar} f(q) + \mathcal{O}.$$

4. Prove that the parity operator commutes with the operator $\frac{d}{dx}$.
5. Show that the gaussian wave function (2.30) is properly normalized and calculate the momentum uncertainty as defined by (1.15). In., confirm (2.34).
6. Do the analogue of (2.30) to (2.34) in three dimensions.
7. Calculate the analogue of (2.35) in three dimensions.
8. Derive (2.105) by defining the momentum as the generator of translations of the whole system, using the generator (2.9).
9. Derive (2.105) by defining the angular momentum as the generator of rotations, using (2.8).
10. If an electron is initially localized within a region of diameter 10^{-4} cm, what is the size of the region in which it will be localized 1 sec later?
11. Suppose you want to minimize the uncertainty of an electron's position 31 sec after its initial position measurement. With what accuracy should you determine its initial location?

3

The Schrödinger Equation in One Dimension

According to Eq. (2.43), the time-independent Schrödinger equation for a one-particle system reads

$$\left[\frac{\mathbf{p}^2}{2M} + V(\mathbf{q}) \right] \Psi_{\mathbf{E}} = E \Psi_{\mathbf{E}}, \quad (3.1)$$

assuming that the particle is subject to the potential $V(\mathbf{q})$, or if the particle is confined to a box,

$$\left[\frac{\mathbf{p}^2}{2M} + V(\mathbf{q}) \right] \Psi_{\mathbf{E}} = E \Psi_{\mathbf{E}}, \quad (3.2)$$

3.1 A Free Particle

For a free particle in one dimension, subject to no force or constraints, (3.2) becomes the simple equation

$$\frac{\mathbf{p}^2}{2M} \Psi = E \Psi, \quad (3.3)$$

so that E is a quasi-eigenvalue of the kinetic-energy operator $\frac{\mathbf{p}^2}{2M}$. Since we have already established that the spectrum of the momentum operator $\mathbf{p}$ of an unconfined particle is the entire real line, it follows that the spectrum of the kinetic-energy operator consists of the positive real line: all non-negative numbers are in the continuous spectrum of the kinetic energy. In

the momentum representation, (3.1) becomes

$$\frac{p^2}{2M}\tilde{\psi}(p) = E\tilde{\psi}(p), \quad (3.4)$$

and the Hermitian operator p^2 can be replaced by the non-negative number p^2 . This equation is easily solved for any given non-negative E ; it has two linearly independent solutions,

$$\tilde{\psi}(p', p) = \delta(p \mp p'), \quad p' = +\sqrt{2ME}, \quad (3.5)$$

neither of which is in the Hilbert space $L^2(\mathcal{R})$. Therefore every quasi-eigenvalue of the kinetic-energy operator is doubly degenerate. The physical reason for this, of course, is that for a given kinetic energy, the momentum of the particle can be positive or negative, pointing to the right or to the left. The quasi-eigenfunctions in (3.5) are normalized so that

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dp \tilde{\psi}^*(p', p)\tilde{\psi}(p'', p) = \delta(p' - p'').$$

Using (1.72) and (3.5), we find the configuration-space wave functions of a free particle of energy $E = p^2/2M = k^2\hbar^2/2M$ to be

$$\psi(k, q) = (2\pi k)^{-1/2}e^{\pm ikq}, \quad (3.6)$$

a result we already obtained in the last chapter, in a somewhat different notation. It will be convenient, instead of insisting that $k = +\sqrt{2ME}/\hbar$, to allow the wave number k to be positive or negative, which facilitates the statement of the normalization of (3.6) to be

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dq \psi^*(k, q)\psi(k', q) = \delta(k - k')/\hbar = \delta(p - p').$$

That these functions form a complete set on $L^2(\mathcal{R})$ is expressed by the equation

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dp \psi^*(p, q)\psi(p', q) = \delta(q - q').$$

Since Eq. (2.4) is invariant under reflection, i.e., under the parity transformation, it can be expected to have odd and even solutions. Such solutions can be readily formed out of those given by (3.6), namely, $\sin kq$ and $\cos kq$. The fact that the quasi-eigenvalues are degenerate allows us to form combinations such as (3.6) that violate the symmetry of the equation, a feature of great physical significance possessed by many other systems: the symmetry of the equation can be spontaneously broken. Ultimately, the breaking of the symmetry for individual systems is determined by their initial or boundary conditions; in this particular instance, coupling our motion to the left or right.

The wave functions (34) are, of course, not normalizable and cannot represent the state of “a free particle.” As stated earlier, they may instead be regarded as describing beams of infinitely many (independent) free particles of energy $\hbar^2 k^2/2M$. The way to recognize that the wave function e^{ikx} describes a beam of particles moving to the right and e^{-ikx} to the left is to remember that the corresponding time-dependent solutions of the Schrödinger equation are $e^{i(kx - \omega t)}$ and $e^{-i(kx + \omega t)}$, respectively; the phase of the first stays constant when x increases by $\omega t/k = \hbar k/2M$ as t increases, while that of the second stays constant when x decreases by the same amount. A point of fixed phase of the first thus moves rightward and a point of fixed phase of the second, leftward; the flux density of the first is $\hbar k/M$ that of the second, $-\hbar k/M$.

3.2 A Particle With Potential Energy

In one-dimension we will encounter the simplest instances of the most important phenomena described by the one-particle Schrödinger equation in three dimensions: scattering of particles, resonances with their time delays, bound states, continuous and bound spectra. Let's look at some specific cases and then generalize.

3.2.1 The square potential barrier

We begin with a particle moving along the x -axis, encountering a potential barrier. (From now on we shall write simply x for the particle's coordinate, but you should keep in mind that x is really in *configuration space*, not in physical space.) Suppose the particle is free in region (I), where $x < -a/2$,

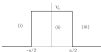


FIGURE 3.1. Square potential barrier of height V_0 and width a .

and in region (III), where $x > a/2$, while in region (II), where $-a/2 < x < a/2$, its potential energy has the constant positive value V_0 (Fig. 3.1). At the points $x = -a/2$ and $x = a/2$, but nowhere else, it encounters forces, the first pointing to the left, and the second to the right, so that in both

case the force repels the particle away from the center of the potential region. Classically, such a particle, coming in from the left, say, is reflected back if its energy is less than V_0 , and passes through the region, after being temporarily slowed down, if its energy is greater than V_0 . This is not what happens quantum mechanically.

The initial condition that particles come in from the left means that, while in region (i) we can expect flux toward the right (the incoming beam, whose normalization is under our control) as well as to the left (the reflected beam), so that there we may write $\psi_1(x) = e^{ikx} + Re^{-ikx}$, with the constant R to be determined. In region (iii) there should be no flux toward the left: if there are any particles in this region, they should all move to the right. So the solution in region (iii) should be of the form $\psi_3(x) = Te^{ikx}$, where T is another constant to be determined. In region (ii), the equation reads $-\frac{\hbar^2}{2M}\psi_2'' = (E - V_0)\psi_2$, with the solution $\psi_2 = be^{ik_0x} + ce^{-ik_0x}$, where

$$k = \frac{\sqrt{2M}}{\hbar} \sqrt{E}, \quad k_0 = \frac{\sqrt{2M}}{\hbar} \sqrt{E - V_0}.$$

In order for ψ_1 to solve the Schrödinger equation, a second-order differential equation, both ψ_1 and ψ_1' have to be continuous at the point $x = a/2$, which leads to the two equations

$$Te^{ik_0a/2} = be^{ik_0a/2} + ce^{-ik_0a/2}$$

and

$$kTe^{ik_0a/2} = k_0[be^{ik_0a/2} - ce^{-ik_0a/2}].$$

Similarly, the two equations of the continuity of ψ_1 and of ψ_1' at $x = -a/2$ read

$$\begin{aligned} be^{ik_0a/2} + e^{-ik_0a/2} &= de^{-ik_0a/2} + ce^{ik_0a/2} \\ k \left[-be^{ik_0a/2} + e^{-ik_0a/2} \right] &= k_0 \left[de^{-ik_0a/2} - ce^{ik_0a/2} \right]. \end{aligned}$$

These four equations for the four unknowns, T , R , b , and c , are easily solved, and we obtain

$$T = \frac{2ik_0e^{-ik_0a}}{2ik_0 \cos ka - i(k^2 + k_0^2) \sin ka} \quad (2.7)$$

$$R = \frac{i \sin ka e^{-ik_0a}(k^2 - k_0^2)}{2ik_0 \cos ka - i(k^2 + k_0^2) \sin ka} \quad (2.8)$$

(The two constants b and c are generally of little interest.)

You should, at this point, wonder why the wave function is required to be continuous and to have a continuous first derivative. All that quantum-mechanically matters is that it be locally square-integrable. The reason is the demand that the wave function also be in the domain of definition of the momentum p and the kinetic energy operator $p^2/2M$. A step discontinuity would prevent the wave function from being in the domain of the

momentum operator (the derivative would produce a delta function, which is not locally square integrable), and a discontinuity of the first derivative would prevent it from being in that of the square of the momentum. Therefore, the quantum requirements based on Hilbert space considerations are identical to the demands of the classical theory of differential equations.

Consider the implications of the expressions (3.7) and (3.8). A wave packet formed out of a superposition of functions of the form $\psi_k(x)$ will, for large negative times, have its main contribution from the e^{ikx} -term in the region where $x < 0$, because that is the only term that can have a stationary phase; so this is the term that describes the incoming particle. For large positive times, on the other hand, the term e^{ikx} on the left cannot contribute, whereas both the term $R e^{-ikx}$ on the left and the term $T e^{ikx}$ on the right will; thus these terms describe the outgoing waves. If the solution ψ_t is denoted by $\psi_t(x, x)$, the label k means that in the infinite past, the particle had the momentum $\hbar k$; it does not mean that the particle's momentum remains $\hbar k$; this momentum, of course, is not a constant of the motion and is even undefined during part of the journey.

With the normalization chosen, the flux coming in from the left is given by $\hbar k/M$, that going out to the right is $|T|^2 \hbar k/M$, and the magnitude of that being reflected back to the left is $|R|^2 \hbar k/M$. Therefore, if by the transmission coefficient we mean the ratio of the magnitude of the transmitted to the incoming flux, it is given by

$$|T|^2 = \frac{4E(E - V_0)}{4E(E - V_0) + V_0^2 \sin^2 \alpha x}, \quad (3.9)$$

and if the reflection coefficient is defined as the ratio of the magnitude of the reflected to the incoming flux, it is

$$|R|^2 = \frac{V_0^2 \sin^2 \alpha x}{4E(E - V_0) + V_0^2 \sin^2 \alpha x}. \quad (3.10)$$

[See Figures 3.2 and 3.3 for plots of Eq. 3.10.] It is easy to check that

$$|R|^2 + |T|^2 = 1, \quad (3.11)$$

an important equation that expresses the conservation of flux, that is, the physical requirement that the reflected and transmitted fluxes must add up to the incoming flux: $\hbar k |R|^2/M + \hbar k |T|^2/M = \hbar k/M$.

The transmission and reflection coefficients for particle coming in from the right instead of from the left are obtained similarly, by defining a solution $\psi_r(x)$ that is of the form $\psi_r(x) = T_r e^{-ikx}$ on the left and of the form $\psi_r(x) = R_r e^{ikx} + e^{-ikx}$ on the right. The Wronskian $W[\psi_l, \psi_r] \equiv \psi_l \psi_r' - \psi_r \psi_l'$ of these two solutions is a constant,³ and its value for large

³ $W[\psi_l, \psi_r]$



FIGURE 5.5. The reflection coefficient (3.30) plotted as a function of $\pi^{1/2} E/V_0$ for $2M\hbar^2 a^2/V_0^2 = 30$.



FIGURE 5.6. The reflection coefficient (3.30) plotted as a function of $\pi^{1/2} E/V_0$ for $2M\hbar^2 a^2/V_0^2 = 100$.

positive x is $5M\hbar^2$, while its value for large negative x is $5M\hbar^2$. We can therefore conclude that $T = T_0$; that is, the transmission amplitudes for left and right incidence are always equal. In this particular case we can say more, since the potential is invariant under reflection, so must be the values of R and R_0 ; hence both the formulae (3.7) and (3.8) hold for left-incidence as well as right-incidence.

These results have a number of interesting features. Notice the pronounced diffraction effects near the "edge," when $E \approx V_0$; at those values of $E \geq V_0$ for which $\alpha_n = \alpha_0$, $\alpha = 0, 1, 2, \dots$, there is full transmission and no reflection, the energy differences from one such transmission maximum to the next being $\Delta E = \pi^2 \hbar^2 / 10Ma^2$. If the phase of T is defined to be $\varphi = \alpha\theta$, i.e., $T = |T|e^{i\alpha\theta}$, (3.7) tells us that

$$\tan \varphi = \frac{k^2 + \alpha^2}{2\alpha k} \tan \alpha a,$$

and its derivative when $\sin \alpha z = 0$ is

$$\frac{d(\psi - \alpha k)}{dz} = \frac{\pi}{2a} (k^2 - \alpha^2),$$

which implies, according to (3.11), that there is a time delay τ in the transmitted wave,

$$\tau = \frac{\pi \hbar}{2(E_0 - E)} (k^2 - \alpha^2) = \frac{\pi \hbar^2}{2(E_0 - E)} V_0. \quad (3.12)$$

This should be compared to the classical time delay caused by the slowing down of the particle as it crosses the barrier, where its velocity is $\hbar\alpha/\hbar' = \hbar\alpha/\hbar$ instead of its original $\hbar k/\hbar'$, as a result of which $\tau_0 = \pi \hbar^2/\hbar\alpha = \pi \hbar^2/\hbar = \pi \alpha/\hbar = \pi \alpha/(k + \alpha)$. If $\alpha \ll k$, so that the particle skims over the top of a high potential barrier,

$$\tau = \frac{\hbar}{2\alpha} \tau_0 \gg \tau_0, \quad (3.13)$$

the quantum-mechanical time delay is then much larger than the classical one.

At certain energies, two phenomena occur together: I) the reflection coefficient vanishes—the barrier becomes transparent—and II) the transmitted particle emerges after a lengthy delay—the particles linger near the barrier for a long time; the combination of these two effects is called a resonance. A delay in the emerging flux is an important part of a resonance phenomenon, not just the maximal transmission. Except at these special energies, there is always some reflection, however, since $|R|^2 \leq V_0^2/(2E - V_0)^2 = 1/(2k^2 - 1)^2$, when $E > V_0$, there is essentially full transmission; at high energies, the barrier becomes practically invisible, as it is classically.

When the energy is below the top of the barrier, $E < V_0$, (3.8) and (3.10) still hold, but α becomes imaginary and $|T|^2$ can be written in the form

$$|T|^2 = \frac{1}{1 + \frac{V_0^2}{4E(E - V_0)} \sinh^2 \left(\frac{\pi}{2} \sqrt{2M(V_0 - E)} \right)}. \quad (3.14)$$

That this differs from zero shows that there is transmission even below the top of the barrier; the particle can penetrate it, even though, classically, they could not. This phenomenon is usually referred to as the tunnel effect. Far below the top, when $2M(E - V_0) > 1$, the tunneling probability can be written

$$|T|^2 \approx 16 \frac{E}{V_0} \left(1 - \frac{E}{V_0} \right) e^{-2\pi \sqrt{2M(V_0 - E)}}, \quad (3.15)$$

an expression that can be used as a rough approximation in more general settings. It allows us, for example, to estimate the lifetime of a particle "trapped" inside a nucleus by its potential barrier. [This is left as a problem.

for you to calculate.) At the same time as the amplitude of the transmitted wave function is reduced by transmission through the barrier and few particles manage to penetrate it, they are also retarded by the journey. As shown in Eq.(2.11), this effect can be calculated by means of the k -derivative of the phase of T , and we find that in the limit when (3.15) is valid, the wave packet center has been shifted back by the width a of the barrier.³

What are the consequences of rigidly translating the position of the potential? Setting $x = x' - \zeta$ in the Schrödinger equation has the effect of shifting the potential by ζ to the right. (The origin of the x -axis, i.e., the center of the barrier, is located at $x' = \zeta$.) In region (II), the solution ψ_0 , when multiplied by the constant $e^{ik\zeta}$, will now have the form $Te^{ikx'}$, and in region (I) it has the form $Re^{ikx'}e^{-ik\zeta} + e^{ikx'}$. Therefore, T is unchanged and R has to be replaced by $Re^{ik\zeta}$; neither $|T|^2$ nor $|R|^2$ is changed.

3.2.2 The potential well

The results we have obtained for $E > V_0 > 0$ are equally valid when $E > 0$ and $V_0 < 0$, so that the potential barrier becomes a potential well (Fig. 3.4), which, from both sides, exerts a force on the particle that attracts it towards the center. In that case, however, the energy spectrum will consist not only of the positive and free, but there will also be discrete eigenvalues. These are found as follows.

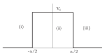


FIGURE 3.4. Potential well of depth V_0 and width a .

First of all, in order for a solution to be square integrable, it cannot be of the form e^{ikx} outside the well, with k real; instead we have to look for decaying solutions of the form $e^{-k|x|}$ on the right and $e^{k|x|}$ on the left, with $E < 0$ and $|k| = \sqrt{-2mE}/\hbar$. The discrete eigenvalues therefore have to be negative. This makes very good physical sense: the potential energy at infinite distance being zero—which can be regarded as the definition of the zero point of the energy—a particle with positive energy can escape

³Where this is an overstatement.

to infinity, while a particle with negative energy cannot. As a result, it is a general fact that whenever the potential vanishes at infinity (sufficiently rapidly), the continuous energy spectrum occupies the entire positive half-axis, while the discrete eigenvalues (if any) are negative.¹

Since the potential is an even function of x , we are going to look for odd and even solutions. In region (II), the solution must be of the form $de^{-\kappa x}$ while in region (I), the odd and even solutions are, respectively, $\psi = a \sin \kappa x$ and $\psi = a \cos \kappa x$, where $\cos \kappa^2 = -(k^2 + 2M^2 V_0)/k^2$. At $x = a/2$ we have to match the logarithmic derivatives of the solutions. (This is a convenient way of making sure that both the functions and its derivatives are continuous, and it eliminates an embarrassing constant factor.) For the odd solution, this requires

$$k = -\kappa \cot(\kappa a/2), \quad (3.16)$$

and for the even solution,

$$k = \kappa \tan(\kappa a/2). \quad (3.17)$$

Plotting the left- and right-hand sides of (3.16) as functions of κ shows the solutions as the intersections of the curve $f(\kappa) = \sqrt{2M^2 V_0/(k^2 - \kappa^2)}$ with the curve $g(\kappa) = -\kappa \cot(\kappa a/2)$. Since $f(\kappa) > 0$ up to the point $\kappa = \sqrt{2M^2 V_0}/k$ and $g(\kappa)$ does not turn positive until $\kappa > \pi/a$, there can be no intersection of f and g unless $|V_0| > \pi^2 k^2/(2Ma^2)$. (Fig. 3.1.) As $|V_0|$ increases, the number of intersections grows without limit.

For the even solutions, (3.17) shows that we are looking for the intersections of the curve $f(\kappa)$ with $h(\kappa) = \kappa \tan(\kappa a/2)$. Since $h(\kappa)$ starts out positive at the origin and increases to infinity at $\kappa = \pi/a$, the two curves will always intersect at least once, so that there is always at least one solution of (3.17).

The solutions we have found are the bound states of the particle in the presence of a square-well potential, which produces an inward-directed kick at the two points $x = \pm a/2$ but no other force. Whereas classically such a particle will be confined to the interior if its energy is negative, quantum mechanically it has a finite probability of being found outside. (To calculate this probability will be one of your homework exercises.) The eigenvalues are those values of the energy at which the particle can remain in a steady state without escaping to infinity. This is because if at the time $t = 0$ the particle is in an eigenstate $\psi_E(x)$ of $\mathcal{H}$ with the eigenvalue E , then at the later time t its state is $\psi(x, t) = \psi_E(x)e^{-iEt/\hbar}$, so that the probability of finding the particle in the volume element dx is $|\psi(x, t)|^2 dx = |\psi_E(x)|^2 dx$, just as it was at $t = 0$. By contrast, for any state made up of a superposition of continuous quasi-eigenvalues, such as $\int dk e^{-iE(k)t/\hbar} f(k) \psi(k, x)$,

¹There are instances in which the Schrödinger equation has positive discrete eigenvalues, which therefore are excluded in the continuous, but for the one-particle Schrödinger equation there are no exceptional cases, which come only for rather pathological potentials.



FIGURE 1.1. The upper figure shows the function $g(x) = -\cos x$, the right-hand side of (2.36), and the function $f(x) = \sqrt{2}e^{-x^2}$, its left-hand side, with $A = 1/2$. The lower figure shows $h(x) = x \tanh x$, the right-hand side of (2.17), and $f(x)$ with $A = 1$. Here $x^{1/2} \approx x/2$ and $A^{1/2} \approx \sqrt{2} \approx \sqrt{2} \sqrt{2}/2$.

the probability density tends to zero as $t \rightarrow \infty$ since the probability of finding the particle in any given finite region in the infinite past or future vanishes. This difference is the essential characteristic of bound states, not just in one dimension, but in three dimensions as well. (On the other hand, the fact that, no matter how weak the negative potential $-|V_0|$ is, there is always at least one bound state, is a general feature of the Schrödinger equation in one dimension; it does not hold in three dimensions.)¹ The existence of such spatially self-confined states of certain specific energies is one of the most characteristic features of quantum mechanics as distinct from classical mechanics. As a consequence, two identical systems in the same bound state are completely indistinguishable and stable: two hydrogen atoms in isolation are truly identical stable systems.

As the potential well is made deeper and deeper it becomes convenient to set the origin of energy at the bottom of the well, which means setting $E = \hbar^2 \alpha^2 / 2M$ and $E^0 = 2M(E - |V_0|)/\hbar^2 \rightarrow -\infty$. In the region outside the potential well, the wave function then vanishes identically in the limit, and we are simply left with the problem to solve the Schrödinger equation $\psi'' = -\alpha^2 \psi$ for $-\alpha/2 < x < \alpha/2$, with the boundary conditions $\psi(-\alpha/2) =$

¹You should also note that the threshold potential strength at which the first odd bound state appears just at the energy $E = 0$, i.e., when $|V_0| = \pi^2 \hbar^2 / 2Ml^2$. The reflection coefficient vanishes at $E = 0$.

$\psi(\alpha, \beta) = 0^4$ in agreement with (3.15) and (3.17) in the limit as $|V_0| \rightarrow \infty$, this problem has the odd solutions $\psi = \sin \alpha$ with $\alpha = \sqrt{2ME_0}/\hbar \alpha = 2m/\hbar \alpha$, $\alpha = 1, 2, \dots$, and the even solutions $\psi = \cos \alpha$ with $\alpha = (2m/\hbar) + 2m/\hbar \alpha$, $\alpha = 0, 1, \dots$. The ground state has the energy $E = (2m/\hbar)^2/2M^2$ and (in accordance with Sturm-Liouville theory) its wave function is nodeless, while the wave function of the n^{th} level has $n - 1$ nodes.

3.2.3 General transmission and reflection

The physical effects described for the case of square potential wells and barriers are of general validity. Whenever the potential vanishes sufficiently rapidly as $|x| \rightarrow \infty$, it is useful to define two linearly independent solutions ψ_1 and ψ_2 of the Schrödinger equation for $E > 0$ by the following boundary conditions: the function $\psi_1(x)$ is defined by the requirements that as $x \rightarrow -\infty$

$$\psi_1'(x) + ik\psi_1(x) = 2ik e^{ikx} \rightarrow 0, \quad (3.18)$$

while as $x \rightarrow +\infty$,

$$\psi_1'(x) - ik\psi_1(x) \rightarrow 0, \quad (3.19)$$

and $\psi_2(x)$ is defined by the requirements that as $x \rightarrow +\infty$,

$$\psi_2'(x) - ik\psi_2(x) = 2ik e^{-ikx} \rightarrow 0, \quad (3.20)$$

while as $x \rightarrow -\infty$

$$\psi_2'(x) + ik\psi_2(x) \rightarrow 0. \quad (3.21)$$

It then follows that there exist three constants T , R_1 , and R_2 such that as $x \rightarrow -\infty$,

$$\psi_1(x) = e^{ikx} + R_1 e^{-ikx} + O(x^{-1}), \quad \psi_2(x) = T e^{-ikx} + O(x^{-1}), \quad (3.22)$$

and as $x \rightarrow +\infty$,

$$\psi_1(x) = e^{-ikx} + R_2 e^{ikx} + O(x^{-1}), \quad \psi_2(x) = T e^{ikx} + O(x^{-1}), \quad (3.23)$$

from which the ratio of the fluxes leads to the reflection and transmission coefficients $|R_1|^2$, $|R_2|^2$, and $|T|^2$. That the two transmission amplitudes are equal follows from the same Wronskian argument as before. Since the conservation of flux again leads to (3.11), it follows that $|R_1|^2 = |R_2|^2 = 1 - |T|^2$, even though the amplitudes R_1 and R_2 need not be equal.

⁴The analogous problem to a square well of the Schrödinger equation, on a finite interval, is standard Sturm-Liouville problem.

3.2.1 The double well

Suppose now there are two identical wells of width l and with infinitely high walls, located symmetrically about the origin, a distance $2a$ apart. In that case, the energy levels are the same of any two of the eigenvalues for each individual well. However, there now is a twofold degeneracy because the energy of a state in which there is a wave with n nodes in the left well and one with n or $n+1$ nodes in the right well is equal to that of the reflected state, corresponding to the classical fact that for a given energy, the particle could be either in the left or in the right well. (If the potential is "well behaved," rather than being infinite on a stretch of the real axis, as in this instance, there can be no degeneracy of eigenvalues in one dimension—though there is degeneracy of the quasi-eigenvalues in the continuous spectrum—because that would imply that every solution of this second-order ordinary differential equation with a given energy is square integrable.) Notice that, even though the Hamiltonian has reflection symmetry, so that parity is conserved, there are nonsymmetric solutions (solutions that are not eigenstates of parity). This spontaneous symmetry breaking is possible only because of the degeneracy, which allows the formation of asymmetric superpositions of two reflection-symmetric solutions.

Let us next modify this double well and give it the form shown in Figure 3.6, two wells separated by a barrier of width $2a$ and height V_0 . The even



FIGURE 3.6. A double potential well with infinitely high walls.

solutions below the barrier top must have the form $\psi = \cosh \kappa x$ in the barrier ($\kappa = \sqrt{2M(V_0 - E)}/\hbar$), and $\psi = \cosh[\kappa(x - l - a)]$ in the right-hand well. Matching logarithmic derivatives at the right barrier wall leads to the equation

$$\kappa \tanh \kappa a = -\kappa \cot kl. \quad (3.23)$$

The odd solution, on the other hand, should have the form $\psi = \sinh \kappa x$ in the barrier, which leads to the equation

$$\kappa \sinh \kappa a = -\kappa \cot kl. \quad (3.24)$$



FIGURE 3.7. The colliding ammonia molecule.

As $V_0 \rightarrow \infty$, both (3.24) and (3.25) lead to $|\text{cosh } kl| = \infty$, $\text{Im } k, |l| = \pi a$, and each level is doubly degenerate, as we anticipated. However, for $a \gg 2\pi$ we have

$$\cosh \pi a = \frac{1 + e^{-2\pi a}}{1 - e^{-2\pi a}} \simeq 1 + 2e^{-2\pi a}, \quad \tanh \pi a = \frac{1 - e^{-2\pi a}}{1 + e^{-2\pi a}} \simeq 1 - 2e^{-2\pi a},$$

and the equation for the even solutions becomes

$$\frac{1}{2a} \tan[k_0 a] = -\frac{1}{a}(1 + 2e^{-2\pi a}),$$

while that for the odd solutions reads

$$\frac{1}{2a} \tan[k_0 a] = -\frac{1}{a}(1 - 2e^{-2\pi a}).$$

The two levels are now no longer degenerate and we calculate³ the split between them by setting $k_2 = k_1 + \epsilon$, obtaining

$$\epsilon = \frac{dk}{d\ell} e^{-2\pi a} = \frac{dk}{d\ell \sqrt{2M(V_0 - E)}} e^{-2\pi a \sqrt{2M(V_0 - E)}/\hbar}.$$

Therefore, for a high barrier separating the two wells, the degeneracies are split by

$$\Delta E = \frac{\hbar^2 V_0}{1/\sqrt{2M(V_0 - E)}} e^{-2\pi a \sqrt{2M(V_0 - E)}/\hbar}. \quad (3.26)$$

This result for the energy splitting has direct physical applications. For example, the simple potential shown in Figure 3.8 constitutes a “toy model”

³The k .

of the tetrahedral ammonia molecule NH_3 , whose “inversion spectrum” with a frequency $\nu \approx 6.5 \text{ cm}^{-1}$ is caused by the effect we have calculated. It corresponds to a classical picture in which the nitrogen atom slowly oscillates from one side of the plane of the three hydrogen atoms to the other (Fig. 3.7). According to (3.26), this oscillation frequency $\nu = \Delta E_1/2\pi\hbar$ is proportional to the tunnelling probability through the potential barrier, as given by (3.15).

3.2.1 The Kronig-Penney potential

The next example we want to investigate is that of a periodic potential. Suppose the potential energy is of the form

$$V(x) = \begin{cases} V_0 & \text{if } |x| < a, \\ 0 & \text{if } a < |x| < a+b, \end{cases}$$

and $V(x+l) = V(x)$, with $l = 2a+b$; this is called a *Kronig-Penney potential* (Fig. 3.8). In the n^{th} valley, the solution can be conveniently written in the form

$$\psi_n = A_n \sin k(x+a-na) + B_n \cos k(x+a-na),$$

where $k \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \sqrt{2(E-V_0)/\hbar^2}$, while in the bump to the right of the n^{th} valley it may be written in the form



FIGURE 3.8. The Kronig-Penney potential.

$$\psi_n = a_n \sin k(x+a-na) + b_n \cos k(x+a-na),$$

where $\kappa \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \sqrt{2(V_0-E)/\hbar^2}$. Matching ψ_n and its first derivative at $x = na - a$ gives $B_n = b_n$ and $k b_n = \kappa a_n$; the two matching equations at $x = na + a$ can be expressed in matrix form by defining

$$A_n \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \begin{pmatrix} A_n \\ B_n \end{pmatrix},$$

$$M_1 \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \begin{pmatrix} -\sin kl & \cos kl \\ \cos kl & \sin kl \end{pmatrix}, \quad R_1 \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \begin{pmatrix} \kappa_1/a \sin kb & \cos kb \\ \cos kb & -(\kappa_1/b) \sin kb \end{pmatrix},$$

so that the equation becomes $M_1 A_{n+1} = R_1 A_n$ or $A_{n+1} = M_1 A_n$, where $M \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} R_1^{-1} R_2 = M_1 R_2$, since $M_1^2 = \mathbf{1}$. As a result, we have $A_{n+1} = M^n A_1$.

and in order for the solution to remain bounded, both to the left and to the right, A_2 must stay bounded as $n \rightarrow \pm\infty$, which means that A_2^2 must not grow without limit, either as $n \rightarrow \infty$ or as $n \rightarrow -\infty$. Consider the eigenvalues of A_2 . Since $\det A_1 = 1$, the equation $\det(A_2 - \alpha I) = 0$ for the eigenvalues α of A_2 reads $\alpha^2 - 2\tau\alpha + 1 = 0$, where $\tau \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} A_2 = \frac{1}{2}(A_{211} + A_{222})$. Therefore, $\alpha = \tau \pm \sqrt{\tau^2 - 1}$ and $\alpha_1\alpha_2 = 1$. In order for A_2^n to remain finite as $n \rightarrow \pm\infty$, it is necessary and sufficient that $|\alpha_1| = |\alpha_2| = 1$, which implies $\tau^2 \leq 1$; if $\tau = \pm 1$ we obtain $\alpha_1 = \alpha_2 = 1$, i.e., $A_2 = I$, while $\tau^2 < 1$ leads to $\alpha_1 = \alpha_2 = \tau \pm i\sqrt{1 - \tau^2}$. Define $\tau \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \cos \gamma$, so that $\alpha_1 = e^{i\gamma}$, $\alpha_2 = e^{-i\gamma}$, and the result becomes

$$\cos \gamma = \tau(\hbar) = \cos \text{Re} \text{arccos} \left(-\frac{E^2 + k^2}{2\Delta E} \right) \text{arccos} \text{arccos} \hbar. \quad (3.27)$$

[A plot of the function $\tau(\hbar)$ is shown in Figure 3.3.] These regions of the

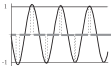


FIGURE 3.3. A plot of the function $F(\hbar) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \tau(\hbar/\Delta E)$, where τ is given by (3.27). The heavy gray lines make up the spectrum with its gaps.

real domain where $|\tau| \leq 1$ produce the allowed values of $E = k^2\hbar^2/2M$, whereas those stretches where $|\tau| > 1$ are forbidden. In other words, the spectrum consists of bands separated by gaps.

Suppose that the vectors

$$C^{\pm} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \begin{pmatrix} p^{\pm} \\ p^{\pm} \end{pmatrix}$$

are the eigenvectors of A_1 with the eigenvalues $e^{\pm i\gamma}$, respectively, so that $p^{+1} = p^{\pm} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} p$, $p^{-1} = e^{\pm} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} e$, and in the n^{th} valley, where $nl - b - a < x < nl + a$,

$$\psi^{\pm}(x) = e^{\pm i\gamma n} [p^{\pm} \sinh(x + a - nl) + e^{\pm} \cosh(x + a - nl)]$$

and for $nl - a < x < nl + a$,

$$\psi^I(x) = e^{i\pi n\gamma/2} p^{\frac{1}{2}} \left[\frac{k}{\alpha} \sin \alpha(x + a - nl) + e^{\pi} \cos \alpha(x + a - nl) \right].$$

Define, then, $\psi^I(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} e^{i\pi n\gamma/2} \psi^B(x)$, so that for $-b - a < x - nl < -a$,

$$\psi^I(x) = e^{i\pi(n-1)\gamma/2} p^{\frac{1}{2}} [\sinh(x + a - nl) + e^{\pi} \cosh(x + a - nl)],$$

and for $-a < x - nl < a$,

$$\psi^I(x) = e^{i\pi(n-1)\gamma/2} p^{\frac{1}{2}} \left[\frac{k}{\alpha} \sin \alpha(x + a - nl) + e^{\pi} \cos \alpha(x + a - nl) \right],$$

which shows that $\psi^I(x + l) = \psi^I(x)$. The solution $\psi^I(x)$ therefore is a product of a function with the same periodicity as the potential and a plane wave with the wave number $K \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \gamma/l$.⁴ The two functions ψ^I are one another's complex conjugates, $\psi^{I*} = \psi^I$, and they are linearly independent, except at the band edges, where $\sin \gamma = 0$, that is, where $n\gamma = n\pi$, $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$

The solutions $\psi^I(x)$ are called *Bloch functions*, and they play an important role in solid-state physics, since the electrons in a crystalline solid find themselves in the periodic environment provided by the arrangements of the molecules. The one-dimensional Kronig-Penney potential constitutes a very oversimplified model for the motion of electrons along a chain wire. The band structure of their energy spectrum accounts for the existence of electrical conduction, in spite of the fact that if the molecules making up the solid were isolated, the electrons would be bound and localized. It is the regular arrangement of the molecules in a crystal that allows them to penetrate the barriers between neighboring molecules and to roam in the conduction bands as if they were free, albeit with a modified momentum.

3.2.6 The simple harmonic oscillator

The simple one-dimensional harmonic oscillator is probably the most fundamental dynamical system in all of physics. Not only does it arise in many different contexts and guises, but, as stressed already in Chapter 1 and Chapter 2, it lies at the heart of how particles arise from quantum fields in the first place. (See p. 58.)

The potential energy of a simple oscillator of mass M and classical frequency ω , centered at the origin, is given by $V(x) = \frac{1}{2} M \omega^2 x^2$, so that its Hamiltonian is $H = p^2/2M + \frac{1}{2} M \omega^2 q^2$ and the Schrödinger equation is

⁴According to a theorem of Floquet, wave functions of such a product form exist for any periodic potential, not just for Kronig-Penney potentials.

the configuration representation reads

$$-\frac{\hbar^2}{2M} \frac{d^2\psi}{dx^2} + \frac{1}{2} M\omega^2 x^2\psi = E\psi.$$

Defining the operator

$$x \equiv \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left(q + \frac{d}{dQ} \right), \quad \text{so that} \quad x^2 = \frac{1}{2} \left(q + \frac{d}{dQ} \right)^2, \quad (3.38)$$

where $q \equiv \frac{d\phi}{dx} \sqrt{\frac{2M}{\hbar\omega}}$, allows us to transform the Hamiltonian into

$$H = \hbar\omega \left(x^2 + \frac{1}{2} \right),$$

while the operators x and x^2 satisfy the commutation relation

$$[x, x^2] = 1.$$

We may now utilize our earlier results for the oscillator in Chapter 1. As we found before Eq. (1.46), the eigenvalues of the operator $\frac{\hbar^2}{2M} \frac{d^2}{dx^2} x^2$ are the non-negative integers, so that the eigenvalues of the simple harmonic oscillator are $E_n = (n + \frac{1}{2})\hbar\omega$, where $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ (You may recall that the "old quantum theory" led to the energies $E_n = n\hbar\omega$, without the zero-point energy $\frac{1}{2}\hbar\omega$.)

The ground state is determined by Eq. (3.43) or $x\psi_0 = 0$, which now reads

$$d_\phi \psi_0 = 0,$$

the solution of which is $d_\phi(\psi) = c e^{-\frac{1}{2}Q^2}$. In order to normalize it, choose $c = \pi^{-1/4}$; according to (3.44), the normalized x^2 eigenfunction is then given by

$$\psi_0(Q) = \frac{\left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left(q + \frac{d}{dQ} \right) \right]^n}{n! (2\pi)^{1/4}} e^{-\frac{1}{2}Q^2}. \quad (3.39)$$

The functions defined by

$$R_n(Q) \equiv e^{\frac{1}{2}Q^2} \left(q + \frac{d}{dQ} \right)^n e^{-\frac{1}{2}Q^2} \quad (3.40)$$

are called *Hermite polynomials* (see Appendix B.2),² and the normalized harmonic oscillator wave functions are expressed in terms of them by

$$\psi_n(Q) = \frac{1}{2^n n! \pi^{1/4} \sqrt{Q_0}} R_n(Q) e^{-\frac{1}{2}Q^2}, \quad (3.41)$$

²Show this.

³Therewith that R_n is a polynomial of degree n with n real zeros.

or explicitly

$$R_0(x) = \frac{(\hbar/2m)^{1/2}}{2\sqrt{(\hbar/2m)^2 - E_0}} R_0(x) \exp(-E_0 x^2/\hbar^2). \quad (1.42)$$

The classical probability density of a particle trapped in a harmonic oscillator well can be defined by the length of time the particle spends in the interval dx , which is dx/v . More classically, $v = \sqrt{2E_0/\hbar^2} dx$, so the (normalized) classical probability density is given by

$$R_{cl}(x) = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{(\hbar/2m)^2 - E_0}} = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{(\hbar/2m)^2 - E_0}}.$$

The quantum mechanical probability density, on the other hand, is given by $|R_0(x)|^2 = |R_0(x)|^2$. When comparing the two, it is interesting to note that $R_{cl}(x)$ does not have the $x > \sqrt{\hbar^2/2E_0}$ behavior. It has to appear in writing the Schrödinger equation in the form $R'' + [E_0 - (m\omega^2/2)x^2]R = 0$. When the right-hand side of this equation is positive, R oscillates around the x -axis, and when it is negative or infinity, it cannot have any more. Therefore, at the maximum



FIGURE 11.1. V is the harmonic oscillator potential, ψ_0 is the corresponding energy eigenfunction for $E = E_0$, and ψ_1 is the energy eigenfunction for $E = E_1$.

of the wave functions are in the region inside the potential, $x^2 < \hbar^2/2E_0$. When the particle is classically allowed to be in the classically forbidden region, $x^2 > \hbar^2/2E_0$, the wave functions simply decay (Fig. 11.1).

The expectation value of the potential energy in the n^{th} state can be calculated from the result of § 11 of the harmonic problem and some

out to be $\langle V \rangle = \frac{1}{2} \hbar \omega \left(n + \frac{1}{2} \right) = \frac{1}{2} E_n$, just as it does classically: on average, half the energy is potential energy and half is kinetic.³²

It is also interesting to see what happens in the course of time to a “coherent wave packet” subject to a harmonic oscillator potential. Suppose that at the time $t = 0$ the wave function is of the form

$$\psi(x, 0) = e^{-\frac{1}{2}(\alpha - i\beta)x^2}.$$

By means of the generating function (2.40), this can be expanded in the form

$$\psi(x) = e^{-\frac{1}{2}(\alpha - i\beta)x^2} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(\alpha - i\beta)^n}{n!} e^{-\frac{1}{2}\alpha x^2} H_n(x).$$

Since $e^{-\frac{1}{2}\alpha x^2} H_n(x) = h_n(x)$ for the oscillator, the time-development of $\psi(x, t)$ can therefore be written down directly using $E_n = \hbar \omega \left(n + \frac{1}{2} \right)$,

$$\psi(x, t) = e^{-\frac{1}{2}(\alpha - i\beta)x^2} e^{-i\omega t} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(\alpha - i\beta)^n e^{-\frac{1}{2}\alpha x^2}}{n!} e^{-iE_n t} H_n(x),$$

which can be resummed,

$$\psi(x, t) = \exp\left[-\frac{1}{2}(\alpha - i\beta) \cos \omega t\right] \exp\left[\frac{i}{2}(\alpha - i\beta) \sin \omega t\right] \exp\left[-\frac{1}{2}\alpha \cos^2 \omega t - \frac{1}{2}i\beta \sin^2 \omega t - i\omega t\right],$$

so that

$$|\psi(x, t)|^2 = e^{-\frac{1}{2}(\alpha - i\beta) \cos \omega t}.$$

This result is noteworthy for two reasons. First of all, the packet does not change shape in the course of time—it does not spread. Second, the center of the packet simply oscillates with frequency ω , just like the classical particle. Such “coherent wave packets” are special cases of states obtained as follows.

3.2.7 Coherent states

The “lowering operator” a defined by (3.35) is, of course, not Hermitian and does not correspond to an observable; it is nevertheless of interest to find its eigenstates, if it has any, which satisfy

$$a\Phi_\alpha = \alpha\Phi_\alpha.$$

Expanding Φ_α on the basis of the harmonic-oscillator eigenstates $|n\rangle$,

$$\Phi_\alpha = \sum_n c_n |n\rangle,$$

³²More that this is in agreement with the virial theorem (2.46).

and using (1.43), which implies that

$$a(n) = \sqrt{n} a(n-1),$$

we obtain

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} c_n a(n) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} c_{n+1} \sqrt{n+1} a(n) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} c_n a(n),$$

from which we conclude $c_{n+1} = \alpha c_n / \sqrt{n+1}$, and therefore

$$c_n = c_0 \frac{d^n}{\sqrt{n!}}.$$

Now let us check under what conditions on α the alleged state Φ_α is normable and therefore acceptable as an eigenstate:

$$(\Phi_\alpha, \Phi_\alpha) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} |c_n|^2 = |\alpha|^2 \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{|c_0|^2}{n!} = |\alpha|^2 e^{|\alpha|^2},$$

which means that Φ_α is normable for all complex values of α and every complex number α is an eigenvalue of $\hat{a}$. (So the “discrete” point spectrum of the non-Hermitian operator $\hat{a}$ forms a continuum; this cannot happen for Hermitian operators.) In order to normalize Φ_α we choose

$$c_0 = e^{-1/2|\alpha|^2},$$

and we have explicitly, with $a\Phi_0 = 0$,

$$\Phi_\alpha = e^{-1/2|\alpha|^2} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(\alpha d)^n}{n!} \Phi_0 = e^{-1/2|\alpha|^2 + \alpha d} \Phi_0. \quad (1.55)$$

Since for any eigenstate Φ_α of $\hat{a}$ we have $\|a\Phi_\alpha\| = |\alpha| \|\Phi_\alpha\|$ and there is no limit to the size of $|\alpha|$, it follows that the lowering operator $\hat{a}$ is unbounded. Its domain of definition is the set of all vectors $\Psi = \sum b_n \Phi_n$ for which not only $\sum |b_n|^2 < \infty$ but also $\sum n|b_n|^2 < \infty$; the domain of $\hat{a}^m$ shrinks with increasing m .¹¹

The eigenstates of $\hat{a}$ are called *coherent states*. Let us see what they are like in the configuration representation. In terms of $d^{\text{op}} \xi = \sqrt{\hbar/m\omega} d/d\xi$ we have the wave function

$$\psi_\alpha = e^{-1/2|\alpha|^2} e^{-i\alpha d},$$

from (1.55), (1.56), (1.57), and (1.43) we therefore obtain

$$\psi_\alpha = e^{-1/2|\alpha|^2} e^{-i\alpha d} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n!} \left[\frac{\alpha}{\sqrt{2}} \left(\xi - \frac{d}{d\xi} \right) \right]^n e^{-\xi^2/2}$$

¹¹ $\mathfrak{H}(\mathfrak{H})^m$.

¹² To avoid confusion, we are going back to using q for the particle's coordinate.

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= e^{-1/2} e^{-1/2} \left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \sum_n \frac{1}{n!} \left(\frac{\hat{p}}{\sqrt{M\omega}} \right)^n e^{-1/2} \hat{M}\omega |0\rangle \right) \\
 &= e^{-1/2} e^{-1/2} \left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-1/2} e^{-1/2} \sqrt{2\pi} \right) \\
 &= e^{-1/2} \exp \left[\frac{1}{2} p^2 - \frac{1}{2} (p^2 - \frac{1}{2} (2 - \sqrt{2M\omega})^2) \right],
 \end{aligned}$$

and as a result,

$$\psi_0(x) = e^{-1/4} \exp \left[\frac{1}{2} p^2 - \frac{1}{2} (p^2 - (\sqrt{2M\omega}/2(x - a))^2) \right]. \quad (3.34)$$

So the coherent states are Gaussian wave packets. Defining $\tilde{x} = x + (1/\sqrt{2M\omega}) p$ and labeling the coherent states by $\tilde{x}$, so that

$$\left(\hat{q} + \frac{i}{M\omega} \hat{p} \right) \psi_{\tilde{x}}(x) = \left(\tilde{x} + \frac{i}{M\omega} \frac{d}{d\tilde{x}} \right) \psi_{\tilde{x}}(x) = 2\tilde{x} \psi_{\tilde{x}}(x),$$

we have explicitly

$$\psi_{\tilde{x}}(x) = e^{-1/4} \exp \left\{ \frac{M\omega}{2\pi} [-\tilde{x}^2 - N\tilde{x}^2 + (1/2)(2\tilde{x} + N\tilde{x})] \right\},$$

from which it becomes apparent that $N = \langle \hat{q}^2 \rangle$, because that's where the Gaussian packet is centered. Furthermore, since

$$\int d\tilde{x} \psi_{\tilde{x}}^* \left(-i\frac{\partial}{\partial \tilde{x}} \right) \psi_{\tilde{x}} = -iM\omega F,$$

it follows that $F = i\langle \hat{p}^2 \rangle$, so that

$$\left(\hat{q} + \frac{i}{M\omega} \hat{p} \right) \psi_{\tilde{x}} = \left(\langle \hat{q} \rangle + \frac{i}{M\omega} \langle \hat{p} \rangle \right) \psi_{\tilde{x}}. \quad (3.35)$$

(Note, however, that $\langle \hat{q}\hat{p} \rangle \neq \langle \hat{q} \rangle \langle \hat{p} \rangle$ and $\langle \hat{p}\hat{q} \rangle \neq \langle \hat{p} \rangle \langle \hat{q} \rangle$.)

We can easily calculate the dispersions of $\hat{p}$ and $\hat{q}$ in these states: from $\langle \hat{q} \rangle = \sqrt{1/2M\omega}(a + \tilde{x})$ we find that in an eigenstate of $\hat{x}$ with the eigenvalue a ,

$$\begin{aligned}
 \langle \hat{q}^2 \rangle &= \frac{\hbar}{2M\omega} (a^2 + a'^2 + 2a'a + 1) \\
 &= \frac{\hbar}{2M\omega} (a^2 + a'^2 + 2|a|^2 + 1) \\
 &= \frac{\hbar}{2M\omega} + |a|^2 = \frac{\hbar}{2M\omega} + \langle \hat{q}^2 \rangle
 \end{aligned}$$

therefore,

$$\Delta q^2 = \langle \hat{q}^2 \rangle - \langle \hat{q} \rangle^2 = \frac{\hbar}{2M\omega},$$

and similarly from $\hat{p} = -i\hbar\partial/\partial x$,

$$\Delta x^2 = \langle \hat{p}^2 \rangle - \langle \hat{p} \rangle^2 = \frac{M\omega^2}{2},$$

so that

$$\Delta x \Delta p = \frac{\hbar}{2}.$$

Thus the coherent states saturate the uncertainty product. (That's because they are Gaussian.)

When the oscillator is in a coherent state, the number of quanta, and thus its energy, is not fixed. The time development of these states is easily calculated, using the Hamiltonian $\hat{H} = \hbar\omega(\hat{n} + \frac{1}{2})$. If at the time $t = 0$ the system is in the state

$$|Z\rangle \equiv \hat{\Psi}_Z = e^{-|Z|^2/2} \sum_n \frac{Z^n}{\sqrt{n!}} |n\rangle, \quad \alpha = \sqrt{\frac{M\omega}{2\hbar}} Z, \quad (3.30)$$

where $|n\rangle$ is an eigenstate of $\hat{H} = \hbar\omega\hat{n}$ with the eigenvalue n , then at the time t it is in the state

$$e^{-i\hat{H}t/\hbar}|Z\rangle = e^{-|Z|^2/2} e^{-i\omega t} \sum_n \frac{(e^{i\omega t} Z)^n}{\sqrt{n!}} |n\rangle = e^{-|Z|^2/2} |Ze^{i\omega t}\rangle.$$

Since $Ze^{-i\omega t} = X \cos \omega t + Y \sin \omega t + i(Y \cos \omega t - X \sin \omega t)$, we can conclude from (3.30) that

$$\langle \hat{q} | t \rangle = \langle \hat{q}_0 \rangle \cos \omega t + \langle \hat{p}_0 \rangle \sin \omega t,$$

$$\langle \hat{p} | t \rangle = \langle \hat{p}_0 \rangle \cos \omega t - \langle \hat{q}_0 \rangle \sin \omega t,$$

which means that these averages behave just like the positions and momenta of the classical oscillator. According to (3.30), the probability w_n of finding n quanta when the system is in a coherent state is given by

$$w_n = \frac{|Z|^{2n}}{n!} e^{-|Z|^2},$$

and it does not vary with time. For large n , Stirling's formula implies that

$$\log w_n = n - n \log n + 2n \log |Z| - |Z|^2,$$

which has a maximum at $n_{\max} = |Z|^2$. Thus, when the system is in the coherent state $\hat{\Psi}_Z$, the number of quanta most likely to be found in it is $n_{\max} = \frac{M\omega^2}{2\hbar} |Z|^2$; since each of these quanta has the energy $\hbar\omega$, the most likely energy of the oscillator is $E_{\max} = \frac{1}{2} M\omega^2 |Z|^2$, which is exactly the classical energy of a harmonic oscillator of amplitude $|Z|$.

The coherent states of oscillator systems have important physical applications in quantum optics; for further details, see [Klauber].

3.3 Problems and Exercises

1. Prove that

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left(\frac{d^2}{dx^2} + k^2 \right) e^{ikx - \alpha x^2} dx = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dx \left| \left(\frac{d^2}{dx^2} + k^2 \right) e^{ikx - \alpha x^2} \right|^2 \rightarrow 0$$

as $\alpha \rightarrow 0$.

- Derive the relativistic dispersion relation in vacuum, i.e., find the relation between the wavelength and the frequency for the de Broglie wave of a free relativistic particle. Find the relation between the phase and group velocities and the particle velocity in the relativistic case. Compare them with those for photons.
- Calculate the transmission and reflection amplitudes for incidence of electrons of energies $1eV$, $1.5eV$, $2eV$, $3.5eV$, $5eV$, and $10eV$ from the left on a rectangular potential barrier of height $3eV$ and width $5 \times 10^{-9} \text{m}$.
- Use (2.15) to estimate the α -decay lifetime of a uranium nucleus, making reasonable assumptions about the radius of the nucleus ($\sim 10^{-14} \text{m}$), the energy of the α particle ($E_\alpha = E = 12 \text{MeV}$) and its mass velocity ($\sim 10^8 \text{cm/s}$).
- Calculate the reflection and transmission coefficients for the potential $V(x) = a\delta(x - a)$. (In order to find the effect of the delta-function potential, integrate the Schrödinger equation over a small interval containing the point a .) Find the bound-state energy if there is one. (What is the criterion for the existence of a bound state?)
- Calculate the reflection and transmission coefficients for the potential $V(x) = a[\delta(x - a) + \delta(x + a)]$.
- Calculate the reflection and transmission coefficients for the potential $V(x) = 0$ for $x < 0$ and $V(x) = V_0$ for $x > 0$, paying attention to the fact that these coefficients are defined as *flux ratios*.
- Calculate the reflection and transmission coefficients for both directions of incidence on a potential that vanishes for $x < 0$, has the negative value $-V_0$ for $0 < x < a$, and the positive value V_0 for $x > a$. Also find a transcendental equation for the bound-state eigenvalues.
- Calculate the normalized bound-state eigenfunction of a particle in the ground state of a square-well potential of width a and depth V_0 . What is the probability of finding the particle outside the well? What is the expectation value of its distance from the center of the well?

10. Assuming that a one-particle system is in the n^{th} state of a simple harmonic oscillator, calculate $\langle \hat{p}^2 \rangle$, $\langle \hat{q}^2 \rangle$, and the Fourier transform of $\psi_n(q)$.
11. Let $\{|n\rangle, n = 0, 1, \dots\}$ be the complete set of normalized eigenstates of a simple harmonic oscillator, and define the operator $\hat{I}$ by $\hat{I}|n\rangle = |n-1\rangle$. What is $\hat{I}^\dagger \hat{I}$? Is $\hat{I}$ unitary?
12. Using (3.45), show that if $\hat{a}$ is the lowering operator for a simple harmonic oscillator, then

$$\hat{a}|n\rangle = \sqrt{n}|n-1\rangle.$$

13. Prove that the raising operator $\hat{a}^\dagger$ is unbounded and find its domain of definition. Also show that the domains of $\hat{a}^m$ shrink with increasing m .
14. Find the eigenvalues of the raising operator $\hat{a}^\dagger$.
15. Prove that the Wronskian $W(f, g) = f g' - f' g$ of two solutions of the same second-order ordinary differential equation is a constant.
16. Show that the free-particle Schrödinger equation is invariant under Galilean transformations. Do this by showing that when the transformation $x' = x - vt$ is applied (where v is the velocity of the second reference frame with respect to the first), the transformed wave function $\psi'(x', t) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \psi(x, t)$ satisfies the same equation as a function ψ' as does ψ as a function of x , and $\hat{I}$ involves only $x, t, \hbar, m$, and v . Find the form of $\hat{I}$ and show that the traveling-wave solution $\psi(x, t) = Ae^{ikx - i\omega t}$ transforms as expected.
17. Let $\langle q \rangle$ and $\langle p \rangle$ be the mean values of q and its conjugate momentum p for a system in the state described by the configuration wave function $\psi(q)$. What are the mean values of q and p in the state with the wave function

$$e^{-i\alpha q/\hbar} \psi(q) + \langle q \rangle \psi(q)?$$

18. Consider the Schrödinger equation in one dimension with the potential V which consists of the periodic repetition, in both directions, of a given potential $V(x)$ defined for $0 < x < a$. Define two linearly independent solutions on the interval $0 < x < a$ by the boundary conditions $\psi_1(0) = 1$, $\psi_1'(0) = 0$, and $\psi_2(0) = 0$, $\psi_2'(0) = 1$, and derive an inequality that is a criterion for a given energy to be in the spectrum (i.e., to be in an allowed energy band).
19. Consider the Schrödinger equation in one dimension with the potential $V(x) = E_0 x^2$. Use the Heisenberg uncertainty relation to estimate the ground-state energy.

4

One- and Two-Particle Systems in Three Dimensions

4.1 Free Particles

In three dimensions, the kinetic energy is of course given by $\hat{p}^2/2M = (\hat{p}_x^2 + \hat{p}_y^2 + \hat{p}_z^2)/2M$, and the three components of the momentum operator $\hat{\mathbf{p}}$ commute. Since the spectrum of each component is the entire real axis, this is also the common spectrum of all three components, and the spectrum of the kinetic energy operator is the positive real line. However, the quasi-eigenfunctions of $\mathbf{H} = \hat{p}^2/2M$ in the momentum representation are now given by

$$\tilde{\psi}(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{R}) = \delta^3(\mathbf{p} - \mathbf{p}'), \quad |\mathbf{p}'| = \sqrt{2ME}, \quad (4.1)$$

and each quasi-eigenstate is infinitely degenerate, because for each fixed value of $|\mathbf{p}'|^2$ there is a continuity of directions of the vector $\mathbf{p}'$. The normalization of the free momentum-space wave functions (4.1) is such that

$$\int d^3p' \tilde{\psi}(\mathbf{p}', \mathbf{R}) \tilde{\psi}(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{R}) = \delta^3(\mathbf{p} - \mathbf{p}').$$

The free wave functions in the configuration representation are found from (3.70) and (4.1) to be

$$\psi(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{R}) = (2\pi\hbar)^{-3/2} e^{i\mathbf{p}' \cdot \mathbf{r}} \quad \tilde{\psi}(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{R}) \quad (4.2)$$

normalized so that

$$\int d^3r e^{-i\mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{p}'} \psi(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{R}) \psi(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{R}) = \delta^3(\mathbf{p} - \mathbf{p}') \psi(\mathbf{p} - \mathbf{p}'). \quad (4.3)$$

and they form a complete set in $L^2(\mathbb{R}^3)$,

$$\int d^3x \psi^*(\mathbf{r}) \psi(\mathbf{r}) \delta(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}') = \delta^3(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'). \quad (4.4)$$

On the other hand, it is sometimes useful to normalize the wave functions so that

$$\int d^3x \psi^*(\mathbf{E}, \hat{\mathbf{k}}_1) \psi(\mathbf{E}', \hat{\mathbf{k}}_1) = \delta(\mathbf{E} - \mathbf{E}') \delta(\hat{\mathbf{k}}_1 - \hat{\mathbf{k}}_1') \quad (4.5)$$

and

$$\int d\mathbf{E}_k \int d\mathbf{E} \psi^*(\mathbf{E}, \hat{\mathbf{k}}) \psi(\mathbf{E}, \hat{\mathbf{k}}') = \delta^3(\mathbf{E} - \mathbf{E}'). \quad (4.6)$$

where $\hat{\mathbf{k}} \equiv \mathbf{k}/|\mathbf{k}|$. In that case the constant $(2\pi)^{-3/2}$ in (4.2) has to be replaced by $(Mk)^{1/2}/\sqrt{2}(2\pi)^{3/2}$. These functions, of course, satisfy the free time-independent Schrödinger equation (3.5) in the configuration representation,¹

$$\left[\nabla^2 + \frac{2ME}{\hbar^2} \right] \psi = 0. \quad (4.7)$$

Since in Cartesian coordinates $\nabla^2 = \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial y^2} + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial z^2}$, this partial differential equation is separable and the solution is a product of the form $e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}} u_{\mathbf{k}}(r) v_{\mathbf{k}}(\theta) w_{\mathbf{k}}(\phi) = e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}}$, with $|\mathbf{k}|^2 = k_x^2 + k_y^2 + k_z^2 = \frac{2ME}{\hbar^2}$ as in (4.2).

Equation (4.7), however, is also separable in another extremely useful coordinate system, namely, spherical polar coordinates (Fig. 4.1), in which



FIGURE 4.1. Spherical polar coordinates.

the Laplace operator takes the form

$$\nabla^2 = \frac{1}{r^2} \frac{\partial}{\partial r} \left(r^2 \frac{\partial}{\partial r} \right) + \frac{1}{r^2 \sin \theta} \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \left(\sin \theta \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \right) + \frac{1}{r^2 \sin^2 \theta} \frac{\partial^2}{\partial \phi^2} \quad (4.8)$$

¹ With $\hat{\mathbf{k}}^2 = \frac{2ME}{\hbar^2}$ this equation is also known as the Helmholtz equation.

If we define $r \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} |\mathbf{r}|$ and θ and φ are the spherical polar angles of $\mathbf{r}$. Use of this Laplacian in (4.7) and the assumption that ψ can be written as a product $\psi(\mathbf{r}) = R(r)Y(\theta, \varphi)$ lead to

$$\frac{1}{R} \frac{d}{dr} \left(r^2 \frac{dR}{dr} \right) + k^2 r^2 = -\frac{1}{Y} \left[\frac{1}{\sin \theta} \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \left(\sin \theta \frac{\partial Y}{\partial \theta} \right) + \frac{1}{\sin^2 \theta} \frac{\partial^2 Y}{\partial \varphi^2} \right],$$

which allows us to conclude that both sides of this equation must be equal to a constant $-\lambda$, since the left-hand side is independent of θ and φ , and the right-hand side is independent of r :

$$\frac{1}{\sin \theta} \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \left(\sin \theta \frac{\partial Y}{\partial \theta} \right) + \frac{1}{\sin^2 \theta} \frac{\partial^2 Y}{\partial \varphi^2} = \lambda Y, \quad (4.8)$$

and

$$\frac{1}{r^2} \frac{d}{dr} \left(r^2 \frac{dR}{dr} \right) + \frac{\lambda R}{r^2} = -k^2 R. \quad (4.9)$$

The solutions of (4.8) are the spherical harmonics³ $Y_l^m(\theta, \varphi) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} Y_l^m(\theta, \varphi)$, which are discussed in more detail in Appendix D.1. The eigenvalues λ in (4.8) are $-\ell(\ell+1)$, where ℓ is a non-negative integer, $\ell = 0, 1, 2, \dots$, and the ℓ^{th} eigenvalue is $(2\ell+1)$ -fold degenerate, with m taking on $2\ell+1$ integer values, $-\ell \leq m \leq \ell$.

We are then left with the radial equation (4.9), which can be simplified by setting $R(r) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} u(r)/r$, so that it becomes

$$-\frac{\hbar^2}{2M} \frac{d^2 u}{dr^2} + \frac{\ell(\ell+1)\hbar^2}{2Mr^2} u = Eu. \quad (4.10)$$

Before discussing the solution of this equation, let us look at the physical meaning of what has been done.

For a particle of momentum $\mathbf{p}$ and position $\mathbf{r}$, the operator representing its orbital angular momentum with respect to the origin is given by

$$\hat{\mathbf{L}} = \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{p}, \quad (4.11)$$

In the configuration representation this becomes $\hat{\mathbf{L}} = -i\hbar \mathbf{r} \times \nabla_{\mathbf{r}}$, the z -component of which in spherical polar coordinates is

$$\hat{L}_z = -i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial \varphi}, \quad (4.12)$$

and whose square is given by

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{\mathbf{L}}^2 &= \hat{L}_x^2 + \hat{L}_y^2 + \hat{L}_z^2 = (-i\hbar)^2 \nabla_{\mathbf{r}}^2 \\ &= -\hbar^2 \left[\frac{1}{\sin \theta} \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \left(\sin \theta \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \right) + \frac{1}{\sin^2 \theta} \frac{\partial^2}{\partial \varphi^2} \right], \end{aligned} \quad (4.13)$$

³The understanding here is that the direction of the unit vector $\hat{\mathbf{r}}$ is given by the polar angles θ and φ .

which commutes with $\hat{L}_z$. Therefore, the spherical harmonic Y_l^m , which satisfies the equations

$$\hat{L}_z Y_l^m = m\hbar Y_l^m = -i\hbar \frac{\partial Y_l^m}{\partial \phi} = m\hbar Y_l^m, \quad (4.14)$$

$$\hat{L}^2 Y_l^m = -\hbar^2 \left[\frac{1}{\sin \theta} \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \left(\sin \theta \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \right) + \frac{1}{\sin^2 \theta} \frac{\partial^2}{\partial \phi^2} \right] Y_l^m = l(l+1)\hbar^2 Y_l^m, \quad (4.15)$$

is a simultaneous eigenfunction of $\hat{L}_z$ and $\hat{L}^2$, and m and l are the quantum numbers of the z -component and of the magnitude of the angular momentum (or, more precisely, $l(l+1)$ is the quantum number of the square of its magnitude). These eigenfunctions are normalized,

$$\int d\Omega Y_l^{m*}(\hat{n}) Y_l^m(\hat{n}) = \delta_{lm} \delta_{l'l}, \quad (4.16)$$

where $d\Omega$ denotes the solid-angle element $d\Omega = \sin \theta d\theta d\phi$, and they form a complete set in the space $L^2(\Omega)$ of square-integrable functions on the unit sphere,

$$\sum_{l=0}^{\infty} \sum_{m=-l}^l Y_l^{m*}(\hat{n}) Y_l^m(\hat{n}') = \delta^2(\hat{n}, \hat{n}') \quad (4.17)$$

if we write $\delta^2(\hat{n}, \hat{n}')$ for the solid-angle delta-function

$$\delta^2(\hat{n}, \hat{n}') = \frac{\delta(\theta - \theta')}{\sin \theta} \delta(\phi - \phi').$$

In view of the physical meaning attached to the quantum number l , it is clear that the term $l(l+1)\hbar^2/2Mr^2$ in the radial Schrödinger equation (4.11) represents the centrifugal potential energy, classically given by $L^2/2Mr^2$, corresponding to the centrifugal force exerted on the particle by its rotation.

Let us then return to the radial Schrödinger equation (4.11) and write it in the simpler form³

$$-\frac{d^2 u}{dr^2} + \frac{k_l^2 + U_l}{r^2} u = k^2 u, \quad (4.18)$$

³The requirement for l to be a non-negative integer, i.e., the quantization of the angular momentum, arises from (4.15) and the behavior of the spherical harmonics as functions of the angles (see Appendix D.1); as far as (4.11) or (4.18) are concerned, the parameter l in them could have any arbitrary value. Physically, however, these equations make sense only for integer l .

which is to satisfy for $0 < r < \infty$ for a given $k^2 \geq 0$. In the simplest case, for $l = 0$ called the *s-wave*,⁴ (4.18) becomes

$$-\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial r^2} = k^2 u, \quad (4.19)$$

an equation that has two linearly independent solutions, namely, $u = \sin kr$ and $u = \cos kr$, both of which lead to solutions of the Schrödinger equation (4.7) that are square-integrable at the origin, since $R = u/r$ and the volume element is $r^2 dr \sin \theta d\theta$. However, because the choice of $\cos kr$ leads to $\psi \propto r^{-1}$ near $r = 0$ and $\nabla^2 r^{-1} = -4\pi\delta^3(\mathbf{r})$ (as you should recognize from the Poisson equation in electrostatics, where $\delta^3(\mathbf{r})$ is the charge density representing a unit point charge at the origin), the use of $\cos kr$ would lead to a delta-function on the right-hand side of (4.7) instead of 0. (Or, put differently, such a function would not be in the domain of the kinetic energy operator.) This solution of (4.19) for $l = 0$ is therefore not acceptable, and there is only one acceptable solution of the second-order differential equation (4.19).

For $l > 0$, (4.18) has a regular singular point at $r = 0$, and one of its solutions behaves like r^{l+1} at the origin, while the other goes like r^{-l} . Since the latter does not lead to a locally square-integrable solution of (4.7), it cannot be used, and we have, again, only one “regular solution,” the *Bessel-Bessel function* $u_l(r) \propto r j_l(kr)$, where j_l is a spherical Bessel function (discussed in more detail in Appendix D.1.5). The first three of these functions are given by

$$\begin{aligned} u_0(r) &= \sin r \\ u_1(r) &= -\cos r + r^{-1} \sin r \\ u_2(r) &= -2r^{-1} \cos r + (2r^{-2} - 1) \sin r. \end{aligned} \quad (4.20)$$

The result is that the general acceptable solution of (4.7) is any linear combination of functions of the form $j_l(kr)Y_l^m(\theta, \phi)$. That this does not contradict our previous plane-wave solution (4.7) is demonstrated by the general expansion

$$\begin{aligned} e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{r}} &= \frac{4\pi}{k} \sum_{\ell} j_\ell(kr) Y_\ell^0(\hat{\mathbf{r}}) Y_\ell^0(\hat{\mathbf{k}}) \\ &= 4\pi \sum_{\ell} j_\ell(kr) Y_\ell^m(\hat{\mathbf{r}}) Y_\ell^{-m}(\hat{\mathbf{k}}), \end{aligned} \quad (4.21)$$

where we have written $\hat{\mathbf{r}}$ and $\hat{\mathbf{k}}$ for unit vectors in the direction of $\mathbf{r}$ and $\mathbf{k}$, respectively, and $k = |\hat{\mathbf{k}}|$, $r = |\mathbf{r}|$. The initial dependency of this expansion

⁴The terminology, *s-wave* for $l = 0$, *p-wave* for $l = 1$, *d-wave* for $l = 2$, is of spectroscopic origin, standing for the sharp series of lines, *p* for principal, and *d* for diffuse.

∇^2 of (4.7) can manifest itself in the fact that the integers l and m can take on infinitely many values. Note that the only solution of the stationary Schrödinger equation (4.7) that is spherically symmetric is the s -wave, $q = \sin kr/r$. For all other solutions, the degeneracy allows the rotational symmetry to be spontaneously broken.

4.2.1 The propagator

Before leaving the Schrödinger equation for a free particle, let us look at the time-dependence of the solutions of the full Schrödinger equation corresponding to solutions such as (4.1), namely, wave packets of the form

$$\psi(\vec{r}, t) = (2\pi)^{-3/2} \int d^3k \, f(\vec{k}) e^{i\vec{k} \cdot \vec{r} - iE(\vec{k})t/\hbar}, \quad (4.22)$$

where $f(\vec{k})$ is an arbitrary square-integrable function. In order to solve the initial-value problem, in which $\psi(\vec{r}, 0)$ is given, we would determine f by inverting the Fourier transform (4.22) for $t = 0$,

$$f(\vec{k}) = (2\pi)^{-3/2} \int d^3r \, \psi(\vec{r}, 0) e^{-i\vec{k} \cdot \vec{r}}, \quad (4.23)$$

We can obtain a direct expression for the solution of the time-dependent Schrödinger equation for $t > 0$ in terms of its initial value by inserting (4.23) in (4.22):

$$\psi(\vec{r}, t) = \int d^3r' \, G_0^+(\vec{r}, t'; \vec{r}', 0) \psi(\vec{r}', 0), \quad t > 0, \quad (4.24)$$

where for $t > 0$ the time-dependent Green's function or propagator G_0^+ is given by

$$G_0^+(\vec{r}, t'; 0) = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^3} \int d^3k \exp \left[i\vec{k} \cdot (\vec{r} - \vec{r}') - iE(\vec{k})t'/\hbar \right], \quad (4.25)$$

while for $t < 0$ we define G_0^+ to be equal to zero. The integral in (4.25) can be explicitly evaluated³ as

$$G_0^+(\vec{r}, t'; 0) = \left(\frac{M}{2\pi\hbar^2} \right)^{3/2} \exp \left(\frac{(3M^2t' - \vec{r}^2)^2}{24\hbar^2} - \frac{3\pi i}{4} \right), \quad t > 0. \quad (4.27)$$

Note that this function becomes highly singular as $t \rightarrow 0$, and it vanishes uniformly like $t^{-3/2}$ as $|\vec{r}| \rightarrow \infty$, so that there can be no finite spatial region

³The $\mathbf{k}$,

Ω in which the particle can remain localized² forever. (This is, of course, quite in agreement with the uncertainty principle, according to which the particle's localization in a region of dimension Δq implies that its momentum is uncertain by at least $\hbar/\Delta q$; therefore, it cannot be expected to remain localized there for longer than the time T it takes to traverse the region of dimension Δq with a velocity equal to $\Delta q/M$, which is $T = M \Delta q/\Delta p \leq M(\Delta q)^{1/2}/\hbar$.) Equations (4.25) and (4.27) tell us specifically that, assuming $\psi(\mathbf{q}, 0)$ to be integrable, as $t \rightarrow \infty$,

$$\int_{\Omega} d^3q |\psi(\mathbf{q}, t)|^2 = O(t^{-3}). \quad (4.28)$$

For $t \neq 0$, the propagator evidently satisfies the Schrödinger equation,

$$\left(\frac{\hbar^2}{2M} \nabla^2 + i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \right) G_0^+(\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{q}', t) = 0,$$

and for $t \rightarrow 0+$ (4.25) shows that³

$$G_0^+(\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{q}', 0+) = \delta^3(\mathbf{q} - \mathbf{q}').$$

Since $G_0^+(\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{q}', 0-) = 0$, we find that G_0^+ has a step-discontinuity as a function of t as $t = 0$. It follows that the equation satisfied by G_0^+ is⁴

$$\left(\frac{\hbar^2}{2M} \nabla^2 + i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \right) G_0^+(\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{q}', t) = i\hbar \delta(t) \delta^3(\mathbf{q} - \mathbf{q}'). \quad (4.29)$$

In a similar fashion we can define the back-propagator $G_0^-(\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{q}', t)$, which satisfies the same equation (4.29), but which vanishes for $t > 0$, while for negative times it is given by

$$G_0^-(\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{q}', t) = - \left(\frac{M}{2\pi i \hbar t} \right)^{3/2} \exp \left(\frac{iM(\mathbf{q} - \mathbf{q}')^2}{2\hbar t} + \frac{3\pi i}{4} \right), \quad t < 0. \quad (4.30)$$

It allows us to express $\psi(\mathbf{q}, t)$ for negative times in terms of its value at $t = 0$,

$$\psi(\mathbf{q}, t) = - \int d^3q' G_0^-(\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{q}', 0) \psi(\mathbf{q}', 0), \quad t < 0. \quad (4.31)$$

²Localized here simply means that there is a nonzero probability for the particle to be found in a given finite region.

³Remember that the Dirac delta function has the representation $\delta(t' - t'') = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} d\omega e^{i\omega(t' - t'')}$, the three-dimensional analogue of (B.26), which simply expresses the completeness of the exponentials in the sense of Fourier integrals. Also note that $t \rightarrow 0+$ means that t tends to zero from above.

⁴Integrate this equation over t from $-\infty$ to $+\infty$ to see that it gives the correct result.

4.1.2 Two particles

The kinetic-energy operator for two particles of masses M_1 and M_2 is given by

$$H_0 = \frac{\mathbf{p}_1^2}{2M_1} + \frac{\mathbf{p}_2^2}{2M_2} = -\frac{\hbar^2}{2M_1} \nabla_1^2 - \frac{\hbar^2}{2M_2} \nabla_2^2.$$

Introducing the center-of-mass coordinate

$$\mathbf{R} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \frac{M_1 \mathbf{r}_1 + M_2 \mathbf{r}_2}{M_1 + M_2}$$

and the relative coordinate

$$\mathbf{r} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}_1,$$

we find that⁴

$$H_0 = \frac{\mathbf{p}^2}{2M} + \frac{\mathbf{p}^2}{2\mu} = -\frac{\hbar^2}{2M} \nabla_{\mathbf{R}}^2 - \frac{\hbar^2}{2\mu} \nabla_{\mathbf{r}}^2,$$

where $\mathbf{p} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \mathbf{p}_1 + \mathbf{p}_2$ is the operator of the total momentum, $\mathbf{p} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \mathbf{p}_2 - \mathbf{p}_1$ that of the relative momentum, $M \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} M_1 + M_2$, and $\mu \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} M_1 M_2 / (M_1 + M_2)$. The Schrödinger equation for two free particles

$$\left[-\frac{\hbar^2}{2M} \nabla_{\mathbf{R}}^2 - \frac{\hbar^2}{2\mu} \nabla_{\mathbf{r}}^2 \right] \psi(\mathbf{R}, \mathbf{r}) = E \psi(\mathbf{R}, \mathbf{r})$$

can then be separated by writing $\psi(\mathbf{R}, \mathbf{r}) = \psi_1(\mathbf{R})\psi_2(\mathbf{r})$, and the two functions ψ_1 and ψ_2 have to satisfy the equations

$$-\frac{\hbar^2}{2M} \nabla_{\mathbf{R}}^2 \psi_1 = E_1 \psi_1, \quad -\frac{\hbar^2}{2\mu} \nabla_{\mathbf{r}}^2 \psi_2 = E_2 \psi_2, \quad E_1 + E_2 = E. \quad (4.32)$$

Thus the two-particle equation is reduced to two one-particle equations and the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H} = \mathcal{H}^3 \otimes \mathcal{H}^3$ is decomposed into the tensor product of one for the center-of-mass motion and another for the relative motion: $\mathcal{H} = \mathcal{H}^{\text{CM}} \otimes \mathcal{H}^{\text{rel}}$.

If the only forces on two particles are those exerted by them upon one another, the potential energy is a function of the distance between them, $V(\mathbf{r}_1, \mathbf{r}_2) = V(\mathbf{R}, -\mathbf{r}) = V(r)$, and the two-particle Schrödinger equation can be separated as in the free case. The center-of-mass wave function then satisfies the free Schrödinger equation as in (4.32), and the relative motion is described by the equation

$$\left[-\frac{\hbar^2}{2\mu} \nabla_{\mathbf{r}}^2 + V(r) \right] \psi = E \psi, \quad (4.33)$$

⁴Prove this.

which differs from the one-particle equation only by replacing the reduced mass, μ , in place of the mass M . Two-particle systems are therefore described by the same tools and the same equations as one-particle systems, and our further discussions of the latter are equally applicable to the former.

4.2 Potentials with Spherical Symmetry

Consider now the Schrödinger equation for a particle in three dimensions in the configuration representation,

$$-\frac{\hbar^2}{2M}\nabla^2\psi + V\psi = E\psi \quad (4.54)$$

and suppose that the potential V is a function of $r = |\mathbf{r}|$ only, which makes it invariant under rotations. In that case, (4.54) is separable like (4.7) in spherical polar coordinates and the Laplacian can be expressed as in (4.8). With the factorization

$$\psi = R(r)Y(\theta, \phi),$$

the angular equation is the same as (4.8), which leads to $\lambda = -l(l+1)$, with $l = 0, 1, 2, \dots$, and spherical harmonics Y_l^m as solutions, and the radial equation is given by

$$-\frac{\hbar^2}{2M}\left[\frac{1}{r^2}\frac{d}{dr}r^2\frac{d}{dr}R_l - \frac{l(l+1)}{r^2}R_l\right] + V(r)R_l = ER_l. \quad (4.55)$$

Note that the quantum number m does not appear, so that $R_l(r)$ is independent of m . The definition $\phi_l(r) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=}} rR_l(r)$ casts (4.55) into the simpler form

$$-\frac{\hbar^2}{2M}\phi_l'' + \left[\frac{l(l+1)\hbar^2}{2Mr^2} + V(r)\right]\phi_l = E\phi_l,$$

or, multiplying through by $2M/\hbar^2$

$$-\phi_l'' + \left[\frac{l(l+1)}{r^2} + \frac{2M}{\hbar^2}V(r)\right]\phi_l = k^2\phi_l. \quad (4.56)$$

This is the equation that has to be solved for each specific radial potential $V(r)$.

Just as in the case of a particle with one degree of freedom, if $V \rightarrow 0$ as $r \rightarrow \infty$ we will be looking for negative-energy solutions, i.e., with $k^2 \leq 0$, that are square-integrable — the bound states of the system, if there are any — and positive-energy solutions with $k^2 > 0$ that are bounded but not square-integrable: all positive values of E are in the continuous spectrum of the Hamiltonian. The physical reason is that for $E > 0$ the particle has sufficient energy to escape to infinity, which it does when

$E < 0$. The bound-state solutions $\psi_j(r)$ of (4.16) can always be chosen to be real, and, in addition, the angle functions $Y(\theta, \varphi)$ may also be taken to be the real *spherical harmonics*, defined by (D.56) in Appendix D. The resulting bound-state eigenfunctions of the three-dimensional Schrödinger equation, $\psi_j(r)r^{-1}Y_l^m(\theta, \varphi)$ and $\psi_j(r)r^{-1}Z_l^m(\theta, \varphi)$, are then real, and their nodal surfaces are concentric spheres about the origin, cones about the z -axis with apex at the origin, and planes through the z -axis. The choice of the direction of the z -axis, of course, is arbitrary, but every such choice yields a complete set of linearly independent eigenfunctions with these nodal surfaces.

In the absence of a potential, we know that the positive-energy solutions are the Riccati-Bessel functions, $u_j(kr) \equiv \sqrt{2\pi} j_{\ell}(kr)$, whose asymptotic behavior for $kr \gg 1$ is given by (D.41),

$$u_j(kr) \sim \sin(kr - \frac{1}{2}\pi\ell) = \frac{1}{2}e^{i(kr - \frac{1}{2}\pi\ell)} - (-1)^{\ell}e^{i\pi\ell}e^{-i(kr - \frac{1}{2}\pi\ell)},$$

which shows that the ratio of the outgoing amplitude to the incoming amplitude is simply $(-1)^{\ell+1}$. This ratio will change when there is a potential present, and the change has observable physical effects, as we shall discuss.

4.2.1 The three-dimensional square well

Assume that the potential $V(r)$ has the constant negative value $-V_0$ for $r < b$ and $V = 0$ for $r > b$. Let us first look for the bound-state solutions, for which $E < 0$ and hence $k^2 = -|k|^2 = 2M|E|/\hbar^2$. In the region $r < b$ we have to pick the regular solution $u_j(\kappa r)$ of (4.16), where $\kappa = \sqrt{2M(V_0 - |E|)}/\hbar = \sqrt{2M(V_0 + V_0)/\hbar^2}$, while for $r > b$ the solution we want is $u_j^{(+)}(ikr)$, which is defined in Appendix D.1.2 and which asymptotically decreases as $e^{-ikr} = e^{-|k|r}$ [see (D.41)]. Matching the logarithmic derivatives of the two solutions at $r = b$ leads to the equation

$$k \frac{u_j^{(+)}(ibb)}{u_j^{(+)}(ib)} = \kappa \frac{u_j'(ib)}{u_j(ib)}, \quad (4.27)$$

which for $\ell = 0$ becomes

$$-|k| = -\sqrt{2MV_0}/\hbar^2 - \kappa^2 = \kappa \cot \kappa b,$$

the same equation as (3.16) for the odd solutions to the one-dimensional case.¹⁰ (Note that b here corresponds to $a/2$.) In order for this equation to have a solution it is necessary that $\cot \kappa b \leq 0$, which means we need $\sqrt{2MV_0}b \geq \pi b/2$; the first bound state will appear, with zero binding energy, when $\sqrt{2MV_0}b = \pi b/2$, the second s -wave bound state when

¹⁰Why do we get the same equations in these cases?

$\sqrt{2M\hbar^2}k = (m\lambda/2)$, etc. In contrast to the one-dimensional case, a non-positive potential does not necessarily lead to a bound state in three dimensions; in order to bind it has to have a certain minimal strength.

The ground state of a spherically symmetric potential is always an s -state; in other words, there can be no state of $l > 0$ with a lower energy than the state of lowest energy with $l = 0$. This is a general theorem, the obvious physical reason for which is the centrifugal repulsion in states of higher angular momentum.

The theorem can be proved by a simple application of what is known as the Hellmann–Heymann formula:

Let the Hamiltonian operator $\hat{H}$ depend on a parameter α and let E be an eigenvalue of $\hat{H}$; then

$$\frac{dE}{d\alpha} = \left\langle \frac{d\hat{H}}{d\alpha} \right\rangle, \quad (4.39)$$

where the expectation value is taken in the eigenstate of $\hat{H}$ with the eigenvalue E .

The proof of (4.39) is a simple exercise,¹² using the fact that

$$\hat{H} = \hat{H}_0 = \hat{H}_0(\alpha) + \hbar^2 \nabla^2 / 2M, \quad \Psi_0(\alpha)$$

and differentiating it with respect to α . (All the terms coming from the differentiation of Ψ_0 cancel.)

In the case at hand, the operator $\hat{H}$ is the radial Hamiltonian

$$\hat{H}_0(\alpha) = -\frac{d^2}{dr^2} + \frac{l(l+1)}{r^2} + \frac{2M}{\hbar^2} V(r, \alpha)$$

and the place of α is taken by l , which, in the radial Schrödinger equation, may be regarded as a free parameter, forced to take on only integral values by the regular equation. Thus, $d\hat{H}_0/dl = (2l+1)/r^2$, so that $\langle d\hat{H}_0/dl \rangle > 0$, which therefore implies that the eigenvalue E_l of $\hat{H}_0$ is a monotonically increasing function of l :

$$\frac{dE_l}{dl} > 0.$$

So if there is a bound state for $l > 0$, then changing the l value continuously down to $l = 0$ necessarily leads to an s -wave bound state of lower energy. $\square$

For positive energies there are no bound states.¹³ Just as for a free particle, the positive energies constitute the continuous spectrum of the Hamiltonian, and for reasonable potentials there are no bound states embedded in the continuum. (Recall the physical reason for this: a particle with a positive energy is free to escape to infinity and will thus not remain forever confined to a finite region, except under very special circumstances.) However, whereas the wave function inside the well has to be a multiple of the regular Bessel/Jacobi function u_l , the wave function outside the well

¹² See 4.

¹³ If we are dealing with the relative motion of a two-particle system, the total energy, including the kinetic energy of the center-of-mass motion, may of course be positive and its spectrum will, in fact, form a continuum. Remember that here we are fixing our attention on the CM system.

can be a linear combination of the Riccati-Bessel function and the Riccati-Besselmann function defined in Appendix D.1.2,

$$\psi(r) = A_1 u_0(r) + B_1 w_0(r), \quad r > a.$$

At the surface of the potential well the logarithmic derivative of this solution has to be matched to B_1 , the logarithmic derivative of the inside solution,

$$k \frac{\partial_0 u_0(a) + \partial_0 w_0(a)}{\partial_0 u_0(a) + \partial_0 w_0(a)} = B_1, \quad (4.40)$$

which from the ratio of the constants A_1 and B_1 inside the well, for $r < a$, the solution of the Schrödinger equation can only be a multiple of the regular $u_0(r)$, with $\alpha = \sqrt{2M(E_0/\hbar^2 + E)}$, so that we have

$$A_1 = \alpha \frac{\partial_0 u_0}{u_0(a)}. \quad (4.41)$$

Just as in the one-dimensional case, in which the observed quantities are the reflection and transmission coefficients, the experimental observations are going to take place at large distances outside the well. When $kr \gg 1$, according to (D.41), the asymptotic form of the wave function is

$$\begin{aligned} \psi(r) &\sim A_1 \sin(kr - \frac{1}{2}\pi) + B_1 \cos(kr - \frac{1}{2}\pi) \\ &= \frac{A_1}{\cos \delta_1} \sin(kr - \frac{1}{2}\pi + \delta_1) \\ &= \frac{iA_1}{2\cos \delta_1} e^{i(kr - \frac{1}{2}\pi)} e^{-i\delta_1} - (-1)^i e^{i(kr + \frac{1}{2}\pi)}, \end{aligned} \quad (4.42)$$

where the phase shift δ_1 is defined, modulo π , by

$$\tan \delta_1 = -\frac{B_1}{A_1}.$$

Consequently, the principal long-distance effect of the potential on the wave function for an individual angular momentum is a shift in its phase, and therefore a change in the ratio of the outgoing to the incoming scattered wave amplitude by a factor of $e^{2i\delta_1}$. Using (4.40), we can calculate this phase shift, obtaining¹¹

$$\tan \delta_1 = \frac{\partial_0 u_0(a) - k_0 u_0(a)}{\partial_0 u_0(a) - k_0 u_0(a)}, \quad (4.43)$$

which for the s -wave case becomes

$$\tan \delta_0 = \tan ka \frac{ka \cot ka - \partial_0 u_0(a)}{\partial_0 u_0(a) + \partial_0 u_0(a)}. \quad (4.44)$$

¹¹The k .

and for the square well $\delta\phi(r) = \delta\psi(r)$ in. The values (D.36) and (D.40) of the Riccati-Bessel and Riccati-Neumann function, used in (4.42), lead to¹² the generic low-energy behavior of the phase shifts, when $k \ll 1/a$

$$\delta_l = \text{const.} \times k^{2l+1}, \quad (4.44)$$

which implies the important fact, to which we shall return, that when k is small enough, the s -wave phase shift dominates the others; as the energy rises, the p -wave phase shift begins to contribute, etc.

4.2.2 The scattering amplitude

The principal observable effect of a potential on a positive-energy particle approaching a region with potential energy is a deflection from its initial direction. The requirement that the particle's momentum in the remote past (when it is assumed to have been under our control by means of an accelerator or some other experimental device) was $\vec{p} = \hbar\vec{k}$ is translated into a boundary condition on the physically desired solution $\psi^{(+)}$ of the time-independent Schrödinger equation by subjecting the deviation of $\psi^{(+)}$ from the plane wave $e^{i\vec{k}\cdot\vec{r}}$,

$$\delta_{\text{scat}}(\vec{k}, r) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \psi^{(+)}(\vec{k}, r) - e^{i\vec{k}\cdot\vec{r}}$$

to the radiation condition,

$$\delta_{\text{scat}} - ik \frac{\partial}{\partial r} \delta_{\text{scat}} \rightarrow 0 \quad \text{as} \quad r \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} |\vec{r}| \rightarrow \infty.$$

This implies there exists a function $A(\vec{k}', \vec{k})$ that depends on the initial momentum $\hbar\vec{k}$ and the final momentum $\hbar\vec{k}' \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \hbar\vec{k}/r = A(\vec{k}/r)\vec{r}$ pointing from the center to the observation point $\vec{r}$, such that as $r \rightarrow \infty$,¹³

$$\psi^{(+)}(\vec{k}, r) = \left[e^{i\vec{k}\cdot\vec{r}} + A(\vec{k}', \vec{k}) \frac{1}{r} e^{ikr} \right] + o(r^{-1}). \quad (4.45)$$

The constant κ depends on the desired normalization. Equation (4.45) tells us that if $\psi^{(+)}$ is to be normalized as in (4.39) and (4.4), we must choose $\kappa = (2\pi)^{-3/2}$; on the other hand, if we want the normalization (4.5) and (4.6), we must take $\kappa = [32k(1/\pi)]^{1/2}/[4(2\pi)^{3/2}]$.

By the semi-classicality-phase argument used earlier to connect the Fourier-transformed functions to the more physical time-dependent wave functions it follows that in the distant past and at large distances it will be only the plane-wave term that contributes, while in the far future there will also be

¹²More so.

¹³ $o(r^{-1})$ means that the remainder tends to zero faster than r^{-1} .

a contribution from the outgoing spherical wave, with the amplitude A , which is called the scattering amplitude.¹² The ratio of this outgoing flux in the direction $\hat{R}$ to the incoming flux in the direction $\hat{k}$ is given by¹³

$$\frac{d\sigma}{d\Omega} = |A(\hat{k}, \hat{R})|^2, \quad (4.40)$$

which is called the differential scattering cross section. (The letter Ω here denotes the solid angle subtended by $\hat{R}$.) Then $d\sigma/d\Omega dY dY'$ = $|A(\hat{k}, \hat{R})|^2 dY'$ is the probability of detecting a particle (whose initial momentum was $\hbar\hat{k}$) scattered and emerging at large distance $r \gg 1/k$ in the element of solid angle dY' around $\hat{R}$.

In order to see in more detail the magnitude of the incoming spherical wave, that the plane wave contributes asymptotically, we have to use (4.22) and the asymptotic values (3.41) of the spherical Bessel functions as $r \rightarrow \infty$:

$$e^{ikr} = \frac{2\pi i}{kr} \sum_{\ell m} (-1)^{\ell} e^{-ikr} = (-1)^{\ell} e^{ikr} Y_{\ell}^{*m}(\hat{k}) Y_{\ell}^{*m}(\hat{R}) + o((kr)^{-1}). \quad (4.41)$$

Using (3.35) and (3.38), Eq. (4.41) can be expressed as

$$e^{ikr} \sim (2\pi i/k) \{ e^{ikr} k(\hat{k}, \hat{r}) - e^{-ikr} k(\hat{k}, -\hat{r}) \}.$$

Therefore, if $\psi^{(+)}$ is to be of the form (4.40), and¹⁴

$$\psi^{(+)}(\hat{k}, \hat{r}) = \frac{4\pi}{kr} \sum_{\ell m} f_{\ell m}(\hat{k}, r) Y_{\ell}^{*m}(\hat{k}) Y_{\ell}^{*m}(\hat{r}), \quad (4.42)$$

we have to choose the normalization of f_{ℓ} so that its asymptotically incoming wave part has the same amplitude as that of the plane wave; this yields the factor $2\pi i k(-1)^{\ell}/k r$. Its outgoing-wave part, according to (4.41), then has the amplitude $-2\pi i e^{ikr}/k r$. Adding and subtracting the outgoing wave asymptotically needed to make up the plane wave part, we then obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \psi^{(+)} &= \frac{2\pi i}{kr} \sum_{\ell m} (-1)^{\ell} e^{-ikr} - (-1)^{\ell} e^{ikr} Y_{\ell}^{*m}(\hat{r}) Y_{\ell}^{*m}(\hat{k}) \\ &\quad + e^{ikr} \frac{2\pi i}{kr} \sum_{\ell m} 1 - e^{ikr} Y_{\ell}^{*m}(\hat{r}) Y_{\ell}^{*m}(\hat{k}). \end{aligned}$$

¹²As an exercise, check this out, making the stationary-phase argument explicit.

¹³Since the kinetic energy at $r \rightarrow \infty$ is equal to its initial value at $r \rightarrow -\infty$, the magnitudes of the initial and final velocities are equal, $\hbar\hat{k}/M = \hbar\hat{k}'/M$, and the flux ratio equals the ratio of the squares of the amplitudes. In a more general setting, when inelastic scattering is possible, this is not so, and there appears a factor of $|\hat{k}'|/|\hat{k}|$ on the right-hand side.

¹⁴Because the spherical symmetry of $V(r)$ implies that $\psi^{(+)}(\hat{k}, \hat{r})$ must be rotationally invariant, the ℓ and m values of the spherical harmonics in the sum must be equal and the coefficient f_{ℓ} are independent of m (see Appendix B).

from which we conclude that the scattering amplitude has the partial-wave expansion

$$A(\vec{k}', \vec{k}) = \frac{2\pi i}{k} \sum_l (2l+1) e^{i\delta_l} [Y_l^m(\vec{k}') Y_l^m(\vec{k})] \quad (4.40)$$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \frac{1}{2\pi k} \sum_l (2l+1) e^{2i\delta_l} - i(2\pi) \cos\theta \\ &= \frac{1}{k} \sum_l (2l+1) e^{2i\delta_l} \sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2} (\cos\theta)^{\frac{l-1}{2}} f(l, \theta), \end{aligned} \quad (4.41)$$

where $\cos\theta \equiv \hat{\vec{k}}' \cdot \hat{\vec{k}}$ and Eq. (D.22) has been used. (That the scattering amplitude does not depend on the direction of the incident particle but only on the angle θ between the initial and final directions is a consequence of the rotational invariance of the potential.)

Thus what for each individual partial wave appears as a simple shift in phase manifests itself, via interference effects, in the total asymptotic flux as an observable angle-dependent variation: particles sent, for example, by an acceleration, toward the center with the momentum $\hbar\vec{k}$ are deflected by centers, positioned at various angles, with an angular distribution given by the differential cross section (4.40).

The total number of particles scattered, per unit time and per unit incident flux, is called the total scattering cross section. It is easily calculated from the partial-wave expansion (4.40) by means of Eqs. (D.26) and (D.28),

$$\sigma_{\text{tot}} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \int d\Omega \frac{d\sigma(\vec{k}', \vec{k})}{d\Omega} = \int d\Omega |A(\vec{k}', \vec{k})|^2 = -\frac{4\pi}{k^2} \sum_l (2l+1) \sin^2 \delta_l. \quad (4.42)$$

More generally, we obtain in the same manner¹⁴

$$\begin{aligned} \int d\Omega A(\vec{k}', \vec{k}) A^*(\vec{k}', \vec{k}) &= \left(\frac{2\pi}{k^2} \right) \\ &\sum_{l=0}^{\infty} (e^{2i\delta_l} - 1)(e^{-2i\delta_l} - 1) \int d\Omega Y_l^m(\vec{k}') Y_l^{m*}(\vec{k}') Y_l^{m*}(\vec{k}') Y_l^m(\vec{k}) \\ &= \frac{4\pi^2}{k^2} \sum_{l=0}^{\infty} (1 - \cos 2\delta_l) Y_l^m(\vec{k}) Y_l^{m*}(\vec{k}) \\ &= \left(\frac{4\pi}{k} \right)^2 \sum_{l=0}^{\infty} \sin^2 \delta_l Y_l^m(\vec{k}) Y_l^{m*}(\vec{k}) = \frac{4\pi}{k^2} \sum_l (2l+1) \sin^2 \delta_l P_l(\hat{\vec{k}} \cdot \hat{\vec{k}}) \\ &= \frac{4\pi}{k^2} \sigma_{\text{tot}}(\vec{k}, \vec{k}). \end{aligned} \quad (4.43)$$

¹⁴That means the imaginary part of the complex number A .

The special case in which $\hat{k} = \hat{k}'$ is of particular interest:

$$\sigma_{\text{total}}(k) = \frac{4\pi}{k} \text{Im} A(\hat{k}, \hat{k}) = \frac{4\pi}{k} \text{Im} f(0, 0), \quad (4.32)$$

which is known as the *optical theorem*. Its physical basis is the fact that all the flux in the scattered wave originates from interference between the forward scattering and the incident beam.²⁰ The formula (4.32) is called the *generalized optical theorem*. In terms of the dimensionless quantity

$$F(k, \cos \theta) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} k A(\hat{k}', \hat{k})$$

it may be written in the simple form

$$\text{Im} F(k, 1) = \frac{1}{2} \int_{-1}^1 dx |F(k, x)|^2, \quad (4.33)$$

where $x \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \cos \theta$. Note that the optical theorem immediately implies a lower bound on the forward scattering cross section if the total cross section is given:

$$\frac{d\sigma}{d\Omega}(\hat{k}, \hat{k}) \geq \left(\frac{k}{4\pi} \sigma_{\text{total}} \right)^2.$$

The partial-wave expansions of the scattering amplitude and the cross section are particularly useful at low energies. This is because, as (4.14) shows in the case of a square well but which holds more generally, the l^{th} phase shift goes as k^{2l+1} when k is small, and consequently only the first few terms contribute significantly to the series. Classically, the differential cross section becomes isotropic in the low-energy limit, and for a square well of radius b , $\sigma_{\text{total}} \rightarrow 4\pi b^2$. Note that this is *four times* the geometric cross section. In general, the tangent of the s -wave phase shift will go like

$$\tan \delta_0 \sim -ck \quad \text{as} \quad k \rightarrow 0, \quad (4.34)$$

where the constant c is known as the *scattering length*, and the zero-energy limit of the total cross section is $4\pi c^2$.

There are, however, a variety of more interesting phenomena that can occur at low energies, which we can see by studying Eq. (4.15). Suppose that at some low energy, when $kb \ll 1$, the numerator of the right-hand side of (4.15) is equal to zero, which will be the case when $1 - \frac{1}{2}(kb)^2 = k\delta_0$. All the other phase shifts are then still negligible, and since $\sin \delta_0 = 0$, the s -wave contribution vanishes so that the cross section will be anomalously small. This is the explanation of what is known as the *Minnaert-Tennekes effect*, an anomalously small observed scattering cross section of low-energy

²⁰For a discussion of the classical history of the optical theorem see [Newton 50].

(≈ 0.7 eV) electrons on rare-gas atoms. It is analogous to the transparency of a one-dimensional potential well at certain energies. In three dimensions, of course, if the denominator of (4.43) vanishes when $k_0 \ll 1$, there need be no observable effect because the other partial waves obscure the vanishing of the s -waves.

Another possibility is that the denominator of the right-hand side of (4.43) vanishes. In that case the s -wave phase shift rises through $\frac{1}{2}\pi$ and hence slowly to π ; the s -wave scattering amplitude is maximal. If that happens at an energy $E_0 = \hbar^2 k_0^2/2M$ when $k_0 \ll 1$, all other phase shifts will be negligible and the cross section will have a peak of $\sigma = 4\pi/k_0^2 = \lambda_0^2/\pi$; there is a resonance. An analogous phenomenon occurs when the denominator of (4.43) vanishes for some $l > 0$, the condition for which is that $\hbar v(3M)/v_0 \hbar k_l = R_l$. If such an l -wave resonance occurs at a low energy E_0 when $k_0 \ll 1$, it is particularly striking, because then that particular partial wave completely dominates and the differential cross section has the angular shape of the square of the Legendre polynomial of order l :

$$\frac{d\sigma}{d\Omega} \approx k_0^{-2} (2l+1)^2 P_l^2(\cos\theta). \quad (4.56)$$

In the vicinity of an l -wave resonance, the tangent of the l^{th} phase shift will generally behave like

$$\tan \delta_l \approx \frac{a}{1 - (k_l/k_0)^2}, \quad \text{where} \quad a > 0. \quad (4.57)$$

This implies that the cross section, which is proportional to $\sin^2 \delta_l$ if the other partial waves can be neglected, goes like

$$\frac{d\sigma}{d\Omega} \approx k_0^{-2} (2l+1)^2 P_l^2(\cos\theta) \frac{a^2}{a^2 + [1 - (k_l/k_0)^2]^2}, \quad (4.58)$$

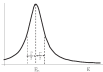
a function that has the bell shape shown in Figure 4.2, generally known as a *Breit-Wigner resonance curve*.²³ It has its maximum at $k = k_0$ and decreases to half its maximal value when $k - k_0 = \pm \frac{1}{2} k_0$; therefore the half-width at half-maximum of the Breit-Wigner curve as a function of k is $\frac{1}{2} k_0$, and as a function of the energy $E = \hbar^2 k^2/2M$ (of course, in the sense that $a \ll 1$) it is

$$\frac{1}{2} \Gamma = \frac{\hbar^2 k_0}{M}. \quad (4.59)$$

Furthermore, it follows from (4.57) that at the resonance, $d\delta_l/dk = 1/(\frac{1}{2} k_0)$, which, according to (3.61), means that there is a time delay τ_D in the outgoing wave,

$$\tau_D = \frac{\hbar}{k_0} \frac{d\delta_l}{dk} = \frac{\hbar}{\frac{1}{2} k_0^2}, \quad (4.60)$$

²³ In the context of charged electromagnetic radiation, the same shape is called *Lorentzian*.

FIGURE 4.2 A Lorentzian resonance curve of width Γ .

indicating that the particle is temporarily caught in an unstable kind of “state.” This delay is the quantum analogue of the classical phenomenon of “orbiting,” in which the particle may circle the attracting center of force many times before finally escaping. Multiplying the two equations (4.45) and (4.46), we find the important relation

$$\Gamma r_D = 2\hbar \quad (4.47)$$

between the width Γ of a resonance curve as a function of the energy and the “lifetime” r_D of the corresponding “state” that is temporarily brought into being. In a rough sort of way (4.47) may be thought of as a consequence of the uncertainty relation between the energy of the unstable “state” and the duration of its existence.

As (4.47) indicates, the phase shift of a sharp resonance drops very, increasingly so, as Γ increases. This behavior can also be expressed in terms of the S matrix,

$$S_l \approx e^{i\delta_l} = \frac{1 + i\Gamma \cot \delta_l}{1 - i\Gamma \cot \delta_l} = \frac{E - E_0 - i\hbar \Gamma}{E - E_0 + i\hbar \Gamma}, \quad (4.48)$$

which shows that near a sharp resonance the S matrix has (or appears to have, because (4.48) may be only an approximation valid on the real axis) a simple pole in the lower half of the k -plane near the real axis. (When the potential strength is increased so as to move the resonance first to the origin and then to produce a bound state, the pole moves to the upper half plane.)

Let’s see what happens when the resonance occurs very close to zero energy and the potential strength is increased so as to move the resonance to the origin, in which case the denominator in (4.48) vanishes at $k = 0$. Comparison with (4.37) shows that the critical potential strength needed to accomplish this is exactly the same as that required to introduce, for

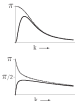


FIGURE 4.3. The upper figure shows a phase shift for $l > 0$ at low energies. The solid curve shows the phase shift if the potential is not quite strong enough to bind; the dashed curve, when there is a shallow bound state. The lower figure shows the behavior of an s -wave phase shift under similar conditions.

the same angular momentum, a new bound state with zero binding energy. According to Eqs. (D.30) and (D.35), used in (4.12), the phase shift near the origin then goes like

$$\tan \delta \sim k^{2l-1},$$

implying that for $l > 0$ the phase shift will vanish (modulo π) at $k = 0$, whereas for $l = 0$ it approaches $\pi/2$ (modulo π). (This exceptional situation is called a *zero-energy resonance* or a *half-bound state*.) Before the potential reaches its critical value, the phase shift at $k = 0$ has a positive slope, so that the scattering length is negative; at the critical strength, the scattering length diverges, and it becomes positive when the potential strength is further increased to produce a bound state of negative energy. At the same time, the phase shift, which was an increasing function of k before the introduction of the bound state, decreases from π at $k = 0$ after the introduction of the bound state. (The low-energy behavior of the phase shifts for $l > 0$ and for $l = 0$ is shown in Figures 4.3.) Thus, every time the increasing potential strength passes a critical value to introduce a new bound state, the phase shift of the same angular momentum at zero energy discontinuously jumps by π ; as a result, the zero-energy phase shift $\delta(0)$ ($\partial \delta/\partial k$) is defined so as to remain as $k \rightarrow \infty$ equal to π (less the number

n_l of bound states of the same angular momentum:

$$k_l(R) = \nu \pi, \quad (4.62)$$

which is known as Levinson's theorem.⁴²

There is, however, an important difference between the case of $l = 0$ and those of $l > 0$. In the former case, the phase shift never quite rises to $\pi/2$ when the potential is below critical strength, thus not causing a resonance, whereas in the case of $l > 0$, it does through $\pi/2$ almost to π , thus causing a resonance at a low value of the energy. The physical reason for this difference is the presence of the centrifugal barrier for $l > 0$, which manages to trap the particle and keep it near the origin for a while.

4.4.3 Transformation to the laboratory system

As we saw, the Schrödinger equation for a two-particle system in its center-of-mass reference frame, in which the two particles interact via a potential V , is identical to that for a one-particle system with V as an external potential, except for the replacement of the mass M of the particle by the reduced mass μ of the two. We therefore always treated two-particle systems in its horizontal frame. Experiments, however, are rarely performed in the center-of-mass frame; more often than not, they are done in a coordinate system, called simply the laboratory frame, in which one of the particles is initially at rest. We thus have to find the transformation leading from the scattering angle θ in the horizontal frame to the scattering angle θ' in the laboratory frame.



FIGURE 4.4. Initial and final particle momenta in the horizontal and in the laboratory frame.

We will denote the initial and final momenta of the particles in the laboratory by $\vec{P}_1$, $\vec{P}_2$, $\vec{P}_1'$ and $\vec{P}_2'$ respectively, and their counterparts in the

⁴²In the exceptional case of $l = 0$ in which there is a zero-energy resonance, (4.62) is replaced by $k_l(R) = (\nu_0 + \frac{1}{2})\pi$.

CM frame $\vec{p}_1$, $\vec{p}_2$, $\vec{p}_1'$, and $\vec{p}_2'$ (Fig. 4.4). In the barycentric frame we have $\vec{p}_1 + \vec{p}_2 = \vec{p}_1' + \vec{p}_2' = 0$, and we define $p \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} p_1 = p_2 = p_1' = p_2'$. In the laboratory, particle (2) will be assumed to be initially at rest, $\vec{p}_2 = 0$. Therefore $\vec{v} = \vec{p}_1 = \vec{p}_2 + M_2 \vec{v}_{\text{CM}}$ and hence,

$$\vec{v}_{\text{CM}} = \frac{\vec{p}_1}{M_1},$$

and it follows that

$$\vec{p}_1 = \vec{p}_1 + M_1 \vec{v}_{\text{CM}} = \vec{p}_1 + \gamma \vec{p}_1.$$

Similarly,

$$\vec{p}_2 = \vec{p}_2 + M_2 \vec{v}_{\text{CM}} = \vec{p}_2 + \gamma \vec{p}_1,$$

which leads to

$$\vec{p}_1 \cdot \vec{p}_1' = p_1 p_1' \cos \theta = (1 + \gamma)(1 + \cos \theta) p^2$$

and

$$p_1'^2 = p^2(1 + \gamma^2 + 2\gamma \cos \theta).$$

As a result we find

$$\cos^2 \theta = \frac{1 + \cos \theta p^2}{1 + \gamma^2 + 2\gamma \cos \theta} \quad (4.64)$$

which leads to the simpler formula

$$\cos \theta = \frac{\sin \theta'}{\gamma + \cos \theta'}. \quad (4.65)$$

The cross sections in the CM system and in the lab frame are related by

$$\frac{d\sigma^{LAB}}{d\Omega} = \frac{d\sigma}{d \cos \theta \sin \theta} = \frac{d\sigma}{d \cos \theta \sin \theta} \frac{d \cos \theta'}{d \cos \theta} = \frac{d\sigma^{CM}}{d\Omega} \frac{d \cos \theta'}{d \cos \theta},$$

and we find from (4.64) that

$$\frac{d \cos \theta'}{d \cos \theta} = \frac{1 + \gamma \cos \theta}{(1 + \gamma^2 + 2\gamma \cos \theta)^{3/2}},$$

so that

$$\frac{d\sigma^{LAB}}{d\Omega} = \frac{d\sigma^{CM}}{d\Omega} \frac{(1 + \gamma^2 + 2\gamma \cos \theta)^{3/2}}{1 + \gamma \cos \theta}, \quad (4.66)$$

Equation (4.66) implies that always $\sin \theta' < 1/\sqrt{1 + \gamma^2}$ and $\theta' < \theta$. If $M_1 > M_2$, so that a heavier particle is scattered in the laboratory by a lighter one that is initially at rest, then θ' is always less than 90° : no particle can be turned back by a lighter one; indeed, when $M_1 \gg M_2$, the scattering in the laboratory is all concentrated near the forward direction, if the two particles have equal masses, then $\theta' = \frac{1}{2}\theta$, so that backward scattering in the CM system becomes 90° scattering in the laboratory. On the other hand, if $M_1 < M_2$, the two frames of reference are nearly the same and the laboratory angle is almost equal to the center-of-mass angle.

4.2.1 The Coulomb potential

The hydrogen atom, the simplest atomic system in nature, provided historically the first important test for the quantum theory, initially in the form of the "old quantum theory" of Bohr and Sommerfeld, and subsequently for Schrödinger's, with later refinements by Dirac and by Feynman, Schwinger, and Tomonaga, the first going to relativity and the second to quantum electrodynamics.

As a first step in the treatment of this two-particle problem we separate out the center-of-mass motion as in Section 4.1.2, after which the wave function of the relative coordinates of the electron with respect to the nucleus has to satisfy a one-particle Schrödinger equation with the reduced mass $\mu = Mm/(m + M)$, if we denote the masses of the electron and the nucleus, respectively, by m and M , and the electric charge of the nucleus by Ze (allowing for the possibility of $Z \neq 1$, say, in the case of a helium ion):

$$-\frac{\hbar^2}{2\mu}\nabla^2\psi - \frac{Ze^2}{r}\psi = E\psi, \quad (4.67)$$

where the reduced mass μ of the electron differs from its actual mass by only 500%. The potential being spherically invariant, we must separate out the angular dependence, writing $\psi = r^{-1}u(r)Y_l^m(\theta, \varphi)$, so that u must satisfy the radial equation

$$-u'' + \left[\frac{l(l+1)}{r^2} - \frac{2Ze^2}{\hbar^2 r} \right] u = \frac{2\mu E}{\hbar^2} u.$$

The Coulomb potential has two special characteristics to be recognized immediately: it is singular as r^{-1} at the origin, and it decreases relatively slowly, as r^{-1} , at infinity. The first does not cause any serious difficulties, but the slow decrease at large distances has important consequences, as we shall see, both for the bound states and for the scattering. This physically important potential does not belong to the class (of potentials decreasing faster than r^{-2} at infinity) to which all of our previous mathematical statements are applicable.

4.2.2 The Hydrogen atom

Let us first look at the bound states and assume therefore that $E < 0$. It will be convenient to multiply the radial Schrödinger equation by $R^2/\sqrt{\mu} \sqrt{2|E|}$, to define the new independent variable $\rho \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} r\sqrt{\mu} \sqrt{2|E|}/\hbar$, and to introduce the constant $\lambda \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} 2Ze^2/\sqrt{\mu} \sqrt{2|E|}\hbar$, after which the radial Schrödinger equation for $R(\rho) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} u(r)$ reads

$$R'' + \left(\frac{\lambda}{\rho} - \frac{1}{4} - \frac{l(l+1)}{\rho^2} \right) R = 0. \quad (4.68)$$

At this point we factor out the dominant behavior of f_l at infinity and at the origin, defining $g_l(\rho) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \rho^{-(l+1/2)} f_l(\rho)$, which leads to the new equation

$$\rho g_l'' + [2l(l+1) - \rho] g_l' + [\lambda - l(l+1)] g_l = 0. \quad (4.65)$$

Making the Frobenius ansatz $g_l = \rho^x \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n \rho^n$ leads to the indicial equation²²

$$x(x-1) + 2l(l+1) = 0,$$

whose solutions are $x = 0$ and $x = -(2l+1)$, as expected.²³ The coefficients a_n for the regular solution, i.e., the one with $x = 0$, must satisfy the recursion relation²⁴

$$a_{n+1} = a_n \frac{n+l+1-\lambda}{(n+1)(n+2l+2)},$$

so that for the tail end of the series $a_{n+1}/a_n \sim 1/n$, like the power series for e^x . Therefore f_l will grow without bounds for large ρ unless the series breaks up, which will happen if and only if λ is an integer n larger than or equal to $l+1$, $\lambda = n = l+1+n'$, $n' = 0, 1, 2, \dots$. Consequently we find that the bound-state energies of the Coulomb potential are given by

$$E_n = -\frac{Z^2 e^4 \mu}{32\pi^2 \hbar^2}, \quad n = l+1, l+2, l+3, \dots \quad (4.70)$$

where n is called the principal quantum number and $n' \stackrel{\text{def}}{=}} n - l - 1$, which takes on all non-negative integral values, is called the radial quantum number.

This result has three significant characteristics, the first two being consequences of the slow decrease of the potential at large distances, and the third special to the Coulomb potential:

1. There are bound states for all angular momenta.
2. For each angular momentum there are infinitely many bound states. The energies of these states accumulate at the origin, thus getting denser and denser there. Neither 1 nor 2 is the case for potentials that decrease faster than r^{-4} at infinity.
3. In addition to the normal n -degeneracy due to the rotational symmetry of the potential, there is also an l -degeneracy: the ground state, designated $1s$, is necessarily an s -wave and non-degenerate, but the first excited level, with $n = 2$, consists of two states, one with $l = 0$,

²²Show this.

²³Show it.

²⁴Show this.

the $2s$ -state, and the other with $l = 1$, the $2p$ -state; the second excited level consists of three states, with $l = 0$, $l = 1$, or $l = 2$, the $3s$, $3p$, and $3d$ -states, etc. The total number of states of the n^{th} energy level is $\sum_{l=0}^{n-1} (2l+1) = n(n-1) + n = n^2$, so the n^{th} level is n^2 -fold degenerate. This is a very special property of the Coulomb potential, the explanation of which, by means of a symmetry, we shall return to in the next Subsection. We shall also see later that not even relativistic corrections serve to remove the l -degeneracy in the hydrogen atom; it takes the effects of quantum electrodynamics to do that.

The bound-state wave functions are obtained by solving (4.65), which is identical to Eq. (D.67) in Appendix D.4. The function y_n , therefore, is an associated Laguerre polynomial $L_{n-l-1}^{2l+1}(y)$, and according to (D.70), the normalized Coulomb wave functions are given by

$$\begin{aligned} \psi_{nlm}(r, \theta, \varphi) &= 2 \frac{(2n-l-1)! \ell!^{1/2} (2\ell)!^{1/2}}{n^2 (n+l)!^{3/2}} \frac{R_{nl}^2}{R^2} \\ &\times \left(\frac{R}{a}\right)^l e^{-R/a} L_{n-l-1}^{2l+1}\left(\frac{R}{a}\right) Y_{\ell}^m(\theta, \varphi), \end{aligned} \quad (4.71)$$

where

$$R \equiv \frac{2Za^2}{R_0} \rho, \quad a \equiv \frac{4\pi\epsilon_0\hbar^2}{m_e e^2}.$$

Parabolic coordinates

The Schrödinger equation with a Coulomb potential can be separated not only in spherical polar coordinates but also in parabolic coordinates, and it is instructive to do so. These coordinates are defined by

$$\xi \equiv r + z, \quad \eta \equiv r - z, \quad \varphi \equiv \arctan(y/z), \quad (4.72)$$

where r is the distance from the origin, $r \equiv \sqrt{z^2 + y^2 + x^2}$, and φ is the azimuthal angle about the z -axis. The Laplacian in these coordinates is given by¹⁰

$$\nabla^2 = \frac{4}{1+\eta} \left[\frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi} + \frac{\partial}{\partial \eta} \frac{\partial}{\partial \eta} \right] + \frac{1}{\xi\eta} \frac{\partial^2}{\partial \varphi^2}. \quad (4.73)$$

The ansatz $\psi = A(\xi)B(\eta)C(\varphi)$ in the Schrödinger equation therefore leads to the equation

$$\frac{2\hbar^2}{\mu} \frac{A''}{1+\eta} \frac{1}{\xi} + \frac{2\hbar^2}{\mu} \frac{B''}{1+\eta} \frac{1}{\eta} + \frac{12\epsilon^2 B}{1+\eta} + B C'' = -\frac{\hbar^2}{2\mu} \frac{C^2}{\xi}.$$

¹⁰Prove this.

from which we may conclude that both sides have to be equal to a constant, which will be called $l^2 m^2/2\mu_0$, so that

$$d\{g\} = e^{im\varphi},$$

and the requirement that l be single-valued forces us to be aware of a positive or negative integer. Multiplication by $\left(\frac{1}{r}\right) + \left(\frac{1}{r}\right)$ then leads to

$$-\frac{2D}{r} \frac{d}{d\varphi} \frac{d}{d\varphi} \frac{d}{d\varphi} f - E f^2 - E f + \frac{l^2}{2\mu_0} \frac{m^2}{r} = -\frac{2D}{r} \frac{d}{d\varphi} \frac{d}{d\varphi} \frac{d}{d\varphi} g + E g^2 - \frac{l^2}{2\mu_0} \frac{m^2}{r},$$

both sides of which must now be equal to a constant, independent of φ and φ , which we shall call β . As a consequence we obtain the following two equations:

$$\frac{d}{d\varphi} \frac{d}{d\varphi} \frac{d}{d\varphi} f + \left(\frac{2\mu_0^2}{2D^2} - \frac{(E)f^2}{2D^2} - \frac{m^2}{4r} + \frac{\beta_0}{2D^2} \right) f = 0, \quad (4.74)$$

$$\frac{d}{d\varphi} \frac{d}{d\varphi} \frac{d}{d\varphi} g + \left(\frac{2\mu_0^2}{2D^2} - \frac{(E)g^2}{2D^2} - \frac{m^2}{4r} - \frac{\beta_0}{2D^2} \right) g = 0, \quad (4.75)$$

both of which are of the form

$$\frac{1}{\zeta} \frac{d}{d\zeta} \left(\zeta \frac{d}{d\zeta} F \right) + \left(\frac{\lambda}{\zeta} - \frac{m^2}{4r} - \frac{1}{4} \right) F = 0, \quad (4.76)$$

where $\zeta \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \sqrt{2\mu_0(E)} \sqrt{1/\mu_0}$ and $\lambda \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \frac{D^2}{2\mu_0^2} (2\sqrt{2\mu_0(E)})$ for f , while $\zeta \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \sqrt{2\mu_0(E)} \sqrt{1/\mu_0}$ and $\lambda \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \frac{D^2}{2\mu_0^2} (2\sqrt{2\mu_0(E)})$ for g . The Frobenius ansatz leads to the indicial equation $x^2 = m^2/4$,¹² whose solutions are $x = \pm m/2$. Thus the regular solutions of (4.76) behave at the origin like $\zeta^{(m+1)/2}$, since it is easy to see that at infinity F goes like $\zeta^{-1/2}$, we set

$$F(\zeta) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \zeta^{(m+1)/2} G(\zeta),$$

which leads to the equation

$$\zeta G'' + (m+1 - \zeta) G' + \left(\lambda - \frac{1}{4} \right) (m+1) G = 0. \quad (4.77)$$

This equation is again of the form of Eq. (2.57), and the solutions f and g are obtained by setting $\lambda_1 = \frac{1}{4}(m+1) + \alpha_1$ for f and $\lambda_2 = \frac{1}{4}(m+1) + \alpha_2$ for g , where α_1 and α_2 are non-negative integers; hence

$$\lambda_1 + \lambda_2 = \frac{2\mu_0^2}{\lambda} \sqrt{\frac{E}{2(E)}} = \alpha_1 + \alpha_2 + (m+1) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} n.$$

¹²Worse this.

The resulting energy eigenfunctions agree with (4.70), and the (non-normalised) eigenfunctions are given by

$$\psi_{n\ell m, \alpha, \beta}(\mathbf{r}, \eta, \varphi) = e^{-\alpha R + i\ell\eta/\alpha} (2\alpha)^{j(\ell+1)/2} L_{n-\ell-1}^{(\ell)}(\alpha R^2/\alpha) L_{\ell}^{(\ell)}(\alpha R^2/\alpha) (ae^{i\varphi})^{\ell} e^{im\varphi}, \quad (4.74)$$

where

$$\alpha \equiv \frac{4\pi^2 \mu E^2}{\hbar^2}.$$

At this point you may be puzzled by the fact that the eigenfunctions shown in (4.71) vanish when the associated Laguerre functions of R vanish, which means that their zero-surfaces are cones and spheres, whereas the eigenfunctions shown in (4.74) vanish when the associated Laguerre polynomials of $\alpha R^2/\alpha$ and $\alpha R^2/\alpha$ vanish, which implies that their zero-surfaces are paraboloids. The reason why these two sets of eigenfunctions are compatible is the ℓ -degeneracy, owing to which the eigenfunctions are not unique, which shows that there is a connection between the unusual degeneracy of the Coulomb spectrum and the fact that the Schrödinger equation with a Coulomb potential is separable in more than one coordinate system.

More on the ℓ -degeneracy

[This section makes use of some of the results of Chapter 3 and is best read after that chapter.]

For the classical Kepler problem with the Hamiltonian $H = \hat{p}^2/2\mu - \alpha/r$, the vector $\mathbf{F} \equiv \hat{\mathbf{L}} \times \hat{\mathbf{L}} - \alpha\hat{\mathbf{r}}/r$, called the Laplace-Runge-Lenz vector, is a constant of the motion. [Goldstein] (Here $\hat{\mathbf{L}}$ is the velocity of the particle and $\hat{\mathbf{L}} = \mathbf{r} \times \hat{\mathbf{p}}$ is its angular momentum.) Similarly, in quantum mechanics, the operator

$$\hat{\mathbf{M}} \equiv \hat{\mathbf{L}} \times \hat{\mathbf{L}} - \hat{\mathbf{L}} \times \hat{\mathbf{p}} - \hat{p}^2 \alpha \hat{\mathbf{r}}/r, \quad \alpha \equiv \frac{4\pi^2 \mu \alpha^2}{\hbar^2} \quad (4.75)$$

commutes with the Hamiltonian $\hat{H} = \hat{p}^2/2\mu - \hat{V}r^2/r$ of the hydrogen atom.¹⁹

$$[\hat{\mathbf{M}}, \hat{H}] = 0.$$

Furthermore, since $\hat{\mathbf{M}}$ is a vector, its commutation relations with the angular momentum $\hat{\mathbf{L}}$ are (see Section 3.1)

$$[\hat{L}_i, \hat{M}_j] = i\hbar \hat{M}_k$$

and its cyclic permutations, while $[\hat{L}_i, \hat{M}_i] = 0$. In addition, of course, $\hat{\mathbf{L}}$ is a constant of the motion,

$$[\hat{\mathbf{L}}, \hat{H}] = 0$$

¹⁹Ward, 19.

and it also satisfies the commutation relations of a vector,

$$[\mathbf{L}_i, \mathbf{L}_j] = i\hbar \epsilon_{ijk} \mathbf{L}_k,$$

etc. Obviously $\hat{\mathbf{L}} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{S}} = \hat{\mathbf{S}} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{L}} = 0$, and we find that²⁰

$$\hat{\mathbf{S}} \times \hat{\mathbf{S}} = -i\hbar \epsilon_{ijk} \hat{\mathbf{S}} \mathbf{e}_j$$

as well as

$$\hat{\mathbf{S}}^2 = \hbar^2 s(s+1) \mathbf{1}. \quad (4.90)$$

Confining ourselves now to the subspace of a fixed bound-state energy level $-|E|$, and defining $\hat{\mathbf{N}} \equiv \hat{\mathbf{S}}/2s\hbar\sqrt{|E|}$, we then obtain the commutation relations

$$\frac{1}{2}(\hat{\mathbf{L}} + \hat{\mathbf{N}}) \times \frac{1}{2}(\hat{\mathbf{L}} + \hat{\mathbf{N}}) = i\hbar \frac{1}{2}(\hat{\mathbf{L}} + \hat{\mathbf{N}}),$$

which are identical to the commutation relations of the angular momentum $\hat{\mathbf{L}}$. It therefore follows that the eigenvalues of $[\frac{1}{2}(\hat{\mathbf{L}} + \hat{\mathbf{N}})]^2$ must be $\hbar^2 n_A(n_A + 1)$, where the numbers n_A are non-negative integers or half-integers. But since $\hat{\mathbf{L}} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{N}} = \hat{\mathbf{N}} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{L}} = 0$, it follows that $(\hat{\mathbf{L}} + \hat{\mathbf{N}})^2 = (\hat{\mathbf{L}} - \hat{\mathbf{N}})^2$, and consequently the eigenvalues of $\hat{\mathbf{L}}^2 + \hat{\mathbf{N}}^2$ are $\hbar^2(n^2 - 1)$, where the $n \equiv 2n_A + 1$ are positive integers. Eq.(4.90) therefore implies that $\hbar^2 n^2 = \hbar^2 s^2 s(s+1)|E|$, or

$$E = -\frac{\hbar^2 s^2 s}{2\mu a_0^2 n^2}$$

in agreement with (4.76).

The interest of this derivation of the energy levels of hydrogenic atoms lies in the fact that the six operators $\hat{\mathbf{L}}$ and $\hat{\mathbf{S}}$, all of which commute with the Hamiltonian $\hat{\mathbf{H}}$, satisfy exactly the commutation relations of the generators of the group $\text{O}(4)$ of rotations in 4-dimensional Euclidean space, so that the degeneracy of the discrete spectrum implied by (4.76) is the result of the invariance of the hydrogenic Hamiltonian under that group. The degeneracy is therefore not accidental but normal for this symmetry. For further details about the use of the $\text{O}(4)$ symmetry, see [Bardar], pp. 330 and 346.

4.2.6 Coulomb scattering

Let us next consider the case of positive energy of a system consisting of two particles of charge Ze and $-e$.²¹ Separating the Schrödinger equation in spherical polar coordinates leads to the radial equation

$$\psi_1'' + k^2 \psi_1 = \frac{2\mu}{r} \psi_1 + \frac{l(l+1)}{r^2} \psi_1. \quad (4.91)$$

²⁰Prove these equations.

²¹For scattering of an electron by a proton, the system of which hydrogen is a bound state, we would have to take $Z_1 = +1$ and $Z_2 = 1$.

where

$$\kappa \equiv \frac{4\pi}{3} \frac{Z_1 Z_2 e^2 \mu}{\hbar^2 k} = \frac{Z_1 Z_2 e^2 \mu}{\hbar v}.$$

The parameter κ here is the analogue of the principal quantum number for the bound states but is now taking on continuous values, and v is the relative velocity of the two particles when they are far apart.

For large values of r , when the centrifugal term is ignored, the solution of (4.81) can be easily seen to be approximately

$$\psi_l(r) \sim e^{i\kappa(r - \kappa \log r)},$$

rather than the usual $e^{i\kappa r}$. Because of the slow decrease of the Coulomb potential, the usual results for scattering, that the radial wave functions simply suffer a constant phase shift, are thus inapplicable. To solve the radial equation, we again set

$$\psi_l(r) \equiv e^{i\kappa(r - \kappa \log r)} f_l(r),$$

obtaining the equation

$$r f_l'' + 2i\kappa r + l(l+1) f_l' + 2i\kappa(l+1) - \kappa^2 f_l = 0. \quad (4.82)$$

Comparison with the confluent hypergeometric equation (D.17) in Appendix D.1 shows that the regular solution of this equation is the confluent hypergeometric function

$$f_l(r) = {}_1F_1[\Gamma(l+1+i\kappa); 2l+2; -2i\kappa r],$$

and therefore,

$$\psi_l(r) = e^{i\kappa(r - \kappa \log r)} {}_1F_1[\Gamma(l+1+i\kappa); 2l+2; -2i\kappa r], \quad (4.83)$$

whose asymptotic behavior for large r , according to (D.18), is

$$\begin{aligned} \psi_l(r) &= e^{i\kappa} \frac{\Gamma(2l+2)}{\Gamma(l+1+i\kappa)} (2i\kappa)^{-(l+1+i\kappa)} e^{-i\kappa r} + i\kappa \log(i\kappa r) \\ &\quad + e^{i\kappa} \frac{\Gamma(2l+2)}{\Gamma(l+1+i\kappa)} (-2i\kappa)^{-(l+1+i\kappa)} e^{-i\kappa r} + i\kappa \log(-i\kappa r) \\ &= \frac{e^{i\kappa} \Gamma(2l+2)}{2^{l+1} \Gamma(l+1+i\kappa)} \sin[\kappa r - \kappa \log 2\kappa r - \frac{\pi}{2}(l+\eta_l)], \end{aligned} \quad (4.84)$$

where η_l is defined as the phase of $\Gamma(l+1+i\kappa)$:

$$\Gamma(l+1+i\kappa) \equiv |\Gamma(l+1+i\kappa)| e^{i\eta_l}.$$

Therefore the asymptotic form of the radial wave function is of the form

$$\psi_l(r) \sim \sin[\kappa r - \kappa \log 2\kappa r - \frac{\pi}{2}(l+\eta_l)]. \quad (4.85)$$

As in the case of bound states, it will be instructive to separate the Schrödinger equation in parabolic coordinates, as defined in (1.72), and defining the x -axis in the direction of the incoming particles. We make the ansatz

$$\psi = e^{ikx} e^{i\ell y} e^{i\ell' z} \Xi(\xi),$$

in the hope of finding a solution $\Xi(\xi)$ that asymptotically differs from unity by a term proportional to $e^{ik\xi} = e^{ik(r-\ell y)}$, which, when multiplied by $e^{i\ell y} = e^{i\ell' z}$, will give us the expected outgoing wave. Insertion of the ansatz in the Schrödinger equation with the Laplacian (1.73) yields the equation

$$\xi \Xi'' + (1 - ik\xi) \Xi' - ik\xi \Xi = 0, \quad (4.86)$$

identical with the confluent hypergeometric equation (D.37). Therefore, the solution of (4.86) regular at the origin is given by

$$\Xi(\xi) = {}_1F_1(1; 1 + ik\xi),$$

which, according to (D.58), gives asymptotically as

$$\begin{aligned} \Xi(\xi) &= e \left\{ \frac{1}{\Gamma(1 + ik)} e^{ik \log(-ik\xi)} \left(1 - \frac{\xi^2}{4k\xi} \right) \right. \\ &\quad \left. + \frac{1}{\Gamma(1+k)} e^{ik \log(-1 + ik) + ik \log(k\xi)} \left(1 - \frac{\xi + ik\xi^2}{4k\xi} \right) \right\}. \end{aligned}$$

We therefore find the long-distance behavior

$$\begin{aligned} \psi &\sim \frac{e^{i\ell y}}{\Gamma(1 + ik)} \left\{ e^{i\ell' z + ik \log(kr - \ell y)} \left(1 - \frac{r^2}{4k(r - \ell)} + \dots \right) \right. \\ &\quad \left. + e^{i\ell' z} \frac{1}{r} e^{i\ell' z + ik \log(kr \ell)} \left(1 - \frac{\ell + ik\ell^2}{4k(r - \ell)} + \dots \right) \right\}, \quad (4.87) \end{aligned}$$

where

$$e^{i\ell' z} = - \frac{e^{ik \log(kr \ell)} e^{i\ell' z} (ik \ell y)}{2ik \ell r^2 k/2}, \quad (4.88)$$

and we have used the fact that

$$\frac{\Gamma(1 + ik)}{\Gamma(-ik)} = \frac{\Gamma(1 + ik) \Gamma(1 - ik)}{\Gamma(1 - ik)} = -i\pi e^{2k\ell}.$$

The leading terms in both parentheses will dominate when $|r^2/(k(r - \ell))| \ll 1$, which requires not only that $k r \gg 1$ but also that the angle θ not be too small, i.e., that we are not looking in the forward direction. Since in all practical cases, $k r$ is extremely large, the excluded forward cone is too small to be of any significance. With this proviso, then, the

Coulomb-scattering amplitude is represented by (4.85), and the differential cross section for Coulomb scattering is

$$\frac{d\sigma}{d\Omega} = |C(\theta)|^2 = \frac{q^2}{[2k \sin^2(\theta/2)]^2} = \left(\frac{Z_1 Z_2 q^2}{4k^2} \right)^2 \cot^4(\theta/2), \quad (4.90)$$

which by a remarkable coincidence is identical to the Rutherford cross section for classical Coulomb scattering. You should note particularly the sharp forward peaking of this scattering cross section and its strong increase at small relative velocities. Another notable feature is the fact that the scattering does not depend on whether the particles have charges of equal or opposite signs. (The phase of the scattering amplitude, however, does depend on it, and especially strongly so near the forward direction.)

If the wave function ψ is to be normalized to unit incident flux, (4.87) shows that we must choose

$$u = \frac{e^{-i\pi/2} \Gamma(1 + i\alpha)}{\sqrt{i}},$$

and the Coulomb wave function becomes, with $\alpha \equiv \frac{Z_1 Z_2 q^2}{k^2} \rho^2/k$,

$$\psi(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{k}, \rho) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{r}} e^{-i\pi/2} \Gamma(1 + i\alpha) e^{ikr} \cot \theta F(-i\alpha, 1 + i\alpha; 2 + i\alpha; 2ikr \sin^2 \theta/2), \quad (4.91)$$

whose absolute magnitude squared at the origin is

$$|\psi(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{k}, \rho)|^2 = \frac{1}{r} e^{-\pi\alpha} [\Gamma(1 + i\alpha)]^2,$$

or, since $\Gamma(1 + i)\Gamma(1 - i) = \pi(1/\sin \pi)$,

$$|\psi(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{k}, \rho)|^2 = \frac{1}{r} \frac{2\pi\alpha}{e^{2\pi\alpha} - 1}. \quad (4.92)$$

This is the probability density of finding the two particles in close proximity to one another, an important fact for nuclear reactions. In the limit as $\alpha \rightarrow 0$, this probability density approaches $2\pi\alpha/r$ when $\alpha < 0$, i.e., when the force is attractive, and it approaches $2\pi\alpha(e^{2\pi\alpha} - 1)/r$ when $\alpha > 0$, i.e., when the force is repulsive. The two cases differ by a factor of

$$e^{-2\pi\alpha} \equiv e^{-2\pi Z_1 Z_2 \rho^2/k},$$

called the *Gamow factor*, which expresses the strongly repulsive effect of the Coulomb barrier between two particles whose electrical charges have the same sign. It plays a significant role in nuclear physics, for example, in the explanation of some radioactive decays and in the rate of thermonuclear reactions in the sun.

4.3 The Inverse Problem

The determination of the bound-state energies and the scattering amplitude for a given potential function is called the *direct problem* of the Schrödinger equation. However, from the point of view of explaining experimental data, it is often much more interesting to pose the *inverse problem*: given the scattering amplitude and bound-state energies (call them “the data” for short), can we determine the potential in the Schrödinger equation that produces them? The relation between the data and the potential being nonlinear, the solution to this problem is not straightforward.

A relatively simple procedure sometimes employed is to assume that the potential is a member of a given multi-parameter family of functions for which we know how to solve the Schrödinger equation, either exactly or by numerical computation. We then compare the results calculated for a range of values of the parameters with the data and choose the values leading to the best fit. This has the drawback that there is no guarantee that the potential sought is uniquely determined by the data; moreover, the real underlying potential might not belong to the assumed family at all and may have a quite different shape. It is therefore useful to try to approach the inversion of the map from a large class of potentials to the data as a mathematical problem without any preconceptions.

If we confine ourselves to central potentials and expand the scattering amplitude in a partial-wave series, the inverse problem may be posed in two different ways:

1. Suppose the phase shift of one angular momentum ℓ is given for all energies, can we determine the potential?
2. Suppose all phase shifts are given at one non-zero energy E , can we determine the potential?

The answer to the first question is that, if there are no bound states of angular momentum ℓ , then the potential is uniquely determined. However, when there are $n \geq 1$ bound states of angular momentum ℓ , we also need to know all their energies. There still remains one additional free parameter for each bound state, a positive constant which specifies the slope of the normalised bound-state wave function at the origin.

The answer to the second question, from an experimental point of view much more interesting than the first, is that there is always at least a one-parameter family of potentials that produce the same phase shifts at the specified energy E . In fact, there exists at least a one-parameter family of potentials for which all phase shifts vanish at E . Only if we restrict ourselves to potentials that decrease faster than $r^{-3/2}$ at infinity is the solution to the inverse problem at fixed energy unique.

4.3.1 Solution procedure

To illustrate the mathematical method that can actually lead from the data of a fixed angular momentum to the potential, take the case $l = 0$ and define the function

$$h(r) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \frac{1}{2M} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dt e^{iEt} (y^{\text{bound}}(t) - 1) = \sum_n M_n e^{-iE_n r}, \quad (4.52)$$

where l is the s -wave phase shift, $-E_n^2 \hbar^2/2M$ are the energies of the bound states, and the M_n are positive constants. The following linear integral equation,

$$R(r, r') = h(r' + r') + \int_0^\infty dr'' h(r' + r'') R(r, r''), \quad (4.53)$$

which is called the Marchenko equation after the Russian mathematician V.A. Marchenko, then has to be solved for each given r . [In (4.53), r plays the role of a fixed parameter.] Its solution leads to the potential

$$V(r) = -\frac{\hbar^2}{2M} \frac{d}{dr} R(r, r), \quad (4.54)$$

which, when inserted in the s -wave Schrödinger equation yields the phase shift l and the given bound state energies. A similar procedure allows the construction of the potential from a knowledge of the phase shifts of any other angular momentum and the corresponding bound states.

In order to derive the Marchenko equation, we have to define two auxiliary solutions of the s -wave Schrödinger equation. The first is a regular solution $\psi(k, r)$ that satisfies the boundary condition at the origin,

$$\psi(k, 0) = 0, \quad \psi'(k, 0) = 1.$$

This function is the solution of the linear integral equation¹³

$$\psi(k, r) = k^{-1} \sin kr + \frac{iM}{k^2} \int_0^\infty dr' \sin kr' - r' J^2(r') \psi(k, r'), \quad (4.55)$$

which can always be solved uniquely by iteration, even for complex values of k . As a result, $\psi(k, r)$ is an entire analytic function of k , with no singularities anywhere. Since r is real and $r = 0$, it must be a multiple of the physical wave function ψ .

The other solution we need is defined by the boundary condition at infinity,

$$\lim_{r \rightarrow \infty} f(k, r) e^{-iEr} = 0. \quad (4.56)$$

It is the solution of the integral equation

$$f(k, r) = e^{iEr} + \frac{iM}{k^2} \int_0^\infty dr' \sin kr' - r' J^2(r') f(k, r'), \quad (4.57)$$

¹³ As an exercise, show that a solution of (4.55) solves the Schrödinger equation.

which also can always be solved by iteration for all x with $\operatorname{Im} k \geq 0$. The function, called the *Jost solution* of three-wave Schrödinger equation, is an analytic function of k , regular everywhere in the upper half-plane, but since it generally does not vanish at $x = 0$, it is not physical, except when for $k = ik_0$ with $k_0 \geq 0$, the function

$$\psi(k) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} f(k, 0), \quad (4.98)$$

satisfies $\psi(k) = 0$, in which case $f(k, x)$ is a solution that vanishes at the origin and also decreases exponentially at infinity. It thus has bound-state wave functions and $-\hbar^2 k_0^2/2M$ is the energy of a bound state. In the bound-state region the zeros of $\psi(k)$ in the upper half plane, the large $|k|$ with $x = \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2M}$ for $k \geq 0$, are fixed from (4.97) that

$$f(k, x) = e^{ikx}, \quad \psi(k) = 1 \quad (4.99)$$

and from (4.98) that

$$\varphi(k, x) = e^{ikx} \sin k_0 x \quad \text{for } k \in \mathbb{R} \setminus \{k_0, -k_0\}. \quad (4.100)$$

Thus, for real k , the two functions $f(k, x)$ and $F(-k, x)$ are linearly independent, it must be possible to express $\varphi(k, x)$ as a linear combination of these two solutions of the Schrödinger equation,

$$\varphi(k, x) = a_f f(k, x) + b_f F(-k, x),$$

and the two coefficients a and b are calculated by means of the boundary condition of φ at $x = 0$, $\psi(k) = b_f J(k)$ and $0 = -\psi'(k) = J'(k)$, where $J(k) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} f'(k, 0)/f(k, 0) = F'(-k, 0)/F(-k, 0)$. The expression $J(k)$ is the Wronskian of the two solutions $f(k, x)$ and $F(-k, x)$ of the Schrödinger equation, a second-order ordinary differential equation, and thus is independent of x , as already mentioned in Chapter 3. We can then evaluate it just as well at $x \rightarrow \infty$, in which case we obtain from the boundary condition (4.98) that $J = 2ik$, and so a is small

$$a = \frac{1}{2ik} [f(k, x=0) - 0] = F(-k, 0)/J(k). \quad (4.101)$$

Comparison with (4.98) shows that we can therefore conclude,

$$\frac{b_f - 1}{f(k)} = -e^{i\theta(k)}. \quad (4.102)$$

Now define the Fourier transform

$$A(k, x') \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dx e^{-ikx'} [f(k, x) - e^{ikx}]. \quad (4.103)$$

When $x' < x$, because of the analyticity of $f(k, x)$ and the asymptotic (4.99), the path of this integral can be closed by a large semicircle in the upper half plane, so that Cauchy's theorem implies that $A(x, x') = 0$ for $x' < x$, and the inverse of (4.103) reads

$$f(k, x) = e^{ikx} + \int_x^\infty dx' A(k, x') e^{ikx'}. \quad (4.104)$$

Next, (4.101) together with (4.103) implies that

$$F(-k, x) = e^{ikx} A(k, x) - 2ik_0 f(k, x)/J(k),$$

while we insert in (4.103) after changing k into $-k$, for $x' \geq x$

$$\begin{aligned} A(x, x') &= -\frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dk e^{ikx'} [e^{i\theta(k)} - (f(k, x) - e^{ikx}) + e^{ikx} e^{ikx'} - 1] \\ &= -f(k, x) - e^{ikx} - 2ik_0 f(k, x)/J(k) = e^{ikx} \sin k_0 x. \end{aligned}$$

The first term is the convolution²³ of $A(x, -x')$ with the Fourier transform

$$A(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dk e^{ikx} = \delta(x). \quad (4.105)$$

²³Where this.

the second term is $k(r + r')$, and the third and fourth terms vanish by contour integration if there are no bound states. The result is (4.98). If there are bound states, the function k has to be defined as in (4.99) rather than as in (4.98), and upon the result in (4.98).

Finally, insert (4.98) in the radial Schrödinger equation and you will find that for $r' > r$, the function $k(r, r')$ has to satisfy the partial differential equation

$$\left(\frac{\partial^2}{\partial r^2} + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial r'^2} \right) k(r, r') = \frac{2M}{\hbar^2} V(r) k(r, r')$$

and the boundary condition (4.96). □

Of course, one also has to prove that the potential obtained by (4.94), when used in the s -wave Schrödinger equation, indeed leads to the data used as input in the definition of the function k . For these and further details, including the precise conditions on the potential under which the procedure works, generalizations to $l > 0$, as well as a solution to problem (2), the inverse problem at fixed energy, see [Chadha].

Note that the uniqueness of the inversion proved here from a knowledge of a single phase shift of an angular momentum for which the potential produces no bound states implies that if a scattering amplitude is given for all energies, then the fact that it comes from an underlying central potential²² not only makes the phase shifts of all angular momenta dependent on one another, but this scattering amplitude also determines the bound states. To see this, all you have to do is use a phase shift of an angular momentum for which there are no bound states—in the specified class there always exists such an l -value—to find the underlying potential V ; all the other phase shifts and the bound states, if any, are then determined by V .

An example

As a simple example, suppose that, with $\alpha, \beta > 0$,

$$r^{\alpha\sin\beta} = \frac{k + \sin \frac{k + \beta}{2}}{k + \sin \frac{k - \beta}{2}},$$

which means that

$$k \cot \beta = \frac{\alpha k + k^2}{k - \alpha}. \quad (4.100)$$

The function $k(r')$ is then easily calculated²³ by evaluating the integral in (4.98) using contour integration (after adding a large semicircle in the upper half plane) and applying the Cauchy residue theorem,

$$k(r) = -2ik\alpha e^{-ikr}, \quad \beta \frac{d\alpha}{d\beta} = \frac{k - \alpha}{k + \alpha}.$$

²²This potential has to be in a class for which the procedure works, which requires that $r^2V(r)$ be integrable. Roughly speaking, this means that $V(r)$ is not as singular at the origin as r^{-3} and that it decreases faster than r^{-3} at infinity.

²³The k ,

Thus the Marchenko equation (4.88) becomes

$$A(x, x') = -2k\beta e^{-k(x+x')} + \int_x^\infty dx'' e^{-ik(x''+x')} A(x, x'').$$

The function $B(x, x') \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} A(x, x')e^{ik(x+x')}$ therefore must satisfy the equation

$$B(x, x') = -2k\beta \left[1 + \int_x^\infty dx'' e^{-ikx''} B(x, x'') \right],$$

which implies that it is independent of x' and we obtain

$$B(x, x') = -\frac{2k\beta}{1 + \beta e^{-2ikx}}$$

or

$$A(x, x') = -2k\beta \frac{e^{-k(x+x')}}{1 + \beta e^{-2ikx}}.$$

Therefore the potential is given by

$$V(x) = \frac{2k\beta^2}{\beta} \frac{d}{dx} \frac{1}{\beta + e^{2ikx}} = -\frac{4k^2\beta^2}{\beta^2} \frac{e^{2ikx}}{(\beta + e^{2ikx})^2}. \quad (4.90)$$

4.3.2 The phase of the scattering amplitude

The above inversion procedure starts from the assumption that either one phase shift is known for all energies or all phase shifts are known at one energy. In reality, however, a scattering experiment measures the scattering cross section, rather than the scattering amplitude, a knowledge of whose phase is needed to determine the phase shifts. Is there a way of determining the phase of the amplitude if the cross section, i.e., its absolute magnitude, is given?

We have one handle on this problem, and that is the generalized optical theorem (4.52). If the scattering amplitude is written in the dimensionless form

$$A(\theta; k) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} k^{-1} F(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} k^{-1} G(x) e^{i\phi(x)}$$

with $x = \cos\theta$ and $G(x) \geq 0$,¹⁸ a change of variables in the angle integration¹⁹ changes (4.52) into

$$2F(x) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-1}^1 \int_{-1}^1 d\eta d\xi \frac{F(\eta)F^*(\xi)}{\sqrt{1-x^2-\eta^2-\xi^2+2\eta\xi x}}.$$

¹⁸In order not to clutter up the notation, the independence of F and G has been suppressed.

¹⁹ Carry this out as an exercise.

where the region of integration is the interior of the ellipse in which the radicand in the integral is positive. This equation may be expressed in terms of the phase φ of the scattering amplitude

$$\sin \varphi(x) = \int \int d\mathbf{y} \, d\mathbf{z} \, R(x, \mathbf{y}, \mathbf{z}) \cos[\varphi(\mathbf{y}) - \varphi(\mathbf{z})], \quad (4.108)$$

in which

$$R(x, \mathbf{y}, \mathbf{z}) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \frac{Q(\mathbf{y}, \mathbf{z})}{2\pi i(x^2 - 1 - x^2 - y^2 - z^2 + 2xyz)},$$

Equation (4.108) may be regarded as a nonlinear integral equation for the phase φ of the scattering amplitude if the cross section $Q^2(x)$ is experimentally given. Unfortunately, not much is known about general conditions under which it has a solution and when this solution is unique. One thing is immediately clear: if $\varphi(x)$ is a solution of (4.108), then so is $\pi - \varphi(x)$; thus there can at best be uniqueness of the solution of (4.108) modulo this ambiguity; the generalized optical theorem, together with a knowledge of the differential cross section, can determine the phase shifts, if at all, only to within an overall sign. If the function

$$Q(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \int \int d\mathbf{y} \, d\mathbf{z} \, D(x, \mathbf{y}, \mathbf{z})$$

satisfies 1 for some value of x , there are particular problems concerning both the existence and the uniqueness of a solution, and explicit examples of non-uniqueness (beyond the one mentioned above) are known [Chidston]. However, it can be proved that if for all $-1 \leq x \leq 1$, $Q(x) \leq M < 1$, then (4.108) has a solution; moreover, if $M < 3/32$, then this solution is unique and can be constructed by a convergent sequence of successive approximations.¹⁷

The fact that (4.108) always has a solution if only the cross section is small enough (so that M is small) has quite interesting physical implications. Suppose an experimentally given differential cross section is expressible as a linear combination of the first $2L + 1$ Legendre polynomials, i.e., from $P_0(\cos \theta)$ to $P_{2L}(\cos \theta)$. One would then be tempted to conclude that the corresponding scattering amplitude contains no partial waves higher than L .¹⁸ But since the phase shifts are real, this would allow for only $L + 1$ real coefficients, whereas the expansion of the given differential cross section generally requires $2L + 1$ real coefficients. It would therefore follow that the reality of the phase shifts (which is equivalent to the generalized

¹⁷ Newton (2), pp. 432–433.

¹⁸ As we ourselves show that if the partial-wave expansion of the amplitude terminates exactly at order L , then the Legendre expansion of its magnitude squared must contain a term of order $2L$.

optical theorem) impose strong restrictions on the possible angular shapes of a differential cross section. We have, however, found that if the cross section is small enough, this conclusion is incorrect: any shape is compatible with the generalized optical theorem. The only way out of this apparent contradiction is that almost all differential cross sections that can be expressed in terms of the first $2L + 1$ Legendre polynomials require infinitely many terms in the partial wave expansions of their corresponding amplitudes.

4.4 Potentials without Spherical Symmetry

4.4.1 Green's Functions

In Section 4.2.2, we discussed the scattering amplitude and its partial-wave expansion for a particle subject to a rotationally invariant potential. We will now take up the case in which such symmetry is lacking. In order to define, or calculate numerically, a solution of the Schrödinger equation that satisfies the boundary conditions (4.45), it is most convenient to define a Green's function that satisfies the equation

$$(\nabla^2 + k^2)g_{\pm}^{\pm}(k, \mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}') = \delta^3(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}') \quad (4.106)$$

and the “outgoing-wave boundary condition” for $r = |\mathbf{r}| \rightarrow \infty$,

$$g_{\pm}^{\pm}(k, \mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}') \propto \frac{e^{\pm ikr}}{r}.$$

The physical significance of this function is best appreciated by going back to the time-development of a state.

The retarded propagator $\hat{G}^+(t)$, which allows us to express the state vector $\hat{\Psi}(t)$ in terms of the state vector $\hat{\Psi}(t')$ at any earlier time $t' < t$ by (2.50), was defined in (2.55). What we now need for solving the time-independent Schrödinger equation is its Fourier transform,

$$\hat{G}^+(E) \equiv \frac{1}{i\hbar} \int_{-\infty}^0 dt e^{iEt/\hbar} \hat{G}^+(t), \quad (4.107)$$

which, as it stands, is not well defined, because the integral does not converge. However, since $\hat{G}^+(t)$ vanishes for $t < 0$, there will be no problem if E is taken to be complex, with a positive imaginary part ϵ . The integral is then easily carried out, with the result

$$\hat{G}^+(E) = (E + i\epsilon - \mathbf{H})^{-1}, \quad (4.111)$$

where the limit $\epsilon \rightarrow 0+$ is understood.

Of course, all of this can be done equally well in terms of the free Hamiltonian, consisting only of the kinetic energy, $\mathbf{H}_0 = \hat{\mathbf{p}}^2/2M$, in which case we form first $G_0^+(t)$ just as in (4.10), and then take its Fourier transform as in (4.103),

$$G_0^+(E) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dt e^{iEt/\hbar} G_0^+(t), \quad (4.112)$$

with the result

$$G_0^+(E) = (E + i\epsilon - \mathbf{H}_0)^{-1}, \quad (4.113)$$

which is called the free Green's function (in contrast to (4.111), which is the complete Green's function). In the momentum representation $G_0^+(E)$ is diagonal and given explicitly by the function

$$G_0^+(E, \mathbf{p}) = 1 / \left(E + i\epsilon - \frac{\mathbf{p}^2}{2M} \right). \quad (4.114)$$

From this we calculate the Green's function in the configuration representation by means of (4.11),

$$G_0^+(E; \mathbf{r}, \mathbf{r}') = (2\pi\hbar)^{-3} \int d^3p e^{i\mathbf{p} \cdot (\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}')/\hbar} G_0^+(E, \mathbf{p}),$$

with the result¹⁶

$$G_0^+(E; \mathbf{r}, \mathbf{r}') = -\frac{M}{2\pi\hbar^2} \frac{e^{ik|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'|}}{|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'|}, \quad (4.115)$$

where $k = +\sqrt{2ME}/\hbar$. It satisfies the differential equation¹⁷

$$\left(\frac{\hbar^2}{2M} \nabla^2 + E \right) G_0^+(E; \mathbf{r}, \mathbf{r}') = \delta^3(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}') \quad (4.116)$$

and the outgoing-wave boundary condition. This function therefore differs from that defined in (4.108) simply by a factor of $2M/\hbar^2$. In fact, since for $|\mathbf{r}| \gg |\mathbf{r}'|$ and $|\mathbf{r}| \gg (\hbar^2/E)^{1/2}$,

$$k|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'| = k[|\mathbf{r}| - \mathbf{r}' \cdot \mathbf{r}/r + O(|\mathbf{r}'|^2/r^2)] = k|\mathbf{r}| - \hat{\mathbf{r}} \cdot \mathbf{r}' + o(1),$$

where $\hat{\mathbf{r}} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \mathbf{r}/r$, we have in that limit

$$G_0^+(E; \mathbf{r}, \mathbf{r}') \sim -\frac{M}{2\pi\hbar^2} \frac{e^{ikr}}{r} e^{-i\hat{\mathbf{r}} \cdot \mathbf{r}'}. \quad (4.117)$$

The function $G_0^+(E; \mathbf{r}, \mathbf{r}')$ is nothing but the Fourier transform of the propagator already calculated earlier, with the result (4.27). Similarly as in

¹⁶The thin integral is an exercise in contour integration in the complex plane. You should do the angle integration first.

¹⁷Verify this.

(LRC), there is also a (free) two-propagator, which determines the state vector $\Psi_0(t)$ in terms of $\Psi_0(t')$ for $t < t'$. Its Fourier transform, the corresponding Green's function, is the operator⁴²

$$G_0^-(\vec{R}) = (\vec{R} - i0 - \mathbf{H}_0)^{-1}, \quad (4.118)$$

which in the configuration representation takes the form⁴³

$$G_0^-(\vec{R}, t, t') = -\frac{M}{2\pi i 0} \frac{e^{-iM(t-t')}}{|t-t'|} = G_0^{<-}(\vec{R}, t, t'). \quad (4.119)$$

Regarded as an operator, we have

$$G_0^-(\vec{R}) = G_0^{<-}(\vec{R}). \quad (4.120)$$

Let us now use these Green's functions for solving the Schrödinger equations. In order to solve the equation

$$\left(\frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2} + E \right) \psi = V \psi$$

for $E > 0$, with the outgoing-wave boundary condition, apply the inverse of the operator on the left, which according to (4.112) is the Green's function G_0^+ , and you obtain the equation

$$\psi^+(\vec{R}, t) = (2\pi)^{-3/2} e^{iEt} + \int d^3r' G_0^+(E; t, t') V \psi^+(\vec{r}', t'). \quad (4.121)$$

or explicitly,

$$\psi^+(\vec{R}, t) = (2\pi)^{-3/2} e^{iEt} - \frac{M}{2\pi i 0} \int d^3r' \frac{e^{iE(t-t')}}{|t-t'|} V \psi^+(\vec{r}', t'). \quad (4.122)$$

which is called the *Lippmann-Schwinger equation*. The inhomogeneous term $\psi_0(\vec{R}, t) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (2\pi)^{-3/2} e^{iEt}$ is in it, since because the operator $E - \mathbf{H}_0 = E + \int d^3r' \nabla'^2$ annihilates it, so that the inverse $(E - \mathbf{H}_0)^{-1}$ cannot be well defined, which is also reflected in the need for the $i0$ in (4.118).

Any solution of (4.122) solves the Schrödinger equation.⁴⁴ Moreover, according to (4.117), this solution has the asymptotic form

$$\psi^+(\vec{R}, t) = (2\pi)^{-3/2} e^{iEt} - \frac{M}{2\pi i 0} e^{iEt} \int d^3r' e^{-iE|\vec{r}'|} V \psi^+(\vec{r}', t) + o\left(\frac{1}{t}\right), \quad (4.123)$$

⁴² Show this.

⁴³ Show this.

⁴⁴ Verify this explicitly.

where $\hat{p} = \hbar^{-1} \nabla \varphi$. The meaning of the label $\hat{k}$ on the wave function $\varphi^*(\hat{k}, r)$ resides entirely in the use of the inhomogeneity $\psi_0(\hat{k}, r) = (2\pi)^{-3/2} e^{i\hat{k} \cdot r}$ in (4.122), which means, physically, that it reflects the fact that the time-dependent origin of $\varphi^*(\hat{k}, r)$ was a wave function describing a particle that in the remote past had the (approximate)²² momentum $\hbar\hat{k}$. (The momentum is, of course, not a constant of the motion.)

The scattering wave functions $\varphi^*(\hat{k}, r)$, together with the bound-state functions $\psi_E(r)$, form a complete set in the Hilbert space in the sense of the completeness relation (B.10) and the generalization of (B.20) in the appendix, which may be written symbolically

$$\sum_{\hat{k}} a_{\hat{k}}(r) a_{\hat{k}}^*(r') + \int dE \psi_E(r) \psi_E^*(r') = \delta(r - r'), \quad (4.124)$$

meaning that every square-integrable function on $\mathbb{R}^3$ may be expanded in the form

$$f(r) = \sum_{\hat{k}} c_{\hat{k}} a_{\hat{k}}(r) + \int dE g(E) \psi_E^*(r),$$

where

$$c_{\hat{k}} = \int d^3r f(r) a_{\hat{k}}^*(r), \quad g(E) = \int d^3r f(r) \psi_E^*(r).$$

Applying the operator $(E \pm i\epsilon - H)^{-1}$ to (4.124) leads to the following expansion for the complex Green's function:

$$G^{\pm}(E; r, r') = \sum_{\hat{k}} \frac{a_{\hat{k}}(r) a_{\hat{k}}^*(r')}{E - E_{\hat{k}}} + \int dE' \frac{\psi_{E'}(r) \psi_{E'}^*(r')}{E + i\epsilon - \frac{H}{\mu}}. \quad (4.125)$$

This formula carries important information about the dependence of the complex Green's function on the variable E : it implies that for fixed r and r' , the functions $G^+(E; r, r')$ and $G^-(E; r, r')$ are the boundary values on the real axis of an analytic function $G(E; r, r')$ of E , which is meromorphic in the complex plane cut along the continuous spectrum from $E = 0$ to $E = \infty$, with simple poles at the bound-state eigenvalues E_n . Moreover, the residue of $G(E; r, r')$ at the pole E_n is equal to

$$i\psi_n(r) \psi_n^*(r'). \quad (4.126)$$

where $\psi_n(r)$ is the normalized bound-state eigenfunction. The discontinuity of $G(E)$ across the cut is found by Eq. (4.2) in the appendix to be

²²Remember that a particle whose state is described by a well-defined time-dependent wave function in a Hilbert space cannot have a precisely defined momentum; if square-integrable, it must be a superposition of plane-wavefunctions of $\hat{p}$ with various values of $\hat{p}$.

given by

$$(\mathcal{E} + i\epsilon - \mathbb{H})^{-1} - (\mathcal{E} - i\epsilon - \mathbb{H})^{-1} = -2i\pi\delta(\mathcal{E} - \mathbb{H}), \quad (4.127)$$

where the symbolic expression $\delta(\mathcal{E} - \mathbb{H})$ is, according to (4.123), explicitly given by

$$G(\mathcal{E} + i\epsilon, \mathcal{R}, \mathcal{R}') - G(\mathcal{E} - i\epsilon, \mathcal{R}, \mathcal{R}') = \frac{2\pi M^2}{\mathcal{E}^2} \int d\mathcal{R}'' \psi^+(\mathcal{R}'', \mathcal{R}) \psi^{**}(\mathcal{R}'', \mathcal{R}'), \quad (4.128)$$

or

$$\delta(\mathcal{E} - \mathbb{H}) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \frac{M^2}{\mathcal{E}^2} \int d\mathcal{R}'' \psi^+(\mathcal{R}'', \mathcal{R}) \psi^{**}(\mathcal{R}'', \mathcal{R}').$$

The complete Green's function can be used to solve (4.121) and express ψ^+ in the form²⁰

$$\psi^+(\mathbf{k}, \mathcal{R}) = i\omega(\mathbf{k}, \mathcal{R}) + \int d^3r' G^+(\mathcal{E}, \mathcal{R}, \mathcal{R}') V(\mathbf{r}') \psi(\mathbf{k}, \mathcal{R}'), \quad \mathcal{E} = \frac{\mathbf{k}^2 \hbar^2}{2M^2}, \quad (4.129)$$

which is useful for many purposes, even though G^+ can rarely be explicitly constructed.

4.4.2 The scattering amplitude

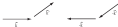


FIGURE 4.5. Initial and final particle momenta in the original scattering and in its reciprocal.

Comparison of (4.122) with (4.12) shows that the scattering amplitude can be expressed in terms of ψ^+ as

$$A(\mathcal{R}, \mathcal{R}) = -\frac{M}{2\pi\mathcal{E}} \int d^3r' \psi_0^+(\mathcal{R}', \mathcal{R}') V(\mathcal{R}') \psi^+(\mathcal{R}', \mathcal{R}'). \quad (4.130)$$

In contrast to the case of a central potential discussed in Section 4.1.2, the scattering amplitude now depends separately on the direction of incidence and the scattering direction rather than only on the angle between the two.

²⁰You should verify that the function defined by (4.129) solves the Schrödinger equation.

This dependence, however, is subject to an important symmetry, called *reciprocity*,

$$A(\vec{k}', \vec{k}) = A(-\vec{k}', -\vec{k}), \quad (4.131)$$

depicted in Figure 4.5. It says that the scattering from the direction $\vec{k}$ to $\vec{k}'$ is the same as that in the reverse direction, from $-\vec{k}'$ to $-\vec{k}$. An crucial ingredient in its derivation is the assumption that the potential V is real, which, as we shall see later, is equivalent to time-reversed invariance.

To demonstrate (4.131), write (4.128) in the form $-i\alpha_0(\vec{k}', \vec{k}) = \langle \alpha_0(\vec{k}') | V e^{i\vec{k} \cdot \vec{r}} | \alpha_0(\vec{k}) \rangle$. Substituting (4.123) and using the fact that $\Omega_0^+ = \Omega_0^{T\dagger}$ can be employed in (4.123) to define a solution $\psi^*(\vec{r}, \vec{k}) = \psi^{T\dagger}(-\vec{k}, \vec{r})$, one obtains

$$\begin{aligned} -i\alpha_0(\vec{k}', \vec{k}) &= \langle \alpha_0(\vec{k}') | V \alpha_0(\vec{k}) \rangle + \langle \alpha_0(\vec{k}') | V Q^{T\dagger} V \alpha_0(\vec{k}) \rangle + \langle \alpha_0(\vec{k}') | V \alpha_0(\vec{k}) \rangle \\ &\quad + \langle \vec{k}^{T\dagger} \alpha_0(\vec{k}') | V \alpha_0(\vec{k}) \rangle = \langle \vec{k}^{T\dagger}(\vec{k}') | V \alpha_0(\vec{k}) \rangle \\ &= \langle \alpha_0(-\vec{k}') | V e^{i\vec{k} \cdot \vec{r}} \rangle = -i\alpha_0(-\vec{k}', -\vec{k}). \end{aligned}$$

Furthermore, the scattering amplitude satisfies the optical theorem,

$$2A(\vec{k}, \vec{k}) = \frac{d}{dx} \sigma_{\text{total}}(\vec{k}) = \frac{k}{2\pi} \int d\Omega' |A(\vec{k}', \vec{k})|^2, \quad (4.132)$$

which we already encountered in (4.53) for the special case of a central potential.

To prove (4.132) in the physically most meaningful way, call the direction of incidence the z -axis, so that the wave function at large distance $r \gg 1/k$ in the nearly forward direction, in terms of the incident wave ψ_{inc} , has the form

$$\psi^+ \approx [1 + r^{-1} e^{ikr} e^{-i\theta} A(\Omega)] \psi_{\text{inc}} e^{ikz}$$

if we write $A(\Omega)$ for the forward scattering amplitude $A(\vec{k}', \vec{k})$. Let this wave (or the corresponding particles) be detected on a screen whose dimensions are small compared to the distance from the scattering center, so that we find not only

$$x^2 + y^2 \ll r^2,$$

because the scattering angle is small, but also

$$\text{sh} \left(\frac{x^2 + y^2}{r^2} \right)^{1/2} \ll 1.$$

Expansion then gives

$$\ln(r - z) = k \left[\sqrt{r^2 + (x^2 + y^2)} - r \right] = k(x^2 + y^2)/2r + o(1)$$

and thus

$$e^{-ikz} \psi^+(r-z) \approx e^{-ikz} \psi^+(r^2 + x^2 + y^2)^{1/2}.$$

At a point (x, y) on the screen we therefore have

$$\begin{aligned} |g|^2 &\approx |f_{\text{inc}}|^2 \{ 1 + r^{-2} e^{2ikr^2 + r^2/\lambda z_0} A(r) \}^2 \\ &\approx |f_{\text{inc}}|^2 \left\{ 1 + 2r^{-1} e^{ikr^2 + r^2/\lambda z_0} A(r) \right\}. \end{aligned}$$

To calculate the total number of particles detected, integrate this over the area of the screen. Assuming that the screen is large in the sense that on its edge

$$x^2 + y^2 \gg \frac{2\pi z_0}{k},$$

(while still $x^2 + y^2/z_0^2 \ll 1$) the resulting integral $\int dx dy e^{2ikr^2 + r^2/\lambda z_0}$ can be extended, with little error, all the way to infinity, and we have²⁷

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dx \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dy e^{2ikr^2 + r^2/\lambda z_0} = 2\pi i \lambda z_0^{-1}.$$

If the area of the screen is π , we therefore find that the total number of particles detected on the screen is

$$|f_{\text{inc}}|^2 \pi = 4\pi k^{-1} \mathcal{I} A(0),$$

in which the second term represents the amount by which the particle count has been diminished. The condition on the diameter D of the screen for this approximation to be good is that

$$\sqrt{\lambda} k \ll D \ll z_0,$$

so that the screen must be neither too large nor too small; specifically, it should include many diffraction rings, and not only the central spot. The effect here calculated is generally known as *shadow scattering*; it is the result of an interference between the incident beam and the forward-scattered particles.

Since the number of particles (or the probability of their detection) is conserved, the flux missing in the forward direction must have gone somewhere else: it must be equal to the total number of particles scattered. We therefore conclude that

$$\sigma_{\text{total}} = 4\pi k^{-1} \mathcal{I} A(0),$$

which is (4.132).²⁸

²⁷For this as an exercise.

²⁸This manner of deriving the optical theorem clearly shows that it there is not only elastic scattering but also absorption or inelastic scattering, σ_{total} has to include those cross sections as well.

Eq.(4.102) is a special case of the generalized optical theorem,

$$\begin{aligned} A(\vec{k}, \vec{k}) - A^*(\vec{k}, \vec{k}) &= \frac{ik}{2\pi} \int d\Omega' A(\vec{k}, \vec{k}') A(\vec{k}', \vec{k}) \\ &= \frac{ik}{2\pi} \int d\Omega' A(\vec{k}, \vec{k}') A^*(\vec{k}, \vec{k}'), \end{aligned} \quad (4.103)$$

which we have already encountered for radial potentials in (4.52) and from which (4.102) follows when $\vec{k}' = \vec{k}$. If the S matrix is defined by

$$A(\vec{k}, \vec{k}) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} S(\vec{k}, \Omega) = \frac{k}{2\pi i} A(\vec{k}, \vec{k}), \quad (4.104)$$

then (4.103) is the statement that S is unitary¹⁹

$$\int d\Omega' S^*(\vec{k}', \vec{k}) S(\vec{k}', \vec{k}) = \int d\Omega' S(\vec{k}', \vec{k}) S^*(\vec{k}, \vec{k}') = \delta(\Omega, \Omega'). \quad (4.105)$$

As the derivation of the optical theorem indicated, the basic origin of the unitarity of the S matrix is the conservation of probability or the conservation of flux.

¹⁹For the derivation of (4.103) it is most convenient to solve the Lippmann-Schwinger equation in the form (4.124) in terms of the complete Green's function G^+ . Therefore, the scattering amplitude may be written in the form $-i\pi q(\vec{k}, \vec{k}) = (v_0(\vec{k}) + v_0(\vec{k})) + (v_0(\vec{k}), (G^+ - G^0)^{-1} v_0(\vec{k})), (v_0(\vec{k}), (G^+ - G^0)^{-1} v_0(\vec{k}))$, and so a result, by (4.126),

$$\begin{aligned} A(\vec{k}, \vec{k}) - A^*(\vec{k}, \vec{k}) &= -\frac{2\pi}{\sum_{\vec{k}'} q(\vec{k}, \vec{k}') q(\vec{k}', \vec{k})} - G^+ - G^0)^{-1} v_0(\vec{k}) \\ &= \frac{ik}{(\sum_{\vec{k}'} q(\vec{k}, \vec{k}') q(\vec{k}', \vec{k}))^2} \int d\Omega' (v_0(\vec{k}), (G^+ - G^0)^{-1} v_0(\vec{k}')) (v_0(\vec{k}'), \\ &= \frac{ik}{2\pi} \int d\Omega' A(\vec{k}, \vec{k}') A^*(\vec{k}, \vec{k}'), \end{aligned}$$

which proves the second version of (4.103); the first version then follows from (4.104). $\square$

4.4.3 Solving the Lippmann-Schwinger equation

The most straightforward method of solving the integral equation (4.111) is to iterate it, that is, to re-insert it in itself repeatedly, thereby generating the series

$$\begin{aligned} \psi^{(+)}(\vec{k}, r) &= e^{ikr} + \int d^3r' G_0^+(\vec{k}; r, r') V(r') \psi^{(+)} \\ &+ \int d^3r'' G_0^+(\vec{k}; r, r') V(r') G_0^+(\vec{k}; r', r'') V(r'') \psi^{(+)} \\ &+ \dots \end{aligned} \quad (4.106)$$

¹⁹More this.

called the *Born series*.⁴⁶ If the potential V is multiplied by a “coupling constant” λ , (4.126) is a power series in λ . For sufficiently weak potentials (or small enough λ), the first term in (4.126) may suffice, which results in the *Born approximation* to the scattering amplitude

$$A_{\text{Born}}(\hat{k}, \hat{k}_0) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} -\frac{dE}{2\pi i v} \int d^3r V(\mathbf{r}) e^{i\mathbf{k}_0 \cdot \mathbf{r}} e^{-i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}}. \quad (4.127)$$

As you will notice, it has the special property of being a function of the momentum transfer $\hbar(\mathbf{k} - \mathbf{k}_0)$ only. On purely dimensional grounds, the criterion for its validity may be expected to be roughly that

$$\frac{VE}{\hbar v} \ll 1 \quad (4.128)$$

if V is the “average” strength of the potential, E is its range, and v is the velocity of the incoming particle. This means that the time E/v that the particle spends inside the potential should be short compared to the characteristic time $\hbar/E$ required by the interaction to influence it. As a consequence, the Born approximation can be expected to be good at high energies, and indeed one can show that in general the scattering amplitude approaches it as $E \rightarrow \infty$. The criterion (4.128), however, is not foolproof and does not always work. As a notable case in point, the Born approximation to the Rutherford cross section is the exact answer at all energies!⁴⁷

The great drawback of the Born series is that it generally fails to converge. While it converges for “sufficiently large” energies and for “sufficiently weak” potentials, the precise meaning of “sufficiently” here is hard to pin down. (See Appendix C for more on the radius of convergence of the Born series.)

There is, however, another procedure of solving the integral equation (4.121), namely, the *Faddeev method*. If the equation is written in the formal shorthand

$$[\mathbf{1} - G_0^+(E)V]\psi^{(+)}(\hat{\mathbf{k}}) = i\alpha\hat{\mu}(\hat{\mathbf{k}}),$$

so that its solution is

$$\psi^{(+)}(\hat{\mathbf{k}}) = [\mathbf{1} - G_0^+(E)V]^{-1}i\alpha\hat{\mu}(\hat{\mathbf{k}}),$$

and the operator $[\mathbf{1} - G_0^+(E)V]$ is regarded as a generalized matrix, then we might be tempted to proceed with the construction of $[\mathbf{1} - G_0^+(E)V]^{-1}$ as with that of the inverse of a matrix, beginning with the calculation of the determinant of $[\mathbf{1} - G_0^+(E)V]$. As is shown in Appendix C, this idea indeed works, and the determinant is known as the *Faddeev determinant*. Replacing V by λV leads to a series expansion of $\det[\mathbf{1} - \lambda G_0^+(E)V]$ in

⁴⁶Mathematicians call it a *Neumann series*.

⁴⁷Not the phase of the amplitude, though.

powers of λ , which (provided V is in a suitable, large class of functions, given by $F(22)$) always converges, no matter how large λ . (The reason for the replacement of the ordinary Fredholm determinant by the modified one denoted by $\det_2$ is explained in Appendix C.) Thus we have

$$[\mathbf{1} - \lambda Q_0^+(E)F]^{-1}(\psi, \psi') = \frac{N(E; \psi, \psi')}{\det_2[\mathbf{1} - \lambda Q_0^+(E)F]}, \quad (4.136)$$

where both the numerator and the denominator can be expanded in a power series that converges for all (real and complex) λ .

The determinant $\det_2[\mathbf{1} - \lambda Q_0^+(E)F]$ serves another useful purpose. The Fredholm alternative states that an inhomogeneous Fredholm integral equation has a unique solution if and only if its homogeneous version has only the trivial solution, $\psi = 0$. Just as for matrices, a nontrivial solution of the homogeneous equation exists if the determinant vanishes. But since the complete Green's function can be written in the form

$$G^+(E) = [E - \epsilon + \frac{\hbar^2}{2M} \nabla^2 - V]^{-1} = [\mathbf{1} - Q_0^+(E)V]^{-1}Q_0^+(E) \quad (4.137)$$

the vanishing of $\det_2[\mathbf{1} - \lambda Q_0^+(E)F]$ leads to a pole of $G^+(E)$, indicating a discrete eigenvalue. A nontrivial solution of the homogeneous Lippmann-Schwinger equation can therefore occur only for $E < 0$, and the zeros of $\det_2[\mathbf{1} - Q_0^+(E)F]$ are the bound-state energies.

4.5 Problems and Exercises

1. Derive (4.43) from (4.42), using (3.35).

2. Consider the one-particle Schrödinger equation

$$i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \psi(\mathbf{r}, t) = -\frac{\hbar^2}{2m} \nabla^2 \psi(\mathbf{r}, t) + \int d^3r' V(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{r}') \rho(\mathbf{r}', t).$$

Derive the conditions for the external potential $V(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{r}')$ that ensure the conservation of probability. Does a current that depends only on ψ at a point exist in this case?

3. Consider the one-particle Schrödinger equation

$$i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \psi(\mathbf{r}, t) = -\frac{\hbar^2}{2m} \nabla^2 \psi(\mathbf{r}, t) + V_1(r) + V_2(r) i\psi(\mathbf{r}, t),$$

where V_1 and V_2 are real. Show that probability is not conserved unless $V_2 = 0$ and give an expression for the rate at which probability is “lost” or “gained” in a given spatial volume Ω .

4. If ψ_1 and ψ_2 are two solutions of the same Schrödinger equation, show that

$$\int d^3r \psi_1^* \psi_2 \text{ is independent of time.}$$

does not depend on the time.

5. Show that for a three-dimensional wave packet,

$$\frac{d}{dt} \langle \mathbf{N}^2 \rangle = \frac{i}{\hbar} \langle \mathbf{N} \mathbf{P}_2 + \mathbf{P}_2 \mathbf{N} \rangle.$$

6. Suppose that in the Schrödinger equation for a bounded region the potential is changed everywhere by the addition of a constant c . What is the resulting change in the wave functions and the eigenvalues?

7. Consider the Schrödinger equation in two dimensions with a potential that depends only on the radial distance r from the center. Separate the equation; what are the angle functions and what is the radial equation?

8. Calculate (a) the normalized bound-state eigenfunctions of a particle in the ground state of a spherical square-well potential of radius b and depth V_0 ; (b) the probability of finding the particle outside the well; and (c) the expectation value of its distance from the center of the well.

9. Calculate the mean value $\langle r \rangle$ of the distance between the electron and the proton in a hydrogen atom in a state of angular momentum l and principal quantum number n .
10. Calculate $\langle r^2 \rangle$ for a hydrogen atom in a state of angular momentum l and principal quantum number n . From this and the result of the last problem, calculate Δr .
11. Calculate the phase shifts for scattering by an impenetrable sphere, i.e., $V(r) = 0$ for $r > R$, and $V(r) = \infty$ for $r < R$. What is the low-energy limit of the l^{th} phase shift for $kR \ll 1$? What is the low-energy limit of the total cross section?
12. Consider the special case of (4.186) with $\alpha = 0$ and with $k = 0$. What are the corresponding potentials? Is there anything unusual about either of these?
13. Find the eigenvalues and eigenfunctions of the Schrödinger equation in three dimensions with the potential $V = \frac{1}{2}\alpha(x^2 + y^2 + z^2)$. What are the degeneracies of the three lowest eigenvalues?
14. Consider the radial Schrödinger equation with $l = 0$ and the potential $V(r) = -\lambda e^{-r/a}$, $\lambda > 0$. Change variables from r to $\rho = \frac{2\sqrt{2\lambda}}{a} e^{-r/(2a)}$ and show that the result is Bessel's equation. What boundary conditions are to be imposed on the solutions as functions of ρ , and how can these be used to determine the bound-state energy levels? What is the smallest value of λ for which a bound state can exist?
15. The Schrödinger equation for a rigid body of moment of inertia I about a given axis, constrained to rotate about this axis, is

$$i\hbar \frac{\partial \psi(\varphi, t)}{\partial t} = -\frac{\hbar^2}{2I} \frac{\partial^2 \psi(\varphi, t)}{\partial \varphi^2}.$$

What boundary conditions must be supplied for the solution of this equation? Find the general solution.

16. Consider the radial Schrödinger equation for $l = 0$ with the potential $V(r) = \frac{1}{2}k^2 r^2$ for $r > a$ and $V = 0$ for $r < a$. Derive a transcendental equation that determines the energy eigenvalues.
17. Show that the expectation value of the potential energy of an electron in the n th state of a hydrogen atom is given by

$$-\frac{e^2 M}{2\hbar^2 n^2}.$$

From this result find the expectation value of its kinetic energy.

18. Calculate the Born approximation to the differential cross section (a) in the center-of-mass system and (b) in the laboratory system for collisions of two particles of equal mass M if the interaction potential is

$$V(r) = \gamma e^{-\alpha r}.$$

19. Do the same for the potential

$$V(r) = \gamma e^{-\alpha^{1/2} r}.$$

20. Do the same for the potential

$$V(r) = \gamma e^{-\alpha r} r^{-1/2}.$$

21. Do the same for the potential

$$V(r) = \gamma e^{-\alpha r}/r.$$

Take the limit $\alpha \rightarrow 0$ and comment on the result.

22. The definition

$$\delta_l \equiv \delta_l \sin[kr - r(\zeta_l + \delta_l)]$$

of the phase shift δ_l refers explicitly to the wave number k and hence to the energy. How do you reconcile this with the fact that, physically, the energy can be shifted by a constant without effect? Is the zero-point of the energy fixed in scattering theory? If so, by what?

23. Using the fact that the function $G^+(r, r') \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} -e^{ik(r-r')}/4\pi(r-r')$ satisfies the equation $(\nabla^2 + k^2)G^+(r, r') = \delta(r-r')$ and an outgoing-wave boundary condition, show that the coefficients $G_l^+(r, r')$ in the expansion

$$G^+(r, r') = \sum_{l=0}^{\infty} Y_l^m(r) G_l^{m*}(r') G_l^+(r, r') r^l$$

satisfy the differential equation

$$\left[\frac{d^2}{dr^2} - \frac{l(l+1)}{r^2} + k^2 \right] G_l^+(r, r') = \delta(r-r')$$

and the boundary condition that, for fixed r' , as $r \rightarrow \infty$ G_l^+ contains outgoing spherical waves only. How does G_l^+ behave when r and r' are interchanged?

24. Use the results of the last problem to construct $G_l^+(r, r')$.

25. (a) Calculate the s -wave scattering phase shift for a repulsive potential shell that vanishes for $r < R$ and for $r > 2R/3$, while for $R < r < 3R/3$ it has the constant value $V = V_0$. (b) What is the amplitude of the $l = 0$ wave function in the region outside the potential shell when V_0 is large (with respect to what)?
26. For the same potential as in the last problem: (a) Show that for special values of the energy that are very close to eigenvalues for the case when $V_0 = \infty$, the amplitude outside is very small. Also calculate the s -wave phase shift for these special values of the energy. (b) Calculate the derivative of the phase shift at these energies and relate it to the time delay. Are there resonances? (c) Calculate the approximate widths of the peaks in the partial-wave cross section from the derivatives of the phase shifts and relate them to the time delays. Explain what is going on here physically.
27. Two particles of mass $M = 10^{-26}$ kg interact with one another with a force of range $\sim 10^{-10}$ cm. A scattering experiment is carried out at 200 keV center-of-mass energy. If the differential cross section is measured with an accuracy of a few percent, what do you expect the general form of the angle dependence to be?
28. Let the potential in the Schrödinger equation be nonlocal of the form

$$V(r, r') = \sum_{\ell=0}^{\infty} \lambda_{\ell} L_{\ell}(r) L_{\ell}(r').$$

Calculate the scattering amplitude

29. Find the energy eigenvalues of the Schrödinger equation in two dimensions for the harmonic oscillator potential $V(x, y) = \frac{1}{2}K(x^2 + y^2)$. Is there degeneracy? What are the eigenfunctions?
30. (a) Calculate the scattering cross section in the Born approximation for two particles in their center-of-mass system if their mutual interaction is described by the potential

$$V(r) = Ae^{-\alpha r}e^{-\beta r^2} \cos(\alpha r^2).$$

Discuss what happens when α and β tend to zero. (b) What is the center-of-mass cross section if the two particles are indistinguishable?

31. Consider a particle subject to a central potential of the form $V(r) = -a$ for $r < a$, $V(r) = -V_0$ for $a < r < b$ and $V(r) = 0$ for $r > b$, with $V_0 > 0$. (a) Calculate the s -wave phase shift δ . How does δ behave for large energy? Comment. Are there resonances at large energy? (b) Derive the transcendental equation that has to be satisfied by the

energy of a bound state. (c) For what values of V_0 are new bound states introduced? What is the value of the cross section at $E = 0$ when V_0 has one of these values?

22. By setting $r = x^2$, show that the Schrödinger equation with a Coulomb potential can be reduced to that for a spherically symmetric harmonic oscillator.

This page intentionally left blank

5

Symmetries

5.1 The Angular-Momentum Operator

As we saw in Section 1.2, the angular momentum of a system of particles, and indeed of any physical system, is the generator of rotations for that system. As a result, the properties of the angular-momentum operator are intimately connected to the system's behavior under rotations. In this chapter we shall study this connection in detail.

If the coordinate frame employed to specify the parameters of a given physical system is rotated, all state vectors will be mapped into new ones, $\Phi \mapsto \Phi'$, in such a way that

$$|\langle \Phi, \Phi \rangle|^2 = |\langle \Phi', \Phi' \rangle|^2,$$

because all probabilities of physical measurements have to remain unchanged. According to a theorem by Eugene Wigner, the state vectors can therefore always be chosen in one of two ways: the vectors Φ' are related to Φ either by a unitary transformation, $\Phi' = U\Phi$, $UU^\dagger = U^\dagger U = \mathbf{1}$, or else by an antiunitary one, $\Phi' = V\Phi$, $VV^\dagger = V^\dagger V = \mathbf{1}$, where V is such $V\alpha\Phi = \alpha^*V\Phi$, which means that V is not a linear operator but a so-called antilinear one. However, since all pure rotations are continuously connected to the unit operator (no rotation at all), which is unitary, the second possibility is ruled out, and we must have $\Phi' = \Phi = (U - \mathbf{1})\Phi$.

Considering, then, a rotation of the coordinate frame about the axis $\hat{n}$ by the infinitesimal angle ϵ in the right-handed screw sense. (According to Euler's theorem, every rotation in a space of odd dimensions leaves at least

one direction invariant; in three dimensions this direction, called the axis of rotation, is unique—unless the rotation is the identity transformation—and the transformation is a rotation about that axis.) The form of the unitary transformation must in that case be

$$U = e^{-i\frac{\hbar}{\hbar}\frac{\theta}{2\hbar}\mathbf{J}\cdot\hat{\mathbf{n}}},$$

where $\hat{\mathbf{n}}$ is Hermitian in order for U to be unitary,¹ and the i is inserted for convenience, making $\mathbf{J}\cdot\hat{\mathbf{n}}$ dimensionless. By definition, and in agreement with our discussion in Section 3.3, the generator $\hat{\mathbf{J}}$ of rotations is the angular momentum operator for the system. For a finite rotation by an angle θ about the axis $\hat{\mathbf{n}}$ the operator U can be obtained as a limit of a large number of small rotations,

$$U = \lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} \left(1 - \frac{i\theta}{N\hbar} \mathbf{J} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{n}} \right)^N = e^{-i\theta \mathbf{J} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{n}}}. \quad (5.1)$$

For operators, we have to require that under rotations of the coordinate system,

$$\langle \Phi, Q \Phi \rangle = \langle \Phi', Q' \Phi' \rangle = \langle \Phi, U^{-1} Q U \Phi \rangle,$$

and therefore,

$$Q' = U Q U^{-1},$$

which implies that for infinitesimal rotations of the coordinate axes,

$$Q' = \left(1 - \frac{i}{\hbar} \mathbf{J} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{n}} \right) Q \left(1 + \frac{i}{\hbar} \mathbf{J} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{n}} \right) = Q + \frac{i}{\hbar} [\mathbf{J} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{n}}, Q],$$

that is, when the coordinate frame is infinitesimally rotated, the infinitesimal change in the operator Q is given by

$$Q' - Q \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \delta_Q Q = -\frac{i}{\hbar} [\mathbf{J} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{n}}, Q] = \frac{i}{\hbar} [Q, \hat{\mathbf{n}} \cdot \mathbf{J}]. \quad (5.2)$$

5.1.1 Active and passive rotations

To understand the meaning of (5.2), consider two kinds of rotations and carefully distinguish between them: on one hand, those of the coordinate system, that is, of the three axes with respect to which a quantity or the components of an operator such as Q are specified, and, on the other hand, those of the physical system itself. The former are called *passive transformations*, and the latter, *active transformations*. If the reference axes are rotated, the recollection of a point of a physical system undergoes a linear transformation A ; if the physical system is rotated and the axes are held

¹ Prove this.

fixed, the system's coordinates undergo the transformation A^{-1} , the inverse of the first. The behavior of quantities under passive transformations defines their formal, mathematical classification as scalars, vectors, tensors of rank two, etc. But a physical quantity may be a scalar and yet not be invariant under rotations of the system of which it is a property: the energy of a system of charged particles is a scalar, but in the presence of an external electric field, it is not necessarily invariant under rotations of the system. If $\vec{P}$ is the total momentum of a system and $\vec{A}$ is some given fixed vector, $\vec{A} \cdot \vec{P}$ is a scalar, but it is not invariant under active rotations of the system, because under such rotations $\vec{P}$ changes but $\vec{A}$ remains unaltered. On the other hand, if, like $\vec{P}$, the vector $\vec{A}$ is a property of the system rather than being externally given, then the fact that $\vec{A} \cdot \vec{P}$ is a scalar implies that it is also invariant under active rotations. From the point of view of physical consequences, both active and passive transformations are important to consider.

In quantum mechanics, the distinction between being an externally given quantity and being a dynamical property of a physical system is implemented by the distinction between a *number*² and an *operator*. All dynamical variables are operators on the Hilbert space of the system. Therefore, if the components of an operator transform under passive rotations like those of a vector, then they do so also under active rotations. But note that the inner product of two vectors, $\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B}$, though a scalar under passive rotations, is invariant under active rotations only if either both $\vec{A} = \vec{A}$ and $\vec{B} = \vec{B}$ are operators or neither one is.

Suppose, then, that G is an observable that is invariant under active rotations of the system about the axis $\hat{n}$. The left-hand side of (3.2) must therefore vanish, and it follows that

$$[G, \vec{J} \cdot \hat{n}] = 0.$$

Furthermore, if G is invariant under all rotations, we can conclude that

$$[G, \vec{J}] = 0, \quad (3.3)$$

that is, G commutes with all three components of the angular momentum. One such quantity is $G = \vec{J} \cdot \vec{J}$, so that we have

$$[\vec{J} \cdot \vec{J}, \vec{J}] = 0. \quad (3.4)$$

All components of the angular momentum commute with the square of its magnitude, $\vec{J} \cdot \vec{J} \equiv \vec{J} \cdot \vec{J} = J_x^2 + J_y^2 + J_z^2$.

²By a number I mean what physicists call a *c-number*. Do not confuse this with using a numerical function as a specific representation of the Hilbert space, like the potential in the Schrödinger equation in the configuration representation.

For another example, if the Hamiltonian H (which is a scalar) of a system is invariant under active rotations, it must commute with all components of the angular momentum,

$$[H, \hat{J}_i] = 0,$$

and therefore also with $\hat{J} \cdot \hat{J}$. This implies that every component of the angular momentum is a constant of the motion, and so is the square of its magnitude, a specific instance of Noether's theorem.

Suppose now that $\hat{G}$ is a vector variable of a system, that is, it has three components that behave like those of a vector under passive rotations, but it is also internal to the system and therefore must behave like a vector under active rotations as well. Under an active infinitesimal rotation of it must then change as

$$d_\epsilon \hat{G} = -d_\epsilon \hat{G} = -i\epsilon \times \hat{G},$$

or by (3.2),

$$i \times \hat{G} = \frac{1}{i\epsilon} [\hat{G}_\alpha, \hat{J}_\epsilon] \times \hat{G}, \quad (3.3)$$

which means that $\frac{1}{i\epsilon} [\hat{G}_{\alpha\alpha}, \hat{J}_\epsilon] = G_{\alpha\alpha}$, $\frac{1}{i\epsilon} [\hat{G}_{\alpha\beta}, \hat{J}_\epsilon] = -G_{\beta\alpha}$, and its cyclic permutations of indices, while all other commutators of components of $\hat{J}$ and $\hat{G}$ vanish. A special instance is that of $\hat{G} = \hat{J}$, in which case we obtain

$$[\hat{J}_\alpha, \hat{J}_\beta] = i\epsilon \delta_{\alpha\beta},$$

and cyclic permutations of its indices, which can also be written in the compact form

$$\hat{J} \times \hat{J} = i\epsilon \hat{J}. \quad (3.4)$$

Thus, the three components of the angular momentum do not commute, and they cannot all be simultaneously diagonalized. On the other hand, since the operator $\hat{J}^2 = \hat{J} \cdot \hat{J}$ commutes with all the components, we can choose an arbitrary z -axis and use the simultaneous eigenvalues of $\hat{J}^2$ and $\hat{J}_z$ to label states. Furthermore, if the Hamiltonian of the system is invariant under rotations, these eigenvalues are good quantum numbers, i.e., they are conserved.

In order to find the eigenvalues of $\hat{J}_z$ and $\hat{J}^2$, define

$$J_\pm \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} J_x \pm iJ_y, \quad J_z \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} J_z, \quad (3.5)$$

so that $J_\pm = J_\pm^\dagger$, and

$$\hat{J}^2 \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \hat{J} \cdot \hat{J} = J_- J_+ + J_z(Q_z + 1) = J_+ J_- + J_z(Q_z - 1) = \frac{1}{2}(J_- J_+ + J_+ J_-) + J_z^2. \quad (3.6)$$

The commutation relations (3.4) then lead to

$$J_\pm J_z = J_z Q_z \pm 1, \quad J_z J_\pm = J_\pm Q_z \mp 1, \quad (3.7)$$

as well as

$$[J_z, J_{\pm}] = \hbar J_{\pm}. \quad (3.10)$$

Now let $|j, m\rangle$ be a simultaneous eigenstate of J_z with the eigenvalue m and of J^2 with the eigenvalue $j(j+1)\hbar^2$,

$$J_z|j, m\rangle = m|j, m\rangle, \quad J^2|j, m\rangle = j(j+1)|j, m\rangle,$$

or

$$J_z|j, m\rangle = \hbar m|j, m\rangle, \quad J^2|j, m\rangle = \hbar^2 j(j+1)|j, m\rangle;$$

thus the spectrum of J^2 is formed by the values of j that are integers or half-integers, $j = 0, \frac{1}{2}, 1, \frac{3}{2}, 2, \dots$, and the spectrum of $J_z/\hbar$ consists, for each given j , of the $2j+1$ values $m = -j, -j+1, \dots, j-1, j$.

Proof. Without any prejudgment of the values of m and j , it follows from (3.9) that

$$J_z(J \mp J_z)|m\rangle = j\hbar J_{\pm}|m\rangle + \hbar(j \mp m)|j, m\rangle,$$

and

$$J_z(J \pm J_z)|m\rangle = j\hbar J_{\pm}|m\rangle - \hbar(j \mp m)|j, m\rangle.$$

Therefore, if m is an eigenvalue of J_z , so is $m \pm 1$, unless $j(j \mp m) = 0$, and so is $m \pm 1$, unless $j(j \pm m) = 0$. However, we have

$$\begin{aligned} 0 \leq \|J \mp J_z|m\rangle\|^2 &= \langle m|(J \mp J_z)(J \mp J_z)|m\rangle = \langle m|J^2 - J_z J_z - J_z J_z \\ &= j(j+1) - m(m \mp j) = (j \mp m)(j \mp m + 1), \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} 0 \leq \|J \pm J_z|m\rangle\|^2 &= \langle m|(J \pm J_z)(J \pm J_z)|m\rangle = \langle m|J^2 - J_z J_z + J_z J_z \\ &= j(j+1) - m(m \pm j) = (j \pm m)(j \pm m + 1). \end{aligned}$$

Consequently, $j(j \mp m) = 0$ implies that either $m = -j$ or $m = j+1$ but the latter possibility is ruled out by the fact that $j^2 = \frac{1}{4}(j, j+1 + j+1, j) + \frac{1}{4}$ implies¹ $m^2 \leq j(j+1)$. Similarly, $j(j \pm m) = 0$ implies $m = j$. We can therefore conclude that m has to run in integral steps from $-j$ to j , taking on $2j+1$ values, and that j and m both have to be either integers or half-integers. $\square$

Just as in the case of the simple harmonic oscillator, the spectra of J_z and J^2 follow directly from their commutation relations. Furthermore, we find that²

$$J_{\pm}|j, m\rangle = \sqrt{j(j \mp m)(j \mp m \pm 1)}|j, m \pm 1\rangle, \quad (3.11)$$

and

$$J_{\mp}|j, m\rangle = \sqrt{j(j \pm m)(j \pm m \pm 1)}|j, m \pm 1\rangle, \quad (3.12)$$

¹What?

²From these two equations.

If $|j, m\rangle$, $|j, m+1\rangle$, and $|j, m-1\rangle$ are all normalized to unity, these equations imply that

$$\langle j, m+1|j, m\rangle = \langle j, m|j, m+1\rangle = \sqrt{(j-m)(j+m+1)},$$

and all other matrix elements of $J_{\pm}$ vanish. Consequently the only nonvanishing matrix elements of the x and y components of the angular momentum are just above and below the diagonal, given by

$$\langle j, m+1|J_x|j, m\rangle = \langle j, m|J_x|j, m+1\rangle = \frac{i}{2}\hbar\sqrt{(j-m)(j+m+1)}, \quad (5.13)$$

$$-\langle j, m+1|J_y|j, m\rangle = \langle j, m|J_y|j, m+1\rangle = \frac{\hbar}{2}\sqrt{(j-m)(j+m+1)}. \quad (5.14)$$

As another application of (5.11), note that if the Hamiltonian of a physical system is invariant under all rotations, we saw that the angular momentum is a “good quantum number,” i.e., both m and j are conserved. But we can say more: the three quantities, $\mathbf{H}$, J^2 , and $\mathbf{J}$, can all be simultaneously diagonalized; let $|E, j, m\rangle$ be an eigenfunction of the three operators with the eigenvalues E , $j(j+1)\hbar^2$, and $m\hbar$, respectively (or a quasi-eigenfunction, if E is a quasi-eigenvalue). We then have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{H}|E, j, m+1\rangle &= E\mathbf{H}|E, j, m\rangle = E_j\mathbf{H}|E, j, m\rangle \\ &= E_j\hbar(j+1)|E, j, m\rangle = E|E, j, m+1\rangle, \end{aligned}$$

and similarly for $j-1$. Therefore the eigenvalue (or quasi-eigenvalue) E of $\mathbf{H}$ must be $(2j+1)$ -fold degenerate. This important *m*-degeneracy of the energies of any rotationally invariant system is a special instance of Theorem E.9 in the Appendix, which also tells us that the $(2j+1)$ -fold states $|E, j, m\rangle$ span the entire Hilbert space.

5.2.2 An oscillator model

The technique of generating the spectrum of the angular momentum operators J^2 and $\mathbf{J}$, is so similar to that of constructing the spectrum of a harmonic oscillator that it suggests the search for an underlying model that unites the two. In particular, we might wonder if there is an operator with the eigenvalues j , rather than just J^2 with the eigenvalues $j(j+1)$. The following model, which accomplishes both these aims, was invented by Schrödinger.

Suppose there are two independent harmonic oscillators, each described as in Sections 1.4.3 and 3.2.6. Let their lowering operators be b_+ and b_- , so that

$$[b_+, b_+] = [b_-, b_-] = 0, \quad [b_+, b_-] = [b_-, b_+] = 1,$$

and the number operators are defined by $\mathbf{N}_\pm \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \hat{L}_\pm^\dagger \hat{L}_\pm$. We then know that the spectra of the two commuting Hermitian operators $\mathbf{N}_\pm$ are the non-negative integers, and their simultaneous eigenstates $|n_+, n_-\rangle$ can be generated from the “vacuum state” $|0, 0\rangle$, defined by

$$\hat{L}_\pm |0, 0\rangle = \hat{L}_\mp |0, 0\rangle = 0, \quad (5.14)$$

by means of the creation operators as in (1.44),

$$|n_+, n_-\rangle = \frac{\hat{L}_+^{n_+} \hat{L}_-^{n_-}}{\sqrt{n_+! n_-!}} |0, 0\rangle. \quad (5.15)$$

Now set

$$\hat{J}_\pm \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \hat{L}_\pm + \hat{L}_\mp, \quad \hat{J}_z \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \frac{1}{2}(\hat{L}_+^\dagger \hat{L}_+ - \hat{L}_-^\dagger \hat{L}_-) = \frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{N}_+ - \mathbf{N}_-), \quad (5.17)$$

and you find that the $\hat{J}_\pm$ and $\hat{J}_z$ satisfy the commutation relations (2.6) and (5.18). Furthermore, if we define $\hat{J}^2 \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \frac{1}{2}(\hat{L}_+^\dagger \hat{L}_+ + \hat{L}_-^\dagger \hat{L}_-) = \frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{N}_+ + \mathbf{N}_-)$, Eq. (2.8) leads, after a bit of algebra,⁸ to

$$\hat{J}^2 = \hat{J}_z(\hat{J} + 1), \quad (5.18)$$

and it follows that

$$\hat{J}_z |n_+, n_-\rangle = \frac{1}{2}(n_+ - n_-) |n_+, n_-\rangle, \quad \hat{J}^2 |n_+, n_-\rangle = \frac{1}{2}(n_+ + n_-) |n_+, n_-\rangle. \quad (5.19)$$

Therefore, the labels n_+ and n_- on the states $|n_+, n_-\rangle$ might as well be replaced by the eigenvalues m and j of $\hat{J}_z$ and $\hat{J}^2$, respectively, with $m = \frac{1}{2}(n_+ - n_-)$ and $j = \frac{1}{2}(n_+ + n_-)$, or $n_+ = j + m$ and $n_- = j - m$. Consequently, the state $|n_+, n_-\rangle$ is an eigenstate of $\hat{J}^2$ and of $\hat{J}_z$ with the eigenvalues $j(j+1)$ and m , respectively, and we have by (5.19)

$$|j, m\rangle = \frac{\hat{L}_+^{j+m} \hat{L}_-^{j-m}}{\sqrt{j_+! j_-!}} |0, 0\rangle = \frac{\hat{L}_+^{j+m} \hat{L}_-^{j-m}}{\sqrt{j!(j+m)! (j-m)!}} |0, 0\rangle. \quad (5.20)$$

For $j = 1/2$, this leads to

$$\left|\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\right\rangle = \hat{L}_+ |0, 0\rangle, \quad \left|\frac{1}{2}, -\frac{1}{2}\right\rangle = \hat{L}_- |0, 0\rangle$$

so that the two operators $\hat{L}_+^\dagger$ and $\hat{L}_-^\dagger$ create the up and down states of a spin-1/2 particle. Thus (5.20) may be regarded as a decomposition of states of arbitrary angular momentum into those of spin-1/2.

⁸The $\hat{J}_\pm$.

The technique employed here, which consists essentially of factorizing an operator whose spectrum is bounded below, has found fruitful physical applications in other contexts, such as, for example, in what is called "re-pairing symmetry." Intuitively helpful and appealing though it may be, there is, however, no reason to make the procedure with any deeper physical significance than its mathematical usefulness.

5.1.3 States of spin-1 and spin-1/2

Suppose, then, that $\hat{J}_\pm^2$, $m = 1, 0, -1$, are the three normalized simultaneous eigenstates of $\hat{J}^2$ with the eigenvalue $2\hat{J}^2$ (i.e., $j = 1$) and of $\hat{J}_z$ with the eigenvalues $1, 0, -1$, respectively, and we write them as

$$|1\rangle = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad |0\rangle = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad |-1\rangle = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (5.11)$$

In a representation using these three vectors as a basis, the operator $\hat{J}_z$ then is represented by the matrix

$$D^1(\hat{J}_z) = \hat{J} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}, \quad (5.12)$$

and from (5.18) and (5.14) we find that

$$D^1(\hat{J}_\pm) = \frac{\hat{J}}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad D^1(\hat{J}_\pm) = \frac{\hat{J}}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (5.13)$$

Similarly, if

$$|1/2\rangle = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad |-1/2\rangle = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.14)$$

are the two simultaneous eigenstates of $\hat{J}^2$ with the eigenvalue $3\hat{J}^2/4$ (i.e., $j = 1/2$) and of $\hat{J}_z$ with the eigenvalues $1/2, -1/2$, respectively, then the three components of the angular momentum are represented by the matrices $D^{1/2}(\hat{J}_z) = \frac{1}{2}\hat{J}\sigma_z$, $D^{1/2}(\hat{J}_\pm) = \frac{1}{2}\hat{J}\sigma_\pm$, and $D^{1/2}(\hat{J}_\pm) = \frac{1}{2}\hat{J}\sigma_\pm$, where σ_x , σ_y , and σ_z are given by

$$\sigma_x = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \sigma_y = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \\ i & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \sigma_z = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (5.15)$$

These are called the *Pauli spin matrices*, and they satisfy the equations

$$\sigma_j^2 = \mathbf{1}, \quad j = x, y, z, \quad \sigma_x\sigma_y = i\sigma_z \quad \text{and cyclic permutations,} \quad (5.16)$$

as well as

$$\sigma\sigma_j + \sigma_j\sigma = 0, \quad \text{if } i \neq j,$$

which means

$$\sigma\sigma_j + \sigma_j\sigma = 2\delta_{ij}. \quad (3.17)$$

Since these are representations of the components of the vector $\hat{\mathbf{r}}$, they form a vector $\hat{F}$ under rotations, so that for any given numerical vector $\mathbf{R}$, $\mathbf{R} \cdot \hat{F}$ is a scalar, which moreover has the property

$$(\mathbf{R} \cdot \hat{F})^2 = \mathbf{R}^2. \quad (3.18)$$

In any adopted coordinate frame, we are, nevertheless, free to use the notation (3.11) for the three components of $\hat{F}$.

For many calculations it is convenient to note that every 3×3 matrix M can be expressed as a linear combination of the unit matrix and the three Pauli matrices,

$$M = a_0 + \sum_j a_j \sigma_j,$$

and the coefficients are given by² $a_0 = \frac{1}{4}\text{tr} M$, $a_j = \frac{1}{4}\text{tr} M \sigma_j$.

5.2 The Rotation Group

Since the angular momentum is the generator of rotations, its properties are directly related to those of the three-dimensional rotation group, and it is instructive to connect the physical properties of the angular momentum to mathematical results obtained by studying the representations of the group $\text{SO}(3)$ of proper rotations in three dimensions.

Let T be a (real, orthogonal) three-dimensional rotation matrix that transforms the old Cartesian coordinates x_1, x_2, x_3 of a given point into those with respect to new, rotated coordinate axes³

$$x'_i = \sum_{j=1}^3 T_{ij} x_j, \quad i = 1, 2, 3, \quad \text{with } \sum_{j=1}^3 x_j^2 = \sum_{j=1}^3 x'^2_j, \quad \text{and } \det T = 1. \quad (3.19)$$

According to Euler's theorem, mentioned earlier, every rotation about the origin in three dimensions is a rotation about an axis through the origin. This axis $\hat{\mathbf{r}}$ is a vector left invariant by T , so that $T\hat{\mathbf{r}} = \hat{\mathbf{r}}$. If its length is taken to be the angle φ of the rotation (in the right-handed screw sense),

²Where is.

³Explain why it is convenient to define the rotation matrix so that the axes on the right-hand side come over the first index rather than the second.

$\hat{d}$ completely determines the rotation, and in spherical polar coordinates it is given by

$$\hat{d} = \hat{e} \begin{pmatrix} \cos \varphi \sin \theta \\ \sin \varphi \sin \theta \\ \cos \theta \end{pmatrix}. \quad (3.50)$$

Thus three angles are required to identify the rotation, $0 \leq \varphi \leq 2\pi$, $0 \leq \theta \leq \pi$, and $0 \leq \psi \leq \pi$. (Any rotation about the axis $\hat{d}$ by an angle $\psi > \pi$ is equivalent to one about $-\hat{d}$ by $\psi - \pi$.) The group manifold, consisting of all the possible end-points of $\hat{d}$, is therefore a ball of radius π . This group manifold is doubly connected.

The reason is that, because a rotation by π about $\hat{d}$ is identical to a rotation by π about $-\hat{d}$, every point on the surface of the ball (the group manifold) has to be identified with its polar opposite. As a result, any curve starting at a point P on the surface and ending at the polar opposite of P is closed, and such curves cannot be continuously contracted to a point.

As discussed in Appendix E, we can therefore regard the rotation group $SO(3)$ to have double-valued *spin* representations.

Using the orthogonality property of the matrix T , the equation for $\hat{d}$ may be written in the form $(T - T^T)\hat{d} = 0$, which implies that the components of $\hat{d}$ may be determined by the triple ratio

$$u_1 : u_2 : u_3 = (T_{23} - T_{32}) : (T_{31} - T_{13}) : (T_{12} - T_{21}). \quad (3.51)$$

In order to determine the angle of rotation (and thus the length of $\hat{d}$), do the rotation in three steps: 1) rotate the axis to the x -axis, 2) perform a rotation by the angle ψ (in the right-handed screw sense) about the x -axis, and 3) rotate the axis back to its original position. The rotation about the x -axis is of the form

$$d'_i = \sum_j T^{(1)}_{ij} d_j,$$

where the matrix $T^{(1)}$ is given by

$$T^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \psi & \sin \psi & 0 \\ -\sin \psi & \cos \psi & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

If the matrix $\hat{d}$ takes the x -axis into the axis of rotation with the polar angles φ, θ , then the entire transformation has to be of the form $T = \hat{d} T^{(1)} \hat{d}^{-1}$.² Therefore we have

$$\text{tr } T = \text{tr } \hat{d} T^{(1)} \hat{d}^{-1} = \text{tr } T^{(1)} = 1 + 2 \cos \psi, \quad (3.52)$$

²The implies that, group-theoretically, all rotations by the same angle ψ are in the same class.

which makes it easy to calculate η from T .

The Haar invariant integrals, to be used for all integrations over functions of the three-dimensional rotation group, according to (E.67) in the Appendix, have a Haar measure $d\mu$ with the weight function $2(1 - \cos \psi) \sin \theta$; they are thus of the form

$$\int d\mu \dots = 2 \int_0^\pi d\psi (1 - \cos \psi) \int_0^{2\pi} d\varphi \int_0^\pi d\theta \sin \theta \dots \quad (5.58)$$

If the integral is over a class function, i.e., a function of ψ only, it becomes

$$2 \int_0^\pi d\psi (1 - \cos \psi) \int_0^{2\pi} d\varphi \int_0^\pi d\theta \sin \theta f(\psi) = 8\pi \int_0^\pi d\psi (1 - \cos \psi) f(\psi),$$

and the “volume” of the group is $h = \int d\mu = 8\pi^2$.

Another convenient parametrization of rotations employs Euler angles defined by the following sequence of rotations of the same

1. rotate the coordinate frame by α about the z -axis;
2. rotate the new frame by β about the new y' -axis;
3. rotate the new frame by γ about the new z'' -axis,

where $0 \leq \alpha \leq 2\pi$, $0 \leq \beta \leq \pi$, and $0 \leq \gamma \leq 2\pi$. Therefore, the rotation matrix T is given by the following product of three matrices:

$$T = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \gamma & \sin \gamma & 0 \\ -\sin \gamma & \cos \gamma & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \cos \beta & 0 & \sin \beta \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -\sin \beta & 0 & \cos \beta \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \cos \alpha & \sin \alpha & 0 \\ -\sin \alpha & \cos \alpha & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.59)$$

from which we can calculate the total rotation angle ψ by (E.32), with the result¹⁸

$$\cos \left(\frac{1}{2} \psi \right) = \left| \cos \left(\frac{1}{2} \beta \right) \cos \left[\frac{1}{2} (\alpha + \gamma) \right] \right|. \quad (5.60)$$

The Haar measure in terms of Euler angles turns out to be $h\mu^{23}$

$$d\mu = \sin \beta d\alpha d\gamma \sin \beta d\beta. \quad (5.61)$$

A third useful parametrization of rotations uses the Cayley-Klein parameters, defined in terms of the Euler angles by

$$u = e^{-i(\alpha+\gamma)/2} \cos \left(\frac{1}{2} \beta \right), \quad v = e^{i(\alpha-\gamma)/2} \sin \left(\frac{1}{2} \beta \right). \quad (5.62)$$

¹⁸You should do this calculation as an exercise.

¹⁹Prove this as an exercise.

The geometric connection between rotations in three dimensions and the Cayley-Klein parameters is based on a stereographic projection of a sphere of unit diameter, sitting with its north pole on the origin of the complex plane, every point P on the sphere is projected to a point C in the complex plane by drawing a ray from the north pole through P to C in the plane (Fig. 1.1). A rotation of the plane then corresponds to the homographic transformation

$$w = \frac{az + b}{cz + d},$$



FIGURE 1.1. The stereographic projection $P \rightarrow C$ of the complex plane C from the north pole P on the sphere.

The matrix

$$U = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \\ -\frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix}, \quad |a|^2 + |b|^2 = 1, \quad (1.26)$$

with a and b defined by (1.25), then assigns to every rotation in three dimensions another, unitarily 2×2 matrix in three dimensions from the group $U(2)$. Thus the matrices U appear to form a two-dimensional representation of $U(2)$, except for one lack: a rotation by 2π (take $\alpha = \pi = \beta = 0$, and $\hat{R} = \hat{I}$) corresponds to $U = -I$, so that in every rotation in three dimensions there correspond two matrices U . This "representation" is double-valued. (We noted earlier that, because the group manifold of $U(2)$ is doubly connected, odd-half-integer-valued "representations" would be required to exist.) Since the group manifold of $U(2)$ is simply connected, it has no multiple-valued representations. Hence in the extended covering group of $U(2)$, denoted by the 4×4 matrices $\tilde{U}$ there are unitarily representations of the group $U(2)$.

There are infinitely many irreducible representations of $U(2)$ (see Appendix B), one each of dimensionality $2i + 1$, where $i = \frac{1}{2}, 1, \frac{3}{2}, 2, \dots$. Those with integral i are called even representations and there are the irreducible representations of the rotation group $U(1)$, those with half-integral i are called odd representations and there have double-valued representations of $U(2)$. From the physical perspective, both the integral

and the half-integral values of j have the significance that $\hbar^2 j(j+1)$ is the eigenvalue of the square of the angular momentum, $\hat{P}^2 = \hat{J} \cdot \hat{J}$. Furthermore, the angular momentum operators $\hat{J}_x, \hat{J}_y, \hat{J}_z$ differ only by a common constant factor from the infinitesimal generators of the rotation group, from which its Lie algebra (see Appendix E) is formed, while the operator $\hat{P}^2$ differs from the Casimir operator of that algebra again only by a constant factor.

The fact that the even-dimensional “representations” of $SU(2)$ (i.e., those with half-integral values of j) are not single-valued explains why the numbers $j(j+1)/2$ with $j = \frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{2}, \dots$ do not appear as eigenvalues of the square of the orbital angular momentum $\hat{L} \cdot \hat{L}$, a variable that has a classical analogue. The eigenvalues of the angular momentum with half-integral quantum numbers change sign under rotations by 2π , but since all observable quantities consist squares of matrix elements, they are unaffected. Thus these half-integral angular-momentum quantum numbers and all their consequences are typical quantum effects, without classical analogues.

5.2.1 Angular momentum and the carrier space

If, for a fixed value of j , the matrices $\{D_{\alpha\beta}^j(\alpha, \beta, \gamma)\}$ form the $(2j+1)$ -dimensional irreducible representation D^j of $SU(2)$, where α, β, γ are the Euler angles of the corresponding rotation in three dimensions, then the carrier space of this representation is spanned by a set of orthonormal vectors $\hat{\Psi}_\alpha^j$, each of which belongs to one row of $D_{\alpha\beta}^j$ in the sense that if the rotation operator $D(\alpha, \beta, \gamma)$ takes $\hat{\Psi}_\alpha^j$ into $\hat{\Psi}_\beta^j$, then

$$\hat{\Psi}_\beta^j = D(\alpha, \beta, \gamma) \hat{\Psi}_\alpha^j = \sum_\gamma D_{\alpha\gamma}^j \hat{\Psi}_\gamma^j. \quad (5.28)$$

For $j = 1$, Cartesian coordinates lead to the usual form of vectors with three components, V_α , which transform among each other like those of the Cartesian coordinates of a point in three-dimensional Euclidean space, that is, as in (3.22). This means, if we define

$$\hat{X} \equiv \frac{1}{r} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix},$$

then under a rotation of the coordinate axes, $\hat{X}' = \hat{T} \hat{X}$, where $\hat{T}$ is the matrix given by (3.22), and if the three components of the Cartesian vector $\hat{V}$ are similarly arranged in the form of a column matrix, then $\hat{V}' = \hat{T} \hat{V}$. Alternatively, if the three eigenvalues of $\hat{P}^2$ with the eigenvalue $2j^2$ (i.e., $j = 1$) and the eigenvalues $\hbar, 0, -\hbar$ of $\hat{J}_z$ are used (which means that spherical polar coordinates are employed), then the relevant comparison is with the transformation properties of spherical harmonics of order 1: the

three components of a spherical vector transform under rotations like the three spherical harmonics Y_1^{-1} , Y_1^0 , Y_1^1 , and we have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{J} &\equiv \begin{pmatrix} Y_1^0(\theta, \varphi) \\ Y_1^1(\theta, \varphi) \\ Y_1^{-1}(\theta, \varphi) \end{pmatrix} = i\sqrt{\frac{3}{8\pi}} \begin{pmatrix} -\sin\theta \sin\varphi \\ \sqrt{2}\cos\theta \\ \sin\theta \cos\varphi \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \frac{i}{r}\sqrt{\frac{3}{4\pi}} \begin{pmatrix} -(x + iy)/r\sqrt{2} \\ z \\ (x - iy)/r\sqrt{2} \end{pmatrix}. \end{aligned}$$

One then readily finds that¹¹

$$\mathcal{J} = -i\sqrt{\frac{3}{4\pi}} \mathcal{M} \hat{R}, \quad (3.40)$$

where $\mathcal{M}$ is the unitary matrix

$$\mathcal{M} \equiv \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & i & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -\sqrt{2} \\ -1 & i & 0 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (3.41)$$

Therefore, under a coordinate rotation $\mathcal{J}$ transforms into $\mathcal{J}' = \mathcal{D}^{\mathcal{J}}\mathcal{J}$, and the transformation matrix $\mathcal{D}^{\mathcal{J}}$ is related to $\mathcal{T}$ by¹²

$$\mathcal{D}^{\mathcal{J}}(x, R, \gamma) = \mathcal{M} \mathcal{T}(x, R, \gamma) \mathcal{M}^\dagger. \quad (3.42)$$

Every Cartesian vector $\vec{V}$ can be re-expressed by $\mathcal{M}$ as a spherical vector $\mathcal{V}$ by

$$\mathcal{V} = \begin{pmatrix} V_1 \\ V_0 \\ V_{-1} \end{pmatrix} = \mathcal{M} \vec{V}, \quad (3.43)$$

so that its three components belong to the three eigenstates of J_z , as well as belonging to the angular momentum $j = 1$. For example, when dealing with a vector field $\vec{v}_\mu$, it is physically more meaningful to express its three components as those of a spherical vector, using the matrix $\mathcal{M}$ given by (3.41), so that the particles that emerge from its quantization are clearly labeled as having the intrinsic angular momentum $j = 1$. This is the connection between the fact that the electromagnetic field is a vector field and the consequence that its quanta, the photon, has spin 1.

¹¹Check this.

¹²Note two things: (i) whereas the normal convention of columns increases from left to right, and that of rows from top to bottom, here it is customary to do the opposite; (ii) as $\mathcal{T}$ is a column vector, the square matrix $\mathcal{D}^{\mathcal{J}}$ has to stand on the left, which is the opposite of what (3.36) indicates, so that $\mathcal{D}^{\mathcal{J}} = \mathcal{D}^{\mathcal{J}^\dagger}$. As a result, the order of two successive rotations is reversed in these matrices: $\mathcal{D}^{\mathcal{J}}(R_2 R_1) = \mathcal{D}^{\mathcal{J}}(R_1) \mathcal{D}^{\mathcal{J}}(R_2)$.

For $j = 1/2$, the two-component objects that transform under rotations using the matrices $\{D_{mn}^{1/2}\}$ given in the Appendix, are called *spinors*. In other words,

$$\chi_m^{1/2} = O(\alpha, \beta, \gamma) \chi_m^{1/2} = \sum_{m'=-1/2}^{1/2} D_{mm'}^{1/2}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma) \chi_{m'}^{1/2}, \quad m = -\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2} \quad (3.44)$$

This means that if the spinor is written as a column vector,

$$\chi^{1/2} = \begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \end{pmatrix} = a \chi_{1/2}^{1/2} + b \chi_{-1/2}^{1/2}, \quad (3.45)$$

where $\chi_{1/2}^{1/2}$ and $\chi_{-1/2}^{1/2}$ are spin-up and spin-down spinors as given in (3.34), and the transformation is written in the form $\chi^{1/2} = D^{1/2} \chi^{1/2}$, then the matrix $D^{1/2}$ for a rotation by the Euler angles α, β, γ is given by

$$D^{1/2}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma) = \begin{pmatrix} e^{i\alpha} & 0 \\ 0 & e^{-i\alpha} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \cos \frac{\beta}{2} & \sin \frac{\beta}{2} \\ -\sin \frac{\beta}{2} & \cos \frac{\beta}{2} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} e^{i\gamma} & 0 \\ 0 & e^{-i\gamma} \end{pmatrix}. \quad (3.46)$$

Thus for spinors, a rotation of the usual basis system by the angle α about the z -axis leads to the new spinor

$$\chi^{1/2} = \begin{pmatrix} e^{i\alpha} & 0 \\ 0 & e^{-i\alpha} \end{pmatrix} \chi^{1/2}, \quad (3.47)$$

while a rotation of the coordinate axis about the y -axis by the angle β transforms it into

$$\chi^{1/2} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \frac{\beta}{2} & \sin \frac{\beta}{2} \\ -\sin \frac{\beta}{2} & \cos \frac{\beta}{2} \end{pmatrix} \chi^{1/2}, \quad (3.48)$$

These transformations can be written in terms of the Pauli matrices (3.23) in the following way. Since by (3.26) each of the three Pauli matrices σ_n , $n = 1, 2, 3$, is such that $\sigma_n^2 = \mathbb{I}$, the power series expansion shows that¹¹

$$e^{i\sigma_n \alpha} = \mathbb{I} \cos \alpha + i \sigma_n \sin \alpha. \quad (3.49)$$

Therefore it is easily seen that

$$e^{i\frac{1}{2}\sigma_3} = \begin{pmatrix} e^{i\alpha} & 0 \\ 0 & e^{-i\alpha} \end{pmatrix},$$

and

$$e^{i\frac{1}{2}\sigma_2} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \frac{\beta}{2} & \sin \frac{\beta}{2} \\ -\sin \frac{\beta}{2} & \cos \frac{\beta}{2} \end{pmatrix}.$$

¹¹Verify this.

so that for a rotation of the coordinate system by the angle α about the x -axis,

$$\chi^{1/2} = e^{i\alpha J_x} \chi^{1/2},$$

and for a rotation by β about the y -axis,

$$\chi^{1/2} = e^{i\beta J_y} \chi^{1/2}.$$

These equations are nothing but restatements of (3.1), together with the fact that for $j = 1/2$, the components of the angular momentum operator $\mathbf{J}$ are represented by $J^{\pm 1/2}(\mathbf{J}_z) = \frac{1}{2}\hbar\sigma_{\pm}$, $\sigma = 1, 2, 3$. For an arbitrary rotation by ω about the axis $\hat{n}$, we have

$$\chi^{1/2} = e^{i\omega \hat{n} \cdot \mathbf{J}} \chi^{1/2} \quad (3.33)$$

in terms of the vector $\hat{n}$ defined after (3.27). Because of (3.28), the matrix $e^{i\omega \hat{n} \cdot \mathbf{J}}$ can be written as

$$e^{i\omega \hat{n} \cdot \mathbf{J}} = 1 \cos \frac{\omega}{2} + i\hat{n} \cdot \mathbf{J} \sin \frac{\omega}{2}, \quad (3.34)$$

and use of (3.26) leads to

$$\hat{n} \cdot \mathbf{J} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta & e^{-i\phi} \sin \theta \\ e^{i\phi} \sin \theta & -\cos \theta \end{pmatrix} \quad (3.35)$$

if the vector $\hat{n}$ has the components $(\sin \theta \cos \phi, \sin \theta \sin \phi, \cos \theta)$, so that θ and ϕ are the polar angles of the direction of $\hat{n}$. Eq. (3.35) shows, when the rotation is by 2π , the rotation matrix is $e^{i2\pi \hat{n} \cdot \mathbf{J}} = -1$, so that spinors change sign under a rotation by 360° ; this is the double-valuedness of the quantum representations for half-integral j . Since the three components σ_j , $j = 1, 2, 3$, form a vector, i.e., they transform among one another under rotations of the coordinate system like the Cartesian coordinates (so that $\hat{n} \cdot \mathbf{J}$ is a scalar), they must satisfy the equation

$$e^{i\omega \hat{n} \cdot \mathbf{J}} \sigma_j e^{i\omega \hat{n} \cdot \mathbf{J}} = \sum_k T_{jk} \sigma_k, \quad (3.36)$$

where T is the rotation matrix given by (3.34) in terms of Euler angles.

For any given normalized spinor $\chi^{1/2}$, written in the form (3.45), define the angles ξ, η, ζ by writing $u = e^{i\eta} \cos \xi$, $v = e^{i\zeta} \sin \xi$. It then follows that, if the system is in the state $\chi^{1/2}$, the probability of finding the spin to be up, i.e., for the system to be in the state $\chi_{\uparrow\uparrow}^{1/2}$, is $\cos^2 \xi$. We calculate the expectation value of the spin by using (3.25), finding that¹⁸

$$\frac{2}{\hbar} \langle \mathbf{J} \rangle = \langle \sigma \rangle = \langle \sin 2\xi \cos \zeta, \sin 2\xi \sin \zeta, \cos 2\xi \rangle.$$

¹⁸ Check this.

which means that $|\hat{n}\rangle$ is a unit vector with the polar angle $\theta = 2\zeta$, $\varphi = \zeta - \eta$. We may now ask if there is a direction $\hat{n}$ such that

$$\hat{n} \cdot \mathcal{R}_x^{1/2} = \chi^{1/2}.$$

If such a spinor $\chi^{1/2} \neq 0$ exists, then in the rotated coordinate system in which the z -axis points in the direction $\hat{n}$, it has “spin up” (i.e., $\chi^{1/2}$ is an eigenvector of σ_z with the eigenvalue 1). A simple calculation⁴¹, using (3.45) and (3.32), leads to the conclusion that indeed such a $\chi^{1/2}$ exists, and the polar angles of $\hat{n}$ are given by the equation $\alpha/\hbar = \pi^{-1/2} \cot \frac{\theta}{2}$, so that

$$\cot \frac{\theta}{2} = \frac{|\alpha|}{|\beta|} = \cot \zeta, \quad \varphi = \zeta - \eta. \quad (3.46)$$

This result has the physical interpretation that for the spinor (3.45), the angles $\theta = 2\zeta$ and $\varphi = \zeta - \eta$ are the polar angles of the “direction of the spin.”⁴² However, the “spin direction,” as such, of a particle is not a directly experimentally observable vector.

Behavior under reflection

Whereas under coordinate rotations the components of $\hat{\mathbf{J}}$ have to behave like those of a vector, they, like the components of the rotation axis $\hat{n}$, must not change sign under inversion (again, so that $\hat{n} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{J}}$ remains invariant). $\hat{\mathbf{J}}$ must be an axial vector. This implies that its three components should really be regarded as those of an antisymmetric tensor of rank 2, and they should be written in the form

$$J_1 \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} J_{23} = -J_{32} \quad (3.55)$$

and its cyclic permutations. From this perspective, J_3 is the generator of rotations in the (12) -plane, and the commutation relations (3.6) become

$$[J_{\alpha\beta}, J_{\gamma\delta}] = i(\delta_{\alpha\gamma} J_{\beta\delta} - \delta_{\alpha\delta} J_{\beta\gamma} + \delta_{\beta\delta} J_{\alpha\gamma} - \delta_{\beta\gamma} J_{\alpha\delta}), \quad (3.56)$$

while the anticommutation relations (3.27) appropriate for spin-1/2 take the form

$$\frac{1}{i} \{ \sigma_{12}, \sigma_{31} \} = \delta_{12} \delta_{31} - \delta_{13} \delta_{21}, \quad (3.57)$$

⁴¹The π .

⁴²We mentioned that this works for spin-1/2 only! For higher spins there does not always exist a direction of the z -axis such that the given spin function is an eigenvector of $\hat{\mathbf{J}}$, with the maximal eigenvalue $\hbar j$.

5.2.2 Polarization and the spin density matrix

Suppose, now, that $|+\rangle \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \chi_+^{1/2}$ is of the form (2.10), so that it denotes an eigenstate of spin up in the direction $\hat{n}$ specified by $\alpha/\theta = e^{-i\phi} \cot \frac{\theta}{2}$, and

$$|-\rangle \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \chi_-^{1/2} = \begin{pmatrix} \theta \\ -e^{i\phi} \end{pmatrix} = \theta^* \chi_+^{1/2} - e^{i\phi} \chi_-^{1/2}$$

denotes the corresponding spin down state. The density operator

$$\rho = p_+ |+\rangle \langle +| + p_- |-\rangle \langle -| \quad (3.55)$$

then defines a mixed state in which p_+ is the probability of finding spin up in the direction $\hat{n}$, and p_- is the probability of finding spin down in that direction. A little calculation²⁷ shows that in this state

$$\hat{P} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \langle \hat{P} \rangle = (p_+ - p_-)\hat{n}. \quad (3.56)$$

The vector $\hat{P}$ is called the polarization vector of the state; its direction has the polar angle θ_P , while its magnitude is called the degree of polarization,

$$P \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} |\hat{P}| = |p_+ - p_-|.$$

It can be directly calculated from the density operator by the formula²⁸

$$\alpha \rho^2 = \frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{1} + P^2), \quad (3.57)$$

and the density matrix (the representation of the density operator on the basis of spin-up and spin-down states with respect to the z -axis) can be expressed in the form

$$\rho = \frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{1} + \hat{P} \cdot \hat{\sigma}). \quad (3.58)$$

If $\hat{P} = 0$, the spin state is un-polarized, with equal probability for spin up and down; if this is the case for one direction $\hat{n}$, it is equally the case for any other direction.²⁹

For spin-1 (e.g., photons), the spin operator acting on a Cartesian vector $\hat{f}$ may be defined, as we already did in (2.107), by

$$\hbar \hat{S}_j \hat{f}^{(1)} \equiv \hat{S}_j^{(1)} \hat{f}, \quad j = 1, 2, 3, \quad (3.59)$$

where $\hat{f}^{(1)}$ is the unit vector in the direction of the j -axis. The three eigenstates of the z -projection of the spin are then given by³⁰

$$|+1\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(\hat{e}^{(1)} + \hat{e}^{(2)}), \quad |0\rangle = \hat{e}^{(3)},$$

²⁷Ex. 8.

²⁸Ex. 10.

²⁹Ex. 11.

³⁰Ex. 12. Note that $\hat{S}_1|+1\rangle = \hat{S}_2|+1\rangle$ and $\hat{S}_3|0\rangle = 0$.

Now define

$$|x\rangle \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(e^{i\varphi} + 1)e^{-i\varphi/2} = 1 \rangle = e^{i\varphi/2} \sin \varphi + e^{i3\varphi/2} \cos \varphi$$

and

$$|y\rangle \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(e^{i\varphi} - 1)e^{-i\varphi/2} = -i(e^{i\varphi/2} \sin \varphi - e^{i3\varphi/2} \cos \varphi),$$

so that $\langle y|x\rangle = 0$. These states correspond to plane polarisation for a beam in the x direction, φ being the angle of polarisation with respect to the y axis for $|x\rangle$, and orthogonal to that for $|y\rangle$. For the two probabilities $p_x \geq 0$ and $p_y \geq 0$, with $p_x + p_y = 1$, the density operator for a partially polarised beam can be expressed in the form

$$\rho_x = p_x|x\rangle\langle x| + p_y|y\rangle\langle y|,$$

and the degree of polarisation is given by

$$P = p_x - p_y = 2p_x - 1.$$

A bit of algebra shows that¹⁸ $\langle x|\rho_x^2|x\rangle = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2}P^2$, or

$$P^2 = 2\langle x|\rho_x^2|x\rangle - 1.$$

Furthermore, we find¹⁹

$$\begin{aligned}\langle x^{(1)}|\rho_x|x^{(1)}\rangle &= \frac{1}{2}[1 + P \cos 2\varphi], \\ \langle x^{(0)}|\rho_x|x^{(0)}\rangle &= \frac{1}{2}[1 + P \cos 2\varphi], \\ \langle x^{(0)}|\rho_x|x^{(1)}\rangle &= \frac{1}{2}P \sin 2\varphi,\end{aligned}$$

so that the polarisation angle may be expressed as

$$\tan 2\varphi = \frac{2\langle x^{(0)}|\rho_x|x^{(1)}\rangle}{\langle x^{(1)}|\rho_x|x^{(1)}\rangle - \langle x^{(0)}|\rho_x|x^{(0)}\rangle}.$$

5.2.F The magnetic moment

The most direct handle on the experimental determination of the projection of the angular momentum of a particle in a given direction is the fact that if an electrically charged particle has an angular momentum, it has a magnetic

¹⁸ Do it.

¹⁹ Check these equations.

moment. Immersed in a magnetic field, it is therefore subject to torque and since there whose effects are observable, the best known of which is its deflection in a Stern-Gerlach experiment. As we shall discuss later in more detail, the energy of a point particle of charge e , mass M , and orbital angular momentum $\mathbf{L} = \hbar\mathbf{L}$ in a weak uniform magnetic field $\mathbf{B}$ is given by $-(e/2M)c\hbar\mathbf{L} \cdot \mathbf{B}$, which means that it has an effective magnetic moment $\boldsymbol{\mu} = (e/2M)c\hbar\mathbf{L} = |\mu_B/2M^2c|\mathbf{L}$. If $-e$ and M are the charge and mass, respectively, of the electron, the factor $\mu_B = |e\hbar/2M^2c|$ is called the *Bohr magneton*.²⁰ If the particle, in addition, has the intrinsic spin angular momentum $\mathbf{S}$, this adds the energy $-(e/4M^2c)\hbar\mathbf{S} \cdot \mathbf{B}$, which means that a spin-1/2 particle has an intrinsic magnetic moment $\boldsymbol{\mu} = (e/4M^2c)\hbar\mathbf{S} = |\mu_B/2M^2c|\mathbf{S}$. Note the factor of 1/2, called the *g-factor*, by which the gyromagnetic ratio (the ratio of the magnitude of the magnetic moment to that of the angular momentum) of the spin contribution differs from the orbital. We shall return to it again later.

As a result, the magnetic moment of a system of charged particles, such as the electrons in an atom, is given by

$$\boldsymbol{\mu} = -\frac{e}{2M^2c}(\mathbf{L} + 2\mathbf{S}) = -\mu_B(\mathbf{L} + \sum_i \mathbf{S}^{(i)}), \quad (5.68)$$

where $\mathbf{L}^2$ is the total orbital angular momentum, and $\sum_i \mathbf{S}^{(i)}$ is the sum of all the spin angular momenta of the electrons. It is important to remember that $\boldsymbol{\mu}$ is not proportional to the total angular momentum.

The experimentally measured magnetic moment of a charged particle with spin always differs from the Bohr magneton (i.e., its *g-factor* differs from 2) by a certain amount, which is explained by its interaction with the quantum field. In the case of the electron, the deviation of the *g-factor* from 2 is extremely small but very accurately predicted by quantum electrodynamics. For the proton—in this instance, the Bohr magneton has to be replaced by the nuclear magneton, which is about 1840 times smaller because of the mass ratio—the deviation of the *g-factor* from 2 is quite large ($g = 3.82$) and roughly predicted by the field theory of the strong interactions, where precise calculations are difficult. The same field-theoretic mechanism that leads to such anomalous magnetic moments of charged particles also induces magnetic moments in some neutral ones, so that, as a result of its strong interaction with the chromodynamic field producing quarks, the neutron has a magnetic moment of about -1.9 nuclear magnetons.

²⁰Because of its measurement by means of a magnetic field, the expression μ_B of the z -component of the angular momentum is usually called the magnetic quantum number.

5.2.1 Addition of angular momenta

Suppose two independent physical systems, one in a state $\Phi^{(1)}(j_1, m_1)$ with angular momentum quantum numbers j_1, m_1 , and the other in the state $\Phi^{(2)}(j_2, m_2)$, are combined, so that the system as a whole is in the state $\Phi(j_1, j_2; m_1, m_2) = \Phi^{(1)}(j_1, m_1) \otimes \Phi^{(2)}(j_2, m_2)$. This state may alternatively be written as a superposition of states of various total angular momenta

$$\Phi(j_1, j_2; m_1, m_2) = \sum_{j, m} \langle j, m | j_1, m_1; j_2, m_2 \rangle \Phi(j, m), \quad (5.54)$$

in which the numbers

$$\langle j, m | j_1, m_1; j_2, m_2 \rangle = {}^{(1)}\langle j, m | \Phi(j_1, j_2; m_1, m_2) \rangle$$

are called Clebsch-Gordan coefficients.¹⁸ Since all the components of $\hat{J}^{(1)}$ commute with all the components of $\hat{J}^{(2)}$ (the systems are assumed independent), and $\mathbf{J} = \mathbf{J}^{(1)} + \mathbf{J}^{(2)}$, we must have $m = m_1 + m_2$, which implies, first of all, that if both j_1 and j_2 are either integral or half-integral, then j must be integral; otherwise j is half-integral; second, $|j_1 - j_2| \leq j \leq j_1 + j_2$, because $|m| \leq |j|$, $|m_1| \leq |j_1|$, and $|m_2| \leq |j_2|$. If we think of the angular momenta as a classical vector (as in the "old quantum theory"), then the inequalities $|j_1 - j_2| \leq j \leq j_1 + j_2$ simply restore the triangle inequality

$$|\hat{J}^{(1)}| = |\hat{J}^{(2)}| \leq |\hat{J}^{(1)} + \hat{J}^{(2)}| \leq |\hat{J}^{(1)}| + |\hat{J}^{(2)}|$$

of the old vector-addition model. Consequently, we have

$$\Phi(j_1, j_2; m_1, m_2) = \sum_{j=|j_1-j_2|}^{j_1+j_2} \langle j, m_1+m_2 | j_1, m_1; j_2, m_2 \rangle \Phi(j, m_1+m_2). \quad (5.55)$$

If the basis functions are normalized, the matrix of the Clebsch-Gordan coefficients has to be unitary and $\langle j_1, m_1; j_2, m_2 | j, m \rangle = \langle j, m | j_1, m_1; j_2, m_2 \rangle^*$ so that we also have

$$\Phi(j_1, m) = \sum_{m_1, m_2, m_3} \langle j_1, m | j_1, m_1; j_2, m_2 \rangle^* \Phi(j_1, j_2; m_1, m_2). \quad (5.56)$$

[Note that j_1 and j_2 are not summed over in (5.56).] Expansions for the Clebsch-Gordan coefficients are given in Appendix E, but here we shall mention some of them.

¹⁸Other names used for the Clebsch-Gordan coefficients in the physics literature are *Coué coefficients*, *Slater coefficients*, and *Wigner coefficients*.

Two spin-1/2 systems

A system consisting of two spin-1/2 particles can be in four states, with each of the individual particles in states $\chi_{\pm 1/2}^{1/2}$ or $\chi_{\pm 1/2}^{3/2}$, making up the two-particle states $\chi_{\pm 1/2}^{1/2} \otimes \chi_{\pm 1/2}^{1/2}$. Using these states, we can form two-particle states with total angular momentum, $j = 1$ or $j = 0$ ($2 = 2 + 1$). For obvious reasons, the first is called a *triplet*, the second, a *singlet*. In order to construct these states out of the individual spins (assumed normalized), we start by noting that if, in the triplet, $m = -1$, it is necessary for both m_1 and m_2 to have the value $-1/2$, which means that $\chi_{-1}^{1-} = \chi_{-1/2}^{1/2} \otimes \chi_{-1/2}^{1/2}$; similarly we must have $\chi_{-1}^{0-} = \chi_{1/2}^{1/2} \otimes \chi_{-3/2}^{1/2}$. In order to construct χ_{-1}^{0-} , we form the operators $j_{\pm}$ as in (3.2), so that $j_{+} = j_{+}^{(1)} + j_{+}^{(2)}$. Equation (3.11) then tells us that

$$\begin{aligned} \sqrt{2}\chi_{-1}^{0-} &= j_{+}\chi_{-1}^{1-} = (j_{+}^{(1)} + j_{+}^{(2)})\chi_{-1/2}^{1/2} \otimes \chi_{-1/2}^{1/2} \\ &= \chi_{1/2}^{1/2} \otimes \chi_{-3/2}^{1/2} + \chi_{-1/2}^{1/2} \otimes \chi_{-1/2}^{1/2}. \end{aligned}$$

Thus the three triplet states are given by

$$\begin{aligned} \chi_{-1}^{1-} &= \chi_{-1/2}^{1/2} \otimes \chi_{-1/2}^{1/2}, \\ \chi_{0}^{1-} &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(\chi_{1/2}^{1/2} \otimes \chi_{-3/2}^{1/2} + \chi_{-1/2}^{1/2} \otimes \chi_{-1/2}^{1/2}), \\ \chi_{1}^{1-} &= \chi_{1/2}^{1/2} \otimes \chi_{1/2}^{1/2}. \end{aligned} \quad (3.67)$$

The singlet state has to be orthogonal to all three of the triplet, which allows us to conclude that it must be

$$\chi_{0}^{0-} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(\chi_{1/2}^{1/2} \otimes \chi_{-3/2}^{1/2} - \chi_{-1/2}^{1/2} \otimes \chi_{-1/2}^{1/2}). \quad (3.68)$$

Notice the important fact that the singlet state is anti-symmetric under an interchange of the two spins, while all three components of the triplet state are symmetric.

If a system consisting of two particles of spin-1/2 is in the singlet state (3.68), each of the one-particle subsystems alone, that is, with the other one ignored, is in a mixed state whose spin density operator is given by²⁸

$$\rho = \frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{P}_{+} + \mathbf{P}_{-}) = \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{I},$$

where $\mathbf{P}_{\pm}$ are the projections on the spin-up and spin-down states. It is an “unbalanced” as is possible for a spin-1/2 state to be, with $\text{tr} \rho^2 = \frac{1}{2}$.²⁹

²⁸Prove this.

²⁹As an exercise, prove that for any spin-1/2 system, $\text{tr} \rho^2 \leq \frac{1}{2}$.

On the other hand, if the other particle is not ignored, the entanglement of the states $\chi_{-1/2}^{1/200} \otimes \chi_{1/2}^{1/200}$ and $\chi_{1/2}^{1/200} \otimes \chi_{-1/2}^{1/200}$ in the expression (5.65) has important physical consequences. For example, if the two-particle system is in the state χ_+^0 , what is the probability that a measurement of the variable A on particle #1 and B on particle #2 will yield the results A and B , respectively? Denoting the two eigenstates by $\chi_A^{(1)}$ and $\chi_B^{(2)}$, this probability is

$$\begin{aligned} P(A, B) &= |\langle \chi_A^{(1)} \chi_B^{(2)} | \chi_+^0 \rangle|^2 \\ &= \frac{1}{2} |\langle \chi_{1/2}^{1/2} \chi_{1/2}^{1/2} | \chi_+^0 \rangle + \langle \chi_{-1/2}^{1/2} \chi_{-1/2}^{1/2} | \chi_+^0 \rangle|^2, \end{aligned}$$

which differs from the product of the two probabilities of finding A for particle #1 and B for #2. The result of the measurement of A on particle #1 thus depends on the result of the measurement of B on particle #2, even though the two particles may be very far apart. Specifically, if two spin-1/2 particles are the decay products of a spin-0 parent system, they fly off in opposite directions in a singlet state like (5.65), and their entanglement leads to the kind of correlation described by Bohm in his version of the EPR-Gedanken experiment discussed in Chapter 1; it allows us to infer the spin projection of one of them by measuring that of the other.

The singlet and triplet states of two spin-1/2 particles could also have been constructed by exploiting their opposite exchange properties, in the following way. Suppose a system of two spin-1/2 particles is in the state $\chi_+^{1/200} \otimes \chi_+^{1/200}$. Then the operator

$$P_{\text{exch}} \equiv \frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{1} + \sigma^{(1)} \cdot \sigma^{(2)}), \quad (5.66)$$

called the *spin-exchange operator* which the two spin states, is the same that⁴⁹

$$P_{\text{exch}} \chi_+^{1/200} \otimes \chi_+^{1/200} = \chi_+^{1/200} \otimes \chi_+^{1/200}.$$

Since two such exchanges lead back to the original state, it follows that $P_{\text{exch}}^2 = \mathbf{1}$, which implies that its two eigenvalues are ± 1 . The eigenstate with the eigenvalue 1 is the triplet state of the two spin-1/2 particles, and the state with the eigenvalue -1 is the singlet.⁵⁰

Spin-1/2 plus orbital angular momentum

The wave function of a spin-0 particle subject to a rotationally invariant Hamiltonian, we know, can be written as a superposition of products of a radial function and a spherical harmonic, fixing the magnitude and the z -component of its orbital angular momentum, $R(r)/Y_l^m(\vartheta, \varphi)$. If the particle

⁴⁹Prove this.

⁵⁰As an exercise, construct the four states in this manner.

has spin-1/2, each such product wave function has to be multiplied by a spinor $\chi_{m_s}^{1/2}$, so that, apart from the energy, the wave function is labeled by (l, m_l, m_s) (the additional, hard label 1/2 for the magnitude of the spin being understood²⁹). Rotational invariance of the Hamiltonian now, however, does not necessarily entail conservation of the orbital angular momentum, so that l and m_l need not be good quantum numbers; instead, the good quantum numbers are the total angular momentum j and its z -component $m = m_l + m_s$. It is therefore useful to construct spin-dependent spinors that are eigenfunctions of $\hat{J}^2 = (\hat{\mathbf{L}} + \hat{\mathbf{S}})^2$ and of $\hat{J}_z = \hat{L}_z + \hat{S}_z$, if by $\hat{\mathbf{S}}$ we mean the spin angular momentum operator.³⁰

For convenience, define $\hat{J}^2 \equiv \hat{\mathbf{J}} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{J}} = \hat{L}^2 + \frac{1}{2}\hat{\sigma}^2$, so that

$$\hat{J}^2 = \hat{L}^2 + \hat{L} \cdot \hat{\sigma} + \frac{1}{4}\hat{\sigma}^2 = \hat{L}^2 + \hat{L} \cdot \hat{\sigma} + \frac{3}{4}. \quad (5.70)$$

Both $\hat{L}^2$ and $\hat{L} \cdot \hat{\sigma}$ are rotationally invariant and therefore commute with $\hat{H}$ and $\hat{J}_z$; they therefore have simultaneous eigenstates with $\hat{J}^2$ and $\hat{J}_z$. It will be one of your homework assignments to show that for the states with $j = l + \frac{1}{2}$, $\hat{L} \cdot \hat{\sigma}$ has the eigenvalue l , and for the states with $j = l - \frac{1}{2}$, $\hat{L} \cdot \hat{\sigma}$ has the eigenvalue $-l - 1$. We may thus define two projection operators

$$P_+ \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (j + 1)(\hat{L} + \hat{L} \cdot \hat{\sigma})/(2j + 1), \quad P_- \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (1 - \hat{L} \cdot \hat{\sigma})/(2j + 1), \quad P_+ + P_- = 1 \quad (5.71)$$

so that $P_+ = 1$ when acting on a state with $j = l + \frac{1}{2}$ and $P_+ = 0$ when acting on a state with $j = l - \frac{1}{2}$, while $P_- = 1$ when acting on a state with $j = l - \frac{1}{2}$ but $P_- = 0$ when acting on a state with $j = l + \frac{1}{2}$.

These two projections may be used to construct spin functions $\mathcal{Y}_j^m$ with $j = l + \frac{1}{2}$ and with $j = l - \frac{1}{2}$,

$$P_+ Y_l^{m-1/2}(\mathbf{r}, \sigma) \chi_{l+1/2}^{1/2} = A \chi_{l+1/2}^m(\mathbf{r}, \sigma),$$

$$P_- Y_l^{m-1/2}(\mathbf{r}, \sigma) \chi_{l-1/2}^{1/2} = B \chi_{l-1/2}^m(\mathbf{r}, \sigma).$$

In order for these $\mathcal{Y}_j^m$ to be normalized, A and B have to be chosen (apart from an arbitrary phase factor).³¹

$$A = \sqrt{\frac{1}{2} + \frac{m}{2l+1}}, \quad B = \sqrt{\frac{1}{2} - \frac{m}{2l+1}}. \quad (5.72)$$

²⁹When we are talking about the Schrödinger equation of a system consisting of two spin-1/2 particles, on the other hand, the total spin may be 0 or 1, and these two states may be coupled.

³⁰This is analogous to the need in electromagnetic theory for constructing vector spherical harmonics, which are eigenfunctions of the total angular momentum made up of the “orbital” angular momentum and spin-1 functions, in accordance with the fact that the photon has spin-1 (i.e., the electromagnetic field is a vector field).

³¹Prove this as an exercise.

For these calculations it is useful to introduce $\alpha_{\pm}^{(m)} \equiv \frac{1}{2}(\alpha_{\pm,1} \mp i\alpha_{\pm,2})$ and $\beta_{\pm}^{(m)} \equiv \frac{1}{2}(\beta_{\pm,1} \mp i\beta_{\pm,2})$, so that $\mathcal{L} \cdot \mathcal{P} = \mathcal{L}_3 \mathcal{P}_3 + \mathcal{L}_+ \mathcal{P}_- + \mathcal{L}_- \mathcal{P}_+$ and $\mathcal{P}_\pm \alpha_{\pm,1}^{(m)} = \alpha_{\pm,1}^{(m)} \mathcal{P}_\pm$, while $\mathcal{P}_\pm \alpha_{\pm,2}^{(m)} = \alpha_{\pm,2}^{(m)} \mathcal{P}_\pm$.

As a result of evaluating the actions of $P_\pm$ on $Y_l^{m-1/2} \partial_{\theta,\varphi} Y_l^{1/2}$ we then find that¹⁰

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{Y}_{l+1}^m &= \sqrt{\frac{1}{2} + \frac{m}{2l+1}} Y_l^{m-1} \alpha_{-1,1}^{1/2} \\ &\quad + \sqrt{\frac{1}{2} - \frac{m}{2l+1}} Y_l^{m+1} \alpha_{-1,2}^{1/2}, \end{aligned} \quad (3.73)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{Y}_{l+1}^{-m} &= \sqrt{\frac{1}{2} - \frac{m}{2l+1}} Y_l^{m-1} \alpha_{1,1}^{1/2} \\ &\quad - \sqrt{\frac{1}{2} + \frac{m}{2l+1}} Y_l^{m+1} \alpha_{1,2}^{1/2}, \end{aligned} \quad (3.74)$$

3.2.3 Spherical tensors and selection rules

Consider an operator $\mathcal{O}_2^m$ that is invariant under active rotations, so that it commutes with all components of the angular momentum. If $\mathcal{O}_2$ is a rotation operator, we then have (assuming the irreducible representations D^l and $D^{l'}$ are unitary),

$$\begin{aligned} \langle n' j' m' | \mathcal{O}_2^m | n j m \rangle &= \langle n' j' m' | \mathcal{O}_2 \mathcal{O}_2^\dagger \mathcal{O}_2^m \mathcal{O}_2^{-1} | n j m \rangle \\ &= \sum_{m''} D_{m'' m'}^l(R) \langle n' j' m' | \mathcal{O}_2^m | n j m \rangle D_{m m''}^{l'}(R), \end{aligned}$$

which implies that

$$\sum_n \langle n' j' m' | \mathcal{O}_2^m | n j m \rangle D_{m m''}^{l'}(R) = \sum_n D_{m'' m'}^l(R) \langle n' j' m' | \mathcal{O}_2^m | n j m \rangle.$$

Lemmas (B.2) and (B.3) (Schur's lemma) in Appendix B therefore allow us to draw the conclusion that $\langle n' j' m' | \mathcal{O}_2^m | n j m \rangle = 0$ unless $j = j'$ and $m = m'$. One says that for rotationally invariant operators, the selection rule is $\Delta j = 0$ and $\Delta m = 0$; moreover, the nonvanishing matrix elements are independent of m (so that $\langle n' j' m' | \mathcal{O}_2^m | n j m \rangle$ is not just diagonal, but a multiple of the unit matrix in spin space).

¹⁰Where this.

Next, take a Cartesian vector operator $\vec{G}$ and its commutation relation (3.1) with the angular momentum. Applying (3.1) twice yields³²

$$[\vec{G}, \vec{J}^2] = i\hbar(\vec{J} \times \vec{G} + \vec{G} \times \vec{J}).$$

Now using the fact that the left-hand side of this equation is a vector operator, substitute $[\vec{G}, \vec{J}^2]$ for $\vec{G}$, and you find³³

$$[\vec{G}, \vec{J}^2, \vec{J}] = 2i\hbar(\vec{J}^2\vec{G} + \vec{G}\vec{J}^2) = 4i\hbar\vec{J}(\vec{G} \cdot \vec{J}). \quad (3.74)$$

Taking matrix elements of this equation for $j \neq j'$, and using other needed quantum numbers α that are eigenvalues of a rotationally invariant operator, we obtain

$$\langle \alpha' j' m' | [\vec{G}, \vec{J}^2], \vec{J} \rangle = [2\vec{J}^2(\vec{J}^2\vec{G} + \vec{G}\vec{J}^2)]_{(\alpha' j')(\alpha j)} = 0,$$

which, after a little algebra³⁴, leads to

$$[(j-j')^2 - 1](j+j'+1)^2 - 1 \langle \alpha' j' m' | \vec{G} | \alpha j m \rangle = 0.$$

Therefore the selection rule for matrix elements of a vector operator is

$$j' = j \pm 1.$$

For $j' = j$, on the other hand, (3.74) yields

$$\begin{aligned} \langle \alpha' j m' | \vec{G} | \alpha j m \rangle &= \frac{\langle \alpha' j m' | \vec{G} \cdot \vec{J} | \alpha j m \rangle}{j(j+1)} \\ &= \frac{1}{j(j+1)} \sum_{m''} \langle \alpha' j m' | \vec{J} | \alpha' j m'' \rangle \langle \alpha' j m'' | \vec{G} \cdot \vec{J} | \alpha j m \rangle. \end{aligned}$$

But since the α are eigenvalues of a rotationally invariant operator, $\vec{J}$ is diagonal in α as well as in j , and since $\vec{G} \cdot \vec{J}$ is invariant under rotations, it is not only diagonal in m but the matrix element is independent of m . As a result we obtain

$$\langle \alpha' j m' | \vec{G} | \alpha j m \rangle = \mathcal{F}(\alpha', \alpha, j) \langle \alpha' j | \vec{G} | \alpha j \rangle, \quad (3.75)$$

where

$$\mathcal{F}(\alpha', \alpha, j) = \frac{\langle \alpha' j m | \vec{G} \cdot \vec{J} | \alpha j m \rangle}{j(j+1)}, \quad (3.76)$$

so that all the specific dependence of the left-hand side of (3.75) upon m and m' is contained in the matrix element of $\vec{J}$ and does not depend on $\vec{G}$.

³²Do this as an exercise.

³³Do this as an exercise.

³⁴The 4 .

To obtain the selection rule for Δm when $j' \neq j$, we have, of course, $\langle n' j' m' | \hat{S}_y | n j m \rangle = 0$ unless $m = m'$, because $[\hat{\mathbf{J}}_x, \hat{\mathbf{J}}_y] = 0$. Using (3.2), we find that $[j_+ \hat{G}_x + i \hat{G}_y] = \hat{G}_x + i \hat{G}_y$, and therefore

$$\langle n' j' m' | \hat{G}_x + i \hat{G}_y | n j m \rangle = (m' - m) \langle n' j' m' | \hat{G}_x + i \hat{G}_y | n j m \rangle,$$

implying that $\langle n' j' m' | \hat{G}_x + i \hat{G}_y | n j m \rangle = 0$ unless $m' = m + 1$; similarly we find that $\langle n' j' m' | \hat{G}_x - i \hat{G}_y | n j m \rangle = 0$ unless $m' = m - 1$. It follows from these two results that the matrix elements of $\hat{G}_x$ and $\hat{G}_y$ vanish unless $\Delta m = \pm 1$. What is more, because $[\hat{\mathbf{J}}_x + i \hat{G}_x, \hat{\mathbf{J}}_z] = 0$, it follows from (3.11) and (3.12) that

$$\frac{\langle n' j' m + 2 | \hat{G}_x + i \hat{G}_y | n j m + 1 \rangle}{\sqrt{j'(j' - m - 1)(j' + m + 1)}} = \frac{\langle n' j' m + 1 | \hat{G}_x + i \hat{G}_y | n j m \rangle}{\sqrt{j'(j' - m)(j' + m + 1)}}. \quad (3.78)$$

As a specific physical application, consider expectation values of the magnetic moment of an atom, as given by (3.62). Assuming the Hamiltonian of the atom to be rotationally invariant, we have, according to (3.76)

$$\langle \hat{\mu} \rangle = -\frac{e}{\Sigma m \mu_B} \langle \hat{\mathbf{L}} \rangle \langle \hat{\mathbf{L}} + 2\hat{\mathbf{S}} \rangle \langle \hat{\mathbf{J}} \rangle = -\frac{j \mu_B \langle \hat{\mathbf{J}} \rangle}{\hbar j} \mu_{\text{eff}}, \quad (3.79)$$

where the effective "magnetic moment of the atom" is given by

$$\mu_{\text{eff}} = \frac{\langle \hat{\mathbf{L}} \rangle \langle \hat{\mathbf{L}} + 2\hat{\mathbf{S}} \rangle \langle \hat{\mathbf{J}} \rangle}{\hbar(j+1)}. \quad (3.80)$$

But from $\hat{\mathbf{L}} = (\hat{\mathbf{J}} - \hat{\mathbf{S}})^2$ and $\hat{\mathbf{S}} = (\hat{\mathbf{J}} - \hat{\mathbf{L}})^2$ we find $\hat{\mathbf{L}} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{J}} = \frac{1}{2}(\hat{\mathbf{J}}^2 + \hat{\mathbf{L}}^2 - \hat{\mathbf{S}}^2)$ and $\hat{\mathbf{L}} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{S}} = \frac{1}{2}(\hat{\mathbf{J}}^2 + \hat{\mathbf{S}}^2 - \hat{\mathbf{L}}^2)$, so that by (3.80)

$$\hat{\mu} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{J}} = -\frac{e}{\Sigma \mu_B} (\hat{\mathbf{L}} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{J}} + \hat{\mathbf{S}} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{J}}) = -\frac{e}{\Sigma \mu_B} \left(\frac{1}{2} \hat{\mathbf{J}}^2 + \frac{1}{2} \hat{\mathbf{S}}^2 - \frac{1}{2} \hat{\mathbf{L}}^2 \right)$$

and therefore

$$\mu_{\text{eff}} = -\frac{e}{\Sigma \mu_B} \frac{j \mu_B \left(\frac{1}{2} \hat{\mathbf{J}}^2 + \frac{1}{2} \hat{\mathbf{S}}^2 - \frac{1}{2} \hat{\mathbf{L}}^2 \right) \langle \hat{\mathbf{J}} \rangle}{\hbar(j+1)}.$$

In the so-called LS-coupling scheme it is a good approximation to assume that all the electrons' orbital angular momenta couple to a total $\hat{\mathbf{L}}$ and all the spins couple to a total spin angular momentum $\hat{\mathbf{S}}$, which then couple to a total $\hat{\mathbf{J}} = \hat{\mathbf{L}} + \hat{\mathbf{S}}$. In that approximation therefore

$$\mu_{\text{eff}} = -\mu_B j \left[1 + \frac{j(j+1) - l(l+1) + s(s+1)}{2j(j+1)} \right]. \quad (3.81)$$

The bracket is called the Landé g -factor for LS coupling.

Spherical tensors

As already mentioned for the case of vectors, for quantum-mechanical purposes it is more convenient to classify tensors in terms of their irreducible transformation properties under rotations, rather than in terms of their Cartesian transformation properties, particularly if the components of the tensor are operators. So if we are given, for instance, a Cartesian tensor of rank 2, $T_{\alpha\beta}$, then we know it transforms under a rotation of the coordinate system like $x_\alpha x_\beta$, that is, $T'_{\alpha\beta} = \sum_{\gamma\delta} T_{\gamma\delta} T_{\alpha\gamma} T_{\beta\delta}$, where T is given by (3.25). On the other hand, (3.43) tells us that

$$\frac{1}{r} a_{\alpha\beta} = i/\sqrt{6\pi} \sum_m A_{\alpha\beta m} Y_2^m.$$

Therefore $\sum_{\alpha\beta} A_{\alpha\beta m} A_{\alpha\beta n} T_{\alpha\beta}$ transforms like $Y_2^m \otimes Y_2^n$, and we have

$$Y_1^m \otimes Y_1^n = \sum_{k=0}^2 \langle j_1 m_1 + m_2 | j_1 m_1 j_1 m_2 \rangle Y_1^{m_1+m_2}.$$

The simple equation $2 \cdot 2 = 1 + 2 + 1$ suggests that a general tensor of rank 2, which has $5 \cdot 5 = 9$ components, can be decomposed into a direct sum of parts that transform according to the angular momenta 1, 1, and 0. These components are obtained by means of (3.44) and the Clebsch-Gordan coefficients as

$$T_j^i = \sum_{m_1 m_2} \langle j, m | 1, m_1; 1, m_2 \rangle \sum_{\alpha\beta} A_{\alpha\beta m_1} A_{\alpha\beta m_2} T_{\alpha\beta}, \quad j = 0, 1, 2. \quad (3.45)$$

We can easily recognise the three irreducible pieces of a Cartesian tensor of rank 2 as follows. First, split the tensor (in an invariant manner) into its symmetric and anti-symmetric parts: $T_{\alpha\beta} = T_{\alpha\beta}^{(S)} + T_{\alpha\beta}^{(A)}$, where $T_{\alpha\beta}^{(S)} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \frac{1}{2}(T_{\alpha\beta} + T_{\beta\alpha})$ and $T_{\alpha\beta}^{(A)} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \frac{1}{2}(T_{\alpha\beta} - T_{\beta\alpha})$. Furthermore, the trace of the tensor, $T_\alpha \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \sum_{\alpha} T_{\alpha\alpha}$ is invariant under rotations, which implies that T_0 transforms like Y_0^0 and thus corresponds to $j = 0$. $T^{(A)}$ has three components, and, as you know, these transform under rotations like the (pseud) vector $T_\alpha \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \sum_{\alpha\beta} \epsilon_{\alpha\beta\gamma} T_{\alpha\beta}$.¹⁶ We are then left with a traceless symmetric 5-component piece $T_{\alpha\beta}^{(S)} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=}} T_{\alpha\beta}^{(S)} - \frac{1}{2} T_\alpha \delta_{\alpha\beta}$, which corresponds to the angular momentum $j = 2$. (This is the reason why the graviton, the quantum of the gravitational field, which is described in the general theory of relativity by a symmetric tensor of rank 2, has spin 2.)

The principal reason why the classification of tensor¹⁷ operators according to their irreducible transformation properties under rotations is more

¹⁶ $T_{\alpha\beta\gamma}$ is the totally anti-symmetric tensor with $\epsilon_{123} = 1$.

¹⁷ Including vectors, which are tensors of rank 1.

convenient for quantum mechanics than their classification according to their Cartesian transformation properties is that it allows us to calculate more easily the matrix elements of such operators between eigenstates of the total angular momentum, and in particular, to ascertain when such matrix elements vanish. As we shall discuss in more detail later in Chapter 8, the so-called squared of such matrix elements determine the transition probabilities from one of these states to another, caused by a perturbation of a rotationally invariant Hamiltonian by a tensor operator. If the matrix element vanishes, the corresponding transition is forbidden, i.e., in the first approximation (or possibly, exactly) its probability is equal to zero; the lists of such forbidden transitions are called selection rules, some of which we have already derived for scalars and Cartesian vectors.

To see the advantage of using spherical rather than Cartesian tensors, consider a matrix element of a tensor operator such as $\langle \alpha' j' m' | T_{\mathbf{L}}^{\mathbf{L}} | \alpha j m \rangle$, where α denotes all the other quantum numbers (such as the energy, for example) needed to specify the state uniquely. Under a rotation R , implemented in the Hilbert space by the operator O_R , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \langle \alpha' j' m' | T_{\mathbf{L}}^{\mathbf{L}} | \alpha j m \rangle &= \langle \alpha' j' m' | O_R T_{\mathbf{L}}^{\mathbf{L}} O_R^\dagger | \alpha j m \rangle \\ &= \sum_{m''} \langle \alpha' j' m' | T_{\mathbf{L}}^{\mathbf{L}} | \alpha j m'' \rangle D_{m'' m}^{\mathbf{L}}(R). \end{aligned}$$

However, we also have

$$O_R \Phi_{\alpha j m} = \sum_n \Phi_{\alpha j n} D_{n m}^{\mathbf{L}}(R),$$

and

$$O_R^\dagger \Phi_{\alpha j m} = O_R^\dagger \Phi_{\alpha j m} = \sum_n \Phi_{\alpha j n} D_{m n}^{\mathbf{L}*}(R),$$

so that

$$\sum_{m''} \langle \alpha' j' m' | T_{\mathbf{L}}^{\mathbf{L}} | \alpha j m'' \rangle D_{m'' m}^{\mathbf{L}}(R) = \sum_{m''} D_{m'' m}^{\mathbf{L}*}(R) \langle \alpha' j' m' | T_{\mathbf{L}}^{\mathbf{L}} | \alpha j m \rangle D_{m'' m}^{\mathbf{L}}(R). \quad (5.53)$$

On the other hand, we have for the Clebsch-Gordan coefficients

$$\begin{aligned} \langle j' m' | j, m, \mathbf{L}, M \rangle &= \langle \mathbf{H} | j' m', O_R T_{\mathbf{L}}^{\mathbf{L}} \Psi(j, m) \rangle \langle \Psi(j, M) \\ &= \sum_{m''} D_{m'' m}^{\mathbf{L}*}(R) \langle j' m' | j, m, \mathbf{L}, M \rangle D_{m'' m}^{\mathbf{L}}(R) D_{m'' m}^{\mathbf{L}}(R), \end{aligned}$$

and therefore, using the unitarity of the D 's,

$$\sum_{m''} \langle j' m' | j, m, \mathbf{L}, M \rangle D_{m'' m}^{\mathbf{L}}(R) = \sum_{m''} D_{m'' m}^{\mathbf{L}*}(R) \langle j' m' | j, m, \mathbf{L}, M \rangle D_{m'' m}^{\mathbf{L}}(R). \quad (5.54)$$

Comparison of (5.54) with (5.53) shows the two relations between the $\hat{O}$ matrices to be the same, which means that the coefficients must be proportional; denote the constant of proportionality, called the *reduced matrix element*, by $\langle \alpha' j' || T^1 || \alpha j \rangle$, and you obtain

$$\langle \alpha' j' m' | T^1_{\lambda} | \alpha j m \rangle = \langle j' m' | j, m \rangle \langle \alpha' j' || T^1 || \alpha j \rangle. \quad (5.55)$$

This important result is called the **Wigner-Eckart theorem**, a special case of which was (5.54). It not only tells us that all the dependence on the variables m, m' , and M is contained in the Clebsch-Gordan coefficients, but it implies the selection rules

$$|\Delta j| \leq 1, \quad \Delta m = M \leq \Delta j, \quad (5.56)$$

meaning that unless $|j - j'| \leq 1$ and $m' - m = M$, the matrix element vanishes and the transition is forbidden. (We shall return to this.)

5.3 Time Reversal

5.3.1 The time-reversal operator

What would happen if the direction of time were reversed, as in a video tape run backwards? Since the directions of all motions are reversed, it would be appropriate to call pressing the back button motion reversed, but it is customarily designated as “time reversal.”

Consider first the dynamical variables of a particle system: it is clear that under time reversal, the position $\hat{\mathbf{r}}$ remains unchanged, while the momentum $\hat{\mathbf{p}}$ changes sign. Analogously for other dynamical variables: the angular momenta $\hat{\mathbf{L}}$ and $\hat{\mathbf{S}}$, as well as the total angular momentum $\hat{\mathbf{J}}$, change sign. If there is no electromagnetic field, the Maxwell equations require that the electric field, as well as the scalar potential, remain invariant, whereas the magnetic field and the vector potential change sign. Supposing the Hamiltonian of the system to be $\mathbf{H}$, we shall call the time-reversed Hamiltonian, obtained by making all the appropriate changes in the dynamical variables and fields, $\mathbf{H}^{\text{TR}}$, so that under time reversal,

$$\mathbf{H} \rightarrow \mathbf{H}^{\text{TR}}.$$

Under a reversal of the direction of time, $t \rightarrow t' = -t$, the Schrödinger equation

$$i\hbar \frac{\partial \Psi(t)}{\partial t} = \mathbf{H} \Psi(t),$$

becomes

$$-i\hbar \frac{\partial \Psi^{\text{TR}}(t')}{\partial t'} = \mathbf{H}^{\text{TR}} \Psi^{\text{TR}}(t').$$

Let us then define the time-reversed operator $\hat{\theta}$ by

$$\hat{\theta}\psi(\mathbf{r}) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \hat{U}^\dagger \hat{U}^{\text{TR}}\psi(\mathbf{r}), \quad (5.87)$$

so that $\hat{\theta}\hat{U}^{-1} = \hat{U}$, $\hat{\theta}\hat{U}^{\text{TR}} = -\hat{U}$, etc., and in particular,

$$\hat{U}^{\text{TR}} = \hat{\theta}\hat{U}^{\text{TR}}^{-1}; \quad (5.88)$$

the time-reversed Schrödinger equation therefore reads

$$-\hbar^2 \frac{\partial^2 \hat{\theta}\psi(\mathbf{r})}{2m} = \hat{\theta}H\hat{\theta}(\mathbf{r}). \quad (5.89)$$

Now, since two successive time reversals clearly cancel each other out, $\hat{\theta}^2$ should be a multiple of the unit operator. But remember that $\hat{\theta}\hat{U}^{\text{TR}} = -\hat{U}$, which means that for the spin, time reversal is equivalent to a rotation by π ; therefore $\hat{\theta}^2$ is equivalent to a rotation by 2π , and spins change sign under such a rotation. Consequently, for states that contain a spin-1/2 degree of freedom, the action of $\hat{\theta}^2$ results in multiplication by $(-1)^N$:

$$\hat{\theta}^2 = \alpha \mathbf{1}, \quad \alpha = (-1)^N. \quad (5.90)$$

Furthermore, multiplication of (5.89) by $\hat{\theta}$ and comparison with the original Schrödinger equation leads to the conclusion that

$$\hat{\theta} = -i\hat{K}.$$

According to the Wigner theorem mentioned earlier, $\hat{\theta}$ has to be either unitary or ‘antiunitary’; here we see that the time-reversed operator $\hat{\theta}$ must be antiunitary, so that for all complex numbers α ,

$$\hat{\theta}\alpha\psi = \alpha^*\hat{\theta}\psi, \quad (5.91)$$

and for any pair of vectors,

$$\langle \hat{\theta}\psi, \hat{\theta}\psi \rangle = \langle \psi, \psi \rangle. \quad (5.92)$$

Suppose now that $\hat{A}$ is a dynamical variable that is invariant under time reversal, like $\hat{Q}$, for example, and Ψ_A is an eigenvector belonging to the eigenvalue A :

$$\hat{A}\Psi_A = A\Psi_A.$$

Then it follows that, since $\hat{A}$ is real,

$$\hat{A}\hat{A}\Psi_A = \hat{A}\hat{\theta}\hat{\theta}\Psi_A = \hat{A}\hat{\theta}\Psi_A,$$

implying that $\hat{\theta}\Psi_A$ is also an eigenvector, with the same eigenvalue. Therefore, if there is no degeneracy,

$$\hat{\theta}\Psi_A = e^{i\varphi}\Psi_A,$$

and the (arbitrary) phase of Ψ_A can always be chosen³² so that $\gamma = 0$; if there is no degeneracy, all the eigenstates of a time-reversal invariant operator can be chosen so that they are simultaneously eigenvectors of $\hat{T}$ with the eigenvalue 1. (We shall return to the case of degeneracy below.)

On the other hand, let $\hat{B}$ be a dynamical variable that anti-commutes with $\hat{T}$, i.e., one that changes sign under time reversal, like $\hat{p}$, for example, and let Ψ_B be an eigenvector with the eigenvalue B . In that case, we find similarly, that if $\hat{B}$ is an eigenvalue, then so must be $-\hat{B}$, and the eigenvectors can be chosen in such a way that

$$\hat{T}\Psi_B = \Psi_{-B}.$$

There could here be an immediate heading on the behavior of wave functions under time reversal. First, take a configuration-space wave function $\psi(\mathbf{q}) = \langle \hat{q}_p, \Psi \rangle$. In this case we have

$$\psi^{\text{TR}}(\mathbf{q}) = \langle \hat{q}_p, \hat{T}\Psi \rangle = \langle \hat{p}\hat{q}_p \hat{p}\Psi \rangle = \langle \hat{p}, \hat{q}_p \rangle = \psi^*(\mathbf{q}).$$

Therefore, if the eigenstates of the operators $\hat{q}$ are appropriately chosen, time reversal sends every configuration space function into its complex conjugate, and if ψ is the wave function of a time-reversal invariant state, it must be real.

For momentum-space wave functions, with appropriately chosen momentum eigenstates, we obtain in a similar way

$$\psi^{\text{TR}}(\mathbf{p}) = \langle \hat{q}_p, \hat{T}\Psi \rangle = \psi^*(-\mathbf{p}), \quad (5.10)$$

which implies that if Ψ is invariant under time reversal, then $\psi(-\mathbf{p}) = \psi^*(\mathbf{p})$.

5.3.2 Time-reversal invariance

Next we want to explore the consequences if the Hamiltonian of a system is time-reversal invariant; so we now assume that $\hat{T}\hat{H}\hat{T}^{-1} = \hat{H}$, or

$$\hat{H} = \hat{H}\hat{T}.$$

According to the result shown above, it then follows that all the non-degenerate eigenvectors of $\hat{H}$ are invariant under time reversal and their configuration-space eigenfunctions can be chosen to be real. In the same way it follows that the configuration representation of the operator $\hat{H}$ itself, the operator that appears in the Schrödinger equation when written in the configuration representation, must also be real. This means, in particular, that if there is a nonlocal potential, i.e., a potential that is not diagonal

³²Prove this.

in configuration space, the integral kernel representing it must not only be Hermitian but real. Any model that includes a complex potential with a non-vanishing imaginary part cannot be time-reversal invariant; it leads to absorption or emission, processes that distinguish one direction of the time from the other.

Degeneracy

Consider now a system whose Hamiltonian is invariant under time reversal,

$$[\mathcal{T}, \mathbf{H}] = 0,$$

and also has the symmetry group G of operators C_g ,

$$[C_g, \mathbf{H}] = 0,$$

which are themselves time-reversal invariant, $[C_g, \mathcal{T}] = 0$. Let $\Phi_\alpha^{(E)}$ be an eigenstate of $\mathbf{H}$ with the energy E that belongs to the μ^{th} row of the μ^{th} irreducible representation of G ,

$$C_g \Phi_\alpha^{(E)} = \sum_r \Phi_r^{(E)} D_{\mu\alpha}^{(E)}(g),$$

Then

$$\mathcal{T} C_g \Phi_\alpha^{(E)} = C_g \mathcal{T} \Phi_\alpha^{(E)} = \sum_r (\mathcal{T} \Phi_r^{(E)}) D_{\mu\alpha}^{(E)}(g),$$

which says that $\mathcal{T} \Phi_\alpha^{(E)}$ belongs to $D^{(E)*}$. According to Section B.2.2 in the appendix, if a representation is of type 1, it is not equivalent to its complex conjugate. Therefore, if the representation $D^{(E)}$ is of type 1, the energy level under consideration must belong also to the inequivalent representation $D^{(E)*}$; thus the degeneracy is doubled.

On the other hand, suppose $\Phi^{(E)}$ belongs to an irreducible representation $D^{(E)}$ of type 1 or 2, meaning that there exists a unitary matrix M such that $D^{(E)*}(g) = M D^{(E)}(g) M^{-1}$, and according to the results of Section B.2.2, $\bar{M} = \alpha M$, where $\alpha = 1$ if it is of type 1 and $\alpha = -1$ if it is of type 2. Therefore,

$$\alpha_{\mu\alpha}^{(E)*} = (\mathcal{T} \Phi_\alpha^{(E)}, \Phi_\alpha^{(E)}) = (\Phi_\alpha^{(E)}, \mathcal{T}^2 \Phi_\alpha^{(E)}) = \alpha (\Phi_\alpha^{(E)}, \Phi_\alpha^{(E)}) = \alpha \alpha_{\mu\alpha}^{(E)},$$

where α , defined by (5.56), equals ± 1 , depending upon whether the number of spin 1/2 degrees of freedom is even or odd. But we know that $\mathcal{T}^2 \Phi_\alpha^{(E)}$ belongs to the representation $D^{(E)}$; so if the level has the normal degeneracy equal to the dimension of $D^{(E)}$, there must exist a unitary matrix M such that $\mathcal{T} \Phi_\alpha^{(E)} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \Phi_\alpha^{(E)} = \sum_{\alpha'} \Phi_{\alpha'}^{(E)} M_{\alpha\alpha'}$. It follows that

$$\alpha_{\mu\alpha}^{(E)} = (\Phi_\alpha^{(E)}, \Phi_\alpha^{(E)}) = \sum_{\alpha'} M_{\alpha\alpha'}^* (\Phi_{\alpha'}^{(E)}, \Phi_\alpha^{(E)}) = M_{\alpha\alpha}^*.$$

from which we conclude that $\alpha = \alpha'$.

Thus we have the following theorem: *If the representation to which the level belongs is of type 1 and the number n of spin- $1/2$ degrees of freedom is even, or if the representation is of type 2 (which is possible only if the dimension is even) and n is odd, time-reversal invariance does not increase the degeneracy; in all other cases, it doubles the degeneracy.*

A special case of this result is one in which a given representation is one-dimensional; i.e., no grounds of symmetry under $\hat{Q}$ the level is non-degenerate. In that case $D = D'$ means, of course, that $D = D'$ and the representation is real; moreover, it has to be of type 1. Consequently we can infer what is known as **Kramers's Theorem**: *If an atomic system is invariant under time reversal (implying that there is no external magnetic field present), then an odd number of electronic states occupy each level of that twofold degeneracy.*

5.4 Problems and Exercises

1. Derive the commutation relations of the components of the angular momentum operator $\hat{J}$ with the components of a dynamical variable of the physical system that transforms like a tensor of rank 2.
2. Denote by $|j, m_j\rangle$ a normalized eigenfunction of the $\hat{J}^2$ and $\hat{J}_z$ with the eigenvalues $J(J+1)$ and m_j , respectively. Use (5.13) and (5.14) to calculate $\langle j, m_j | \hat{J}_x | j, m_j \rangle$.
3. For $j = 1$, calculate the coefficients a, b, c in $|1, m_j\rangle = a|1, m = -1\rangle + b|1, m = 0\rangle + c|1, m = 1\rangle$, where m is an eigenvalue of $\hat{J}_z$ and m_j is an eigenvalue of $\hat{J}_z$.
4. Suppose that $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ are either two numerical vectors, or else vectors whose components are operators that commute with $\hat{J}$. Prove that

$$(\mathbf{A} \cdot \hat{J})(\mathbf{B} \cdot \hat{J}) = \mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{B} + i\hat{J} \cdot \mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B}.$$

5. Prove that if $\vec{A}$ commutes with $\hat{J}$, then

$$\hat{J} \cdot \vec{A} = \vec{A} \cdot \hat{J} + i\vec{A} \times \hat{J}$$

and

$$[\hat{J}, \vec{A} \cdot \hat{J}] = 2i\vec{A} \times \hat{J}.$$

6. Show that the eigenstates of $\hat{J}^2 \approx \frac{3}{4}\hbar^2$ ($\hat{L} + \frac{1}{2}\hat{S}$) with the eigenvalue $0 + \frac{1}{2}(0 + \frac{1}{2})$ are eigenstates of $\hat{L} \cdot \hat{S}$ with the eigenvalue 0, and the eigenstates of $\hat{J}^2$ with the eigenvalue $0 - \frac{1}{2}(0 + \frac{1}{2})$ are eigenstates of $\hat{L} \cdot \hat{S}$ with the eigenvalue $-1/4$.
7. Show that the two operators defined by (5.71) are projections (i.e., that they are idempotent).
8. Suppose a physical system is in the angular-momentum state $\chi = \alpha\chi_1^0 + \beta\chi_2^0 + \gamma\chi_{-1}^0$, where $|\alpha|^2 + |\beta|^2 + |\gamma|^2 = 1$ and $\chi_1^0, \chi_2^0, \chi_{-1}^0$ are the spin-1 states (5.21). Calculate the expectation value of $\hat{J}^2$.
9. Show that the bilinear product of two spinors $\chi^{1/2}\chi_1^{1/2} = \chi_1^{1/2}\chi_1^{1/2} - \chi_2^{1/2}\chi_2^{1/2}$ is invariant under rotations.
10. Suppose that two successive rotations are performed, first by the angle θ about the axis $\hat{n}$ and then by an angle ϕ about $\hat{n}'$. Show in terms of the spin-1/2 matrices that the rotation matrix for this is the same as first rotating by ϕ and $\hat{n}'$ and then rotating by θ about a new axis $\hat{N}$ that is obtained from $\hat{n}$ by the second rotation.

11. Let $\hat{A}$ and $\hat{B}$ be two vector operators. Show directly from their commutation relations with the angular momentum that $\hat{J}$ commutes with $\hat{A} \cdot \hat{B}$.
12. Calculate the spin matrix T that corresponds to a rotation in terms of the Euler angles.
13. Let Φ_{m_j} be the normalized eigenvector of $\hat{J}^2$ with the eigenvalue 2 ($m_j, j=1$) and of $\hat{J}_z$ with the eigenvalue m_j . Then we must be able to write

$$\Phi_{m_j} = a\hat{J}_{-1} + b\hat{J}_0 + c\hat{J}_{+1}$$

where Φ_{m_j} are the simultaneous normalized eigenvectors of $\hat{J}_z$ with the eigenvalue m and of $\hat{J}^2$ with the eigenvalue 2. Find a , b , and c .

14. Suppose that $\hat{A}$ and $\hat{B}$ are two linearly independent vectors and that the operator $\hat{A}$ commutes with $\hat{S} \cdot \hat{J}$ as well as $\hat{B} \cdot \hat{J}$. Show that this implies that $\hat{A}$ commutes with all components of $\hat{J}$.
15. Let $\hat{S}$ be the spin angular momentum vector, in units of $\hbar$, of a particle of spin-1 ($m_s, \hat{S}^2 = s(s+1) = 2$) and define $\sigma_{\hat{p}} \equiv \hat{S} \cdot \hat{p}/\hbar$, where $\hat{p}$ is an arbitrary unit vector. (a) Show that $\sigma_{\hat{p}}^2 = \sigma_{\hat{p}}$, and

$$\exp(-i\pi\sigma_{\hat{p}}) = 1 - i\sigma_{\hat{p}}\exp(-\pi^2/2)\exp(-1).$$

Write this out explicitly in a representation in which $\sigma_{\hat{p}}$ is diagonal.

(b) Take $\hat{p}$ in the z -direction and construct the matrices for $\sigma_{\hat{p}}$ and $\sigma_{\hat{y}}$ in a representation in which $\sigma_{\hat{p}}$ is diagonal. [Use the commutation relations with $\sigma_{\hat{x}}$.]

16. Consider a spin-1/2 particle. Show that in the space of states of a given orbital angular momentum l , the operators

$$\frac{l+1(l+\hat{L} \cdot \hat{S})}{2l+1} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{l(l-\hat{L} \cdot \hat{S})}{2l+1}$$

are projections onto the states of total angular momentum $j = l + \frac{1}{2}$ and $j = l - \frac{1}{2}$, respectively.

17. Let $\hat{S}$ be the total spin (in units of $\hbar$) of a system of two nucleons. (a) Show that the operator $\hat{Q} \equiv (\hat{S} \cdot \hat{r})^2/r^2$ is a projection. (b) Show that the tensor operator $\hat{S}_{12} \equiv 3(\hat{S} \cdot \hat{r})(\hat{S} \cdot \hat{r})$ satisfies the identity

$$\hat{S}_{12}^2 = 6\hat{S}^2 - 12\hat{S}_{12}$$

and that its only possible eigenvalues are 0, 2, and -4.

18. Show that (a) if a 2×2 matrix commutes with all three of the Pauli matrices then it must be a multiple of the unit matrix, and (b) if a 2×2 matrix anti-commutes with all three of the Pauli matrices then it must be the zero matrix.

19. Assume that the Hamiltonian of a particle of spin $1/2$ has the form

$$H = \frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{Q}_0 I + \vec{Q} \cdot \vec{\sigma}),$$

where $\mathbf{Q}_0$ is an operator that acts on the non-spin degrees of freedom, and $\vec{Q}$ is a numerical vector. Let $\vec{P}$ be the polarization vector. Prove that

$$H \frac{d\vec{Q}}{dt} = \vec{Q} \times \vec{P}, \quad \frac{d\vec{P}}{dt} = 0,$$

and that if $\vec{Q}$ is constant, then $\vec{Q} \cdot \vec{P}$ and $(d\vec{P}/dt) \cdot \vec{P}$ are constants of the motion.

20. Show that if two pure states of a spin- $1/2$ particle are orthogonal, then the polarization vectors of those two states are equal and opposite.
21. Consider a spinless particle subject to a spherically symmetric Hamiltonian. Suppose it is in an unpolarized mixed state of angular momentum l (i.e., all z -projections of its angular momentum are equally probable). Write down its angular momentum density matrix in the configuration representation.

Let the configuration representation matrix of the operator $\mathbf{A}$ be

$$\langle \mathbf{A} \rangle(r, r') = \sum_i A_i(r, r') \hat{r}_i \cdot \hat{r}'.$$

Calculate its expectation value (at fixed r and r') in the aforementioned mixed state.

22. Suppose a pair of spin- $1/2$ particles is produced in a pure triplet state. Calculate the spin density matrix for one of the particles alone.
23. Suppose that G_x is the x -component of a vector operator. What are the selection rules for the operator G_x^2 ? i.e., for which differences between j and j' and between m and m' must the matrix elements $\langle j', m' | G_x^2 | j, m \rangle$ vanish?
24. A transmitter simultaneously sends two correlated (but not necessarily identical) signals to a pair of independent receivers, A and B, that are far distant from each other. Each of the receivers has a switch that is set at either 1 or 2, independently of the other, before the arrival of the signal. Upon receiving the signal, each receiver flashes

either a red or a green light. Each run is recorded in the form, say, "GGRR" indicating "viewer A, set at 1, flashes green; viewer B, set at 1, flashes red." A long sequence of runs is examined and the following is found: (a) neither GGGG nor GGGR ever occurs; (b) RRTR never happens; (c) GGGR happens one-third of the time when both viewers are set at 2.

Suppose we denote a pair of signals from the transmitter by, say, $[GA, RB]$, meaning "if A is set at 1, flash green, if set at 2, flash red, if B is set at 1, flash red, if set at 2, flash red."

Now notice that (a) implies no messages of the form $[G, \cdot]$ or of the form $[\cdot, G]$ were sent, and (b) implies no messages of the form $[R, \cdot]$ were sent either. But GGGR can be brought about only by one of the four signals of the form $[\cdot, G]$, each of which would lead to a contradiction with (a) or (b). *(Show this.)* Therefore, (c) contradicts the combination of (a) and (b).

Show how the observed results can be obtained if the two signals are made up of beams of atoms of spin-1/2, each of the pair originating from the decay of a spin-1 molecule in a specific, fixed pure state, and both viewers are equipped with Stern-Gerlach devices that are oriented vertically if set at 1 and horizontally if set at 2. If an SG apparatus finds spin up or right it flashes red, and if it finds down or left it flashes green.

6

Stationary Approximation Methods

Since very few quantum problems are amenable to exact solution, it is important to have a variety of approximation methods at our disposal. This chapter will describe several such procedures for stationary states, applicable under various physical circumstances and for different purposes.

6.1 The WKB Approximation

In this section we are going to study the behavior of quantum-mechanical one-particle systems when the wavelength λ of the wave function is short compared to the scale on which the potential changes by a significant fraction, which is analogous to the emergence of geometrical optics from physical optics when the wavelength of light is small compared to the scale on which the index of refraction changes. Since $\lambda = 2\pi\hbar/p$, this means we are talking about high energy. At the same time, the approximation may also be regarded as the regime where $\hbar$ is small, so that we are close to classical physics. In principle, after all, classical physics ought to emerge from quantum physics when the size of Planck's constant can be regarded as negligible. However, as we shall see, the manner in which this happens is not as simple and straightforward as you might expect. The regime that stops just short of going to the classical limit, and which is therefore referred to

as the semi-classical approximation, is also called the WKB approximation (after G. Wentzel, H. A. Kramers, and L. Brillouin).¹

Suppose we write a one-particle wave function in the form

$$\psi(\mathbf{r}, t) = Ae^{iS(\mathbf{r}, t)/\hbar}, \quad (6.1)$$

denoting the particle's position in its configuration space conventionally by $\mathbf{r}$, and where A is a constant. Insertion in the Schrödinger equation then leads to the following equation for the complex function S :

$$-\frac{\hbar^2}{2M} \nabla^2 S + \frac{1}{2M} (\nabla S)^2 + V + \frac{\partial S}{\partial t} = 0. \quad (6.2)$$

You will notice that when $\hbar \rightarrow 0$, this equation goes over into the Hamilton-Jacobi equation of classical mechanics, whose solution S is called *Riemann's principal function* and in terms of which $\mathbf{p} = \nabla S$. In the classical limit, therefore, the particle's physically possible trajectories are orthogonal to the surfaces of constant S , that is, to the surfaces of constant phase of the wave function.

If ψ is an eigenfunction of the energy, then

$$\psi(\mathbf{r}, t) = \psi(\mathbf{r})e^{-iEt/\hbar},$$

so that if ψ is written in the form

$$\psi(\mathbf{r}) = Ae^{iS(\mathbf{r})/\hbar},$$

then

$$S(\mathbf{r}, t) = W(\mathbf{r}) - Et.$$

The resulting equation for W is

$$-\frac{\hbar^2}{2M} \nabla^2 W + \frac{1}{2M} (\nabla W)^2 + V = E, \quad (6.3)$$

which shows that as $\hbar \rightarrow 0$, W approaches what in classical mechanics is called *Riemann's characteristic function*.

Let us now take the case in which the configuration space is one-dimensional (the WKB approximation is really applicable only when a problem can be reduced to a one-dimensional one), so that the equation for W becomes

$$-\frac{\hbar^2}{2M} W'' + W'^2 + 2M(V - E) = 0. \quad (6.4)$$

This may be either an instance of one-dimensional motion or that of a particle in three dimensions with a central potential after expanding out

¹ It is also called the JWKB approximation, the letters J standing for E. Jahnke.

the angular variables. In the latter case, V in (5.4) contains the centrifugal term $l(l+1)/(2R^2)$. Replacing $R' = dR/dx$ changes (5.4) to

$$u'' - ku^2 = k^2, \quad (6.5)$$

where

$$k(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \frac{2\pi}{\lambda(x)} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \sqrt{\frac{2m}{\hbar^2} [E - V(x)]} \quad (6.6)$$

is the local wave number and $\lambda(x)$ is the local wavelength.

Next, set

$$u(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \int_x^\infty dx' g(x') + \frac{1}{2} \log g(x),$$

which implies that

$$u(x) = e^{-1/2 \int_x^\infty dx' g(x')}, \quad (6.7)$$

and the equation for g becomes

$$g'' - \frac{3}{4} \left(\frac{g'}{g} \right)^2 + \frac{1}{2} g^2 = k^2(x). \quad (6.8)$$

The somewhat complicated non-linear equation (5.8) is now solved by successive approximations on the assumption that the function $k(x)$ is slowly varying, i.e., that

$$\left| \frac{dk}{dx} \right| \ll 2\pi,$$

so that it is meaningful to refer to a "local wavelength." This assumption implies that

$$\left| \frac{d(2\pi/\lambda)}{dx} \right| = \left| \frac{1}{\lambda^2} \frac{d\lambda}{dx} \right| = \left| \frac{1}{2\pi\lambda} \frac{d(2\pi/\lambda)}{dx} \right| \ll 2\pi,$$

or,

$$\lambda \left| \frac{d(E - V)/dx}{E - V} \right| \ll 1.$$

In other words, the relative change of the kinetic energy over one wavelength should be small.

When $k = \text{const.}$, the solutions of (5.8) obviously are $g = \pm ik$. In the first approximation, therefore, we use these values also when k is slowly varying.

A better approximation would be given by

$$g^2 = k^2 + \frac{1}{4} \left(\frac{k'}{k} \right)^2 - \frac{1}{2} \frac{k''}{k},$$

but that would differ from $\psi^2 = k^2$ by terms of order $(E/k)^2$ and V'/k . If $V'/k \ll 1$ inside the whole region of interest, or, at least, then V''/k has to be small there as well for $\psi = \pm k$ to be a good approximation.

The WKB approximation is thus given by

$$\psi_{\text{WKB}}(x) = A \exp\left[-\frac{1}{\hbar} \int \log k(x) \pm i \int^x dx' k(x')\right]$$

or

$$\psi_{\text{WKB}}(x) = \frac{A}{\sqrt{k(x)}} e^{\pm i \int^x dx' k(x')}, \quad (6.18)$$

which is the classically forbidden region, where $E < V$, becomes

$$\psi_{\text{WKB}}(x) = \frac{A'}{\sqrt{\kappa(x)}} e^{\pm \int^x dx' \kappa(x')}, \quad \kappa(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \sqrt{\frac{2M}{\hbar^2} [V(x) - E]}. \quad (6.19)$$

Suppose, then, that we wish to solve a bound-state problem for a potential well, or a reflection problem on a barrier, so that case it would be necessary to connect the wave function with a continuous logarithmic derivative across a boundary between a classically allowed and a classically forbidden region but in the vicinity of this boundary, the assumption $V'/k \ll 1$ breaks-down, because $k(x)$ vanishes at the boundary. Classically, a point where $k = 0$ is generally a turning point of the motion. The principal problem of the WKB approximation is therefore to find the connecting formulae for the wave function, across such a turning point, the vicinity of which must be treated separately.

6.1.1 The connecting formulae

For simplicity, choose x in such a way that the turning point is at the origin, $x = 0$, so that

$$k^2(x) = \alpha x + \dots$$

Thus $\alpha > 0$ means that the classically allowed region is to the right (Fig. 6.1), so that the turning point is on the left, and the Schrödinger equation near the turning point reads, in appropriate units,

$$\psi'' + \alpha x \psi = 0.$$

In terms of $\xi \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \int_0^x dx' k(x') = \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{\alpha} x^2 + \dots$ for $x > 0$, two linearly independent solutions in the classically allowed region near the turning point are

$$\psi = \text{const.} \sqrt{\frac{1}{k}} J_{1/4}(\sqrt{k} \xi) = \text{const.} \sqrt{\xi} J_{1/4}(\sqrt{\frac{2}{\alpha}} \sqrt{k} \xi),$$



FIGURE 6.1. A turning point to the left of a classically allowed region.

and two solutions in the forbidden region are, in terms of $I_0 = \int_a^x dx' \kappa(x')$,

$$\psi = \text{const.} \sqrt{\frac{2\pi}{\pi}} I_{\text{Ai},1}(\kappa I_0) = \text{const.} \sqrt{\pi} I_{\text{Ai},1}(\kappa^{\frac{2}{3}} \sqrt{\pi} I_0^{\frac{2}{3}}),$$

where I and F are conventional Bessel functions of real and imaginary arguments, respectively.¹ These functions have the following behavior near the origin:

$$I_{\text{Ai},1}(0) \xrightarrow{\kappa \rightarrow 0} \left(\frac{1}{3}\right) \kappa^{1/3} \Gamma(0) + \frac{2}{3},$$

$$I_{\text{Ai},1}(0) \xrightarrow{\kappa \rightarrow 0} \left(\frac{1}{3}\right) \kappa^{1/3} \Gamma(0) + \frac{1}{3} \kappa,$$

therefore, the solution which for $x > 0$ is $\sqrt{\pi} I_{\text{Ai},1}$, becomes

$$\frac{\kappa^{-1/3} \Gamma(0)}{\Gamma(1/3)} x$$

near $x = 0$, whereas the solution which for $x < 0$ is $\sqrt{\pi} I_{\text{Ai},1}$ becomes

$$\frac{\kappa^{-1/3} \Gamma(0)}{\Gamma(1/3)} |x| = -\frac{\kappa^{-1/3} \Gamma(0)}{\Gamma(1/3)} x.$$

Consequently, $\sqrt{\pi} I_{\text{Ai},1}$ fits smoothly with $-\sqrt{\pi} I_{\text{Ai},1}$, and similarly we find that $\sqrt{\pi} I_{\text{Ai},-1}$ fits smoothly with $+\sqrt{\pi} I_{\text{Ai},-1}$.

At a distance that is many wavelengths away from the turning point, but not so far that the potential differs drastically from the straight line assumed near the turning point, the asymptotic forms of the Bessel functions are²

$$I_{\text{Ai},1}(0) \approx \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{3} + \frac{\pi}{4}\right),$$

¹The asymptotically decreasing solution is known as the *divergent* $J_0(x)$ ²⁰ $\frac{1}{2} \int_0^x dx' \kappa(x') = \kappa x$, and in terms of this function, $\psi(x) = J_0(x) e^{-i\pi/4}$.

²See [Leiberman], vol. 2, pp. 35/6.

$$I_{1,1/2}(E) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\epsilon}} e^S,$$

and

$$I_{1,1/2}(E) - I_{1,1/2}(E) \sim -\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi\epsilon}} \sin \frac{\pi}{4} e^{-E}.$$

Therefore, the solution which lies to the left of the turning point is of the form

$$-\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi\epsilon}} \sin \frac{\pi}{4} e^{-\int_a^x k(x') dx'},$$

must, many wavelengths to its right, be of the form

$$\begin{aligned} & -\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi\epsilon}} \left[\cos(k_1 - \frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{\pi}{2}) + \cos(k_1 - \frac{\pi}{4} - \frac{\pi}{2}) \right] \\ & = -2\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi\epsilon}} \cos \frac{\pi}{2} \cos(k_1 - \frac{\pi}{4}) \\ & = -2\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi\epsilon}} \sin \frac{\pi}{4} \cos \left(\int_a^x dx' k(x') - \frac{\pi}{4} \right). \end{aligned}$$

Consequently the following two WKB solutions, the first in the classically forbidden region on the left, and the second in the classically allowed region on the right, are smoothly connected at the turning point:

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{\epsilon(x)}} \exp \left[- \int_a^x dx' s(x') \right] \stackrel{R}{\sim} \frac{2}{\sqrt{\epsilon(x)}} \cos \left[\int_a^x dx' k(x') - \frac{\pi}{4} \right], \quad (8.11)$$

where the arrow indicates that the formula is stable when used in the direction indicated, and only then. This is because, when used in the opposite direction, a small perturbation of the function on the right would produce an exponentially increasing and thus asymptotically dominant term on the left.

Similarly, we find for arbitrary η that there is a smooth connection between the functions on the right and the left of the turning point,

$$\frac{\sin \eta}{\sqrt{\epsilon(x)}} \exp \left[\int_a^x dx' s(x') \right] \stackrel{R}{\sim} \frac{1}{\sqrt{\epsilon(x)}} \cos \left[\int_a^x dx' k(x') - \frac{\pi}{4} + \eta \right], \quad (8.12)$$

which implies that

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{\epsilon(x)}} \exp \left[\int_a^x dx' s(x') + i \frac{\pi}{4} \right] \stackrel{R}{\sim} \frac{1}{\sqrt{\epsilon(x)}} \exp \left[i \pi \int_a^x dx' k(x') \right]. \quad (8.13)$$

The formula (8.11) shows that an exponentially decreasing, and thus asymptotically small, addition on the left would produce a non-negligible change of the function on the right; therefore, (8.12) and (8.13) should be used only

in the direction of the arrows indicated. Then use the connecting formula for a turning point on the left.

On the other hand, if the classical turning point is on the right, we find by similar arguments³ that

$$\frac{2}{\sqrt{k(x)}} \cos \left[\int_x^b dx' k(x') - \frac{\pi}{4} \right] \rightarrow \frac{1}{\sqrt{u(x)}} \exp \left[- \int_x^a dx' u(x') \right], \quad (6.14)$$

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{k(x)}} \cos \left[\int_x^a dx' k(x') - \frac{\pi}{4} + \varphi \right] \rightarrow \frac{\sin \varphi}{\sqrt{u(x)}} \exp \left[\int_x^a dx' u(x') \right], \quad (6.15)$$

or

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{k(x)}} \exp \left[i\pi \int_x^b dx' k(x') \right] \rightarrow \frac{1}{\sqrt{u(x)}} \exp \left[\int_x^a dx' u(x') \mp i\frac{\pi}{4} \right]. \quad (6.16)$$

When the energy is near a point at which the slope of the potential vanishes, or where two classical turning points are close to one another, so that the assumption of a straight-line (non-horizontal) potential behavior cannot be maintained over a distance of many wavelengths, these formulas have to be modified. (For further details, see [Feynman].)

6.1.3 Examples



FIGURE 6.1. A potential well.

As a first example, we use the WKB approximation to calculate the energy levels in a potential well of the form shown in Figure 6.1. In region I the wave functions must have the form

$$\psi = \frac{1}{\sqrt{k}} \exp \left[- \int_{x_1}^x dx' k(x') \right],$$

³Exercise 6.10.

while in region III it must be of the form

$$\psi = \frac{A}{\sqrt{k}} \exp \left[- \int_x^{x_1} dx' k(x') \right].$$

For region II we obtain from the connecting formula (9.14) for the right turning point

$$\psi = \frac{2A}{\sqrt{k}} \cos \left[\int_x^{x_1} dx' k(x') - \frac{\pi}{4} \right],$$

and for the left turning point from (9.15),

$$\begin{aligned} \psi &= \frac{2A}{\sqrt{k}} \cos \left[\int_{x_2}^x dx' k(x') - \frac{\pi}{4} \right] \\ &= \frac{2A}{\sqrt{k}} \cos \left[- \int_x^{x_2} dx' k(x') + \frac{\pi}{4} + \left(\int_{x_2}^{x_1} dx' k(x') - \frac{\pi}{2} \right) \right] \\ &= \frac{2A}{\sqrt{k}} \cos \left[\int_x^{x_1} dx' k(x') - \frac{\pi}{4} - q \right], \end{aligned}$$

where

$$q = \int_{x_2}^{x_1} dx' k(x') - \frac{\pi}{2}.$$

In order for this ψ to be equal to the result obtained from the right-hand turning point, it is necessary and sufficient that

$$q = n\pi,$$

where n is an integer. Therefore, the requirement is that $\int_{x_2}^{x_1} dx' k(x') = (n + \frac{1}{2})\pi$, or

$$2 \int_{x_2}^{x_1} dx' \sqrt{2M[E_0 - V(x)]} = (n + \frac{1}{2})h. \quad (9.17)$$

The left-hand side of this equation being the phase integral of the motion, you will recognize the formula as the old Sommerfeld quantization rule, including the somewhat more sophisticated $1/2$ -term. However, since the connecting formulae hold only at distances that are many wavelengths away from the classical turning points, the result is a good approximation only when $n \gg 1$, in agreement with the fact that the Sommerfeld rule originates in the correspondence-principle limit. Notice that (9.17) implies that if $V \rightarrow \infty$ as $x \rightarrow \pm\infty$, then there must be infinitely many energy levels.

As a second example, consider tunnelling through a barrier. The potential is now assumed to have a shape such as that shown in Figure 8.3, and we take the incident wave to come from the left, so that in region I there is no wave traveling to the left. Therefore, the WKB solution in region I must be of the form

$$\psi = \frac{A}{\sqrt{k}} \exp \left[i \int_{x_2}^x dx' k(x') \right] + \frac{A}{\sqrt{k}} \exp \left[i \int_{x_2}^{x_1} dx' k(x') - q \right] e^{i\theta(x \rightarrow \pm\infty)}.$$



FIGURE 6.1. A potential barrier.

The connecting formula (6.15) tells us that in region II the WKB solution must then be

$$\begin{aligned}\psi &= \frac{A}{\sqrt{\kappa}} \exp \left[\int_{x_1}^{x_2} dx' \kappa(x') - i \frac{\pi}{4} \right] \\ &= \frac{A}{\sqrt{\kappa}} \exp \left[\int_{x_1}^{x_2} dx' \kappa(x') - i \frac{\pi}{4} \right] \exp \left[- \int_{x_2}^x dx' \kappa(x') \right].\end{aligned}$$

In region II, the smoothly connected WKB wave function is, therefore, by (3.14),

$$\begin{aligned}\psi &= \frac{2A}{\sqrt{\kappa}} \exp \left[\int_{x_1}^{x_2} dx' \kappa(x') \right] e^{-i\pi/4} \exp \left[\int_x^{x_2} dx' k(x') - \frac{\pi}{4} \right] \\ &= \frac{A}{\sqrt{\kappa}} \exp \left[\int_{x_1}^{x_2} dx' \kappa(x') \right] \left\{ \exp \left[-i \int_x^{x_2} dx' k(x') \right] \right. \\ &\quad \left. - i \exp \left[i \int_x^{x_2} dx' k(x') \right] \right\} \\ &= \frac{A}{\sqrt{\kappa}} \exp \left[\int_{x_1}^{x_2} dx' \kappa(x') \right] \left\{ \exp \left[-i \int_{-\infty}^{x_2} dx' [k(x') - k] - ik(x_2 - x) \right] \right. \\ &\quad \left. - i \exp \left[i \int_{-\infty}^{x_2} dx' [k(x') - k] + ik(x_2 - x) \right] \right\}.\end{aligned}$$

For large $|x|$, the first term in the braces of the second line goes as e^{-ikx} and then represents the incident wave (traveling to the right), while the second term goes as e^{+ikx} and represents a reflected wave (traveling to the left); thus the ratio of the transmitted to the incident amplitude is

$$T = e^{-i \int_{x_1}^{x_2} dx' \kappa(x')} e^{i\pi/4} e^{-i\pi/4} e^{i \int_{-\infty}^{x_2} dx' [k(x') - k]} = e^{i \int_{-\infty}^{x_2} dx' [k(x') - k]}.$$

The transmission coefficient, i.e., the ratio of the transmitted to the incident flux, is therefore, in the WKB approximation,

$$|T|^2 = \exp \left[- \frac{2}{\hbar} \int_{x_1}^{x_2} dx \sqrt{2M[V(x) - E]} \right], \quad (6.16)$$

where the points x_1 and x_2 are the solutions of the equation $V(x) = E$. The ratio of the reflected to the incident amplitude, on the other hand, is

$$R = -i \exp \left[2i \int_{x_1}^{x_2} dx [k(x) - k] + 2ikx_1 \right],$$

whose absolute magnitude equals 1, which expresses the fact that in the WKB approximation necessarily $|T| < 1$. (As the energy approaches the top of the barrier, this is no longer the case, and the WKB approximation has to be modified, as indicated earlier.) By conservation of flux, the reflection coefficient has to be

$$|R|^2 = 1 - |T|^2,$$

but since the approximation includes only the leading term, it simply yields $|R|^2 = 1$.

6.1.3 Scattering in the WKB approximation

Let us now look at the manner in which quantum scattering approaches classical scattering in the limit as $\hbar \rightarrow 0$. It will turn out that this approach is rather complicated.

Assuming that the potential is spherically symmetric, the first step, of course, is to perform a partial-wave analysis and consider a fixed angular-momentum quantum number l . The relevant potential then includes the



FIGURE 6.4. The effective potential at a given $l > 0$.

centrifugal term,

$$V_{\text{eff}}(r) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} V(r) + \frac{\hbar^2 l(l+1)}{2Mr^2},$$

as shown in Figure 6.4. Therefore, define

$$k_0(r) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \sqrt{\frac{2M}{\hbar^2} (V(r) - E) + \frac{l(l+1)}{r^2}}, \quad k_1(r) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \sqrt{\frac{2M}{\hbar^2} (E - V(r)) - \frac{l(l+1)}{r^2}}. \quad (6.16)$$

The point $r = r_0$ is defined by $k_0(r_0) = n_0(r_0) = 0$. In the classically forbidden region near the origin, the radial wave function is supposed to be regular; therefore, in the WKB approximation it must then be of the form

$$\psi_0 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{k_0}} \exp \left[- \int_0^r dr' k_0(r') \right].$$

The connecting formula (5.11) tells us that for $r > r_0$ it must then be

$$\begin{aligned} \psi_0 &= \frac{2}{\sqrt{k_0(r)}} \cos \left[\int_{r_0}^r dr' k_0(r') - \frac{\pi}{4} \right] \\ &= \frac{2}{\sqrt{k_0(r)}} \sin \left\{ \int_{r_0}^r dr' [k_0(r') - k] + \frac{\pi}{4} + (r - r_0)k \right\} \\ r_{\text{class}} &= \frac{2}{\sqrt{k}} \sin \left\{ dr + \frac{\pi}{4} - dr_0 + \int_{r_0}^r dr' [k_0(r') - k] \right\}, \end{aligned}$$

since $k_0(r) \rightarrow k$ as $r \rightarrow \infty$. As a result, we can conclude that the phase shift in the WKB approximation is given by

$$\delta_l^{\text{WKB}} = \frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{\pi}{2} (1 - dr_0) + \int_{r_0}^{\infty} dr' [k_0(r') - k] = \frac{\pi}{2} \delta + \frac{1}{2} (1 - \int_{r_0}^{\infty} dr' r' \frac{d}{dr'} k_0(r')). \quad (5.20)$$

Since the dominant term in $k_0(r)$ near the origin is the centrifugal term, the behavior of the WKB wave function $\psi_0(r)$ near $r = 0$ is

$$\psi_0 \sim \text{const. } r^{1/2} \exp \left[\sqrt{k_l(l+1)} \log r \right] = \text{const. } r^{1/2 + \sqrt{k_l(l+1)}},$$

whereas we know that the behavior of the exact radial wave function is as r^{l+1} . Therefore, replacing $k_l(l+1)$ by $k_l + \frac{1}{4}l^2$ and using

$$k_0(r) \approx \sqrt{\frac{2M}{\hbar^2} (E - V(r)) - \frac{l(l+1)}{r^2}}, \quad (5.21)$$

in (5.20), rather than (5.19), can be expected to improve the approximation.

The argument leading to the expression (5.20) for the phase shift is based on the assumption that for a particle of angular momentum l there exists a distance r_0 of closest approach, classically speaking, which is assumed for $l > 0$, because of the centrifugal repulsion. For $l = 0$, however, such a point r_0 will generally not exist. Fortunately, this does not present any real obstacle, since in the semi-classical regime many phase shifts contribute to the scattering and the $l = 0$ term matters little, as we shall discuss next.

The WKB approximation to the scattering amplitude does not consist simply of the use of the WKB phase shifts. The second important step is to rely on the fact that, since at high energies many l -values enter into the scattering amplitude, the large l -values will carry most of the burden of

the result. Or, looked at in another way: classically, each deflection angle is associated with a specific value of the angular momentum, which means, as $k \rightarrow 0$, a fixed large l -value. The idea, therefore, is to do two things with the partial-wave expansion of the scattering amplitude: (a) to replace the Legendre polynomials in (4.20) by their asymptotic values for large l , and (b) to replace the series in (4.16) by an integral.

In step (a), the appropriate approximations are, for $\sin \theta > 1/l$,

$$P_l(\cos \theta) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi l + \frac{1}{2}}} \cos\left(l + \frac{1}{2}\theta - \frac{\pi}{4}\right), \quad (6.22)$$

and for $\sin \theta < 1/l$,

$$P_l(\cos \theta) = (-\cos \theta)^l J_0\left(l + \frac{1}{2}\right) \sin \theta, \quad (6.23)$$

(where J_0 is the Bessel function of order 0) which are highly accurate even when l is not very large.

Step (b) is justified by the fact that many l -values make significant contributions to the partial-wave sum, and the RGE phase shift is a relatively slowly varying function of l . Restricting ourselves to scattering angles θ that are not too small, we then obtain from (a) and (b), using (6.22),

$$\begin{aligned} f(k, \theta) &= \frac{1}{2ik} \sum_l (2l+1) (e^{2i\delta_l} - 1) P_l(\cos \theta) \\ &\approx \frac{1}{ik} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi \sin \theta}} \int_0^\infty dl \sqrt{1 + \frac{1}{2}} \left[e^{2i\delta_l + i\pi + \frac{1}{2}(\pi - \frac{1}{2})} \right. \\ &\quad \left. + e^{-i(2l + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2}(\pi - \frac{1}{2}))} \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{ik} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi \sin \theta}} \int_0^\infty dl \sqrt{1 + \frac{1}{2}} \left[e^{2i\delta_l + i\pi + \frac{1}{2}(\pi \sin \theta - \frac{1}{2})} \right. \\ &\quad \left. + e^{-i(2l + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2}(\pi \sin \theta + \frac{1}{2}))} \right], \end{aligned}$$

where the "1" has been dropped because it contributes only for $\theta = 0$, and the terms $2\pi n$, with n an arbitrary integer, have been added in the exponentials without changing the result. Now writing $J^{-1/2} \delta_l = \frac{1}{2} \chi$, so that

$$e^{2i\delta_l} = \frac{1}{2} \left[\frac{2}{\chi} J - \int_{\chi_l}^\infty dx \frac{d}{dx} \sqrt{2M(E - V)} - 2V\chi^{-1} \right], \quad (6.24)$$

the approximation to the scattering amplitude can be written in the form

$$f(k, \theta) \approx \frac{1}{\sqrt{k}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi \sin \theta}} \int_0^\infty dx J^{1/2} (e^{2i\delta_l} + e^{2i\delta_{l'}}),$$

with

$$\varphi_{\pm} = 2\delta_1^{\text{WKB}} \pm J\theta \mp \frac{\pi}{4} + 2\pi n(J) - \frac{1}{2}\pi_1(J)/\hbar.$$

The final step in the approximation procedure is to evaluate the above integrals by the method of stationary phase. For $\hbar \rightarrow 0$, as the term $e^{i\varphi_{\pm}}$ becomes more and more oscillatory, then leading to cancellations, the principal contribution to the integral comes from those J -values for which one of the phases is stationary, that is, locally independent of J , i.e., those for which

$$2\frac{\partial \delta_1^{\text{WKB}}}{\partial J} \pm \theta + 2\pi n = 0, \quad (6.22)$$

where the equation with the + sign leads to the leading contribution from φ_{+} , and the equation with the - sign, from φ_{-} .

Recall now that the classical deflection function Θ for a particle, which determines the asymptotic deviation θ of a particle's final trajectory from its incoming direction⁵ by the formula

$$\theta = \pi(2\Theta(J) + 2\pi n),$$

where n is an integer such that $0 < \theta < \pi$, is given in terms of the angular momentum J by

$$\Theta = \pi - \frac{1}{2} \int_{r_0}^{\infty} dr r^{-2} [2M(J) - U] r^{-2} - r^{-2} \sqrt{1 - U},$$

This deflection function can be expressed in terms of the WKB phase shift, as given by (6.20), in the form

$$\Theta(J) = 2\hbar \frac{\partial \delta_1^{\text{WKB}}}{\partial J} = 2\hbar \frac{\partial \delta_2^{\text{WKB}}}{\partial J}. \quad (6.23)$$

Thus (6.22) shows that in the limit as $\hbar \rightarrow 0$, the quantum-mechanical scattering amplitude is concentrated precisely at the classical scattering angle. If, for a given value of the angle θ , we denote the stationary value of J by J_0 and expand the phase $\varphi_{\pm}$ about J_0 , we obtain

$$\varphi_{\pm}(J) = 2\delta_1^{\text{WKB}} \pm J\theta \mp \frac{\pi}{4} + 2\pi n(J) - \frac{1}{2}\pi_1(J)/\hbar = \varphi_0 + \frac{1}{2}J^2 - J_0^2 \varphi_0'' + \dots$$

and hence

$$f(k, \theta) \approx \frac{1}{2\pi} \sqrt{\frac{J_0 + \frac{1}{2}}{2\pi \sin \theta}} e^{i\varphi_0} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dJ e^{i(J^2 - J_0^2) \varphi_0''} = \frac{1}{2\pi} \sqrt{\frac{J_0 + \frac{1}{2}}{-\varphi_0''}} \frac{e^{i\varphi_0}}{\sin \theta},$$

⁵See, for example, [Newton 92], Sec. 1.1.

where the integral has been extended to infinity with insignificant error because almost all of its value comes from contributions in the region of stationary phase angles. Insertion of

$$\varphi_0' = 2 \frac{\partial \varphi_0^{\text{class}}}{\partial \vartheta} = \frac{\partial \Theta}{\partial \vartheta + \frac{1}{2}},$$

therefore leads to the limit of the scattering cross section

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d\sigma}{d\Omega} &= |f|^2 = \frac{1}{k^2} \left| \frac{1}{\sin \vartheta} \left| \frac{\partial \Theta}{\partial \vartheta} + \frac{1}{2} \right| \right|^2 \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi k^2} \left| \frac{\partial \Theta}{\partial \vartheta} \right|^2 = \frac{1}{2\pi k^2} \left| \frac{\partial \Theta}{\partial b} \right|^2, \end{aligned}$$

where $b = L/p$ is the classical impact parameter. This is precisely the classical result.

The scattering amplitude, on the other hand, has, of course, no classical analogue, and in most circumstances its phase has no directly observable consequences. However, this is not so if there exists more than one value of l for which the phase of either φ_+ or φ_- is stationary. In that case, the quantum scattering cross section is the modulus squared of the sum of the various amplitudes obtained from the stationary points, and there will be interference effects that differ from the classical result, which would be the sum of the cross sections for the various impact parameters leading to the same scattering angle if Θ is not a monotone function of the impact parameter. These interference effects do not disappear as $\hbar \rightarrow 0$ but, instead, become highly oscillatory. (The angular widths of the interference fringes are of the order of the ratio between the de Broglie wavelength of the scattered particles and the difference between two impact parameters that lead to the same deflection angle.) As the phase of the scattering amplitude turns out to be proportional to $k = \sqrt{2ME}/\hbar$, this means at the same time that energy differences that macroscopically are considered small lead to large phase differences and observable interference analogous to the diffraction effects that are the constant deviations of physical optics from geometrical optics. Specific physical applications of these effects have been found, for example, in α -particle scattering by nuclei.⁶

There is an important physical lesson in this result: classical physics does not directly emerge as the limit $\hbar \rightarrow 0$ of quantum physics; that limit here simply does not exist. Classical results are valid for the description of the scattering of marbles and billiard balls because the interference effects would be noticeable only if the energies of the marbles could be controlled far more precisely than is macroscopically feasible; they are washed out by the practical experimental errors of observations of such objects.

⁶For details, see the papers [Fla61b] and [Fla61c].

6.2 Bound-State Perturbation Theory

The next topic will be perturbation theory as applicable to the bound-state solutions of the time-independent Schrödinger equation. The question to be answered is, if the Hamiltonian of a system is altered by a small amount, what are the corresponding small changes in the energy levels and in the energy eigenstates?

Assume, then, that the Hamiltonian is of the form

$$\mathbf{H} = \mathbf{H}_0 + \lambda \mathbf{H}, \quad (6.27)$$

where the unperturbed Hamiltonian $\mathbf{H}_0$ is now not just the kinetic energy but includes some known interactions. For simplicity, assume that the spectrum of $\mathbf{H}_0$ consists of discrete points only, and the eigenvalues E_n^0 , $n = 1, 2, \dots$, as well as the (normalized) eigenfunctions $|E_n^0\rangle$ of $\mathbf{H}_0$ are known. Furthermore, assume that both the eigenvalues and the eigenstates of $\mathbf{H}$ can be expanded in a power series in λ , of which we are interested only in the first few terms.⁷

As we saw in Section 4.4.1, the eigenvalues and eigenstates of $\mathbf{H}$ can be recognized as the poles and residues of the resolvent operator,

$$(E - \mathbf{H})^{-1} = \sum_n \frac{|E_n^0\rangle \langle E_n^0|}{E - E_n^0}, \quad (6.28)$$

which is nothing but a re-expression of (4.125) in operator form. Consequently the equation

$$\langle E_n^0 | (E - \mathbf{H})^{-1} | E_m^0 \rangle = \sum_n \frac{\langle E_n^0 | E_n^0 \rangle \langle E_n^0 | E_m^0 \rangle}{E - E_n^0} \quad (6.29)$$

may be used to recognize the eigenvalues of $\mathbf{H}$ from the positions of the poles of the function of E on the left, and the transformation functions $\langle E_n^0 | E_n \rangle$ from the corresponding residues. Once the numbers $\langle E_n^0 | E_n \rangle$ are known, we use the new, perturbed, normalized eigenstates by their expansion

$$|E_n\rangle = \sum_m \langle E_m^0 | E_n \rangle |E_m^0\rangle \quad (6.30)$$

in the basis of the unperturbed eigenstates.

Let us isolate the terms up to λ^2 in the operator⁸

$$(\mathcal{E} - \mathbf{H})^{-1} = (\mathcal{E} - \mathbf{H}_0 - \lambda \mathbf{H})^{-1} = (\mathcal{E} - \mathbf{H}_0)^{-1} \left[\mathbf{1} - \lambda \mathbf{H} (\mathcal{E} - \mathbf{H}_0)^{-1} \right]^{-1},$$

⁷The question of whether the series converges or perhaps is a new convergent asymptotic series will be left open.

⁸Remember that $(\lambda \mathbf{H})^{-1} = \lambda^{-1} \mathbf{H}^{-1}$.

that is,

$$\begin{aligned} (E - H_0 - \lambda H)^{-1} &= (E - H_0)^{-1} + \lambda(E - H_0)^{-1}H(E - H_0)^{-1} \\ &\quad + \lambda^2(E - H_0)^{-1}H(E - H_0)^{-1}H(E - H_0)^{-1} \\ &\quad + \lambda^3(E - H_0)^{-1}H^3(E - H_0 - \lambda H)^{-1}, \end{aligned} \quad (5.31)$$

and from now on ignore the last term. The neglect of such higher-order terms in powers of λ relies on the assumption that the operator norm $\| \lambda(E - H_0)^{-1}H \|$ is small compared to 1, and this requires not only that λ be sufficiently small for a given H , but also that E not be too close to one of the eigenvalues of H_0 . Perturbation theory has to be treated very carefully if the spacing of the eigenvalues of H_0 is very close and a shifted eigenvalue of H gets near the next eigenvalue of H_0 . (This case will be considered separately in Section 6.2.2.)

6.2.1 The nondegenerate case

Assuming for the moment—subject to later correction—that there is no degeneracy, writing

$$R_{nm}^{\pm} \equiv (E_{\pm}^0 H)^{-1} E_{\pm}^0,$$

and keeping only terms up to order λ^2 , we obtain from (5.31)

$$\begin{aligned} (E_{\pm}^0)(E - H)^{-1}E_{\pm}^0 &= \frac{E_{\pm}^0}{E - E_{\pm}^0} + \lambda \frac{R_{nm}^{\pm}}{(E - E_{\pm}^0)(E - E_{\pm}^0)} \\ &+ \lambda^2 \sum_{l \neq n} \frac{R_{nl}^{\pm} R_{ln}^{\pm}}{(E - E_{\pm}^0)(E - E_{\pm}^0)(E - E_{\pm}^0)} + \lambda^2 \frac{R_{nm}^{\pm} R_{nn}^{\pm}}{(E - E_{\pm}^0)^2(E - E_{\pm}^0)} + \dots \\ &= \frac{N_{nm}(E)}{D_{\pm}(E)}, \end{aligned} \quad (5.32)$$

where the numerator N_{nm} and the denominator $D_{\pm}$ are given by

$$\begin{aligned} N_{nm}(E) \equiv & E_{\pm}^0 \left(1 + \lambda \frac{R_{nm}^{\pm}}{E - E_{\pm}^0} + \lambda^2 \sum_{l \neq n} \frac{R_{nl}^{\pm} R_{ln}^{\pm}}{(E - E_{\pm}^0)(E - E_{\pm}^0)} \right) \\ & + \lambda \frac{R_{nm}^{\pm}}{E - E_{\pm}^0} + \lambda^2 \sum_{l \neq n} \frac{R_{nl}^{\pm} R_{ln}^{\pm}}{(E - E_{\pm}^0)(E - E_{\pm}^0)} + \dots \end{aligned} \quad (5.33)$$

$$D_{\pm}(E) \equiv E - E_{\pm}^0 - \lambda R_{nn}^{\pm} - \lambda^2 \sum_{l \neq n} \frac{R_{nl}^{\pm} R_{ln}^{\pm}}{E_{\pm}^0 - E_l^0} + \dots \quad (5.34)$$

The terms belonging to N_{nm} are unambiguously distinguished from those of $D_{\pm}$ by the fact that $D_{\pm}$ is independent of n and of the form $D_{\pm}(E) = E - E_{\pm}^0 - \lambda a + \lambda^2 b + \dots$

while N_{mn} varies with m and remains finite in the vicinity of $E = E_n^0$. So, first take $m = n$ to identify D_n and N_{nn} :

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{1}{E - E_n^0} + \lambda \frac{W_{nn}}{(E - E_n^0)^2} \\ & + \lambda^2 \sum_{l \neq n} \frac{|W_{nl}|^2}{(E - E_n^0)(E - E_l^0)} + \lambda^3 \frac{W_{nn}^3}{(E - E_n^0)^3} + \dots \\ & = \frac{1}{E - E_n^0} \left[1 + \lambda \frac{W_{nn}}{(E - E_n^0)} + \lambda^2 \frac{(W_{nn})^2}{(E - E_n^0)^2} + \lambda^2 \sum_{l \neq n} \frac{W_{nl}^2}{(E - E_l^0)(E - E_n^0)} + \dots \right] \\ & \quad \times \left[1 + \lambda^2 \sum_{l \neq n} \frac{|W_{nl}|^2}{E - E_l^0} \left(\frac{1}{E - E_l^0} - \frac{1}{E - E_n^0} \right) + \dots \right] \\ & = \left[E - E_n^0 - \lambda W_{nn} - \lambda^2 \sum_{l \neq n} \frac{W_{nl}^2}{E_l^0 - E_n^0} + \dots \right]^{-1} \\ & \quad \times \left[1 - \lambda^2 \sum_{l \neq n} \frac{|W_{nl}|^2}{(E - E_l^0)(E - E_n^0)} + \dots \right], \end{aligned}$$

then multiply the left-hand side of (3.32) by the D_n to calculate N_{nn} for $m = n$.

From the denominator function $D_n(E)$ we can conclude that the pole occurs at the shifted eigenvalue $E = E_n$, where

$$E_n = E_n^0 + \lambda W_{nn} + \lambda^2 \sum_{l \neq n} \frac{W_{nl}^2}{E_l^0 - E_n^0} + \dots \quad (3.33)$$

while from the numerator function $N_{nn}(E_n)$ for $m = n$, evaluated at $E = E_n$, it follows that

$$|N_n^0(E_n)|^2 = 1 - \lambda^2 \sum_{l \neq n} \frac{|W_{nl}|^2}{(E_l^0 - E_n^0)^2} + \dots,$$

or, to within an arbitrary phase,

$$(E_n^0|E_n\rangle = 1 - \frac{1}{2} \lambda^2 \sum_{l \neq n} \frac{W_{nl}^2}{(E_l^0 - E_n^0)^2} + \dots \quad (3.34)$$

For $m \neq n$, the numerator function becomes, to order λ^2 ,

$$\begin{aligned} N_{nm}(E_n) &= (E_n^0|E_n\rangle \langle E_n|E_n^0\rangle \\ &= \lambda \frac{W_{nm}}{E_n - E_n^0} + \lambda^2 \sum_{l \neq n} \frac{W_{nl}W_{lm}}{(E_n - E_l^0)(E_n - E_l^0)} + \dots \end{aligned}$$

from which it follows (since we found that $(E_n^0|E_n\rangle$ differs from 1 only by a term of order λ^2) that for $m \neq n$,

$$(E_n^0|E_n) = \lambda \frac{W_{nm}}{E_n - E_n^0} + \lambda^2 \sum_{l \neq n} \frac{W_{nl}W_{lm}}{(E_n - E_l^0)(E_n - E_l^0)} + \dots$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \lambda \frac{R_{mn}^*}{E_n^0 - E_m^0} \\
 &+ \lambda^2 \left[\sum_{l \neq m}^* \frac{R_{ml}^* R_{ln}^*}{(E_n^0 - E_l^0)(E_l^0 - E_m^0)} - \frac{R_{mm}^* R_{nn}^*}{(E_n^0 - E_m^0)^2} \right] + \dots \quad (5.67)
 \end{aligned}$$

Equations (5.65) and (5.67) use the eigenvalue shifts and the expansion coefficients of the eigenfunctions to second-order perturbation theory, provided there is no degeneracy and the unperturbed levels are not too closely spaced.

5.2.2 Closely spaced levels

In order to handle the more complicated case in which two unperturbed levels, call them E_1^0 and E_2^0 , are so closely spaced that there is a possibility that a small perturbation may actually make them cross, let us write the resolvent operator $(E - \mathbf{H})^{-1}$ in a convenient form by introducing the mutually orthogonal projection operators

$$\mathbf{P}_1 \equiv |E_1^0\rangle\langle E_1^0|, \quad \mathbf{Q}_1 \equiv \mathbf{I} - \mathbf{P}_1 = \sum_{n \neq 1} |E_n^0\rangle\langle E_n^0|$$

and defining

$$\mathbf{Q} \equiv \mathbf{Q}_1(E - \mathbf{H}_0)^{-1}\mathbf{Q}_1 = \sum_{n \neq 1} \frac{|E_n^0\rangle\langle E_n^0|}{E - E_n^0}.$$

A bit of straight-forward algebra[†] leads to the following expansion:

$$\begin{aligned}
 (E - \mathbf{H}_0 - \lambda \mathbf{H})^{-1} &= \mathbf{Q}^{-1}(\mathbf{I} - \lambda \mathbf{H} \mathbf{Q}^{-1})^{-1} \\
 &= (\mathbf{I} - \lambda \mathbf{Q}^{-1} \mathbf{H})^{-1} \mathbf{P}_1 (E - E_1^0 - \lambda)^{-1} \mathbf{P}_1 (\mathbf{I} - \lambda \mathbf{H} \mathbf{Q}^{-1})^{-1}, \quad (5.68)
 \end{aligned}$$

where

$$\lambda \mathbf{I} \equiv \lambda \mathbf{P}_1(\mathbf{I} - \lambda \mathbf{H} \mathbf{Q}^{-1})^{-1} \mathbf{H} \mathbf{P}_1.$$

Next, we separate out the second level by means of the projection

$$\mathbf{P}_2 \equiv |E_2^0\rangle\langle E_2^0|$$

and define

$$\mathbf{Q}^{-1} \equiv \mathbf{Q} - \frac{\mathbf{P}_2}{E - E_2^0}$$

[†]The $\lambda \mathbf{I}$

Regarding $E - E_1^0$ as of the same order as $\lambda(N'_{11})$, one then obtains, to first order,

$$H = \lambda P_1 H P_1 + \frac{P}{E - E_1^0} P_1 H P_1 \left(1 - \frac{\lambda}{E - E_1^0} P_1 H P_1 \right)^{-1} P_1 H P_1 + \dots$$

Now, according to (5.35), the position of the pole of $(E - H)^{-1}$ near E_1^0 is obtained, to first order, from the equation

$$E = E_1^0 + (E_1^0) \lambda (E_1^0) = E_1^0 + \lambda E_{11} + \frac{\lambda^2 N'_{11} P}{E - E_1^0 - \lambda E_{11}},$$

which means, with $E_1 \equiv E_1^0 + \lambda E_{11}$ and $E_2 \equiv E_1^0 + \lambda E_{22}$,

$$(E - E_1)(E - E_2) = \lambda^2 (E_{12})^2,$$

the solutions of which are (assuming $E_1^0 < E_2^0$),

$$\begin{aligned} E_+ &= \frac{1}{2} (E_1^0 + E_2^0 + \lambda (N'_{11} + N'_{22})) \\ &+ \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{(E_1^0 - E_2^0 + \lambda (E_{11} - E_{22}))^2 + 4\lambda^2 (N'_{12})^2} < E_1, \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} E_- &= \frac{1}{2} (E_1^0 + E_2^0 + \lambda (N'_{11} + N'_{22})) \\ &- \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{(E_1^0 - E_2^0 + \lambda (E_{11} - E_{22}))^2 + 4\lambda^2 (N'_{12})^2} > E_2. \end{aligned}$$

Take the case when $E_{11} > 0$, $E_{22} < 0$, and $N'_{12} \neq 0$. As shown in Figure 6.3, what is happening here is that the two levels, which in ordinary first-order perturbation theory would cross as λ increases, because E_1 is rising linearly and E_2 is declining, are apparently repelled by one another; for large enough λ , E_+ , which started out decreasing from E_2^0 , will rise like E_1 , and E_- , which began by rising from E_1^0 , will decrease like E_2 , and the levels never actually intersect. Thus, what at first sight looks like a crossing of the two levels with increasing λ , on closer inspection reveals itself as no crossing at all, but a switching of the identities of the two levels, with a small remaining gap.

6.2.3 The case of degeneracy

The case in which there is degeneracy in the unperturbed spectrum and a perturbation removes it—that is, it splits a single energy level into several distinct ones—is the physically most interesting case, because splittings are much easier to observe experimentally than simple small shifts.

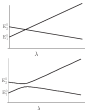


FIGURE 6.5. The upper figure shows the change of two energy levels as a function of λ according to ordinary first-order perturbation theory; the lower figure shows the way they actually change when the proximity of the levels is taken into account.

It is therefore important to note that, if there is degeneracy in the unperturbed spectrum, the procedure given above breaks down. The underlying reason for this is not hard to understand: on the degenerate subspace (the eigenspace of H_0 at the degenerate eigenvalue E_0^0) the (normalized) basis vectors, as eigenvectors of H_0 , are not uniquely determined (to within a phase factor); any orthogonal linear combination of them would serve as well. But in order for the λ -expansion to make sense, the eigenvectors have to be continuous functions of λ . So if the perturbation removes the degeneracy, reversing starting with the perturbed eigenvectors and continuously decreasing λ to 0, thus turning the perturbation off, the eigenvectors will then approach a specific set of eigenvectors on the degenerate subspace, the "correct linear combinations" of the original basis vectors, which, in the absence of the perturbation, are arbitrarily oriented. If an "incorrect linear combination" had been chosen when attempting to start the perturbation expansion, these basis vectors would not be continuously connected to the perturbed eigenvectors, and the perturbation theory would fail at the lowest order of λ that removes the degeneracy. Let's see how this, in fact, manifests itself.

To begin with, consider first-order perturbation theory. While the first-order energy shift λH_{0n}^1 of the n^{th} level seems to present no difficulties if $E_n^0 = E_m^0$, you will notice from (5.36) and (5.37) that there is going to be trouble because of vanishing energy-differences. To remove the problems, we make use of the freedom to rotate the eigenstates $|E_n^0\rangle$ in the degenerate subspace and define a new set of orthonormal eigenstates by

$$|E_n^0\rangle \equiv \sum_j M_{ij} |E_j^0\rangle, \quad (5.38)$$

where the matrix M is unitary. The new matrix elements of the perturbation on the degenerate subspace are then

$$\overline{H}_{ij}^1 \equiv \langle e_i | H^1 | e_j \rangle = (M^{-1})^i_k H^1 M_{kj}, \quad (5.39)$$

and, since H^1 is Hermitian, M may be chosen so as to diagonalize the perturbation matrix H^1 on the E_n^0 -subspace of H_0 . The effect of using $\overline{H}_{ij}^1$ instead of H_{ij}^1 in the expansions, beginning with (5.32), is that the summations include all the terms for which $E_i^0 = E_j^0$, and in the formula that replaces (5.37) for $\langle E_n^0 | E_{n\gamma} \rangle$, $i \neq j$, the linear term in λ is missing. The numbers $\overline{E}_{n\gamma}^1$ that appear in (5.38) as the first-order energy shifts are now the eigenvalues of the perturbation matrix on the degenerate subspace, and they are calculated in the usual manner as the zeros of the secular equation for the matrix.

If the eigenvalues of the perturbation matrix H^1 on the degenerate subspace are not all equal, so that the diagonal matrix elements $\overline{E}_{n\gamma}^1$ are not all the same, then (5.32) shows that the degeneracy is (at least in part) removed in *first order*, that is, whereas several unperturbed energies are degenerate, their first-order perturbed values are no longer all equal. For the calculation to work, the correct linear combinations of unperturbed eigenfunctions have to be chosen, namely, those that diagonalize the perturbation matrix on the degenerate subspace, and these are the eigenfunctions of H_0 that are the continuous limits of the eigenfunctions of $H_0 + \lambda H^1$ as $\lambda \rightarrow 0$.

An example. Denote the eigenvalues of the unperturbed Hamiltonian by E_n^0 , $n = 1, 2, 3, \dots$, and let the matrix of a perturbation H^1 on the basis of the eigenstates of H_0 be H_{ij}^1 . Assume that E_1^0 is nondegenerate and that E_2^0 is twofold degenerate. We then have to find the eigenvalues of the matrix

$$\lambda \begin{pmatrix} H_{11}^1 & H_{12}^1 \\ H_{21}^1 & H_{22}^1 \end{pmatrix},$$

which means we have to solve the secular equation

$$\begin{vmatrix} \lambda H_{11}^1 - \epsilon & \lambda H_{12}^1 \\ \lambda H_{21}^1 & \lambda H_{22}^1 - \epsilon \end{vmatrix} = 0,$$

or

$$c^2 = c\lambda(M_{11} + M_{22}) + \lambda^2(N_{11}M_{22} - |M_{12}|^2) = 0.$$

Therefore, the degeneracy is removed in first order and the two energy shifts are, in first-order perturbation theory,

$$E_1^\pm = E_1^0 + \lambda \left[\frac{1}{2}(M_{11} + M_{22}) \pm \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{(M_{11} - M_{22})^2 + 4|M_{12}|^2} \right],$$

leading to a split of the originally degenerate level into two levels with an energy difference given by

$$\Delta = \lambda \sqrt{(M_{11} - M_{22})^2 + 4|M_{12}|^2}.$$

The only way for this split to vanish, that is, for the degeneracy not to be removed in first order, is for $M_{11} = M_{22}$ and $N_{12} = 0$, which makes the matrix $\tilde{H}$ equal to $M_{11}\mathbf{I}$.

Degeneracy removed in second order

If, after the diagonalization of the matrix $\tilde{H}$ on the degenerate subspace, the diagonal values $\tilde{H}_{1,1}^0$ are all equal, then the degeneracy is not removed in first order. At the same time, this means that all the eigenvalues of the matrix of $\tilde{H}$ on that subspace are the same, which implies that $\tilde{H}$ there is a multiple of the unit matrix, and the diagonalization was not necessary because it must have been diagonal to begin with. Equation (6.37) shows in that case an analogous problem arises in second order for $(E_1^\pm(E_0) - E_2^0)/E_1^\pm - E_2^0$. If the degeneracy is removed in first order, then $E_1^\pm = E_2^0$ is of order λ and the first line of (6.37) shows that the λ^2 -term becomes linear in λ , with no ensuing difficulty. However, if the degeneracy is not removed in first order, then $E_1^\pm = E_2^0$ in the denominator is of order λ^0 , and the λ^2 -term becomes independent of λ , thus remaining nonzero as $\lambda \rightarrow 0$.

The remedy is analogous to the previous case. It is now necessary to diagonalize the matrix

$$M_{1,2} = \sum_{n \neq 1} \frac{H_{1n}H_{n2}}{E_1^0 - E_n^0} = (E_1^0 - \mathbf{H}_0 \mathbf{Q}_0 (\mathbf{E}_1^0 - \mathbf{H}_0)^{-1} \mathbf{Q}_0 \mathbf{H}) M_1^0,$$

on the degenerate subspace, where $\mathbf{Q}_0$ is the projection on the orthogonal complement of the eigenspace of $\mathbf{H}_0$ at E_1^0 , and the basis functions that do this diagonalization are the "proper linear combinations" of the original basis functions that fit continuously with the unperturbed eigenfunctions. (Since, by assumption, the matrix $\tilde{H}$ on the degenerate subspace is a multiple of the unit matrix, this change of basis has no effect on $\tilde{H}$.)

5.2.1 Second-order shifts from first-order states

Suppose the wave function has been calculated to first order in λ , that is, according to (5.17') and (5.18),

$$\langle E_0^0 | E_n \rangle = \langle E_0^0 | E_0^0 \rangle = 1, \quad E_0^0 = E_0^0, \quad k \neq 0,$$

while $\langle E_0^0 | E_0^0 \rangle = 1$. We then find that to second order in powers of λ

$$\lambda \langle E_0^0 | \mathbf{H} | E_0^0 \rangle = \lambda E_{00}^0 + 2\lambda^2 \sum_{k \neq 0} \frac{|R_{k0}^0|^2}{E_0^0 - E_k^0} + \dots$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \langle E_0^0 | \mathbf{H}_0 | E_0^0 \rangle &= E_0^0 + \lambda^2 \sum_{k \neq 0} \frac{R_{k0}^0 R_{k0}^0}{(E_0^0 - E_k^0)^2} + \dots \\ &= E_0^0 \left(1 + \lambda^2 \sum_{k \neq 0} \frac{|R_{k0}^0|^2}{(E_0^0 - E_k^0)^2} \right) = E_0^0 \sum_{k \neq 0} \frac{|R_{k0}^0|^2}{E_0^0 - E_k^0} + \dots \\ &= \left(1 + \lambda^2 \sum_{k \neq 0} \frac{|R_{k0}^0|^2}{(E_0^0 - E_k^0)^2} \right) \left(E_0^0 - \lambda^2 \sum_{k \neq 0} \frac{|R_{k0}^0|^2}{E_0^0 - E_k^0} \right) + \dots \end{aligned}$$

so that

$$\begin{aligned} \langle E_0^0 | \mathbf{H}_0 + \lambda \mathbf{H} | E_0^0 \rangle &= \left(1 + \lambda^2 \sum_{k \neq 0} \frac{|R_{k0}^0|^2}{(E_0^0 - E_k^0)^2} \right) \\ &\quad \times \left(E_0^0 + \lambda E_{00}^0 + \lambda^2 \sum_{k \neq 0} \frac{|R_{k0}^0|^2}{E_0^0 - E_k^0} \right) + \dots \end{aligned}$$

Furthermore,¹⁰

$$\langle E_0^0 | E_0^0 \rangle = 1 + \lambda^2 \sum_{k \neq 0} \frac{|R_{k0}^0|^2}{(E_0^0 - E_k^0)^2} + \dots$$

Comparison with (5.31) shows that therefore, if we define the functional

$$E_0^{(2)}(\mathbf{R}) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \frac{\langle \mathbf{R}, \mathbf{H} \mathbf{R} \rangle}{\langle \mathbf{R}, \mathbf{R} \rangle}, \quad (5.41)$$

then to second order (writing $E_0 \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} E_0^{(2)} + O(\lambda^3)$)

$$E_0^{(2)} = E_0^{(2)}(\mathbf{R}_0), \quad (5.42)$$

¹⁰The first-order state vectors are normalized to first order, but not to second order!

which means that the energy is given correctly to second order as the expectation value of $\mathbf{H}$ in the eigenstate as calculated correctly to first order, just as the energy is given correctly to first order as the expectation value of the Hamiltonian in an eigenstate that is correct to zeroth order (see §3.2.1). The underlying reason for this will become apparent in Section 6.2.

6.2.1 Effects of symmetry

Suppose that the Hamiltonian $\mathbf{H}_0$ has a symmetry group G (for example, $\mathbf{H}_0$ is rotationally invariant) and the degeneracy of the level E_0^0 is n -fold, that is, E_0^0 belongs to an irreducible representation of G (in the rotationally invariant case, each level belongs to a specific value of l , and there is just the n degeneracy). If $\mathbf{H}'$ has the same symmetry group, then $\mathbf{H}$ must have at least the same degeneracy; $\mathbf{H}'$ cannot remove this degeneracy in any order. This follows, first of all, from the fact that G is then a symmetry group of $\mathbf{H} = \mathbf{H}_0 + \lambda\mathbf{H}'$, but it can also be seen in each order of perturbation theory, because Schur's lemma 5.3 in Appendix E tells us that all matrix elements $H'_{\alpha\beta}$ that connect different irreducible representations vanish, and that on each degenerate subspace (i.e., for each irreducible representation), the matrix $\{H'_{\alpha\beta}\}$ is a multiple of the unit matrix.

If $\mathbf{H}_0$ has accidental degeneracy as well (say, a level of one angular momentum l happens to have the same energy as a level of another angular momentum l'), this degeneracy can be removed by $\mathbf{H}'$, and using the basis vectors belonging to irreducible representations of G is automatically the correct choice to make perturbation theory work.

Next, suppose that $\mathbf{H}'$ has less symmetry than $\mathbf{H}_0$ (say, it has only axial symmetry). In that case, the symmetry group G' of $\mathbf{H}$ is a subgroup of G , and every representation of G is also a representation of G' . However, if it is irreducible as a representation of G , it need not be irreducible as a representation of G' . Let E_0^0 belong to the n -dimensional representation Γ^n , irreducible for G , and suppose that Γ^n contains the two irreducible representations $\Gamma_1^{n'}$ and $\Gamma_2^{n'}$ of G' , $\Gamma^n = \Gamma_1^{n'} \oplus \Gamma_2^{n'}$. Then the originally n -fold degenerate level E_0^0 can be split into two levels, one of degeneracy n_1 and the other of degeneracy n_2 , and again, the basis vectors according to the irreducible representations $\Gamma_1^{n'}$ and $\Gamma_2^{n'}$ of G' are the correct choice, because on these bases $\mathbf{H}'$ is diagonal.

There is, however, another possibility: there may be accidental degeneracy in $\mathbf{H}_0$ in which the states of the level transform under the same irreducible representation several times over. In such a case, the arguments given are insufficient, and it becomes necessary to do additional work to find the "correct linear combinations."

6.2.2 Relativistic correction to hydrogenic levels

The relativistic Hamiltonian of a particle of electric charge e subject to a scalar potential ϕ differs from its nonrelativistic form, since the relativistic energy-momentum relation for such a particle is

$$(E - e\phi)^2 = \hbar^2 c^2 + c^2 \mathbf{p}^2,$$

Schrodinger already introduced a relativistic wave equation that has the same form as the nonrelativistic equation that bears his name, but with the Hamiltonian operator defined by

$$(\mathbf{H} - e\phi)^2 = \hbar^2 c^2 + c^2 \mathbf{p}^2. \quad (6.43)$$

Rather than fully treating the resulting modified equation, which is subject to some special difficulties (we shall discuss relativistic wave equations in Chapter 10), it is sometimes useful and sufficient to apply a first-order relativistic correction to the kinetic energy,

$$\mathbf{T} = \sqrt{\mathbf{p}^2 c^2 + \hbar^2 c^2} = \hbar c^2 + \frac{\mathbf{p}^2}{2M} + \frac{\mathbf{p}^4/2M^2 c^2}{2} + \dots, \quad (6.44)$$

which means that the first-order correction to the nonrelativistic Hamiltonian $\mathbf{H}_0$ of a hydrogenic atom is given by

$$\mathbf{H}_{\text{rel}} = -\frac{(\mathbf{p}^2/2M)^2}{2Mc^2} = -\frac{1}{2Mc^2}(\mathbf{H}_0 + \frac{Ze^2}{r})^2. \quad (6.45)$$

In first-order perturbation theory, the energy shift is then

$$\Delta E = -\frac{1}{2Mc^2} \langle \mathbf{p}^2 + 2Ze^2 \mathbf{p}^2/r + \mathbf{p}^4/r^2 \rangle, \quad (6.46)$$

which means we need to calculate the expectation values $\langle r^{-2} \rangle$ and $\langle r^{-4} \rangle$ in hydrogenic states.

The radial Hamiltonian for a hydrogenic atom is given by

$$\mathbf{H}_0 = \frac{1}{2M} \left[\mathbf{p}^2 + \frac{M^2 c^2 + \mathbf{L}^2}{r^2} \right] - \frac{Ze^2}{r}.$$

To calculate $\langle r^{-2} \rangle$, employ the Hellmann-Feynman formula (4.26), differentiating $\mathbf{H}_0$ with respect to the parameter $1/r^2$:

$$\frac{\partial \mathbf{H}_0}{\partial (1/r^2)} = \left\langle \frac{\partial \mathbf{H}_0}{\partial (1/r^2)} \right\rangle = \frac{\hbar^2}{2M} \mathbf{L}^2 + \frac{1}{2} \langle r^{-2} \rangle.$$

On the other hand, according to (4.76), the energy eigenvalues of a hydrogenic atom are

$$E_n^0 = -\frac{Z^2 e^4}{32\pi^2 a_0}, \quad n = 1 + 1 + n_r,$$

¹⁰ As already noted earlier, in the radial Hamiltonian, l is a parameter that can be changed continuously; the requirement that l be an integer arises from the single-valuedness of the Hamiltonian.

where

$$\alpha = \frac{1}{2} \frac{d^2}{dZ^2}, \quad (6.47)$$

is the Gutzwiller value, so that

$$\frac{dE_0^{\text{ex}}}{dZ} = \frac{dE_0^{\text{ex}}}{d\alpha} = \frac{dE_0^{\text{ex}}}{dZ_0},$$

with the result

$$\langle r^{-1} \rangle = \frac{Z^2}{d^2 Z_0^2} \frac{1}{(1 + \frac{1}{2} \alpha)}, \quad (6.48)$$

In order to calculate $\langle r^{-2} \rangle$, differentiate H_0 with respect to Z and again apply the Hellmann-Feynman formula:

$$\left\langle \frac{dH_0}{dZ} \right\rangle = -\alpha \langle r^{-1} \rangle = \frac{dE_0^{\text{ex}}}{dZ} = -\frac{dE_0^{\text{ex}}}{dZ_0},$$

therefore

$$\langle r^{-2} \rangle = \frac{d}{dZ_0}. \quad (6.49)$$

Inserting the results (6.48) and (6.49) in (6.46) yields the following relativistic shift in the n^{th} energy level of a hydrogenic atom:

$$\Delta E_n^{\text{rel}} = \frac{Z^4 \alpha^4}{2n^3} \left(\frac{3}{2n} - \frac{1}{1 + \frac{1}{2} \alpha} \right) M c^2, \quad (6.50)$$

in which

$$\alpha = \frac{dZ}{dZ_0} \frac{r^2}{Z_0} \quad (6.51)$$

is the fine-structure constant, whose dimensionless value is $\alpha = 1/137.035$.

It should be noted that we applied perturbation theory and managed to calculate small corrections to the eigenvalues, even though the perturbation is not "small" in an operator sense; it is, however, small in these particular states. Note also that relativity destroys the l-degeneracy of the nonrelativistic hydrogen atom. (This is true, however, only if the spin of the electron is neglected, as we shall see later.)

6.2.7 The Stark effect

Let us apply stationary perturbation theory to a physical system consisting of a hydrogen atom in a weak, uniform external electric field of magnitude $\mathcal{E}$. In this case, the unperturbed Hamiltonian is

$$H_0 = -\frac{p^2}{2M} - \frac{e^2}{r},$$

and if the x -axis is chosen in the direction of the electric field, the interaction with the electric field is given by

$$H' = e\mathcal{E}x = -e\mathcal{E}Z,$$

This perturbation, of course, is not small in the operator sense; it is unbounded. Not only that, but the total potential energy tends to $-\infty$ in one direction, so that the system cannot have any bound states at all in the presence of the electric field; the original bound states, in fact, all become unstable states, with a finite lifetime. Nevertheless, perturbation theory works, and the shifts from the original energies of the stable states to those of the new, unstable ones will be small if the electric field is sufficiently weak.

In first order, the shift in the energy of the n^{th} level is simply

$$\Delta E_n = E_{n,n}^{(1)} = -e\mathcal{E} \int d^3r \psi_n^* \psi_n r$$

if ψ_n is the n^{th} eigenfunction of the unperturbed Hamiltonian. Consider first the ground state. In that case we must have $l = m = 0$, and the eigenfunction is spherically symmetric; as a result, the integral on the right vanishes, since the integrand is odd-symmetric. There is no first-order Stark effect in the ground state of the hydrogen atom.

The first excited level is fourfold degenerate, with the angular momentum quantum numbers $l, m = (1, 0), (1, 0), (1, 1), (1, -1)$. Because x and L_z commute, the matrix elements of x connecting different values of m necessarily vanish: $0 = \langle m | x L_z = L_z x | m' \rangle = (m' - m) \langle m | x | m' \rangle$. Therefore, there are no vanishing off-diagonal matrix elements for the first two of the above listed angular momenta only, and these are

$$\begin{aligned} H_{20,00}^{(1)} &= -e\mathcal{E} \int d^3r \psi_{20}^* \psi_{20} r \\ &= -e\mathcal{E} 2\pi \sqrt{\frac{2}{3\pi}} \sqrt{\frac{2}{3\pi}} \\ &\quad \times \int_0^\pi d\vartheta \sin^2 \vartheta \int_{-1}^1 d\cos \vartheta R_2(r) R_2(r) r \cos \vartheta R_2(r) R_2(r) \cos \vartheta. \end{aligned}$$

Since $\int_{-1}^1 d\cos \vartheta \cos \vartheta R_2^2(r) \cos \vartheta = 0$, the diagonal elements of this 2×2 submatrix are zero, and the off-diagonal elements are²³

$$H_{20,01}^{(1)} = H_{20,01}^{(1)*} = -\frac{2e\mathcal{E}}{\sqrt{3}} a_0 \frac{2}{3} \frac{1}{2\pi 2\pi \sqrt{3}} \int_0^\pi d\vartheta \sin^2 \vartheta L_1^+ L_1^- \psi_2^* \psi_2 r^{-1} = 2ea_0 \mathcal{E},$$

where a_0 is the Bohr radius given by (6.47). So the perturbation matrix is

$$W = 2ea_0 \mathcal{E} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix},$$

²³The two relevant Legendre polynomials are $L_1(x) = x$ and $L_1^+(x) = L_1(x) = x$. You should verify this.

whose eigenvalues are $\pm 3\epsilon_0 n_0 \mathcal{E}$. As a result, the two degenerate levels $(2, 1, 0)$ and $(2, 1, 1)$ are split, one shifted upward by $3\epsilon_0 n_0 \mathcal{E}$, the other downward by the same amount, while there still remains the two degenerate, unshifted levels $(2, 1, 1)$ and $(2, 1, -1)$. The latter two will, of course, be shifted in second order, but for a weak electric field, this second-order shift will be much smaller than the first order.

Now recall that the interaction energy of an electric point dipole $\vec{d}$ in an electric field $\vec{E}$ is $-\vec{d} \cdot \vec{E}$. Therefore, the hydrogen atom in a state with $n = 2$ acts as though it had an electric dipole moment of magnitude $3\epsilon_0 n_0$, which can be oriented parallel, anti-parallel, or perpendicular to $\vec{E}$. In the ground state, no such permanent electric dipole moment can exist; there can then be only an induced dipole moment, so that the interaction energy is proportional to $\mathcal{E}^2$; this is the quadratic Stark effect, which manifests itself in second order. Note that the electric dipole moment of a charged system is given in terms of its charge density ρ by $\int d^3r \, r \rho$, which quantum mechanically becomes $e \int d^3r \, r |\psi|^2$. Because $\mathbb{H}_0$ is rotationally invariant, this would vanish on parity grounds, if it weren't for the degeneracy; therefore in its first excited state the hydrogen atom can have a permanent electric dipole moment, a spontaneous breaking of its symmetry, only because of the degeneracy of that state!

6.3 Variational Methods

In this section we shall describe an approximation procedure that is particularly useful for precise numerical calculations.

6.3.1 Ground states

Suppose that E is an eigenvalue of $\mathbb{H}$ and that Φ_E is a corresponding eigenvector, $\mathbb{H}\Phi_E = E\Phi_E$; then the functional $\mathcal{H}_E[\Psi]$ defined by (3.41), which is simply the expression for the expectation value of $\mathbb{H}$ in an eigenstate, is such that $\mathcal{H}_E(\Phi_E) = E$. Furthermore, this expression for the eigenvalue has the remarkable property of being stationary with respect to small variations in Ψ in a neighborhood of an eigenvector Φ_E of $\mathbb{H}$. To see this, calculate

$$\begin{aligned} \delta \mathcal{H}_E[\Psi] &= \frac{\langle \delta\Psi, \mathbb{H}\Psi \rangle + \langle \Psi, \mathbb{H}\delta\Psi \rangle}{\langle \Psi, \Psi \rangle} - \langle \Psi, \mathbb{H}\Psi \rangle \frac{\langle \delta\Psi, \Psi \rangle + \langle \Psi, \delta\Psi \rangle}{\langle \Psi, \Psi \rangle^2} \\ &= \frac{\langle \delta\Psi, \rangle \langle \Psi, \Psi \mathbb{H} \rangle - \langle \Psi, \mathbb{H}\Psi \rangle \langle \Psi \rangle + \langle \rangle \langle \Psi, \Psi \mathbb{H} \rangle - \langle \Psi, \mathbb{H}\Psi \rangle \langle \Psi, \delta\Psi \rangle}{\langle \Psi, \Psi \rangle^2}, \end{aligned}$$

for arbitrary small $\delta\Psi$, to first order in $\|\delta\Psi\|$, and this vanishes when $\Psi = \Phi_E$. What is more, it follows from the second line that if $\delta \mathcal{H}_E[\Psi] = 0$

for arbitrary small $\delta\Phi$, then $(\Phi, \delta(H\Phi)) = (\Phi, H\delta\Phi) = 0$,¹² which implies that Φ is an eigenfunction of H with the eigenvalue $E = (\Phi, H\Phi)/(\Phi, \Phi)$. Therefore, we have the following:

Theorem 8.1 The functional $\mathcal{E}_H(\Phi)$ defined by (8.12) is stationary over $\Phi = \Phi_H$ if and only if Φ_H is an eigenfunction of H with the eigenvalue $E = \mathcal{E}_H(\Phi_H)$.

In view of this theorem, the point spectrum of H may be defined as the set of those values of $\mathcal{E}_H(\Phi)$ at which this functional is stationary.

We can say more: if E_0 is the energy of the ground state, i.e., the smallest eigenvalue of H , then for all Φ ,

$$\mathcal{E}_H(\Phi) \geq E_0,$$

as is easily seen¹³ by expanding Φ on the basis of the eigenstates of H . So at $\Phi = \Phi_{H_0}$ the stationary point of $\mathcal{E}$ is actually a global minimum with the value E_0 . This implies that if we have a pretty good approximation Φ to the ground state Φ_{H_0} , then the value of $\mathcal{E}_H(\Phi)$ is a very good approximation to the ground-state energy. We can put it this way: if the trial function Φ^{approx} differs from the exact eigenfunction Φ^{exact} by an unknown error-vector of order ε ,

$$\Phi^{\text{approx}} = \Phi^{\text{exact}} + \varepsilon\Phi',$$

then the eigenvalue calculated as the expectation value of H in the state Φ^{approx} ,

$$\mathcal{E}_H(\Phi^{\text{approx}}) = E^{\text{approx}} = E^{\text{exact}} + \varepsilon^2\varepsilon + \dots,$$

is correct with an error of order ε^2 . This explains why the perturbation of a state vector, calculated by means of (8.11) and the use of a state vector that is correct to first order, leads to an eigenvalue that is correct to second order, and why the zeroth-order state is sufficient to calculate the eigenvalue to first order. Moreover, the thus calculated approximate eigenvalue always lies above E_0 . As a result, the perturbation result (8.15) can be sharpened for the ground state,

$$E_0^{\text{approx}} \leq E_0^{\text{ex}} + \Delta E_0 = E^{\text{ex}} \sum_{j=1}^n \frac{|E_{H_0}^j|^2}{E_0^{\text{ex}} - E_j^{\text{ex}}} + \dots \quad (8.17)$$

Suppose the functional $\mathcal{E}_H(\Phi)$ is restricted to vectors Φ that are orthogonal to the ground state Φ_0 . In that case the value of the so restricted functional is never less than the energy of the first excited state,¹⁴

$$\mathcal{E}_H(\Phi)_{(\Phi, \Phi_0)=0} \geq E_1.$$

¹²That you conclude that is not just coincidental, and thus, replacing $\delta\Phi$ by $i\delta\Phi$, that its imaginary part vanishes.

¹³Show it.

¹⁴Show it.

and it attains its global minimum there.

The important lesson to be learned is that for numerical purposes, the employment of a stationary expression such as

$$E = \langle \Psi | H | \Psi \rangle / \langle \Psi | \Psi \rangle, \quad (5.13)$$

has great advantages over others, such as

$$E = \langle \Phi, H \Phi \rangle / \langle \Phi, \Phi \rangle,$$

with an arbitrary Φ , which is equally correct but not stationary near the exact state Ψ_0 . After all, every numerically given eigenfunction is inevitably an approximation, and the calculation of the energy by means of the stationary formula minimizes the resulting error.

To use the variational method as a practical calculational tool, one usually starts with a family of trial functions $\Phi(\alpha)$ that depend on one or more parameters α and that are preferably chosen so as to resemble (say, in the configuration representation) in some rough way the shape of the anticipated eigenfunction. One then calculates $f(\alpha) \equiv \langle \Phi | H | \Phi \rangle$ and finds the value α_0 of α at which $f(\alpha)$ has a minimum; the best approximation to the ground-state energy obtainable from this chosen family of trial functions is then $E_0^{\text{approx}} = f(\alpha_0)$. Furthermore, if $\Phi(\alpha_0)$ is a good approximation to the exact eigenstate, then E_0^{approx} is an even better approximation to the exact ground-state energy E_0 ; moreover, we can be sure that $E_0^{\text{approx}} \leq E_0^{\text{exact}}$. The approximation can be made better and better by using trial functions with more and more parameters. This is, in fact, how most eigenvalues of complicated Hamiltonians of physical systems are calculated in practice in order to be compared with experimental results.

5.1.7 The Helium atom

Consider the Hamiltonian of the helium atom,

$$H = -\frac{\hbar^2}{2M}(\nabla_1^2 + \nabla_2^2) - \frac{Ze^2}{r_1} - \frac{Ze^2}{r_2} + \frac{e^2}{r_{12}} = H_0 + H', \quad (5.14)$$

where

$$H_0 \equiv -\frac{\hbar^2}{2M}(\nabla_1^2 + \nabla_2^2) - \frac{Ze^2}{r_1} - \frac{Ze^2}{r_2}, \quad H' \equiv \frac{e^2}{r_{12}}.$$

Since $E_0^{(0)} \equiv \langle \Psi_0 | H_0 | \Psi_0 \rangle = -Z^2 a_0^2 / 2a_0$, with $a_0 = \hbar^2 / (Me^2)$, is the ground-state energy of a hydrogenic atom of nuclear charge Z , the ground-state energy of H_0 , in which the two electrons don't interact with one another, is $E_0 = 4E_0^{(0)}$, and the normalized wave function is the product of the two hydrogen wave functions, given by (see Section 4.2.5)

$$\varphi = \frac{8}{a_0^3} e^{-2a_0^{-1}(r_1+r_2)/a_0}, \quad (5.15)$$

The first-order energy shift owing to the interaction $\mathbf{H}$ between the two electrons is therefore

$$\Delta E = \frac{64\pi^2}{r_0^3 a_0^3} \int d^3r_1 d^3r_2 \frac{e^{-2(r_1+r_2)/a_0}}{|r_1-r_2|}, \quad (6.54)$$

an integral that I will ask you do as a homework problem. The result is

$$\Delta E = \frac{5}{2} (E_H) = \frac{5}{4} \frac{e^2}{a_0},$$

so that the shifted ground-state energy is given by

$$E_0^{\text{ex}} = (-6 + \frac{5}{2})(E_H) = -\frac{11}{4} \frac{e^2}{a_0} = -2.75 \frac{e^2}{a_0}. \quad (6.55)$$

Since the interaction energy, as you will notice, is not a small fraction of the energy of the system, first-order perturbation theory is not likely to be a very good approximation. Therefore, we are going to use the variational method to improve it, using the functional (6.41), whose value at ψ of (6.44) is just (6.55). In place of (6.44), we employ as normalized trial function

$$\psi_T = \frac{Z^3}{\pi a_0^3} e^{-Z(r_1+r_2)/a_0}, \quad (6.57)$$

which would be appropriate for an atom of nuclear charge Z instead of 2. With this wave function, you find¹⁹

$$\langle -\frac{\hbar^2}{2m} \nabla^2 \rangle = Z^3 \frac{e^2}{2a_0}, \quad \langle \frac{1}{r} \rangle = \frac{Z}{a_0}, \quad \langle \frac{1}{r_{12}} \rangle = \frac{5}{8} \frac{Z}{a_0},$$

so that

$$\langle \mathbf{H} \rangle = \frac{e^2}{a_0} (Z^3 - 4Z + \frac{5}{8}Z) = \frac{e^2}{a_0} (Z^3 - \frac{27}{8}Z).$$

Using Z as the variational parameter, this expression is to be minimized with the result²¹

$$Z_{\text{min}} = \frac{27}{10}, \quad \langle \mathbf{H} \rangle_{\text{min}} = -\left(\frac{27}{10}\right)^3 \frac{e^2}{a_0} = -2.804 \frac{e^2}{a_0}, \quad (6.58)$$

which is to be compared to the experimental value, $E_0^{\text{expt}} = -2.804e^2/a_0$. Thus the variational procedure has obviously improved the agreement. The physical interpretation of the fact that a Z value of $27/10$ leads to a better result than $Z = 2$ is that each of the orbital electrons shields the Coulomb potential seen by the other, so that the effective nuclear charge that binds

¹⁹Verify these equations.

²¹Verify this.

then both in $Z_{\text{eff}} = 27/18 \approx 1.5$. More-complicated trial functions have been used to calculate better approximations to the ground-state energy, and there is quite satisfactory agreement between theoretical and experimental results. (In Section 9.1 we shall return to other aspects of the helium atom, such as auto-ionization and isotopic scattering.)

6.3.3 Scattering

The variational method may also be applied to scattering problems. Consider the calculation of phase shifts for a central potential $V(r)$. Any regular solution of the radial Schrödinger equation for given $l \geq 0$ and $k > 0$ can be so normalized that its asymptotic form for large r is given by

$$\varphi(r) \sim a_p \cos(kr - \frac{\pi}{2}l) + k^{-1} \sin(kr - \frac{\pi}{2}l) \quad (6.60)$$

the number a_p then determines the phase shift by [see (4.41)]

$$a_p = k^{-1} \tan \delta_l. \quad (6.61)$$

In other words, if a regular solution φ of

$$\mathbf{H}_l \varphi = k^2 \varphi, \quad (6.62)$$

with

$$\mathbf{H}_l \equiv -\frac{d^2}{dr^2} + \frac{l(l+1)}{r^2} + \frac{2M}{\hbar^2} V(r), \quad (6.63)$$

is normalized so that

$$\lim_{r \rightarrow \infty} [k \varphi(r) \sin(kr - \frac{\pi}{2}l) + \varphi'(r) \cos(kr - \frac{\pi}{2}l)] = 1, \quad (6.64)$$

and a_p is defined by

$$a_p \equiv \lim_{r \rightarrow \infty} [\varphi(r) \cos(kr - \frac{\pi}{2}l) - k^{-1} \varphi'(r) \sin(kr - \frac{\pi}{2}l)], \quad (6.65)$$

then (6.60) determines the phase shift. If such a solution is inserted in the functional defined by

$$\mathcal{H}(\varphi) \equiv \lim_{r \rightarrow \infty} [\varphi(r) \cos(kr - \frac{\pi}{2}l) - k^{-1} \varphi'(r) \sin(kr - \frac{\pi}{2}l)] - \int_0^\infty dr \varphi(\mathbf{H}_l - k^2)\varphi, \quad (6.66)$$

the integral vanishes, with the result that $\mathcal{H}(\varphi) = a_p$. Moreover, if we require that the function φ be regular at the origin and have the asymptotic form (6.64) with an unknown a_p , then you will easily verify¹⁸ by two integrations by parts, that its first variation over a regular solution of (6.62) vanishes:

$$\delta \mathcal{H}(\varphi) = 0.$$

¹⁸The k .

This means that the phase shift δ_1 can be calculated by inserting an exact regular solution φ of (8.81) with the asymptotic normalization (8.83) in the functional, which then has the value

$$P[\varphi] = \alpha_1 = k^{-1} \tan \delta_1.$$

On the other hand, if φ is an arbitrary trial function (not necessarily a solution of (8.81)) that vanishes at the origin, has the asymptotic normalization (8.83), and is a good approximation to a regular solution of (8.81), then the calculated value of $P[\varphi]$ will be a very good approximation to the value of α_1 that determines the exact phase shift δ_1 by (8.83). For numerical calculations of the phase shift from a numerical solution of (8.81) it is therefore much preferable and likely to yield more accurate results to employ (8.83) rather than simply (8.84).

6.4 Problems and Exercises

1. Use the WKB approximation to show that an attractive potential in three dimensions that falls off like r^{-2} for large r has an infinite number of bound states if $\alpha \leq \beta$. What is the value of β obtained in this way?
2. A particle of zero angular momentum is subject to the potential

$$V(r) = \begin{cases} -V_0 & \text{if } r < a_0, \\ \alpha_0/r & \text{if } r > a_0, \end{cases}$$

where $\alpha_0 > 0$ and $V_0 > 0$. Use the WKB approximation to calculate the transmission probability if the particle is inside the well and has the energy E . (The result is known as Gamow's formula.) From this, estimate the probability per unit time for the particle to get out, and hence the lifetime of the state.

3. Show that the WKB approximation gives the correct energy eigenvalues for all states of the harmonic oscillator.
4. Consider the energy levels of a double potential well with a high barrier in the center, as shown in Figure 2.5. As we saw in Chapter 3, the levels are almost degenerate. By regarding the splitting of the levels as giving rise to "tunnels" that describe the passing back and forth of a particle from one well to the other, calculate the approximate energy split by means of the transmission coefficient in the WKB approximation.
5. Calculate the transmission coefficient for the penetration of the barrier potential $V = A - \frac{1}{2}\alpha^2 x^2$ at an energy $E < A$ in the WKB approximation.
6. Show that for any two vectors $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$,

$$2 \int d^3x \, \vec{a}(\vec{x}) \cdot \vec{b}(\vec{x}) \cdot \vec{r} = \vec{a} \cdot \vec{b}.$$

7. Do the integral in (3.54), using the expansion (D.8).
8. Consider a particle of mass M free to move along the x -axis, subject to the potential

$$V = \frac{4\sqrt{2}M}{\hbar} A|x|, \quad A > 0.$$

(a) Use the variational method to find a reasonable approximation to the ground-state energy. Is the exact ground-state energy likely to be greater than your result, or smaller?

(b) By a similar method, find an approximation to the lowest energy of a state of odd parity.

9. A rotationally invariant Hamiltonian of a spinless particle is subject to a perturbation $\mathbf{H}'$ that is the z -component of a vector. In first-order perturbation theory, calculate the energy shifts of the s and p bound states, assuming that there is no accidental degeneracy.
10. Consider a rigid spherically symmetric system whose center is fixed and whose moment of inertia about that center is I . Write down its kinetic energy and add the perturbation $\mathbf{H}' = \kappa(\mathbf{L}_x\mathbf{L}_y + \mathbf{L}_y\mathbf{L}_x)$. Calculate the energies of the first four levels in first-order perturbation theory. Is this answer an approximation or is it exact?
11. Consider a hydrogen atom inserted in a constant electric field. What are the good quantum numbers for the atom in that situation? Use ordinary first-order perturbation theory for a weak electric field to calculate the first-order energy shifts of all the levels of the atom. Is this answer reliable?
12. Calculate the energy eigenvalues for the anharmonic oscillator, whose Hamiltonian is given by

$$\mathbf{H} = \mathbf{p}^2/2M + \frac{1}{2}M\omega^2\mathbf{x}^2 + \alpha\mathbf{x}^4$$

for small α to first order in α .

13. Calculate the second-order energy shifts in a one-dimensional harmonic oscillator subject to the perturbation $\mathbf{H}' = \alpha\mathbf{x}^4$. Does this system actually have bound states? Comment and explain.
14. Use a trial function of the form $\psi(r) = e^{-\alpha r}$ to approximate the ground state of a particle of mass M and charge e in the Coulomb potential $-e/r$. Is the result a good approximation?
15. Two one-dimensional harmonic oscillators of the same mass and identical frequencies are weakly coupled; the Hamiltonian is given by

$$\mathbf{H} = \frac{\mathbf{p}_1^2 + \mathbf{p}_2^2}{2M} + \frac{1}{2}M\omega^2(\mathbf{x}_1^2 + \mathbf{x}_2^2) + \alpha\mathbf{x}_1\mathbf{x}_2.$$

Calculate the three lowest energy eigenvalues to first order in α .

16. The proton is actually not a point charge but has a charge distribution whose r.m.s. radius is $\approx 0.8 \times 10^{-15}$ m. Show that electronic states are much more sensitive to the finite nucleus size than are states of highest angular momentum, and by how much. (What is the physical reason for this?) Estimate the energy shifts for the 1s and 2s levels in

hydrogen by assuming that the proton's charge is uniformly spread over a sphere, and compare your result with the literature's splitting. How big are these effects for a muon bound to a proton? What about a bound system consisting of a proton and an antiproton?

17. A particle of mass M is bound by a potential that has the form $V(r) = -Ar^{-2} \sin(\pi r/E)$ for $r < E$, and $V = 0$ for $r > E$, with $4M^2A/\hbar^2 = \pi^2$. Use the variational method with a trial function $e^{-\alpha r}$ to get a good limit on the lowest-energy eigenvalue.
18. Using the variational method and the trial function $\psi(r) = e^{-\alpha|x|}$ find an approximation to the ground-state energy of a particle of mass M in one dimension, subject to the potential $V(x) = \frac{1}{2}M\omega^2x^2$. Is the result a good approximation?
19. Consider a rotating system subject to the Hamiltonian

$$H_0 = \hat{L}^2/2I + A\hat{L}_z^2$$

with $AI < \frac{1}{2}$ and a small perturbation $H' = \alpha \hat{L}_z^2$. Find the energies of the four lowest levels in first-order perturbation theory.

Static Magnetic Fields

7.1 The Lorentz Precession

A magnetic field $\vec{B}(\vec{r})$ can be generated by the vector potential

$$\vec{A}(\vec{r}) = \frac{1}{4\pi} \nabla \times \int d^3r' \frac{\vec{B}(\vec{r}')}{|\vec{r} - \vec{r}'|}, \quad (7.1)$$

so that $\vec{B} = \nabla \times \vec{A}$. As we saw in Section 2.4, this vector potential modifies itself in the Hamiltonian of a particle of charge e in the form

$$\mathbf{H} = \frac{1}{2m} \left(\vec{p} - \frac{e}{c} \vec{A} \right)^2 + V. \quad (7.2)$$

If the field $\vec{B}$ is uniform, the vector potential can be taken to be

$$\vec{A} = \frac{1}{2} \vec{B} \times \vec{r}$$

therefore in this case

$$\begin{aligned} \left(\vec{p} - \frac{e}{c} \vec{A} \right)^2 &= \vec{p}^2 + \frac{e^2}{c^2} \vec{A}^2 - \frac{2e}{c} (\vec{p} \cdot \vec{A} + \vec{A} \cdot \vec{p}) \\ &= \vec{p}^2 + \frac{e^2}{2c^2} \vec{A}^2 - \frac{e}{2\pi} (\vec{p} \cdot \vec{B} \times \vec{r} + \vec{B} \times \vec{r} \cdot \vec{p}) \\ &= \vec{p}^2 + \frac{e^2}{2c^2} \vec{A}^2 - 2M\mu_B \vec{B} \cdot \vec{L}, \end{aligned}$$

where $\hat{L} = \mathbf{r} \times \hat{\mathbf{p}}/\hbar$ is the orbital angular momentum operator in units of $\hbar$, and

$$m \frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dt} = \frac{e\hbar}{2Mc} \hat{L}.$$

Thus the Hamiltonian of a particle of charge e in the presence of a static, uniform magnetic field and no other forces becomes

$$\mathbf{H} = \frac{\hat{\mathbf{p}}^2}{2M} + \frac{e^2}{2Mc^2} \hat{\mathbf{L}}^2 - \mu_B \hat{L}_z \cdot \hat{B}, \quad (7.13)$$

or, for a sufficiently weak magnetic field (so that the Larmor term in the moving particle is small compared to the centrifugal term, $m\Omega_L^2/c^2 \ll \hbar^2/c^2 M^2$), more simply

$$\mathbf{H} = \frac{\hat{\mathbf{p}}^2}{2M} - \mu_B \hat{L}_z \cdot \hat{B}, \quad (7.14)$$

the last term being the energy of the effective magnetic moment of the moving charged particle in a magnetic field. As mentioned in Chapter 3, the factor by which this magnetic moment differs from the angular momentum is called the gyromagnetic ratio, and its magnitude μ_B for an electron is the Bohr magneton, whose numerical value is

$$\mu_B = e\hbar/2Mc = 9.27 \times 10^{-24} \text{ ergs/gauss}.$$

Equation (7.13) allows us to write down the equations of motion for the angular momentum in the form

$$i\hbar \frac{d}{dt} \hat{L} = [\hat{L}, \mathbf{H}] = -\mu_B [\hat{L}, \hat{L} \cdot \hat{B}]$$

because the first term in (7.13) is invariant under rotations and hence commutes with $\hat{L}$. The commutation relations (2.32) therefore yield the equations of motion

$$\frac{d\hat{L}}{dt} = \frac{e\hbar}{2Mc} \hat{L} \times \hat{B}, \quad (7.15)$$

just as classically. The result is a precession of the angular momentum vector about the magnetic field¹ with the Larmor frequency

$$\omega_L = \frac{e\hbar}{2Mc} \frac{dB}{\hbar} = \frac{eB}{Mc} \quad (7.16)$$

if B is the magnitude of the magnetic field.

Let us find the energy eigenvalues of the Hamiltonian (7.13). In the configuration representation, the time-independent Schrödinger equation has the form

$$\left[-\frac{\hbar^2}{2M} (\nabla^2 + i \frac{e}{c} \hat{B}^2 + \nabla^2) \right] \psi = E\psi. \quad (7.17)$$

¹ Show this.

Consider the simplest case, a uniform magnetic field H_0 in the z -direction, and no other potential. Such a magnetic field can be generated by the vector potential

$$A_z = -\frac{1}{2}Hy, \quad A_y = \frac{1}{2}Hx, \quad A_x = 0.$$

In cylindrical coordinates, the Schrödinger equation then reads²

$$\left[-\frac{\partial^2}{\partial \rho^2} - \frac{1}{\rho} \frac{\partial}{\partial \rho} - \frac{1}{\rho^2} \frac{\partial^2}{\partial \phi^2} - \frac{\partial^2}{\partial z^2} + \frac{\rho^2}{4R_0^2} + \left(\frac{1}{R_0^2} \frac{\partial}{\partial \phi} \right) \right] \psi = \frac{2ME}{\hbar^2} \psi,$$

where

$$R_0 \equiv \sqrt{\frac{\hbar c}{eH_0}}$$

is the cyclotron radius. The assumption that ψ has the form $\psi = f(\rho)P(\phi, z)$, as in the usual separation of variables, leads to $P(\phi) = e^{ik\phi}$. Subsequently expanding the z -dependence of $P(\rho, \phi)$ in a Fourier series

$$P(\rho, \phi) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} e^{ik_n \phi} R_n(\rho)$$

yields the following differential equation for $R_n(\rho)$

$$\left[-\frac{\partial^2}{\partial \rho^2} - \frac{1}{\rho} \frac{\partial}{\partial \rho} + \frac{n^2}{\rho^2} + \frac{\rho^2}{4R_0^2} \right] R_n(\rho) = \left(\frac{2ME}{\hbar^2} - k^2 + \frac{n^2}{R_0^2} \right) R_n(\rho). \quad (7.5)$$

For comparison, consider the Schrödinger equation of an isotropic harmonic oscillator of mass M in two dimensions

$$\left[-\frac{\hbar^2}{2M} \nabla^2 + \frac{1}{2} M \omega_0^2 (x^2 + y^2) \right] \psi^{\text{osc}} = E \psi^{\text{osc}},$$

with ω_0 as defined by (7.5). In polar coordinates, after the same separation of variables as before, this becomes

$$\left[-\frac{\partial^2}{\partial \rho^2} - \frac{1}{\rho} \frac{\partial}{\partial \rho} + \frac{n^2}{\rho^2} + \frac{M^2 \omega_0^2}{2} \rho^2 \right] R_n^{\text{osc}} = \frac{2ME}{\hbar^2} R_n^{\text{osc}}. \quad (7.6)$$

The spectrum of the two-dimensional harmonic oscillator is easily obtained from that of the one-dimensional one, because in Cartesian coordinates the eigenfunctions are simply products of those in one dimension, that is, they are of the form

$$\psi_{n_1, n_2}(x, y) = R_{n_1}(1/\sqrt{M\omega_0/2})x R_{n_2}(1/\sqrt{M\omega_0/2})y \exp \left[-\frac{M\omega_0}{2} (x^2 + y^2) \right],$$

²Where this.

where the M_n are Hermite polynomials, and the energy eigenvalues are the sums of those for the two one-dimensional oscillators

$$E_n^{(0)} = \hbar\omega_c \left(n_1 + \frac{1}{2} + n_2 + \frac{1}{2} \right), \quad n_1, n_2 = 0, 1, 2, \dots$$

Since M_n is a polynomial of order n , the highest powers of $\cos \phi$ and $\sin \phi$ in $\psi_{n, m}(\phi, z)$ are $\cos^{n_1} \phi$ and $\sin^{n_2} \phi$; this implies that (a) for a given value of n , as in (7.8), we must have $n_1 = n_2$, so that the polynomials in $\cos \phi$ and $\sin \phi$ can add up to $e^{in\phi} = (\cos \phi + i \sin \phi)^n$, and (b) as a function of ϕ , for a given value of $n = n_1 = n_2$ there are no Fourier components of order higher than $|m| = 2n$ (in other words, for a given value of n , we must have $2n \geq |m|$). It follows that the eigenvalues of (7.8) are $2M E_n^{(0)}/\hbar^2$, with

$$E_n^{(0)} = \hbar\omega_c \left(2n + \frac{1}{2} \right), \quad n = |m|, |m| + 1, |m| + 2, \dots$$

However, since $M\omega_c/\hbar = 1/(2R^2)$, the operator in (7.8) is identical to that in (7.5), therefore, its eigenvalues are

$$\frac{2M}{\hbar^2} E_n = K^2 + \frac{m}{R^2} = \frac{2M}{\hbar^2} \hbar\omega_c (2n + 1) = E_n^{(0)} (2n + 1),$$

implying that the energies of the charged particle in the magnetic field are

$$E_n = \hbar\omega_c \left(n + \frac{1}{2} \right) + \frac{1}{2} \frac{K^2}{M}, \quad n = 1, 2, \dots \quad (7.10)$$

where $\omega_c = \hbar\omega/\hbar M = \hbar\omega_c$ is the cyclotron frequency, and for each given value of n , the allowed values of m are $|m| \leq 2n$. The term $1/2 K^2/M$ is, of course, nothing but the part of the kinetic energy owing to the motion in the direction of the magnetic field, which is unaffected by that field, just as classically. So, the circular projection of the classical motion of a charged particle on the plane perpendicular to the magnetic field is quantized, with an energy spectrum equal to that of a simple harmonic oscillator of the cyclotron frequency, while the component of the motion in the direction of the magnetic field retains its continuous spectrum.

It is interesting to note that the problem can also be solved by adopting a different gauge for the vector potential, in which

$$A_x = -By, \quad A_y = A_z = 0,$$

so that (7.7) becomes

$$\left[-\frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} - \frac{\partial^2}{\partial y^2} - \frac{\partial^2}{\partial z^2} - \frac{2By}{R_0^2} \frac{\partial}{\partial z} + \frac{p^2}{R_0^2} \right] \psi = \frac{2ME}{\hbar^2} \psi. \quad (7.11)$$

The ansatz

$$\psi = e^{iKx + imz} f(y),$$

(which is justified by the fact that (7.11) does not contain the variables x and y , so that the Hamiltonian commutes with the x and y components of the momentum, as a result of which these momentum components are conserved) leads to the differential equation³ for f

$$-f'' + \frac{(x + ik_0)^2}{R_0^2} f = \left(\frac{2ME}{\hbar^2} - k^2 \right) f, \quad (7.12)$$

which is identical to the equation of a simple one-dimensional harmonic oscillator with the cyclotron frequency ω_c , but with its center displaced to $y_0 = \frac{\hbar^2}{2e} - kR_0^2$. The resulting energy eigenvalues agree with (7.10), and the (non-normalized) eigenfunctions are given by

$$\psi_n = e^{ik_0 y} H_n \left(\frac{x - y_0}{R_0} \right) e^{-\frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{x - y_0}{R_0} \right)^2 / \lambda_D^2}, \quad (7.13)$$

in terms of Hermite polynomials (see Appendix D.3). The (real) value of k being arbitrary, the center y_0 of the motion is arbitrary as well, and there is an infinite degeneracy.

7.2 The Aharonov-Bohm Effect

As you know, classically it is only the magnetic field that can have any physical effects, not the vector potential, which is subject to gauge transformations. However, in quantum mechanics, this is not so, as the following will demonstrate.

Suppose there is a magnetic field $\vec{B}$ that is confined to a restricted region Ω in space (such as the interior of a solenoid), and the corresponding vector potential is (to within a gauge transformation) given by $\vec{A}$ so that $\vec{B} = \nabla \times \vec{A}$. In the region $\bar{\Omega}$ outside Ω , this vector potential does not necessarily vanish, but since there $\nabla \times \vec{A} = 0$, it follows that the line integral $\int_C d\sigma^\mu \cdot \vec{A}$ is independent of the path of integration,⁴ and $\vec{A}$ is a well-defined function of $\vec{r}$ such that $\vec{A} = \nabla \int_C d\sigma^\mu \cdot \vec{A}$. Consequently, you easily verify that

$$\nabla \cdot e^{i\int_C d\sigma^\mu \cdot \vec{A}} = \exp \left[i\int_C d\sigma^\mu \cdot \vec{A} \right] \nabla \exp \left[-i\int_C d\sigma^\mu \cdot \vec{A} \right],$$

which implies that if the boundary conditions associated with (7.7) force the wave function ψ to vanish in the region where $\vec{B} \neq 0$, that is, the particle is kept away from the magnetic field, the new wave function

$$\psi'(\vec{r}) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \psi(\vec{r}) \exp \left[-i\int_C d\sigma^\mu \cdot \vec{A} \right]$$

³Show this.

⁴Prove this.

satisfies the Schrödinger equation

$$\left[-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m} \nabla^2 + V \right] \psi = E\psi;$$

the vector potential has been transformed away, making itself felt, however, in the phase of the wave function.

Suppose, then, that a coherent beam of charged particles is split, with one half passing to the left and the other half passing to the right of an infinitely long solenoid with a magnetic field inside, with no penetration of the particles possible. As the split beam is recombined, their two halves have different phases, because the line integrals for the two wave functions are different, and they will show interference effects from the phase difference.

$$\begin{aligned} & \left| \exp \left[-i \frac{e}{\hbar c} \int_{\text{path 1}} \mathbf{A}^\mu \cdot d\mathbf{r} \right] - \exp \left[-i \frac{e}{\hbar c} \int_{\text{path 2}} \mathbf{A}^\mu \cdot d\mathbf{r} \right] \right|^2 \\ &= \left| \exp \left[-i \frac{e}{\hbar c} \left(\int_{\text{path 1}} - \int_{\text{path 2}} \right) \mathbf{A}^\mu \cdot d\mathbf{r} \right] - 1 \right|^2 \\ &= \left| \exp \left[-i \frac{e}{\hbar c} \oint \mathbf{A}^\mu \cdot d\mathbf{r} \right] - 1 \right|^2 = 4 \sin^2 \left(\frac{e}{\hbar c} \Phi \right), \end{aligned}$$

where Φ is the total magnetic flux in the interior of the solenoid. The resulting observable interference fringes can be experimentally manipulated by changing the current in the solenoid and hence the magnetic flux Φ . This shows that the vector potential has detectable effects in a region of space in which the magnetic field vanishes. Even though the charged particles are totally excluded from the region of the magnetic field, the fact that, according to (7.1), there has to be a nonvanishing vector potential exterior to the field leads to consequences which have in fact been experimentally observed. This is called the *Aharonov-Bohm effect*.

7.3 Charged Particles with Spin

A charged spin-1/2 particle of mass M , such as an electron, automatically has a magnetic moment

$$\vec{\mu} = \mu_B \vec{\sigma},$$

where μ_B is the Bohr magneton. The magnitude of this magnetic moment, as we shall see in Chapter 13, requires the relativistic Dirac equation for an explanation in the non-relativistic Schrödinger equation. Its inclusion by Pauli was ad hoc. Moreover, that the magnitude of the magnetic moment of the electron is exactly one Bohr magneton is an approximation, albeit

an excellent one, corrections to which are their existence to the effects of quantum electrodynamics.

The relativistic Hamiltonian of an electron in the presence of a static magnetic field thus includes the “Pauli term” and is of the form

$$\mathbf{H} = \frac{1}{2M} \left(\mathbf{p} - \frac{e}{c} \mathbf{A} \right)^2 + V - \mu_B \boldsymbol{\sigma} \cdot \mathbf{B}, \quad (7.14)$$

which for a uniform magnetic field $\mathbf{B}$ becomes

$$\mathbf{H} = \mathbf{H}_0 + \mathbf{H}_1, \quad \mathbf{H}_0 \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \frac{\mathbf{p}^2}{2M} + V, \quad (7.15)$$

$$\mathbf{H}_1 \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \frac{\hbar^2}{4Mc^2} \mathbf{B} \cdot \boldsymbol{\sigma} = \mu_B \boldsymbol{\sigma} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{B}} = \frac{\hbar^2}{4Mc^2} \mathbf{B} \cdot (\mathbf{B} + \hat{\mathbf{L}}) \cdot \mathbf{B}, \quad (7.16)$$

where $\hat{\mathbf{L}}$ is the spin angular momentum (in units of $\hbar$) of the particle.

Just as for the orbital angular momentum, we can now derive the equation of motion for the spin angular momentum, namely,

$$\frac{d\hat{\mathbf{L}}}{dt} = \frac{e}{Mc} \hat{\mathbf{L}} \times \mathbf{B}, \quad (7.17)$$

which leads to a precession about the magnetic field with the cyclotron frequency $\omega_L = eB/Mc$, i.e., twice that of the orbital precession ω_C .

7.3.1 Spin-orbit coupling and the fine structure

The first of the consequences of effective internal magnetic fields in atoms is a relativistic phenomenon that arises from the fact that a magnetic moment moving in the static electric field of the nucleus sees an effective magnetic field

$$\mathbf{B} = -\frac{1}{c} \frac{\mathbf{v}}{r} \times \mathbf{r}, \quad (7.18)$$

which exerts a torque on it.

In order to prove (7.18), consider the torque on the magnetic moment of an electron moving in the static electric field produced by a point charge. To begin with, the effective electric dipole moment $\hat{\mathbf{p}}$ of a magnetic dipole $\hat{\mathbf{p}}$ moving with the velocity $\mathbf{v}$ is, to first order in v/c ,

$$\hat{\mathbf{p}} = \frac{\mathbf{v}}{c} \times \hat{\mathbf{p}},$$

so that the torque on it exerted by an electric field $\mathbf{E}$ is given by

$$\hat{\mathbf{p}} \times \mathbf{E} = \left(\frac{\mathbf{v}}{c} \times \hat{\mathbf{p}} \right) \times \mathbf{E}.$$

Since the equation of motion for the intrinsic angular momentum $\hat{\mathbf{L}}$ of an electron, which has a magnetic moment $\hat{\mathbf{p}} = \frac{e\hbar}{2Mc} \hat{\mathbf{L}}$, and whose motion is governed by the Newtonian

equation $M\dot{\mathbf{L}} = -e\mathbf{L}$, is given by

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d\mathbf{L}}{dt} &= \left(\frac{\mathbf{r}}{r} \times \mathbf{p}\right) \times \mathbf{B} \\ &= \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{\mathbf{r}}{r} \times \mathbf{B}\right) \times \mathbf{L} - \frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{L} \times \frac{\mathbf{r}}{r}) \times \mathbf{B} \\ &= -\frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{L} \times \frac{\mathbf{r}}{r}) \times \mathbf{B} - \frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{L} \times \mathbf{B}) \times \frac{\mathbf{r}}{r} + (\mathbf{L} \times \frac{\mathbf{r}}{r}) \times \mathbf{B} \\ &= -\frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{L} \times \frac{\mathbf{r}}{r}) \times \mathbf{B} + \frac{2\mathbf{r}}{2m\omega_B}(\frac{\mathbf{r}}{r} \times (\mathbf{L} \times \mathbf{B})) - \frac{M}{2m} \frac{\mathbf{r}}{r} \times (\mathbf{L} \times \mathbf{B}) \\ &= -\frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{L} \times \frac{\mathbf{r}}{r}) \times \mathbf{B} + \frac{1}{2}\frac{d}{dt}(\frac{\mathbf{r}}{r}) \times (\mathbf{L} \times \frac{\mathbf{r}}{r}) - \frac{1}{2}\frac{\mathbf{r}}{r} \times (\mathbf{L} \times \frac{\mathbf{r}}{r}),\end{aligned}$$

or

$$\frac{d}{dt}(\mathbf{L} - \frac{1}{2}(\frac{\mathbf{r}}{r} \times \mathbf{B}) \times \frac{\mathbf{r}}{r}) = \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{B} \times (\mathbf{L} \times \frac{\mathbf{r}}{r}) - \frac{1}{2}\frac{\mathbf{r}}{r} \times (\mathbf{L} \times \frac{\mathbf{r}}{r}),$$

which implies that, to first order in ω_B/ω ,

$$\frac{d\mathbf{L}}{dt} = \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{B} \times (\mathbf{L} \times \frac{\mathbf{r}}{r}) = \mathbf{L} \times \mathbf{B},$$

where the effective magnetic field is given by (7.18).

The unexpected factor of $\frac{1}{2}$, which owes its existence to the precession of the electron's spin, is known as the *Thomas factor* after L.B. Thomas. (Remember that the magnetic field seen by an observer moving with the velocity $\mathbf{v}$ with respect to a frame in which there is only an electric field $\mathbf{E}$ is given by $\mathbf{B} = -\frac{\mathbf{v}}{c} \times \mathbf{E}$.) As a result, the interaction energy of the electron's magnetic moment with the Coulomb field in an atom is

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{H}_{LS} &= -\boldsymbol{\mu} \cdot \mathbf{B} = -\frac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{\mu} \cdot (\mathbf{E} \times \frac{\mathbf{r}}{r}) \\ &= -\frac{e\hbar}{2c}\boldsymbol{\mu} \cdot \frac{-2\mathbf{r}}{r^3} = \frac{\boldsymbol{\mu}}{M} = \frac{e\hbar^2 e}{2M\pi^2}\boldsymbol{\mu} \cdot \mathbf{r} = \boldsymbol{\mu} \\ &= Z\mu_B^2 \frac{\mathbf{L} \cdot \mathbf{L}}{r^3},\end{aligned}\tag{7.19}$$

in which $\mathbf{L}$ is the orbital angular momentum in units of $\hbar$. Since this interaction energy depends both on the spin and the orbital angular momentum of the electron, it is called *spin-orbit coupling*. Thus the Hamiltonian of an electron in a hydrogenic atom is given by

$$\mathbf{H} = \mathbf{H}_0 + \mathbf{H}_{LS}, \quad \mathbf{H}_0 = \frac{\mathbf{p}^2}{2M} - \frac{Ze^2}{r}.\tag{7.20}$$

Let us, then, calculate the first-order energy shift due to the perturbation (7.19). Since $\mathbf{L} \cdot \mathbf{L}$ is a scalar operator and therefore invariant under active rotations of the system, it commutes with $\mathbf{J}$, and the perturbation is diagonal in the eigenvalues of $\mathbf{L}^2$, $\mathbf{J}^2$, and $\mathbf{J}_z$, so is $\mathbf{H}_0$; therefore, degenerate perturbation theory works, and the first-order energy shift is given by

$$\Delta E = Z\mu_B^2 \langle \mathbf{L} \cdot \mathbf{L} \rangle^{-1},\tag{7.21}$$

where $\hat{L} \cdot \hat{L}$ can be replaced by its eigenvalue $(j - \frac{1}{2})^2$ in the state under consideration. Because $\hat{\mathbf{P}} = (\hat{\mathbf{L}} + \hat{\mathbf{S}})^2$, we find that $(j + \frac{1}{2}) = (l + \frac{1}{2}) + \frac{1}{2} + \langle \hat{L} \cdot \hat{S} \rangle$, and therefore,

$$\langle \hat{L} \cdot \hat{S} \rangle = \begin{cases} j & \text{if } j = l + \frac{1}{2}, \\ -l + 1 & \text{if } j = l - \frac{1}{2} \end{cases} = \frac{2l(l+1)(j-\frac{1}{2})}{j+\frac{1}{2}}. \quad (7.22)$$

We will need the expectation value $\langle \hat{S} \cdot \hat{L} r^{-3} \rangle$ in hydrogenic states.

The radial Hamiltonian for a hydrogenic atom is given by

$$\hat{H}_0 = \frac{1}{2m} \left[\hat{\mathbf{p}}^2 + \frac{2ZQ_0^2 + \alpha}{r} \right] - \frac{Z\alpha^2}{r},$$

so that

$$\frac{1}{2} \langle \hat{\mathbf{p}}, \hat{H}_0 \rangle = -\frac{2ZQ_0^2 + \alpha}{2a^3} + \frac{Z\alpha^2}{a^3},$$

which allows us to evaluate $\langle l + 1 \rangle r^{-3}$; because $\langle \hat{\mathbf{p}}, \hat{H}_0 \rangle = 0$ it follows from (7.22) that²

$$\langle \hat{S} \cdot \hat{L} r^{-3} \rangle = \frac{l(j-l)}{j+\frac{1}{2}} \langle j + 1 \rangle r^{-3} = \frac{2Z(l-j)}{a^3(j+\frac{1}{2})} \langle r^{-3} \rangle, \quad (7.23)$$

where a_0 is the Bohr radius, defined in (5.17). Using the result (5.26), we therefore obtain

$$\langle \hat{S} \cdot \hat{L} r^{-3} \rangle = \frac{Z^3}{a_0^3} \frac{2l(j-l)}{(j+\frac{1}{2})(l+\frac{1}{2})}. \quad (7.24)$$

Inserting Eq. (7.24) into Eq. (7.21) yields the following spin-orbit shift:

$$\Delta E_{\text{so}}^{(1)} = \frac{Z^4 \alpha_0^3}{a_0^3} \frac{2l(j-l)}{(j+\frac{1}{2})(l+\frac{1}{2})}. \quad (7.25)$$

Therefore, the *fine structure* of the spectrum, which is the combination of the spin-orbit shift (7.25) and the relativistic shift of (5.26), in the n^{th} energy level of a hydrogenic atom, is given by

$$\Delta E_{\text{fs}}^{(1st)} = \frac{Z^4 \alpha_0^3}{a_0^3} \left[\frac{3}{4n} - \frac{1}{j+\frac{1}{2}} \right] R_F, \quad (7.26)$$

in which

$$R_F \equiv \frac{a_0^3}{2m} = \frac{1}{2} \alpha^2 \hbar c^2 \quad (7.27)$$

is the *Rydberg unit*, whose approximate numerical value, expressed as a frequency, is 100,000 MHz and in terms of which the unperturbed energies of a hydrogenic atom are given by

$$E_n^0 = -\frac{Z^2}{n^2} R_F.$$

²Notice that the factor $(j + \frac{1}{2})$ vanishes for $l = 0$, while $\langle r^{-3} \rangle$ is infinite in s -states; the combination $(j + 1) \langle r^{-3} \rangle$ is nevertheless finite and well defined.

The most remarkable feature of (7.26) is that, whereas the spin-orbit and the straight relativistic energy shifts by themselves destroy the originally present l -degeneracy, their combination manages to reestablish it!

The ground state of hydrogen, that is, the 1s-state, is shifted by $-\alpha^2/4 R_E$ while the first excited state, the degenerate 2s, 2p-state, is split into two levels, the lower one still degenerate, $2s_{1/2}$ and $2p_{1/2}$, and the upper one $2p_{3/2}$, with an energy difference of $\alpha^2/16 R_E$, which corresponds to a frequency of the radiation emitted in a transition of about 11,000 MHz or a wavelength of approximately 3 cm. The degeneracy of the $2s_{1/2}$ and $2p_{1/2}$ states was finally found in 1951 to be broken by 102 MHz in an experiment by Lamb and Retherford, a phenomenon, called the Lamb shift, that is explained by quantum electrodynamics.

7.3.2 The Zeeman effect

Consider an electron bound by a central potential $V(r)$, in the presence of a uniform external magnetic field $\vec{B}$ in the z direction that is weak enough for the term proportional to $\vec{B}^2$ in (7.18) to be negligible, and yet strong enough to dominate over the internal magnetic field (and the straight relativistic effect), so that the effective Hamiltonian is given by

$$H = H_0 + H_B, \quad H_0 \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \frac{\vec{p}^2}{2M} + \frac{Ze^2}{r}, \quad H_B \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} -\mu_B B(2\vec{L}_z + \vec{L}_s) \quad (7.28)$$

while H_{LS} and H_{ss} can be neglected. The order of magnitude of the effective magnetic field (7.18) seen by the magnetic moment of an electron in a hydrogen atom is about 10^5 gauss.⁶ Therefore, if the atom finds itself in an external magnetic field that is strong compared to this figure, the spin-orbit interaction can be considered negligible. The resulting shifts in the energy levels is called the Paschen-Back effect.

The Paschen-Back effect

Because the g -factors of the orbital and spin magnetic moments are not equal, the Hamiltonian (7.28) does not commute with $\vec{J}_z$ or with $\vec{P}_z$, so that angular momentum is not conserved, but a complete set of commuting observables is given by $\vec{L}^2, \vec{S}^2, L_z$, and S_z .

In first-order perturbation theory, the shifted energy levels are given by

$$E_n = E_n^0 - \mu_B m_{Lz} B, \quad \text{where } m_{Lz} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} m_l + 2m_s, \quad (7.29)$$

which shows that the m_l and m_s degeneracy that is there when $B = 0$ is removed.⁷ For the hydrogen atom, the 1s-state is split into two levels,

⁶Show this.

⁷Why can we use non-degenerate perturbation theory?

one shifted up by $\mu_B B$ and the other down by the same amount, resulting in an energy difference of $2\mu_B B$ between them; the originally eight-fold degenerate state $2s, 2p$ is split into five levels, each a distance $\mu_B B$ apart:

input	pert.	m_l	n	l	m_l	m_s	n	l	m_l	m_s
$1s$ ———	————	1	1	0	0	$1/2$				
	————	-1	1	0	0	$-1/2$				
$2s, 2p$ ———	————	0	2	1	1	$1/2$				
	————	1	2	1	0	$1/2$	2	1	0	$1/2$
	————	0	2	1	1	$-1/2$	2	1	-1	$1/2$
	————	-1	2	1	0	$-1/2$	2	1	0	$-1/2$
	————	-2	2	1	-1	$-1/2$				
	————									

The weak-field Zeeman effect

Next consider the Hamiltonian of an electron bound by a nucleus in the presence of an external field that is so weak that the internal effects leading to the fine structure are dominant. In that case, the starting point is an unperturbed Hamiltonian that includes $\mathbf{H}_{LS}^0$ as well as $\mathbf{H}_{LS}^0$, and $\mathbf{H}_B^0$ is the perturbation. For the unperturbed Hamiltonian $\hat{H}$ and m (where m is the eigenvalue of $\hat{J}_z$) are then good quantum numbers. Since $\mathbf{H}_B^0$ is diagonal in these quantum numbers, so that degenerate perturbation theory works, we simply need to calculate $\langle \mathbf{H}_B^0 \rangle$ in such a state. Now, since $\mathbf{H}_B^0 = -\mu_B B(\hat{L}_z + \frac{1}{2}\hat{\sigma}_z)$, we have

$$\langle \mathbf{H}_B^0 \rangle = -\mu_B B(m + \frac{1}{2}\langle \sigma_z \rangle),$$

and we need $\langle \sigma_z \rangle_{nljm, \pm \frac{1}{2}}$, which can be calculated by means of (3.73) and (3.74), with the result,

$$\langle \sigma_z \rangle_{nljm, \pm \frac{1}{2}} = \frac{j + \frac{1}{2} \pm m}{2j + 1} = \frac{l + \frac{1}{2} \mp m}{2j + 1} = 2 \frac{2m}{2j + 1}.$$

Consequently, the energy shift is given by

$$\Delta E = -m \frac{j + \frac{1}{2}}{j + \frac{1}{2}} \mu_B B,$$

which means that the weak-field Zeeman effect is

$$\Delta E = -m \frac{j + \frac{1}{2}}{j + \frac{1}{2}} \mu_B B. \quad (7.26)$$

The effective magnetic dipole moment of an atom in a weak magnetic field may be conveniently defined by

$$\mu_{\text{eff}} \equiv -\frac{\partial E}{\partial B},$$

which may be written as

$$g = \frac{2}{2 + \frac{1}{j}},$$

so that, according to (7.30), the effective g -factor of the atom is given by

$$g = \frac{j + \frac{1}{2}}{j + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2}}. \quad (7.31)$$

Note that this has the value $g = 2$ for $j = 0$ and the limit $g = 1$ as $j \rightarrow \infty$ when $l = 0$, the magnetic moment is entirely due to the spin of the electron, whereas in the limit as $l \rightarrow \infty$, the spin contribution is negligible and the magnetic moment is all due to the orbital motion.

The intermediate Zeeman effect.

If the external magnetic field is neither weak nor strong compared to the effective internal one (but still not strong enough for the J^2 -term in the Hamiltonian to have to be included), then the unperturbed Hamiltonian must be taken to be H_0 of (7.13) and the perturbation is $H'_{LS} + H'_{LS} + H'_J$. If $\pm l, m$ (again, l is the algebraic of $\mathbf{J}_1$) are used as quantum numbers, then there is j -degeneracy in the unperturbed levels, and, after writing

$$H'_J = -\mu_B g_J J_z + \frac{1}{2} \sigma_z,$$

degenerate perturbation theory requires the diagonalization of σ_z in the degenerate subspace, which has $j = l \pm \frac{1}{2}$. The calculation of the energy shift in this case will be left as an exercise; the result is

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta E_{\pm} = & \left\{ \frac{1}{j(j+1)} \right\} \left[-m\mu_B + \frac{1}{2j(j+1)} \pm \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{1 + m^2 - \frac{4m\mu_B}{j(j+1)}} \right] \\ & + \left\{ \frac{3}{4m} - \frac{1}{j+1} \right\} E_a, \quad \text{for } l \neq 0, \end{aligned} \quad (7.32)$$

and

$$\Delta E_{\pm} = 1 - 2m\mu_B B + \left\{ \frac{3}{4m} - 2 \right\} E_a \quad \text{for } l = 0, \quad (7.33)$$

where

$$E_a \equiv \frac{2^4 \mu_B^2}{3a^3} M \mu_B, \quad \mu_B \equiv \frac{e\hbar(j+1)}{2m} B.$$

In contrast to the weak-field case, in which the $\pm$ referred to $j = l \pm \frac{1}{2}$, the $\pm$ here cannot be so identified; both levels contain a superposition of the two. As a consequence of (7.32) and (7.33), the effective magnetic moment of the atom is given by

$$g = \mu_B \left\{ m + \frac{1}{2} \frac{\mu_B - \mu_B^2}{\sqrt{1 + m^2 - \frac{4m\mu_B}{j(j+1)}}} \right\}, \quad \text{for } l \neq 0, \quad (7.34)$$

which depends on $\mathcal{B}$ and is thus an induced magnetic moment; and

$$\mu = 2m\mu_B \quad \text{for } l = 0, \quad (7.33)$$

3.1.3 The hyperfine structure

In studying the structure of hydrogenic atoms we have been assuming that their nuclei are simple point charges producing an electrostatic field described by a Coulomb potential. In fact, however, atomic nuclei also have magnetic moments and therefore produce magnetic fields. In this section we shall investigate the effects of these fields.

The order of magnitude of the magnetic moment of a nucleus is roughly that of the nuclear magneton,

$$\mu_N \equiv \frac{e\hbar}{2M_N} = \frac{M}{M_N}\mu_B,$$

if M is the mass of the electron and M_N that of the nucleus. For hydrogen, the nuclear magneton is therefore about 1840 times smaller than the Bohr magneton, and correspondingly the effect on the hydrogen spectrum can be expected to be much smaller than the fine structure. The actual, experimentally measured value μ_p of the proton's magnetic moment, however, differs from μ_N , as already mentioned in Chapter 5, and it is this value that is relevant for our calculations.

The vector potential produced by a magnetic moment μ_N fixed at the origin is

$$\vec{A} = \frac{\vec{R} \times \vec{\mu}}{r^3} = -\mu_N \times \nabla \frac{1}{r}.$$

If again the $\vec{A}^2$ term is neglected, the addition to the hydrogen Hamiltonian caused by the nuclear magnetic moment will be

$$\begin{aligned} H_{\text{int}} &= -\frac{e}{Mc} \vec{p} \cdot \vec{A} - \mu_N \vec{\sigma} \cdot \vec{B} \\ &= -\frac{e}{Mc} \vec{p} \cdot \frac{\vec{R} \times \vec{F}}{r^3} + \mu_N \vec{\sigma} \cdot \nabla \times (\vec{A}_N \times \nabla r^{-1}) \\ &= -\frac{e}{Mc} \frac{\vec{R} \times \vec{F} \times \vec{p}}{r^3} + \mu_N \vec{\sigma} \cdot \nabla \times (\vec{A}_N \times \nabla r^{-1}) \\ &= -e\mu_N \frac{\vec{R} \times \vec{L}}{r^3} + \mu_N \vec{\sigma} \cdot \nabla \times (\vec{A}_N \times \nabla r^{-1}), \end{aligned}$$

but since

$$\vec{p} \times \nabla \times (\vec{A}_N \times \nabla r^{-1}) = (\vec{p} \cdot \vec{A}_N \nabla^2 - \vec{p} \cdot \nabla (\vec{A}_N \cdot \nabla)) r^{-1},$$

this becomes

$$H_{\text{int}} = -e\mu_N \frac{\vec{R} \times \vec{L}}{r^3} + e\mu_N \left[\frac{\vec{p} \cdot \vec{A}_N}{r^3} - 2 \frac{\vec{p} \cdot \vec{F} \vec{R} \cdot \vec{F}}{r^5} \right] - 4e\mu_N \vec{\sigma} \cdot \vec{A}_N r^{-1} \langle \vec{p} \cdot \vec{F} \rangle. \quad (7.34)$$

The physical meaning of the three terms in this expansion is that the first term describes the interaction of the nuclear magnetic moment with the orbital current, the second, which can also be written in the form

$$\mu_N \left[\frac{\mathbf{r} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{r}}{r^3} - 3 \frac{\mathbf{r} \cdot \nabla}{r^3} \frac{\nabla \mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{r}}{r^3} \right] = -\mu_N \mathbf{r} \cdot \nabla \mu_N \cdot \nabla r^{-1},$$

describes that of the nuclear magnetic moment with the intrinsic magnetic dipole moment of the electron, and the third is a contact term, an effect of the possibility of the electron's passing right through the nucleus.

We will calculate the level splitting that results from this perturbation in the $l=0$ state only, because the absence of fine structure in that case makes the effect most easily observable.

For $l=0$, the wave function is spherically symmetric, and for such functions we have

$$\int d^3r f(r) \left[\mathbf{r} \cdot \nabla \mu \cdot \nabla - \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{r} \cdot \mu \nabla^2 \right] r^{-1} = 0. \quad (7.37)$$

To prove (7.37) split the integral into two parts, the first extended over the interior of a sphere about the origin of radius a , the second over its exterior. For the first, we have $\nabla^2 r^{-1} = 0$ and[†]

$$A_1 = \int_{r < a} d^3r f(r) \mathbf{r} \cdot \nabla \mu \cdot \nabla r^{-1} = \int_{r < a} d^3r f(r) r^{-1} \nabla \mu \cdot \nabla r - \mu \cdot \nabla = 0.$$

For the second part,

$$\begin{aligned} A_2 &= \int_{r > a} d^3r f(r) \nabla \mu \cdot \nabla r^{-1} = \frac{1}{2} \mu \cdot \nabla r^{-1} \nabla^2 \\ &= \int_{r > a} d^3r f(r) \nabla^2 \left[\frac{1}{2} \mu \cdot \nabla r^{-1} + \frac{1}{2} \mu \cdot \nabla r^{-1} \nabla^2 \right] \\ &= f(a) \int d\Omega \frac{1}{4} \mu \cdot \mu \cdot \nabla^2 r^{-1} - \int_a^\infty dr \frac{d}{dr} f(r) \int d\Omega \frac{1}{4} \mu \cdot \mu \cdot \nabla^2 r^{-1} = 0. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore for an $l=0$ state, $\mathbf{r} \cdot \nabla \mu \cdot \nabla r^{-1}$ may be replaced by $\frac{1}{2} \mu \cdot \nabla^2 r^{-1} = -\frac{1}{4\pi} \nabla (\mu \cdot \nabla r^{-1})$, and as a result we have for l -states in the configuration representation

$$\mathbf{H}_{\text{HFS}} = -\frac{\mu_N}{3} \mu_B \mathbf{r} \cdot \nabla r^{-1} \nabla^2. \quad (7.38)$$

Let the nuclear spin be i , its spin-vector operator $\hat{\mathbf{I}}$ (both i and $\hat{\mathbf{I}}$ in units of $\hbar$), and write

$$\mu_N \equiv \frac{e\hbar}{2} \frac{g_N}{i} \hat{\mathbf{I}},$$

[†]It will not now be proven this last step in the following equation as a homework problem.

so that (7.86) becomes

$$\mathbf{H}_{\text{int}} = -\frac{8\pi}{3} \frac{(\mu_N)(\mu_N)}{i} \mathbf{p}^* \mathbf{p} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{r}}. \quad (7.90)$$

In order to calculate the first-order perturbation of the energy we therefore need the eigenvalues of $\mathbf{p} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{r}}$.

Since the atom is assumed to be in an s -state, the total angular momentum of the system (in units of $\hbar$) is given by

$$\mathbf{J} = \mathbf{L} + \mathbf{S} = \mathbf{L} + \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{S},$$

which implies that

$$\mathbf{p} = \mathbf{p} + \mathbf{L} \cdot \mathbf{p} + \frac{\mathbf{S}}{2}.$$

We obtain the eigenvalues of $\mathbf{L} \cdot \mathbf{p}$ from this, just as we found those of $\mathbf{L} \cdot \mathbf{r}$ in (7.55):

$$J(J+1) = L(L+1) + \frac{3}{4} + (\mathbf{L} \cdot \mathbf{p})^2$$

If the eigenvalues of $\mathbf{p}$ are $J(J+1)$, from which it follows that the eigenvalues of $\mathbf{L} \cdot \mathbf{p}$ are

$$(\mathbf{L} \cdot \mathbf{p})^2 = \frac{3J(J+1) - \frac{3}{4}}{J + \frac{1}{2}}, \quad J = i \pm \frac{1}{2}.$$

Therefore in an $l = 0$ state of the atom, the hyperfine structure produced by first-order perturbation theory is a doublet,

$$\langle \mathbf{H}_{\text{int}} \rangle = -\frac{8\pi}{3} \frac{(\mu_N)(\mu_N)}{i} \mu_B \mu_N^2 \frac{2i+1}{i + \frac{1}{2}} \frac{J(J+1)}{J + \frac{1}{2}},$$

which is split by the energy difference

$$\Delta E = \frac{8\pi}{3} \left(\frac{e\hbar}{2M_N} \right) \left(\frac{e\hbar}{2M_{\text{pro}}} \right) \frac{2i+1}{i} \mu_B \mu_N^2 |g(r)|^2, \quad (7.91)$$

where $\mu_B = \frac{1}{2} e\hbar / 2M_{\text{pro}} (c/h)$ is the magnitude of the nuclear magnetic moment in units of the nuclear magneton. In the ground state of a hydrogenic atom, (7.91) leads to

$$|g(r)|^2 = 4 \left(\frac{R}{a_0} \right)^3 \frac{1}{4\pi},$$

which yields the split

$$\Delta E = \frac{4}{3} \mu_B \frac{2i+1}{i} \frac{M}{M_N} Z^3 \alpha^3 \mu_N. \quad (7.92)$$

For the proton, $i = \frac{1}{2}$ and $\mu_N = 2.793$, which gives the numerical value of the frequency corresponding to the hyperfine split for the ground state of hydrogen as 1415 MHz, compared to an experimental value of 1420 MHz. The discrepancy is accounted for by the fact that the electron has an anomalous magnetic moment, about 0.1% higher than μ_B (for the discovery of which Paul Dirac was awarded the Nobel prize in 1928). Since μ_N is experimentally measured in units of the magnetic moment of the electron, this also increases μ_N by about 0.1%, resulting in a total increase in the theoretically predicted value of the hyperfine split by 0.1%, in satisfactory agreement with observation. Note that the frequency of 1420 MHz corresponds to a wavelength of 21 cm for the radiation emitted in a transition from the upper to the lower of the two levels; this is the famous 21 cm signature-line of the hydrogen spectrum.

7.4 Problems and Exercises

1. Derive (7.32) and (7.33).
2. Show that (7.32) and (7.33) go over into (7.29) and (7.30), respectively, as $q \rightarrow \infty$ and $q \rightarrow 0$.
3. A spin-1/2 particle of charge e and mass M is placed in a constant magnetic field $\mathcal{H}$. If its spin initially points in the z -direction and $\mathcal{H}$ is in the x -direction, calculate the direction of its spin at the time t .

This page intentionally left blank

Time-Dependent Hamiltonians

In this chapter we shall study problems in which the Hamiltonian depends explicitly on the time, so that energy is not conserved. Three different kinds of approximations may be applicable in such a situation. The first applies when the time-dependent part of the Hamiltonian is weak compared to the time-independent part, for which the solutions of the Schrödinger equation are assumed to be known. In that case, an analogue to the perturbation theory discussed in Chapter 4 can be used. The second kind of approximation is used when the change is very rapid like the sudden switching on and off of an external field. The third is applicable when the Hamiltonian, on the contrary, changes very slowly; for reasons to be discussed it is called the *adiabatic approximation*. The approximation methods appropriate to these three kinds of situations will be taken up in that order.

8.1 Perturbation Theory

The Hamiltonian in the Schrödinger equation

$$i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \Psi(t) = H(t) \Psi(t)$$

is now assumed to consist of two parts,

$$H(t) = H_0 + H'(t),$$

and the eigenvalues and eigenstates of the time-independent H_0 are assumed to be known. The question we would like to answer is this: if the

system is in a state $\Phi(t)$ and a measurement of $\mathbf{H}_0$ is performed, what is the probability of obtaining the result E_n (where E_n is an eigenvalue of $\mathbf{H}_0$)? The answer, of course, is that this probability is the magnitude squared of the amplitude $(\Phi_{E_n}, \Phi(t))$. Furthermore, since $\Phi(t)$ can be expanded in the form

$$\Phi(t) = \sum_n \Phi_{E_n}(t) \Phi_{E_n}, \quad \Phi_{E_n}(t) = (\Phi(t), \Phi_{E_n}),$$

in which $\Phi_{E_n}(t) = \Phi_{E_n}, \exp(-iE_n t/\hbar)$, the inner products $(\Phi_{E_n}, t, \Phi(t))$ determine everything we might want to know about $\Phi(t)$.

Use of the Schrödinger equation gives us

$$i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} (\Phi_{E_n})_1 = (E_n \mathbf{H} - \mathbf{H}_0)_1 \Phi_{E_n},$$

which means that $(\Phi_{E_n})_1$ satisfies the differential equation

$$i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} (\Phi_{E_n})_1 = (E_n \mathbf{H}')(t)_1 \Phi_{E_n}. \quad (5.1)$$

Since

$$(\Phi_{E_n})_1 = e^{iE_n t/\hbar} (\Phi_{E_n}, \Phi(t)) = (\Phi_{E_n}, e^{iE_n t/\hbar} \Phi(t)),$$

Eq. (5.1) may also be thought of as originating from the equation

$$i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \mathbf{H}(t) = \mathbf{H}'(t) \mathbf{H}(t), \quad (5.2)$$

where

$$\mathbf{H}(t) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} e^{iE_n t/\hbar} \Phi(t), \quad \mathbf{H}'(t) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} e^{iE_n t/\hbar} \mathbf{H}(t) e^{-iE_n t/\hbar}.$$

The underlined quantities are the state vectors and operators in the interaction picture (also sometimes called the *Dirac picture*). As the Schrödinger equation (5.2) shows, it stands between the Schrödinger picture, in which the state vectors carry all the time dependence and the dynamical operators are time-independent (unless they have an intrinsic time dependence), and the Heisenberg picture, in which the state vectors are constant and the dynamical operators depend on the time. Here both the state vectors and the dynamical variables vary with time, but the time dependence of the state vectors is governed by the interaction alone (i.e., by the part of the Hamiltonian that is regarded as the interaction in the particular case at hand), and the time-dependence of the dynamical operators is independent of the interaction:

$$\frac{\partial \mathbf{H}}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial \mathbf{H}}{\partial t} + \frac{i}{\hbar} [\mathbf{H}_0, \mathbf{H}].$$

Assuming that initially, at the time $t = -\infty$, the system was in the eigenstate Φ_{E_n} of $\mathbf{H}_0$, the appropriate initial condition to go with the Schrödinger equation is

$$\lim_{t \rightarrow -\infty} \|\Phi(t) - \Phi_{E_n}(t)\| = 0, \quad (5.3)$$

and hence, $|E_f|_1 \rightarrow \delta_{fi}$ as $t \rightarrow -\infty$, assuming that both E_f and E_i are point eigenvalues. The differential equation (8.2) with the initial condition (8.3) can therefore be replaced by the integral equation

$$\begin{aligned}\langle E_f \rangle_t &= \delta_{fi} + \frac{1}{i\hbar} \int_{-\infty}^t dt' \langle E_f | \mathbf{H}'(t') | i \rangle e^{i(E_f - E_i)t'/\hbar} \\ &= \delta_{fi} + \sum_j \frac{1}{i\hbar} \int_{-\infty}^t dt' \langle E_f | \mathbf{H}'(t') | E_j \rangle | i \rangle e^{i(E_f - E_j)t'/\hbar},\end{aligned}\quad (8.4)$$

where

$$|E_j\rangle_t \equiv \langle E_f | \mathbf{H}'(t') | E_j \rangle, \quad \omega_{ji} \equiv (E_j - E_i)/\hbar.$$

If the interaction $\mathbf{H}'$ is weak (or $\hbar$ is sufficiently small λ if $\mathbf{H}'$ is replaced by $\lambda \mathbf{H}'$), a first approximation to the solution of (8.4) is obtained by replacing $\langle E_j \rangle_{t'}$ in the integral by its initial value δ_{ji} , so that

$$\langle E_f \rangle_t \approx \delta_{fi} + \frac{1}{i\hbar} \int_{-\infty}^t dt' \delta_{fi} e^{i(E_f - E_i)t'/\hbar}, \quad (8.5)$$

Suppose now that the time dependence of $\mathbf{H}'$ consists simply of being turned on at the time $t = 0$ and off at $t = T$, and having the constant value $\mathbf{H}'$ from 0 to T . In that case, for $t > T$,

$$\langle E_f \rangle_t \approx \delta_{fi} - \delta_{fi} \frac{e^{i(E_f - E_i)T/\hbar} - 1}{i\omega_{fi}}$$

so that for $f \neq i$ the probability that the system will be found to have the energy E_f at the time $t \geq T$ is

$$P_{fi}(T) \approx 4|E_{fi}|^2 \frac{e^{2\omega_{fi}T/\hbar} - 1}{\omega_{fi}^2}, \quad (8.6)$$

Though the right-hand side of this approximate equation is not necessarily less than 1, the approximation is, of course, good only if it is, in fact, much less than 1.

For a fixed time interval T and a fixed initial energy E_i , the function of E_f , the energy to which the system has made a transition, defined by (8.6), is plotted in Figure 8.1. It is sharply peaked at $\omega_{fi} = 0$, that is, at the energy $E_f = E_i$, where energy is conserved, with a maximum value proportional to T^2 and a width $\Delta = 2\pi\hbar/T$. Thus, the length of time T during which the perturbation acts is related to the "energy uncertainty" ΔE by $T\Delta E \approx \hbar$, in accordance, in some sense, with the uncertainty principle. As we shall see, when the perturbation is slowly turned on and off, the system tends to remain in the "same state" whose energy slowly shifts. In general, however, the perturbation causes transitions from one level to another. If higher orders of perturbation theory are taken into



FIGURE 8.1. The transition probability as a function of the energy.

instead, there are many intermediate transitions both real and virtual, which are difficult to deal.

In contrast to (84), we might have expected that the transition probability from one level to another is proportional to the time T , so that it makes sense to define a transition probability per unit time. Such a result, however, makes sense only if the levels in the target state, i.e., near E_f in the region of the peak in Figure 8.1, are closely spaced, and if in this region ρ_f is essentially independent of E . In that case we would integrate not only to the area under the peak

$$\int_{-\Delta}^{+\Delta} dE \frac{\sin^2 \frac{1}{2} E T}{\frac{1}{2} E T} \approx T \int_{-\Delta}^{+\Delta} dE \frac{\sin^2 \frac{1}{2} E T}{\frac{1}{2} E T} \approx T$$

In a situation in which there are many closely spaced states near the final state with the energy E_f , all with nearly the same energy E_f as the initial state, let us assume that there are $\rho_f(E)$ states per unit energy interval (the density of final states) and that $\rho_f(E)$ and $|H_{fi}|^2$ are slowly varying functions of E . Then the probability of a transition to any one of the states in the peak of Figure 8.1 is

$$\begin{aligned} P &= \sum_f |\langle f | H | i \rangle|^2 = \int dE \rho_f(E) |\langle f | H | i \rangle|^2 \\ &= \int_{-\Delta}^{+\Delta} dE \rho_f(E) |H_{fi}|^2 \frac{\sin^2 \frac{1}{2} E T}{\frac{1}{2} E T}. \end{aligned}$$

The assumption that $\rho_f(E)$ and $|H_{fi}|^2$ are slowly varying functions of E in the peak allows us to take both outside the integral, after which the integral is extended from $-\infty$ to $+\infty$ since the value comes almost entirely from the peak region, which is small

$$P \approx \frac{1}{4} \rho_f(E_f) |H_{fi}|^2 \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} dE \frac{\sin^2 \frac{1}{2} E T}{\frac{1}{2} E T} = \frac{1}{4} \rho_f(E_f) |H_{fi}|^2 T. \quad (85)$$

which finally gives us a constant transition probability per unit time,

$$W_{ji} = \frac{2\pi}{\hbar} \rho(\omega) |H'_{ji}|^2, \quad (3.6)$$

a formula known as *Fermi's golden rule*.

Two criteria have to be satisfied for this result to be valid. On one hand, the assumption that both ρ and $|H'_{ji}|$ be slowly varying over the width $\Delta\omega = 2\pi/T$ (in frequency space) of the peak in Figure 3.1 means that we need

$$\frac{\partial |H'_{ji}|^2}{\partial \omega} \Delta\omega \ll |H'_{ji}|^2$$

or

$$T \gg 2\pi \frac{|\partial |H'_{ji}|^2 / \partial \omega|}{|H'_{ji}|^2},$$

on the other hand, the probability (3.7) has to be small compared to 1:

$$\frac{2\pi}{\hbar} T \rho |H'_{ji}|^2 \ll 1.$$

Consequently, the time T must be neither too small nor too large:

$$2\pi \frac{|\partial |H'_{ji}|^2 / \partial \omega|}{|H'_{ji}|^2} \ll T \ll \frac{\hbar/2\pi}{\rho |H'_{ji}|^2},$$

and this is possible only if

$$\frac{|\partial |H'_{ji}|^2 / \partial \omega|}{|H'_{ji}|^2} \ll \frac{\hbar}{2\pi \rho |H'_{ji}|^2}.$$

Notice the important fact, which should always remain part of your physical interpretation of the quantum-mechanical formalism, that the modulus squared of the matrix element H'_{ji} of the perturbation $\mathbf{H}'$ is a measure of the transition probability (and hence of the spectral intensity, in the case of transitions in which a photon is emitted) from the state Ψ_{E_i} to the state Ψ_{E_j} . This implies in particular that if $H'_{ji} = 0$, i.e., if $\mathbf{H}'$ has no non-vanishing matrix elements connecting the two levels, then $W_{ji} = 0$: the transition cannot go, to first order. To put it another way: the perturbation induces transitions only between states that it connects. This is the basis of the physical relevance of the selection rules discussed earlier, and such a view of the matrix elements H'_{ji} is also at the heart of the physical interpretation usually attached to such perturbation-theoretic formulas as (3.12): the perturbation induces “virtual” (energy-nonconserving) transitions, from the level n to the level k and back, and, in higher order, from n to k to m and back, etc., and the probability amplitudes for all these processes are to be added up.

Since W_{ji} as given by (5.5) is the probability per unit time of a transition from the level i to the level j , the probability of the opposite transition, from j to i , is given by

$$W_{ij} = \frac{2\pi}{\hbar} \rho(j) |H_{ij}|^2.$$

Thus, apart from the factor of $\rho(j)$, the density of final states, W_{ij} and W_{ji} are equal, because H is Hermitian. This is known as the reciprocity theorem; it is a quantum analogue of the classical reversibility of the equations of motion.

The first-order perturbation formula (5.5) is applicable not only when the perturbation is weak, but also when, however strong, it acts only for a very short time. This means, specifically, that the duration T of its action is such that $T \ll 1/\omega_{ji}$ for the level j nearest to i , and, in addition, $|W_{ji}(T)|T \ll 1$. In that case (5.5) becomes for $j \neq i$,

$$c_{ji} = \frac{1}{i\hbar} \left| \int_0^T dt M_{ji}(t) \right|^2, \quad (5.6)$$

which is called the *rubin approximation*.

5.1.1 Application to exponential decay

Suppose at the time t there are $N_{\alpha\alpha}(t)$ systems of the same kind occupying the α^{th} energy level of the Hamiltonian H_0 . Then the decrease in this population during the time dt , owing to transitions to the group ω of (broadly spaced) levels (assuming there are no others accessible), is¹

$$-dN_{\alpha\alpha}(t) = dt N_{\alpha\alpha}(t) W_{\alpha\omega}.$$

The solution of this equation,

$$N_{\alpha\alpha}(t) = N_{\alpha\alpha}(0)e^{-W_{\alpha\omega}t},$$

is the familiar exponential decay law of the initial state, and it gives a "half-life" (in first-order perturbation theory),

$$\tau_{1/2} = \frac{1}{W_{\alpha\omega}} = \frac{\hbar}{2\pi} \frac{1}{\rho(\omega) |H_{\alpha\omega}|^2}, \quad (5.7)$$

so that $N_{\alpha\alpha}(\tau_{1/2})/N_{\alpha\alpha}(0) = 1/2$. An equivalent way of deriving it is to cut the time t into p small intervals of length $1/p$ and to express $N_{\alpha\alpha}(t)$ in the form

$$N_{\alpha\alpha}(t) = N_{\alpha\alpha}(0) \lim_{p \rightarrow \infty} \left(1 - W_{\alpha\omega} \frac{1}{p} \right)^p = N_{\alpha\alpha}(0) e^{-W_{\alpha\omega}t}.$$

¹ If other groups are accessible, $W_{\alpha\omega}$ has to be replaced here by $\sum_{\omega} W_{\alpha\omega}$.

There is, however, something quite puzzling about this result, as easily derived. The expression used for the transition probability after the time t , based on a constant transition probability per unit time, $P_{ji} = W_{ji}t$, must surely break down when $W_{ji}t > 1$. Yet we assume that the exponential decay law holds for times when $W_{ji}t > 1$; otherwise it would tell us very little. The explanation is most clearly seen in the second manner of deriving the exponential law given above. The underlying assumption is that the system is examined over and over again after short intervals; it is not left alone to develop on its own without having measurements performed. That this makes a difference, even if the outcomes of the intermediate measurements are ignored, is characteristic of all probabilistic theories; it is not a special, peculiar property of quantum mechanics.³

Therefore, the exponential decay law is an outcome of an assumption of almost constant observation (or of other coherence-destroying interactions, such as with the environment) of a system; it is not an exact law of quantum mechanics. In fact, a system in an unstable state, left to its own devices, decays exponentially neither initially nor asymptotically. In many circumstances, however, it does follow an exponential law for many lifetimes after an initial transient period, but the demonstration of this is much more complicated than that given above.⁴

In addition, the specific relation (8.15) between the lifetime and the matrix element H'_{ji} of the perturbation, is, of course, a first-order perturbation theory result; it ignores all the decays that can take place via intermediate states and, in particular, it ignores the possibility of backreaction

³Consider the analogous situation in statistical mechanics. What is the probability $P_{ji,t}$ of a given system, initially at the time $t = t_1$ in the state A , defined by a coarse grain $G_A(\mathcal{Q})$ of volume $G_A(\mathcal{Q})$ in phase space, to be found in the state B , defined by a coarse grain $G_B(\mathcal{Q})$, at a later time t_2 ? In order to calculate it, we have to study the Hamiltonian flow from A to B and count how many of the systems in $G_A(\mathcal{Q})$ crossed uniformly distributed there, and up to $G_B(\mathcal{Q})$; the result is

$$P_{ji,t} = \frac{G(G_{A,B}(\mathcal{Q}) \cap G_B(\mathcal{Q}))}{G(G_{A,B}(\mathcal{Q}))},$$

if $G_{A,B}(\mathcal{Q})$ denotes the collection of systems at the time t_2 originally in $G_A(\mathcal{Q})$. Similarly, for the time $t_1 = t_2$,

$$P_{ii,t} = \frac{G(G_{A,B}(\mathcal{Q}) \cap G_A(\mathcal{Q}))}{G(G_{A,B}(\mathcal{Q}))},$$

and the probability of finding the system at the time t_2 in the state C , given that it was in the state A at the time t_1 and was found in the state B at the time t_1 , is $P_{ji,t}P_{ji,t}$. Now, if the result of the intermediate measurement is to be ignored, we have to sum over all the possible grains $G_B(\mathcal{Q})$ that the system could have visited at the time t_2 . But in general $\sum_B P_{ji,t}P_{ji,t} \neq P_{ji,t}$, because the states B that the system could visit at t_2 from A do not exhaust the phase space, and the grains B that visit are not necessarily uniformly μ -weighted by the flow from A .

⁴See [Newman 04].

to the initial state. In many practical situations, such as the decay of an excited atomic energy level, that back-reaction is quite negligible because of the much larger phase-space volume available to the final states than in the initial state.

8.1.2 Application to scattering

Fermi's golden rule may also be applied to the calculation of scattering cross sections. For this purpose, imagine the particle system to be confined to a box of side-length L , with periodic boundary conditions. Then the number of free states in the wave-vector interval d^3k' is given by

$$\rho(k')dK_{k'} = \rho(k') \frac{L^3 d\Omega'}{2\pi^3} = d^3k' (L/2\pi)^3 = k'^2 d\Omega' dK (L/2\pi)^3,$$

from which we conclude that the density of final states is

$$\rho = \left(\frac{L}{2\pi}\right)^3 \frac{M V}{\hbar^3} d\Omega. \quad (8.11)$$

The number of particles of velocity v in the final solid-angle $d\Omega$, per unit time and incident flux v/L^3 , is

$$\frac{dv}{d\Omega} d\Omega = \frac{W}{v/L^3} = W \frac{L^3 M}{\hbar k},$$

so that by (8.9),

$$\frac{dv}{d\Omega} = \frac{M V}{\hbar^3} \left(\frac{L}{2\pi}\right)^3 \frac{M L^3}{\hbar k} \frac{2\pi}{k} |W_{fi}|^2,$$

where now

$$W_{fi} = \int d^3r \frac{e^{i(\mathbf{k}' - \mathbf{k}) \cdot \mathbf{r}}}{L^3 V} W(\mathbf{r}) \frac{e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}}}{L^3 V}.$$

Therefore we have in the first approximation, since $k' = k$,

$$\frac{dv}{d\Omega} = \left(\frac{M}{2\pi\hbar}\right)^2 \left| \int d^3r V(\mathbf{r}) e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}} \right|^2, \quad (8.12)$$

which is the Born approximation, as given by (4.127). Notice that the box size L , which served only an auxiliary purpose, has cancelled out. The artificial assumption of a finite box, which makes the spectrum discrete, can be dropped, as we did earlier. In that case the proper delta-function normalization is achieved by dividing the free wave functions $e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}}/(2\pi)^{3/2}$, with one particle per volume $(2\pi)^3$, so that the flux is $v/(2\pi)^3$, and the density of states,

$$\rho(k) = \frac{M k}{2\pi^2} d\Omega. \quad (8.13)$$

The same reasoning is applicable to inelastic scattering. In that case, the unperturbed Hamiltonian includes the interaction that leads to the initial and final bound states (such as the nuclear-Coulomb potential responsible for the electronic states of an atom), and the initial and final states used for the matrix element are such bound states, combined with the free states of the scattered particle; the perturbation H' is the interaction that allows the system to make an energy nonconserving transition, the raising energy being accounted for by the difference between the initial and final energies of the particle. The Born-approximation result in that case is of the same form as given above, except that $k' \neq k$ and the formula (8.12) has to be multiplied by the ratio $k_{\text{final}}/k_{\text{initial}}$.

6.1.3 Second order perturbation theory

If the second-order term in the iterative solution of (8.4) is kept, the result is that (8.1) must be replaced by

$$\begin{aligned} (R_f)_k &= k_f + \frac{1}{i\hbar} \int_{-\infty}^t dt' R'_{fk}(t') e^{i\omega_f t'} \\ &+ \frac{1}{i\hbar} \sum_k' \int_{-\infty}^t dt' R'_{fk}(t') e^{i\omega_f t'} \int_{-\infty}^{t'} dt'' R'_{kk}(t'') e^{i\omega_k t''}. \end{aligned}$$

For the case in which the interaction is simply constant until $t = T$, when it is switched off, the second-order term becomes

$$\begin{aligned} &= \frac{1}{i\hbar} \sum_k' R'_{fk} R'_{kk} \int_{-\infty}^T dt' e^{i\omega_f t'} \int_{-\infty}^{t'} dt'' e^{i\omega_k t''} \\ &= \frac{1}{i\hbar} \sum_k' \frac{R'_{fk} R'_{kk}}{\omega_{fk}} \left[\frac{e^{i\omega_f t} - 1}{\omega_{fk}} - \frac{e^{i\omega_k t} - 1}{\omega_{fk}} \right], \end{aligned} \quad (8.14)$$

as a result of which we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} (R_f)_k = k_f &= \frac{1}{i} \left[R'_{fk} - \sum_k' \frac{R'_{fk} R'_{kk}}{E_k - E_f} \right] \frac{e^{i\omega_f t} - 1}{\omega_{fk}} \\ &+ \sum_k' \frac{R'_{fk} R'_{kk}}{\omega_{fk}} \frac{e^{i\omega_k t} - 1}{\omega_{fk}}. \end{aligned} \quad (8.15)$$

Hence, just as before, there will be a large contribution, increasing with time, when $\omega_{fk} \approx 0$, but there is also such a contribution when $\omega_{fk} \approx \hbar$, and the latter need not conserve energy. This effect, however, even its existence entirely in the sudden switching on and off of the interaction as we shall see shortly, when the switching is slow, no such energy non-conserving transitions will occur.

Focusing attention only to the energy-conserving transitions, we thus find that the transition probability per unit time, to second order, is given by

$$\begin{aligned} W_{ji} &= \frac{2\pi}{\hbar} \rho(E) \left| H'_{ji} - \sum_k \frac{H'_{jk} H'_{ki}}{E_k - E_i} \right|^2 \\ &= \frac{2\pi}{\hbar} \rho(E) \left| E_i (H' - H) \frac{1}{E_0 - E_i} (H' E_i) \right|^2. \end{aligned} \quad (5.15)$$

This form, however, works only when $H'_{ii} = 0$, because otherwise the sum contains energy denominators that vanish if $H'_{ii} \neq 0$, thus the form given in (5.14), which remains finite when $k = i$, has to be retained.

There is an intuitively appealing interpretation. In view of the physical meaning of the matrix element H'_{ij} as representing a transition from level i to level j , the terms $H'_{ja} H'_{ai}$ evidently represent two-step transitions via an intermediate state a . So the second-order term $\sum_a H'_{ja} H'_{ai} / (E_a - E_i)$ represents all the transitions via a "virtual" intermediate state. Since these intermediate states are of a transitory nature and the system is never actually exponentially coupled there, energy need not be conserved. To say, then, that a certain transition is allowed only via a intermediate step is equivalent to saying that the n^{th} order transition probability is the first one not to vanish. However, let us not attach too much reality to such physical interpretations of the mathematics; appealing and useful as a guide to our intuition as they may be, they are no more than ideas based on a particular method of approximation, namely, perturbation theory.

5.1.4 Interaction with electromagnetic fields

The interaction of charged particles with the electromagnetic field gives rise to the emission and absorption of radiation; if we shine light (or other electromagnetic radiation) on an atom, it will absorb photons and emit them, and the probability for such emissions and absorptions can be calculated by time-dependent perturbation theory. For a particle of charge e and no spin, subject to the scalar potential V , which may or may not be of electromagnetic origin, and to the external electromagnetic vector potential $\vec{A}$, the Schrödinger equation with minimal coupling reads

$$\left[\frac{1}{2M} \left(\vec{p} - \frac{e}{c} \vec{A} \right)^2 + V \right] \psi = i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \psi. \quad (5.17)$$

In the radiation gauge, where $\nabla \cdot \vec{A} = 0$, the configuration-space Hamiltonian therefore is given by

$$\mathbf{H} = -\frac{\hbar^2}{2M} \nabla^2 + V + \frac{e^2 \hbar^2}{2Mc^2} \vec{A}^2 + \frac{ie\hbar}{Mc} \vec{A} \cdot \nabla.$$

In order to study the emission and absorption of radiation, however, we have to treat the vector potential $\hat{A}$ not as an externally given function but as a quantum field like in Section 3.3.5. Of course, in the presence of charged particles, this field is not correctly described by the free Maxwell equations, but since we are going to confine ourselves to first-order perturbation theory, it will suffice to insert in (3.77) the free vector-potential operator, which is given by (3.85) for a fixed wave vector $\mathbf{k}$, apart from a multiplicative factor to be fixed later, in the form

$$\hat{\mathbf{A}}(\mathbf{r}, t) = \hat{c} e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - i\omega t} \hat{a}_{\mathbf{k}} \hat{\mathbf{e}}_{\mathbf{k}} + e^{-i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - i\omega t} \hat{a}_{\mathbf{k}}^\dagger \hat{\mathbf{e}}_{-\mathbf{k}}, \quad (5.18)$$

in terms of the creation and annihilation operators $\hat{a}^\dagger$ and $\hat{a}$ of photons. The unperturbed, zero-order, state vectors of the system are then products of states of the free electromagnetic field, which we shall, for the time being, denote simply by the short-hand $|m\rangle$, and, in the configuration representation, by real-state wave functions ψ_m of the particles, which are solutions of the Schrödinger equation (3.17) with $\hat{A} = 0$,

$$\mathbf{H}_0 = -\frac{\hbar^2}{2m} \nabla^2 + V,$$

The perturbation is given by

$$\mathbf{H}' = \frac{ie\hbar}{Mc} \hat{\mathbf{A}} \cdot \nabla,$$

while the $\hat{\mathbf{A}}^2$ -term will be neglected as too small to matter.

If the original state of the system is of the form $|i\rangle = |m_i\rangle \psi_i(\mathbf{r})$ and the perturbation is turned on at the time $t = 0$, then at a later time t the inner product of the developing state $|j\rangle_t$ with a state $|f\rangle = |m_f\rangle \psi_f(\mathbf{r})$, according to (5.8), is given to first order by

$$\langle f | j \rangle_t = \delta_{ji} + \frac{i}{\hbar} \int_0^t dt' \hat{H}'_{fi} e^{i\omega_{fi}t'}, \quad (5.19)$$

where

$$\hat{H}'_{fi} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \frac{ie\hbar}{Mc} \int d^3r \langle f | \hat{\mathbf{A}} \cdot \nabla | i \rangle. \quad (5.20)$$

This gives

$$\begin{aligned} \langle f | j \rangle_t &= \delta_{ji} + \frac{ie}{Mc} \left[M^i \int_0^t dt' e^{i\omega_{fi}t' - i\omega t} - M^f \int_0^t dt' e^{i\omega_{fi}t' + i\omega t} \right] \\ &= \delta_{ji} + \frac{e}{Mc} \left[M^i \frac{e^{i\omega_{fi}t' - i\omega t} - 1}{i\omega_{fi} - \omega} - M^f \frac{e^{i\omega_{fi}t' + i\omega t} - 1}{i\omega_{fi} + \omega} \right], \quad (5.21) \end{aligned}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} M^i &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=}} \langle m_f | \int d^3r \psi_f^*(\mathbf{r}) e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}} \hat{\mathbf{e}}_{\mathbf{k}} \cdot \nabla \psi_i(\mathbf{r}) | m_i \rangle \\ &= \langle m_f | \langle \mathbf{k} | m_i \rangle \cdot \int d^3r \psi_f^*(\mathbf{r}) e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}} \nabla \psi_i(\mathbf{r}) \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} R^{(2)} &= \langle m_f | \int d^3r \, q_1^*(\mathbf{r}) e^{-i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}} \mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \nabla q_2(\mathbf{r}) | m_i \rangle \\ &= \langle m_f | \mathbf{E}^2 | m_i \rangle \cdot \int d^3r \, q_1^*(\mathbf{r}) e^{-i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}} \nabla q_2(\mathbf{r}). \end{aligned}$$

As we discussed before, the expression (5.21) is of appreciable size only when the denominators in it are small, that is, when either $E_f = E_i + \hbar\omega$ or $E_f = E_i - \hbar\omega$. In the first instance, the factor $R^{(1)}$ vanishes unless the final electromagnetic field contains one less photon of energy $\hbar\omega$, momentum $\hbar\mathbf{k}$, and polarization indicated by $\mathbf{E}$, while in the second instance $R^{(2)}$ vanishes unless the final field contains one additional such photon. Thus the first case is one in which the bound system, for example, an atom, absorbs a photon and jumps to a higher level whose additional energy equals that of the photon, and the second case is one in which the bound system descends to a lower level, emitting a corresponding photon. Of course, since we have fixed the perturbation to have a given wave number, there may not be such energy levels of the bound system. Furthermore, we have already seen that a constant transition probability per unit time will emerge only if transitions to a group of states with closely spaced energies are considered.

Let us, then, assume that the radiation field consists, not of a single plane wave, but of an incoherent mixture of many plane waves with no phase relation between them, their intensities distributed according to a function $I(\omega)$. In that case we have to add the transition probabilities and we obtain for the case of absorption,

$$|A|_{fi}^2 \approx \frac{4\pi^2}{\hbar^2 c^2} \int d\omega I(\omega) |\Omega|^2 \frac{d\Omega^2}{d\omega} \frac{1}{(\omega_{fi} - \omega)^2}.$$

The direction of the matrix element $\langle m_f | \mathbf{E} | m_i \rangle$ should be expressible in terms of a unit vector $\hat{\Omega}_{fi}$ in the direction of the polarization of the radiation. To express the magnitude of the matrix element in terms of an intensity, use the fact that the Poynting vector of the radiation described by the vector potential $\hat{A}(\mathbf{r}, t) = \hat{A}_0 e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - i\omega t} + \hat{A}_0^* e^{-i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - i\omega t}$ is given by $\hat{S} = \frac{1}{4\pi} \hat{E} \times \hat{B} = \frac{1}{2} \hat{\Omega} \hat{A}_0^2 \sin^2(\hat{\Omega} \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t + \alpha)$, so that its intensity, the time-average value of the magnitude of the Poynting vector, is

$$I = |\hat{S}|_{\text{av}} = \frac{\omega^2}{8\pi^2} |\hat{A}_0 \omega|^2 \hat{A}_0^2.$$

Therefore the square of its magnitude, weighted by $I(\omega)$, should be

$$\begin{aligned} I(\omega) |\langle m_f | \mathbf{E} | m_i \rangle|^2 &= I(\omega) \sum_{\hat{\Omega}} |\langle m_f | \mathbf{E} | m_i \rangle| |\hat{\Omega}| |\hat{A}_0 \omega|^2 \\ &= I(\omega) |\langle m_f | \mathbf{E}^2 | m_i \rangle| = I(\omega) \omega |\omega| \\ &= \frac{2\pi\omega}{c^2} I(\omega). \end{aligned}$$

in which we have made use of the fact that all the additional terms in the sum over the number n_f of photons in the final state vanish because $\hat{D}$ destroys just one photon of energy $\hbar\omega$. This allows us to write the transition probability as

$$| \langle f | i \rangle |^2 = \frac{4\pi e^2}{\hbar^2 c^2} \int \frac{d\omega}{\omega} I(\omega) \frac{\sin^2 \frac{1}{2}(\omega_{fi} - \omega)t}{(\omega_{fi} - \omega)^2} \left| \int d^3r e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}} \hat{e}_f \hat{D}_{fi} \cdot \nabla \psi_i \right|^2.$$

From this point on we proceed as before: in the limit when $t \rightarrow \infty$ the probability becomes very sharply peaked at $\omega = \omega_{fi}$. Assuming that the intensity does not vary rapidly near $\omega = \omega_{fi}$, we take it and all the other functions of ω outside the integral, leaving us with the absorption probability per unit time,

$$\begin{aligned} P_{fi}^{abs} &= \frac{1}{t} | \langle f | i \rangle |^2 \approx \frac{4\pi e^2}{\hbar^2 c^2} \frac{I(\omega_{fi})}{\omega_{fi}^2} \mathcal{N}_{fi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} d\omega \frac{\sin^2 \frac{1}{2}(\omega_{fi} - \omega)t}{(\omega_{fi} - \omega)^2} \\ &= \frac{4\pi^2 e^2}{\hbar^2 c^2} \frac{I(\omega_{fi})}{\omega_{fi}^2} \mathcal{N}_{fi}, \end{aligned} \quad (8.22)$$

where

$$\mathcal{N}_{fi} \equiv \left| \int d^3r e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}} \hat{e}_f \hat{D}_{fi} \cdot \nabla \psi_i \right|^2, \quad (8.23)$$

with the understanding that $\hat{k} = |\omega_{fi}|/c$.

Similarly we proceed to calculate the probability per unit time for induced emission from the second term in (8.21), with the result

$$P_{fi}^{em} = \frac{4\pi^2 e^2}{\hbar^2 c^2} \frac{I(\omega_{fi})}{\omega_{fi}^2} \mathcal{N}_{if},$$

where $I(\omega_{fi}) = I(-\omega_{fi}) = I(\omega_{if})$ is necessary for $I(\omega)$ to be real, and

$$\mathcal{N}_{if} \equiv \left| \int d^3r e^{-i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}} \hat{e}_f \hat{D}_{if} \cdot \nabla \psi_f \right|^2 = \left| \int d^3r e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}} \hat{e}_f \hat{D}_{fi} \cdot \nabla \psi_i \right|^2 = \mathcal{N}_{fi},$$

which is proved by integrating by parts and using the fact that $\hat{D}_{if} \cdot \nabla e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}} = \hat{k}$ because $\hat{D}_{if} = \hat{k}$. We therefore find that

$$P_{fi}^{em} = P_{fi}^{abs}. \quad (8.24)$$

The radiation field induces as many transitions in one direction as in the other.

The dipole approximation

If the size (i.e., the spread of its bound-state wave function) of the bound system, the atom, is small compared to the wavelength of the incident

or absorbed radiation, then is the region which contributes almost all of the value of the integral in $\mathcal{M}$; we have $\hat{\mathbf{d}} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{r}} \approx 1$ and it will be a good approximation to set $e^{i\hat{\mathbf{d}} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{r}}} \approx 1$ in the integral, so that

$$\mathcal{M}_F = \left| \int d^3r \, q(\mathbf{r}) \hat{\mathbf{r}} \cdot \nabla \psi_1 \right|^2 = \left| \frac{d}{d\lambda} \psi_1 \int d^3r \, q(\mathbf{r}) \hat{\mathbf{r}} \cdot \nabla \psi_1 \right|^2. \quad (9.34)$$

To prove this, use integration by parts, assuming that the boundary terms vanish:

$$\begin{aligned} (\hat{\mathbf{d}}_1 - \hat{\mathbf{d}}_2) \int d^3r \, q(\mathbf{r}) \hat{\mathbf{r}} \cdot \nabla \psi_1 &= \int d^3r \, \hat{\mathbf{r}} \cdot \nabla [q(\mathbf{r}) \hat{\mathbf{d}}_1 \psi_1 - \hat{\mathbf{d}}_2 \psi_1 q(\mathbf{r})] \\ &= -\frac{\hbar^2}{2M} \int d^3r \, \nabla^2 [q(\mathbf{r}) \hat{\mathbf{r}} \cdot \nabla \psi_1 - \hat{\mathbf{d}}_2 \psi_1 q(\mathbf{r})] \\ &= -\frac{\hbar^2}{2M} \int d^3r \, \nabla^2 [q(\mathbf{r}) \hat{\mathbf{r}} \cdot \nabla \psi_1] = \frac{\hbar^2}{2M} \int d^3r \, \nabla^2 [q(\mathbf{r}) \hat{\mathbf{r}} \cdot \nabla \psi_1]. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore we obtain in this approximation,

$$\mathcal{P}_F^{\text{dip}} = \frac{4\pi^2 e^2 \hbar^2}{\omega^2} |\langle \psi_{\text{out}} | \hat{\mathbf{P}}_{\text{dip}} | \psi_{\text{in}} \rangle|^2, \quad (9.36)$$

where $\langle \hat{\mathbf{P}}_{\text{dip}} \rangle$ is shorthand for $\int d^3r \, q(\mathbf{r}) \hat{\mathbf{r}} \psi_1$. Since $\hat{\mathbf{r}}$ and ψ_1 are orthogonal, the vector $\hat{\mathbf{r}}$ may be taken with respect to any arbitrary origin, and $e\hat{\mathbf{r}}$ is the electric dipole moment of a particle at $\mathbf{r}$ with respect to that origin. That is why the transitions for which (9.36) is the approximate probability per unit time are called *dipole transitions*. If θ is the angle between the direction of polarization $\hat{\mathbf{e}}_{\text{out}}$ and $\hat{\mathbf{r}}$, we have $|\hat{\mathbf{e}}_{\text{out}} \cdot \langle \hat{\mathbf{P}}_{\text{dip}} \rangle|^2 = |\langle \hat{\mathbf{P}}_{\text{dip}} \rangle|^2 \cos^2 \theta$. Averaging this over all directions of polarization gives the absorption probability per unit time from an unpolarized radiation field³

$$\mathcal{P}^{\text{dip}} = \frac{2\pi}{3} |\langle \hat{\mathbf{P}}_{\text{dip}} \rangle|^2 / \omega, \quad (9.37)$$

where

$$\mathcal{P} = \frac{4\pi^2 e^2 \hbar^2}{3M} |\langle \hat{\mathbf{P}}_{\text{dip}} \rangle|^2 \quad (9.38)$$

is called the *Einstein B coefficient*. (Here α is the fine-structure constant $\approx \frac{1}{137} e^2 / \hbar c$.)

The fact that $\hat{\mathbf{r}}$ is a vector immediately leads to certain selection rules for dipole transitions. As we have seen in Section 5.2, if the potential that binds the system is spherically symmetric, for (9.38) not to vanish we must have

$$\Delta l = \pm 1, \quad \Delta m = 0, \pm 1,$$

³Prove that for the three-dimensional average, $\overline{\cos^2 \theta} = 1/3$.

If l is not a good quantum number, the first is replaced by $\Delta l = 0, \pm 1$, that is, dipole transitions can occur only between states for which $\Delta l = \pm 1$ and $\Delta m = 0, \pm 1$; if the dipole-transition probability is zero, such transitions are called *forbidden*.

If the incident radiation is not incoherent but plane polarized along the z -axis, the relevant dipole matrix element is $\langle r \rangle_{yz}$, for which the selection rule is $\Delta m = 0$; on the other hand, if the radiation is polarized along the x or y axis (or in any direction perpendicular to the z -axis), then $\Delta m = \pm 1$. Of course, for these selection rules to make any observable differences, the m -degeneracy must be removed, say, by a strong external magnetic field (the Paschen-Back effect). In such a situation, we must have $\Delta m = 0$ for polarization along the magnetic field, and $\Delta m = \pm 1$ for polarizations that is orthogonal to it; if the radiation is circularly polarized, the selection rule is $\Delta m = 1$ for right-circular polarization and $\Delta m = -1$ for left-circular polarization.³

In case a certain dipole transition is forbidden, more terms in the power-series expansion

$$e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}} = 1 + i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} + \dots$$

or in the spherical-wave expansion (see Appendix D)

$$e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}} = \sum_{l=0}^{\infty} j_l(kr) Y_l(\cos \theta)$$

have to be taken into account. Every term in the series expansion of the transition probability is then smaller by a factor of ak relative to the previous one, if a is the spatial extent of the relevant bound-state wave function. Thus if $ak \ll 1$, the probability of a forbidden transition is suppressed at least by a factor of $(ak)^2$ relative to an allowed one.

In some instances, the exact matrix element (8.20) may vanish, in that case the transition is called *strictly forbidden* and one has to employ higher-order perturbation theory to calculate the transition probability, which then is very small. An important example of such a situation is one in which both the initial and final states have $l = 0$. They are then both spherically symmetric, while $\nabla_{\text{pol}} \psi \neq 0$; hence, if the z -axis is chosen along the polarization direction ∇_{pol} , the integral is odd in z and thus vanishes. Consequently, $l = 0 \rightarrow l = 0$ transitions are *strictly forbidden*.

Note that all of these statements hold both for absorption and for induced emission of radiation.

Spontaneous emission of radiation

The interaction of a bound electrically charged system with the radiation field gives rise not only to absorption and induced emission of photons but

³ Show this.

also to their spontaneous emission, with no light or other radiation striking on the system. In order to calculate the probability for this to occur, we recall ourselves of Fermi's golden rule (5.8), which means we must first determine what the appropriate density ρ_f of final states is for photons. If the field is confined to a cubical box of side-length L , we know that the allowed wavelengths are $\lambda = L/n$, so that the allowed wave-numbers for each of the three orthogonal directions are $2\pi n/L$, and the number of states in the wave-vector interval d^3k is $(L/2\pi)^3 d^3k$. Therefore,

$$\rho_f d\mathbf{k} = \rho_f dk = \left(\frac{L}{2\pi}\right)^3 d^3k = d^3k d\Omega \left(\frac{L}{2\pi}\right)^3 = d\Omega \frac{\omega^2 d\omega}{c^3} \left(\frac{L}{2\pi}\right)^3,$$

so

$$\rho = d\Omega \frac{\omega^2}{c^3} \left(\frac{L}{2\pi}\right)^3. \quad (5.22)$$

Since no radiation strikes on the atom, the initial state is the photon vacuum state and only the creation operator $\hat{E}^+$ in (5.18) will contribute, leading to a state with one photon of momentum $\hbar\mathbf{k}$, so that the appropriate normalisation of $\mathbf{A}$ for finding one photon per unit volume has to be such that

$$\langle \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}) \rangle = i\omega \sqrt{\frac{2\pi\hbar}{\omega}} \hat{\mathbf{e}}_i e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{r}_i} e^{-i\omega t} \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r})$$

and (5.20) gives

$$|\langle \hat{E}^+ \rangle|^2 = \frac{2\pi\hbar^2\omega^2}{L^3\epsilon_0 c^3} \mathcal{M}_{ji}^2,$$

where $\mathcal{M}_{ji}$ is defined by (5.23). Insertion of this and (5.20) in (5.8) gives the probability per unit time for the spontaneous emission of a single photon of plane-polarisation $\hat{\mathbf{e}}_{\text{pol}}$ and momentum in the interval $d\Omega$ around $\mathbf{k}$ from the state ψ_i of the charged system to the state ψ_f , whose energy is lower by the amount $\hbar\omega$, the energy of the emitted photon,

$$W_{ji} = d\Omega \frac{\omega^3 \hbar\omega}{L^3\epsilon_0 c^3} \mathcal{M}_{ji}^2. \quad (5.24)$$

In the dipole approximation, in which $e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{r}}$ is replaced by 1, this expression becomes, by (5.23),

$$W_{ji} = \frac{q^2}{2\pi\epsilon_0 c^3} \hat{\mathbf{e}}_{\text{pol}} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{r}}_{ji}^2 \omega^3 d\Omega.$$

If θ is the angle between the polarisation of the emitted radiation and the real vector $\hat{\mathbf{r}}_{ji}$ formed by the magnitudes of the three components of the coupling vector $\hat{\mathbf{r}}_{ji}$, then $|\hat{\mathbf{e}}_{\text{pol}} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{r}}_{ji}|^2 = |\hat{\mathbf{r}}_{ji}|^2 \cos^2 \theta$. Let θ' be the angle between $\hat{\mathbf{r}}_{ji}$ and $\mathbf{k}$, and φ' the angle between the plane formed by $\hat{\mathbf{k}}$ and $\hat{\mathbf{r}}_{ji}$ and the polarisation vector $\hat{\mathbf{e}}_{\text{pol}}$; then $\cos^2 \theta = \sin^2 \theta' \cos^2 \varphi'$, so that

$$W_{ji} = \frac{q^2}{2\pi\epsilon_0 c^3} |\hat{\mathbf{r}}_{ji}|^2 d\Omega \sin^2 \theta' \cos^2 \varphi'.$$

whereas the probability of emitting a photon whose polarization is orthogonal to $\hat{\mathbf{e}}_{\mathbf{k}\lambda}$ is given by the same expression with $\cos^2\varphi'$ replaced by $\sin^2\varphi'$. Therefore the probability of emitting a photon into $d\Omega$, irrespective of its polarization, is

$$W_{fi} = \frac{\hbar}{2\pi\epsilon_0\omega^3} |\langle f|\hat{\mathbf{d}}_e|i\rangle|^2 d\Omega \sin^2\theta.$$

Finally we integrate over all emission directions and obtain the probability per unit time of emitting a photon in any direction while the system makes a transition with an energy difference $E_i - E_f = \hbar\omega_f$ (in the dipole approximation),

$$W_{fi} = \frac{4\pi\hbar}{3} \frac{4\pi\epsilon_0^2}{\omega^3} |\langle f|\hat{\mathbf{d}}_e|i\rangle|^2, \quad (5.34)$$

which is called the *Einstein A coefficient*. Since each photon carries away the energy $\hbar\omega$, the emitted power is given by

$$P = \frac{4\pi\hbar^2\omega^4}{3} |\langle f|\hat{\mathbf{d}}_e|i\rangle|^2,$$

an expression that should be compared to the classical result for the average power emitted by a moving electric dipole, which is

$$P = \frac{2}{3c^3} \dot{\mathbf{p}}^2,$$

where $\dot{\mathbf{p}}$ is the electric dipole current. In comparing the two expressions, keep in mind that if $\hat{\mathbf{p}} = \hat{\mathbf{p}}_0 e^{-i\omega t} + \text{c.c.} = 2\hat{\mathbf{p}}_0 \cos\omega t$, then $\dot{\mathbf{p}}^2 = 4\omega^2 \hat{\mathbf{p}}_0^2 \cos^2\omega t = 2\omega^2 \hat{\mathbf{p}}_0^2$, so that the quantum result can be simply obtained by the rule: replace $\hat{\mathbf{p}}$ by the dipole matrix element $\langle f|\hat{\mathbf{p}}_e|i\rangle$ corresponding to the transition.

The selection rules that hold for absorption are equally applicable to spontaneous emission. Suppose the atom is immersed in a strong static magnetic field, splitting the normal m -degeneracy. Adopt a z -axis in the direction of the magnetic field. Then $\langle z\rangle_{fi}$ vanishes unless $\Delta m = 0$, and $\langle x\rangle_{fi}$ and $\langle y\rangle_{fi}$ vanish unless $\Delta m = \pm 1$. Therefore the light emitted in a transition with $\Delta m = 0$ must be polarized along the z -axis (i.e. parallel to the magnetic field), which implies that its intensity is maximal in the plane at right angles to $\hat{\mathbf{E}}$; it is called *π -light*. On the other hand, the light emitted in a transition with $\Delta m = \pm 1$ can have no polarization component in the direction of the magnetic field; such transitions give rise to right and left circularly polarized light (σ -light), respectively, with maximal emission intensity parallel to the magnetic field.

Planck's formula

Suppose the walls of a cavity made of atoms at the temperature T contain radiation with the frequency distribution $\rho(\omega)$; in other words, the energy in

the frequency interval $d\omega$ around ω is $dN = \Gamma(\omega)d\omega$. The electric charges in the walls in a state of energy E_m are induced to emit radiation of frequency ω at the rate $\bar{R}_m(\omega)$, where $\bar{R}$ is given by (5.25), and they spontaneously emit radiation at the rate $\bar{R}$ given by (5.31), descending to the state E_n with $E_m - E_n = \hbar\omega$, while they absorb radiation at the rate $\Gamma(\omega)/\bar{R}$ making the opposite transition. When in thermodynamic equilibrium, the ratio of the number of atoms in the upper state to that in the lower one should be $\exp(-\hbar\omega/kT)$, where k is Boltzmann's constant, so that the following equation must hold in a state of equilibrium:

$$e^{-\hbar\omega/kT} \left[\frac{4\pi^2\omega^2}{3\hbar c^2} \langle P_{\text{trans}}^2 \rangle + \frac{4\pi^2\omega^2}{3\hbar c^2} \Gamma(\omega) \langle P_{\text{trans}}^2 \rangle \right] = \frac{4\pi^2\omega^2}{3\hbar c^2} \Gamma(\omega) \langle P_{\text{trans}}^2 \rangle.$$

As a result, the frequency distribution of the radiation in the cavity has to be given by the solution of this equation, which is known as the *Planck distribution formula*:

$$\Gamma(\omega) = \frac{\hbar\omega^3}{\pi^2 c^2 [\exp(\hbar\omega/kT) - 1]}. \quad (5.32)$$

Note that this distribution is independent of all the quantities (such as the dipole moments $e\mathcal{R}_{mn}$ and the energies E_n and E_m) that refer to the properties of the walls and can therefore be expected to be universally applicable. As $\hbar \rightarrow 0$, it goes over into the classical Rayleigh-Jeans law,

$$\Gamma_{\text{class}}(\omega) = \frac{\omega^2}{\pi^2 c^2} kT,$$

the modification of which to the form (5.32) by Max Planck, you will recall, was the beginning of the quantum theory. The experimental verification of Planck's formula serves as an indirect confirmation of Einstein's A and B coefficients.

Instability

The fact that a bound system of electrically charged particles spontaneously emits radiation when at an energy level from which it is able to descend to one of lower energy implies that all such states, which would be bound states if it were not for the electric charge of the constituents, are unstable; only the ground state of a charged system is truly stable. Indeed, the total probability per unit time of a decay of a given level labeled i is given by

$$W_i = \sum_j W_{ji},$$

where the sum runs over all the states of lower energy than E_i ; as a result, the lifetime of the state is $\tau = 1/W_i$. But, according to the uncertainty

principle, a state with the lifetime τ can be thought of as having a “width” $\Gamma = \hbar/\tau$, that is, its energy can be defined only with an error $\pm \frac{1}{2}\Gamma$. A classical analogue would be a simple, charged, harmonic oscillator, whose emission of radiation leads to a damping of its amplitude, so that its time dependence is given by $e^{-i\omega t}e^{-\frac{1}{2}\gamma t}$ with $\gamma = 1/\tau$. If such an oscillator is set to start at the time $t = 0$, the Fourier transform of its motion is given by $1/[(i\omega - i) + \frac{1}{2}\gamma]$, the square of whose absolute magnitude is $1/[\omega^2 - \omega + \frac{1}{4}\gamma^2]$. Since $\frac{1}{2}\gamma$ is the fractional decrease in the oscillator’s amplitude, γ is the fractional decrease of its energy and $\tau = 1/\gamma$ is the time after which the oscillator has lost approximately half of its energy; γ is also the width, at half maximum, of the “spectral line” whose shape is shown in Figure 4.3 on page 105. At the energies $E = E_0 \pm \frac{1}{2}\Gamma$, $\Gamma = \hbar\gamma = \hbar/\tau$, the photon emission has dropped to half its maximum at $E = E_0$. The resulting broadening effect on the atomic energy levels is called their natural line breadth. For atomic dipole transitions, the relative frequency width is about $\gamma/\omega \sim 10^{-7}$, which implies a lifetime³ $\tau \sim \frac{1}{2} \times 10^{-8}$ sec. Thus, the normal half-life of excited states of atomic systems is about $\frac{1}{2} \times 10^{-8}$ sec.

8.2 Slowly Changing Hamiltonians

In order to solve the Schrödinger equation

$$i\hbar \frac{\partial \Psi}{\partial t} = H(t)\Psi \quad (8.32)$$

with a time-dependent Hamiltonian, it is useful to introduce instantaneous eigenstates of $H(t)$ (which, of course, vary with time),

$$H(t)\Phi_n(t) = E_n(t)\Phi_n(t), \quad (8.33)$$

and we shall assume for simplicity that the spectrum is purely discrete, with no degeneracies. At the time t , the solution of (8.32) can be expanded on the basis of these states and we define the coefficients $c_n(t)$ by writing the expansion in the form

$$\Psi(t) = \sum_n c_n(t)\Phi_n(t) \exp \left[-\frac{i}{\hbar} \int_0^t dt' E_n(t') \right], \quad (8.34)$$

insertion of which in (8.32), with the use of (8.33), leads to

$$\sum_n (\dot{c}_n \Phi_n + c_n \dot{\Phi}_n) \exp \left[-\frac{i}{\hbar} \int_0^t dt' E_n(t') \right] = 0,$$

³Check this.

If the time-derivative is denoted by a dot. Using the orthogonality of the Φ_n (and assuming they are normalized), this leads to the equation

$$\dot{c}_k = - \sum_n c_n \langle \Phi_k, \dot{\Phi}_n \rangle \exp \left[-\frac{i}{\hbar} \int_0^t dt' (E_n(t') - E_k(t')) \right]. \quad (8.36)$$

On the other hand, differentiating (8.34) with respect to the time and taking the inner product of the result with Φ_k , yields for $k \neq n$,

$$\langle \Phi_k, \dot{\Phi}_n \rangle = \frac{\langle E_k | \partial_t | E_n \rangle}{E_n - E_k}. \quad (8.37)$$

Finally, defining the time-dependent phase of the state Φ_n by[†]

$$\gamma_n \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \langle \Phi_n, \dot{\Phi}_n \rangle, \quad (8.38)$$

and defining

$$a_n \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} c_n \exp \left[-i \int_0^t dt' \gamma_n(t') \right] = c_n e^{-i\gamma_n(t)},$$

we arrive at the following differential equation for the coefficients a_n

$$\dot{a}_k = \sum_n a_n \frac{\langle E_k | \partial_t | E_n \rangle}{E_n - E_k} \exp \left[-i \int_0^t dt' (a_{nk} - \gamma_n(t' - \gamma_k)) \right], \quad (8.39)$$

where we have written $\langle E_k | \partial_t | E_n \rangle \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \beta_{kn}$. Assuming that the time-change of the Hamiltonian begins at the time $t = 0$ when the system was in the state $\Phi_{n_0}(t)$, the initial condition to go with the differential equations (8.39) is

$$a_k(0) = \delta_{kn_0}.$$

Up to this point, we have made no approximations. However, suppose now the Hamiltonian changes very slowly, for example, let it have the form $H(t) = J(t)H$, where $J(t)$ is a given continuous function that describes the switching-on of the perturbation H , such that $J(-\infty) = 0$ and $J(0) = 1$, and let $\epsilon \ll 1$, making the rate of change very small. Then the right-hand side of (8.39) is negligible and we neglect the a_n except for a_{n_0} , which remains close to 1, implying that

$$|\langle \Phi(t), \Phi_{n_0}(t) \rangle|^2 = |a_{n_0}(t)|^2 \approx 1.$$

Thus the probability of finding the system in any state other than that of the slowly changing or very $E_{n_0}(t)$ is negligible. Instead of inducing transitions

[†]Prove that γ_n is real.

to states of other energies, as would be the case if the change were more rapid, the slowly varying Hamiltonian acts adiabatically: the system stays in the 'same state' whose energy slowly adapts itself. This is called the *adiabatic approximation*.

There is another noteworthy effect associated with such an adiabatic change in the Hamiltonian, and that is the change in the phase $\gamma_m(t)$ of the state vector or the eigenfunction. Suppose that at the time T the Hamiltonian returns to its original value that it had at the time $t = 0$. The system will then have returned to its original energy E_m , but its eigenfunction will have acquired an additional phase $\gamma_m(T)$, known as the *geometric phase* or *Berry's phase*.⁸ It is experimentally observable when two identical systems, one of which has gone through a closed circuit, are brought together and the interference effects produced by their phase differences are measured.

For example, take a case in which the time-dependence of the Hamiltonian describes an externally produced motion of a part A of it in physical, three-dimensional space, parametrised by a vector $\hat{R}(t)$, such as the position of the centre of mass of A , so that the time dependence of $\Phi_m(t)$ is the result of the fact that Φ_m depends on $\hat{R}$ and $\Phi_m(t) = \Phi_m(\hat{R}(t))$. If during the time from $t = 0$ to T , $\hat{R}$ slowly performs a closed loop, then

$$\begin{aligned}\gamma_m(T) &= -i\hbar \int_0^T dt \langle \Phi_m(\hat{R}(t)) | \dot{\Phi}_m(\hat{R}(t)) \rangle \\ &= -i\hbar \oint d\hat{R} \cdot \langle \Phi_m(\hat{R}(t)) | \nabla_{\hat{R}} \Phi_m(\hat{R}(t)) \rangle,\end{aligned}$$

an integral that does not necessarily vanish. In fact, by Stokes's theorem,⁹

$$\begin{aligned}\gamma_m(T) &= -i\hbar \int_C d\hat{S} \cdot \nabla_{\hat{R}} \times \langle E_m | \nabla_{\hat{R}} | E_m \rangle \\ &= -i\hbar \int_C d\hat{S} \cdot (\nabla_{\hat{R}} \Phi_m \times \nabla_{\hat{R}} \Phi_m) \\ &= -i\hbar \int_C d\hat{S} \cdot \sum_{n \neq m} (\nabla_{\hat{R}} \Phi_m \cdot \Phi_n) (\Phi_n \times \nabla_{\hat{R}} \Phi_m),\end{aligned}$$

where C denotes the area enclosed by the loop described by $\hat{R}$. Just as (3.37) was obtained, we can here for $n \neq m$

$$\langle E_m | \nabla_{\hat{R}} | E_n \rangle = (\nabla_{\hat{R}} H)_{nm} / (E_n - E_m),$$

where $(\nabla_{\hat{R}} H)_{nm} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \langle E_m | \nabla_{\hat{R}} H | E_n \rangle$, and as a result, the geometric phase is given by

$$\gamma_m(T) = -i\hbar \int_C d\hat{S} \cdot \sum_{n \neq m} \frac{(\nabla_{\hat{R}} H)_{nm} \times (\nabla_{\hat{R}} H)_{nm}}{[E_n(\hat{R}) - E_m(\hat{R})]^2}. \quad (3.42)$$

⁸After M.V. Berry.

⁹Why is $n = m$ excluded in the last line?

8.3 Problems and Exercises

1. Integrate (5.33) and thereby derive the Stefan-Boltzmann law for radiation from a black body.
2. Using Fermi's golden rule, calculate the lifetime of a state of the hydrogen atom immersed in a weak, uniform, constant electric field.
3. An unpolarized ultraviolet light beam shines on a hydrogen atom in its ground state. (a) Calculate the absorption probability per unit time (in the dipole approximation) if the wavelength of the beam is tuned to 2.12137×10^{-8} m. (b) Suppose the beam is plane polarized. Using the polarization direction as the axis of quantization, i.e., the z -axis, which m -sublevels of the excited atom will be populated? (c) If you wish to populate specifically a sublevel with $m = 1$ or $m = -1$ and no others, what will you have to do?
4. Taking the fine structure into account, calculate the absorption probability per unit time for linearly polarized radiation by a hydrogen atom at a frequency appropriate for the transition from the ground state (a) to the $2p_{1/2}$ level, and (b) to the $2p_{3/2}$ level. [Calculate this in lowest-order perturbation theory without taking into account the change in the wave functions produced by the fine-structure perturbation.]
5. Let the polar angles of the wave vector $\vec{k}$ be θ and φ , and let those of the polarization vector be θ' and φ' . Calculate the probability (in the dipole approximation) for the spontaneous emission of a photon by an atomic system if ψ_{fi} is (a) in the x -direction, (b) in the y -direction, and (c) in the z -direction. From these results, show that if the photon comes from a transition with $\Delta m = 0$, then the emission probability is maximal in the xy -plane, and if it comes from a transition with $\Delta m = \pm 1$, then the emission probability is maximal in the z -direction.

Multiparticle Systems

9.1 Two Particles Interacting with a Center

In Chapter 4 we studied systems consisting of two particles interacting with one another and saw that in such a case the Schrödinger equation can be reduced to that of a single-particle system in the center-of-mass coordinate frame. In this section we shall consider systems that consist of two particles in interaction not only with each other but also with an external center of force. Think, for example, of a helium atom with an infinitely massive nucleus. Whereas in Section 3.5.2 we applied perturbation theory and the variational method to the calculation of the ground-state energy of this particular system, here we want to study other, more general phenomena that can occur in such instances, such as inelastic scattering, resonance scattering, and auto-ionization.

The Hamiltonian of our system is assumed to be of the form

$$H \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} T_a + T_b + V_a(r_a) + V_b(r_b) + V^{(ab)}(r_{ab}), \quad (9.1)$$

where T_a and T_b are the two kinetic-energy operators,

$$T_a \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \frac{p_a^2}{2M}, \quad T_b \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \frac{p_b^2}{2M},$$

and $V_{ab} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} V_a + V_b$. In the absence of interaction between the two particles, that is, when $V^{(ab)} = 0$, the Schrödinger equation is separable and the solutions of (9.1) are linear combinations of products of solutions of the

one-particle Schrödinger equations,

$$[\mathcal{T}_a + V_a]\psi_a^{(i)} = E^{(i)}\psi_a^{(i)}, \quad [\mathcal{T}_b + V_b]\psi_b^{(j)} = E^{(j)}\psi_b^{(j)}, \quad (9.2)$$

so that the eigenvalues and quasi-eigenvalues of (9.1) are the sums of the eigenvalues and quasi-eigenvalues of the two equations in (9.2). Thus the spectrum of the two-particle system looks schematically as indicated in Figure 9.1.

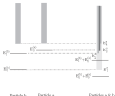


FIGURE 9.1. The left-hand figure shows the separate spectra of the two particles, while the right-hand figure shows the two-particle spectrum for the non-interacting particles. The continuous spectrum is shown in grey. In the light grey energy region of the third figure, particle b is in its ground state and particle a is unbound. The energies E^0 are the thresholds: in the region above E_1^0 , a can be in its excited state $E_1^{(1)}$ and a unbound; above E_2^0 , a can be bound and b free; above E_3^0 both particles can be free.

You should look at this figure carefully and understand its implications. Whereas each of the one-particle systems has bound states of negative energy and a positive-energy continuous spectrum, which is separated from the bound states, the continuous spectrum of the two-particle system begins at E_1^0 , the lowest energy of the two ground states, in this case the ground state of particle b . The physical reason for this is that above that energy particle a can escape to infinity: the atom can be ionized. The energy E_2^0 is the threshold above which particle a can be free while b is in its excited state $E_1^{(1)}$; above this energy there could be inelastic scattering of a , with b initially in its ground state and finally in the excited state $E_1^{(1)}$, or vice versa, if there were an interaction that would make such a

transition go. Above E_1^0 there could be exchange reactions, in which b collides with a bound and a emerges with b bound, or vice versa, if there were an interaction, and above E_1^0 both a and b can be free, so that, with interaction, either particle could collide with the other one bound, ending up with both free (double ionization), or one of them could be captured and remain bound.

A particular feature to be noted is that an excited state of the combined system is embedded in the continuous spectrum (degenerate with a quasi-degeneracy): the system can exist, at the same energy, both in a bound state and in a dissociated state, i.e., ionized, because the energy of a state in which particle b is in its second level and a is bound (so both are bound) is equal to the energy of a state in which b is in its lowest level and a has been expelled and is free.

Imagine now slowly cranking on the interaction $V^{(12)}$ (say, multiplying $V^{(12)}$ by a coupling parameter λ and allowing λ to increase from zero). Such a perturbation will, of course, shift the discrete energy levels, but it will also generally allow the bound state in which b is in its excited state and a is in its ground state to "leak" and make a transition to the dissociated state in which b is in its ground state and a free, thus destroying the stability of the original bound state and giving it a finite lifetime. For atoms, this is called the *Auger effect*, and for molecules, predissociation. A concrete example is that of a helium atom excited to its $(2s)^2$ state (both electrons in a $2s$ -state, with opposite spins, 80.0 eV above the ground state), which is degenerate with a state with one of the electrons in its $1s$ ground state and the other free (the ionization threshold is 54.4 eV above the $2s$ -state). The electron-electron interaction will therefore induce a radiativeless transition, ionizing the atom and leaving it in its ground state.

As long as the interaction $V^{(12)}$ is sufficiently weak, the Auger-transition probability W per unit time can be calculated by Fermi's golden rule, (5.6),

$$W = \frac{2\pi\hbar^2}{\hbar} \int d\Omega_f |F| V^{(12)} |i|^2, \quad (5.14)$$

where $|i|^2 \equiv \delta E(E - E_0^{(2)})/V^2$, $|i\rangle$ is the initial state with both particles bound (the $(2s)^2$ state in the case of helium), and $|f\rangle$ encompasses all the degenerate final states with b bound in its ground state (the $1s$ state for helium) and a free in the continuum but moving in various directions, and we must integrate over all these. [Equation (5.14) has been used here for the density of final states.] The lifetime of the unstable state is thus $\tau = 1/W$. (However, it is also possible for the bound state of the two particles to remain stably bound even when the interaction $V^{(12)}$ is strong, remaining stable because the exact transition probability to the ionized state happens to be vanish, but this should be regarded as a more-or-less accidental situation.)

Since particle a is free at the energy in question, it can, of course, also come in and be scattered by the potential V_a . In the absence of the two-particle interaction $V^{(ab)}$, the scattering will be unaffected by the presence of particle b , but when $V^{(ab)}$ is turned on, the fact that the two-particle system can form an almost-bound state will manifest itself strongly as a resonance. There will be a sharp peak of width Γ in the squared magnitude of the scattering amplitude so that the scattering cross section has the characteristic shape

$$\sigma(E_2) \propto (E_2 - E)^2 + \frac{1}{4}\Gamma^2)^{-1}, \quad (9.4)$$

shown in Figure 4.2, and Γ is related to the lifetime τ of the unstable state by the relation

$$\Gamma\tau = \hbar, \quad (9.5)$$

which we saw earlier. Moreover, the phase of the scattering amplitude at the resonance sharply rises by π , so as to produce a delay in the outgoing particles, just as it would classically if they emerged after visiting the center for a while. Let's take a look at the mathematics of how this happens.

Suppose the two-particle wave function is expanded on the basis of products of one-particle wave functions, each of which solves the Schrödinger equation with its own potential, as in (3.2),

$$\psi(E, r_a, r_b) = \int \psi^{(a)}(E^{(a)}, r_a) \psi^{(b)}(E^{(b)}, r_b), \quad (9.6)$$

where $E^{(a)} + E^{(b)} = E$ and the functions $\psi^{(i)}$ are assumed normalized, so that

$$\psi^{(a)}(E^{(a)}, r_a) = \int d^3r_b \psi^{(b)}(E^{(b)}, r_b) \psi(E, r_a, r_b)$$

and $\psi^{(a)}(E^{(a)}, r_a)$ satisfies the set of coupled Schrödinger equations¹

$$\int d^3r_b \mathbf{H}_{ab} \psi_b^{(a)} = E_a \psi_a^{(a)}, \quad (9.7)$$

where

$$\mathbf{H}_{ab} \equiv \left(-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m} \nabla^2 + V_a(r) \right) \delta_{ab} + V_{ab}^{(ab)}(r), \quad (9.8)$$

$$V_{ab}^{(ab)}(r) \equiv \int d^3r_b V_a(r_b) V^{(ab)}(r_b - r) \psi_b^{(b)}(r_b), \quad (9.9)$$

and the indices a and b run partly over discrete and partly over continuous values.

¹ Eqs. 9.7.

In order to deal with a manageable model system, let us truncate this infinite set of coupled equations by assuming that particle b has only two possible states (thereby removing the possibility of exchange reactions in which initially particle b is bound and a free, while finally a is bound and b free), and write (9.7) in matrix notation,

$$(\mathbf{T} + \mathbf{V})\Phi = \mathcal{E}\Phi, \quad (9.10)$$

where Φ has two components, the first being the wave function of particle a for the case in which b is in its ground state of energy $E_0^{(b)}$ and hence the energy of a is $E_a \equiv E - E_0^{(b)}$, and the second component being the wave function of a when b is in its second state of energy $E_1^{(b)}$ and hence that of particle a is $E_a \equiv E - E_1^{(b)}$. $\mathcal{E}$ is the diagonal matrix with E_a and E_a on its diagonal. The two states are referred to as the two channels of the system. Since the bound-state wave functions $\psi_1^{(b)}$ and $\psi_0^{(b)}$ can be chosen real, the matrix V is real and symmetric.

To calculate the scattering of particle a we proceed just as in the single-channel case considered in Chapter 4: we have to solve the Lippmann-Schwinger equation

$$\Psi^+ = \Phi_0 + G_0^+ V \Psi^+, \quad (9.11)$$

in which G_0^+ is the diagonal (in channel space) matrix that solves the equation

$$(E - \mathbf{T})G_0^+ = 1 \quad (9.12)$$

with the usual outgoing-wave boundary condition. (Here $\mathbf{T}$ is both the unit matrix in channel space and the unit operator.) The two components of Φ_0 depend on the initial channel: if initially particle b is in its ground state while particle a moves in, the first component of Φ_0 is the plane wave $(2\pi)^{-3/2} e^{i\mathbf{k}_1 \cdot \mathbf{r}}$, where $k_1^2 = |\mathbf{k}_1|^2 \equiv 2M(E_0)/\hbar^2$, and the second component equals zero. If initially b is in its second state, the first component of Φ_0 vanishes and its second component equals $(2\pi)^{-3/2} e^{i\mathbf{k}_2 \cdot \mathbf{r}}$, where $k_2^2 \equiv |\mathbf{k}_2|^2 \equiv 2M(E_1)/\hbar^2$. These two-column matrices can be arranged in a 2×2 matrix, with the free relation written as $(2\pi)^{-3/2} e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}}$, where $\mathbf{K}$ is a diagonal matrix with the diagonal elements k_1 and k_2 . In terms of the matrix K , which has k_1 and k_2 on the diagonal, $K \equiv \sqrt{2M\mathcal{E}}/\hbar$, the free Green's function is expressible in the form

$$G_0^+(E; \mathbf{r}, \mathbf{r}') = -\frac{M}{2\pi\hbar^2} \frac{e^{iK|\mathbf{r}-\mathbf{r}'|}}{|\mathbf{r}-\mathbf{r}'|},$$

from which we obtain the asymptotic form of Ψ^+

$$\Psi^+(E, \mathbf{r}) \sim (2\pi)^{-3/2} e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}} + \frac{1}{r} e^{iKr} A(E) \hat{\mathbf{k}}_p \hat{\mathbf{k}}_0,$$

where $\vec{k}_i$ and $\vec{k}_f$ are the initial and final momentum directions, and A is the 2×2 matrix

$$A(E; \vec{k}_i, \vec{k}_f) = -\frac{M}{2\pi\hbar^2} \Theta(E, \vec{k}_i, \vec{k}_f), \quad (8.13)$$

$$\Theta(E, \vec{k}_i) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (\vec{k}_i^{(1)}, \psi^{(1)}) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \int d^3r \, \psi_0^*(\vec{r}_f, E) \psi^{(1)}(\vec{r}_i, E). \quad (8.14)$$

The scattering cross section from the initial channel i and direction $\vec{k}_i$ to the final channel f and direction $\vec{k}_f$ is given by⁴

$$\frac{d\sigma(E; \vec{k}_i, \vec{k}_f)}{d\Omega} = \frac{k_f}{k_i} |A(E; \vec{k}_i, \vec{k}_f)|^2. \quad (8.15)$$

Specification of a channel amounts to specifying in which of its two states particle a is and at the same time determining the values of k_f and k_i . If the two states are the same, the scattering is elastic; otherwise it is inelastic, with different initial and final energies of particle a as well as of particle b but with the total energy conserved.

Just as in Section 4.4, it is convenient to define a complete Green's function by the equation

$$(\mathcal{G} - \mathbf{T} - V_0)\mathcal{G}^+ = \mathbf{1} \quad (8.16)$$

and the outgoing-wave boundary condition, and solve (8.11) by writing

$$\Psi^+ = \Psi_0 + \mathcal{G}^+ V \Psi_0$$

so that $\Theta(E)$ has the form

$$\Theta(E, \vec{k}) = (\vec{k}_0^{(1)}, \psi_0^{(1)}) + (\vec{k}_0^{(1)}, \mathcal{G}^+ \psi_0^{(1)}). \quad (8.17)$$

Let us also define the diagonal matrix Green's function $\mathcal{G}^+$ whose elements g_i^+ and g_j^+ satisfy

$$[E_1 - \mathbf{T} - v_1]g_i^+ = \mathbf{1}, \quad [E_2 - \mathbf{T} - v_2]g_j^+ = \mathbf{1}, \quad (8.18)$$

and the outgoing-wave boundary condition, where

$$v_1(r) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} V_1(r) + V_2^{(\text{int})}(r), \quad v_2(r) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} V_2(r) + V_2^{(\text{ext})}(r). \quad (8.19)$$

We are particularly interested in the case in which channel 1 is open, i.e., particle a has enough energy to be in its continuous spectrum, while channel 2 is closed so that it is below its continuum (the energy region between E_1^c and E_2^c of Figure 9.2).

Multiplying (8.16) by $\mathcal{G}^+$ on the left, we obtain the equation for the full Green's function, $(\mathbf{1} - \mathcal{G}^+ V^{(\text{ext})})\mathcal{G}^+ = \mathcal{G}^+$, or,

$$\mathcal{G}^+ = \mathcal{G}^+ + \mathcal{G}^+ V^{(\text{ext})} \mathcal{G}^+, \quad (8.20)$$

⁴Where does the factor k_f/k_i come from?

where

$$\mu \equiv \frac{4\pi}{3} V_0^{(2D)} Q$$

in terms of the matrix

$$Q \equiv \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Also define

$$P_1 \equiv \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad P_2 \equiv \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Since P_1 commutes with $G^\pm$ and $P_2 Q = Q P_2$, multiplication of (3.20) by P_1 and by P_2 leads to

$$P_1 G^\pm = g_1^\pm P_1 + g_1^\pm V_0^{(2D)} P_1 G^\pm,$$

$$P_2 G^\pm = g_2^\pm P_2 + g_2^\pm V_0^{(2D)} P_2 G^\pm,$$

and substitution of the first equation into the second, to

$$P_2 G^\pm = g_2^\pm P_2 + g_2^\pm V_0^{(2D)} g_1^\pm P_1 + g_2^\pm V_0^{(2D)} g_1^\pm V_0^{(2D)} P_2 G^\pm,$$

or,

$$(E_2 - \mathbf{T} - v_2 - V_0^{(2D)} g_2 V_0^{(2D)}) P_2 G^\pm = P_2 + V_0^{(2D)} g_1^\pm P_1. \quad (3.21)$$

Insuring that $G_2^\pm \equiv P_2 G^\pm P_2$ is a Green's function that satisfies the equation

$$(E_2 - \mathcal{H}(E_2) G_2^\pm) = P_2, \quad (3.22)$$

with the real-valued, energy-dependent, non-Hermitian, effective Hamiltonian

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{H}(E_2) &\equiv \mathbf{T} + v_2 + V_0^{(2D)} g_2(E_2) V_0^{(2D)} \\ &= \mathbf{T} + v_2 + V_0^{(2D)} \mathcal{G}(E_2 - \mathbf{H}_1)^{-1} V_0^{(2D)} \\ &\quad - i\pi V_0^{(2D)} g_1(E_2 - \mathbf{H}_2) V_0^{(2D)}, \end{aligned} \quad (3.23)$$

in which use has been made of (A.2) as well as of the symbolic expression in (A.13'), $\mathcal{P}$ stands for Cauchy's principal value, and $\mathbf{H}_1 \equiv \mathbf{T} + v_1$. The intuitive physical interpretation of this effective Hamiltonian seen by particle α when it is in channel 2 is that in addition to using the ordinary potential v_2 , it sees the effect of the interaction $V_0^{(2D)}$ causing a transition to channel 1, where it can propagate freely (subject only to the potential v_1), followed by a transition back to channel 2.

The operation $\mathcal{G}_2 \equiv [E_2 - \mathcal{H}(E_2)]^{-1} P_2$ will have a pole at an eigenvalue $A(E_1^{(2D)})$ of $\mathcal{G}_1$

$$\mathcal{G}_1(E_1^{(2D)}) \alpha = A(E_1^{(2D)}) \alpha,$$

which in the absence of $V^{(int)}$ would simply be the signature $k_1^{(int)}$ of $T + V_2$. But (9.22) and (9.19) show that the presence of $V^{(int)}$ shifts it not only along the real axis but generally into the complex plane,

$$A(k_1^{(int)}) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} R = \frac{1}{2}i\Gamma,$$

which is the reason why the state becomes unstable, as we have seen. When $V^{(int)}$ is small, therefore, $\alpha \approx \phi^{(int)}$ as well as $\Gamma \ll R$. For real energies in the vicinity of $E_2 = R$ (9.17) shows that the elastic scattering amplitude of particle 1 contains a rapidly varying term that, as a function of the energy, behaves like

$$\frac{(\Phi_{\alpha}(k_1^{(int)}), V^{(int)}\psi_{\alpha}, V^{(int)}\Phi_{\alpha}(k_1^{(int)}))}{|E_2 - R + \frac{1}{2}i\Gamma|}, \quad (9.24)$$

producing a sharp peak of width Γ in the magnitude of the amplitude and in the elastic scattering cross section that has the characteristic shape (5.4) shown in Figure 4.2. From (9.23) and a comparison of (4.127) with (4.128) we calculate the value of Γ for weak $V^{(int)}$ to be

$$\begin{aligned} \Gamma &= 2\text{Re}(\phi^{(int)}(k_1^{(int)}), T_{12}^{(int)}\phi(E_1 - E_2)(k_1^{(int)})\phi(k_1^{(int)})) \\ &= \frac{2\pi N\Phi_1}{2\pi} \int d\Omega_1 |\phi^{(int)}(k_1^{(int)}), T_{12}^{(int)}\phi^{(int)}(k_1^{(int)})|^2 \\ &= \frac{2\pi N\Phi_1}{2\pi} \int d\Omega_1 \left| \int d^3r_1 d^3r_2 \phi^{(int)}(k_1^{(int)}; r_1)\phi^{(int)}(k_1^{(int)}; r_2) \right. \\ &\quad \left. \times V^{(int)}(r_1 - r_2)\phi^{(int)}(k_1; r_1)\phi^{(int)}(k_1^{(int)}; r_2) \right|^2. \end{aligned}$$

Comparison with (5.5) shows that the width Γ of the resonance peak is related to the lifetime of the unstable state by (5.2). It follows from (9.24) that the phase of the scattering amplitude at the resonance sharply rises by π .¹²

9.2 Identical particles

Even in classical physics certain phenomena involving more than one particle depend on whether the particles are identical or distinguishable by their masses or other characteristics. For example, if two identical particles are scattered by one another and their emergence is counted by detectors, the numbers of particles #1 registering in detector A and of #2 in detector B has to be added to the number of particles #2 registering in A and of #1 in

¹²More this.

If the cross sections in which the final particles are and are not exchanged have to be added to arrive at the correct result.

In quantum mechanics, however, the situation is very much more serious. Classically, two particles with identical properties can still be distinguished by their history; they have a certain individuality; we can keep track of them by following them along their trajectories. In quantum mechanics, this cannot be done; any attempt to identify one along its track would alter the experiment. Since neither individuality nor history can be used for identification, the only possible marker of a particle is its state, specified by the measured values of a complete set of commuting observables. Two identical particles in the same state are fundamentally indistinguishable, in keeping with the assumption that the state of a system, as given by its state vector (in the ideal situation of a pure state), completely specifies all the properties of the system at one time. Moreover, in order to arrive at the correct scattering cross section in a situation such as described in the last paragraph above, the scattering amplitudes have to be added rather than the cross sections, which results in additional interference effects that depend on the relative phases of the two amplitudes.

Consider, then, a wave function of N identical particles $\psi(\mathbf{r}_1, \dots, \mathbf{r}_N, t)$ (where the numbers indicate the particles in some specified state), and let $\hat{P}_{12}$ be the operator that exchanges particles 1 and 2, so that

$$\hat{P}_{12}\psi(\mathbf{r}_1, \dots, \mathbf{r}_N, t) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \psi(\mathbf{r}_2, \mathbf{r}_1, \dots, \mathbf{r}_N, t).$$

Since, in order to ensure that experimental results cannot distinguish between particles, all expectation values have to be invariant under the exchange, we must have $|\hat{P}_{12}\psi|^2 = |\psi|^2$, and hence $\hat{P}_{12}\psi = e^{i\varphi}\psi$ with φ real. ψ must be an eigenfunction of $\hat{P}_{12}$ with an eigenvalue of modulus 1. What is more, if we want single-valuedness of the wave function, we ought to have $e^{i\varphi} = 1$. The eigenvalue of $\hat{P}_{12}$ must therefore be ± 1 , and all physically acceptable wave functions ψ of these particles have to be eigenfunctions of $\hat{P}_{12}$.

Next, take exchanges between identical particles 2 and 3 and suppose that

$$\hat{P}_{23}\psi = \psi \quad \text{and} \quad \hat{P}_{12}\psi = -\psi.$$

But⁴ $\hat{P}_{13} = \hat{P}_{12}\hat{P}_{23}$ and therefore $\hat{P}_{13}\psi = -\psi$, while also $\hat{P}_{13} = \hat{P}_{23}\hat{P}_{12}$ and therefore $\hat{P}_{13}\psi = \psi$. Consequently we have to conclude that there have to be two classes of identical particles: those whose wave functions are symmetric under exchange of any two of them, and those whose wave functions are antisymmetric; no wave function of N identical particles can be symmetric under the exchange of some of them and antisymmetric under the exchange of others. Note that the exchange operators $\hat{P}_{12}$ and $\hat{P}_{13}$ don't

⁴Check this.

constants, as there is no complete set of common eigenfunctions, but there are eigenfunctions that are symmetric under all exchanges, and others that are antisymmetric, and these two classes are the only ones physically acceptable. Therefore, the Hilbert space of several identical particles contains states that do not correspond to physically realizable states.

There is, however, the following caveat: The argument that the eigenvalues $p = \pm 1$ of the exchange operator $\mathcal{E}_{ij}$ have to be ± 1 is based on the assumption that when two particles are physically exchanged by transporting them along some path, and the process is repeated along another path, the wave function has to return to its original value, else it would not be single-valued. For purely topological reasons, this reasoning is correct in three dimensions, where two exchanges are topologically equivalent to none, even if the exclusion principle for a hard core repulsion is taken into account and the particles are prevented from occupying the same point. However, in two dimensions (or in a multiply connected three-dimensional manifold), the argument breaks down: no number of repeated exchanges is necessarily topologically equivalent to zero exchanges if coincidences is excluded. The reason is the same as that discussed in Section 7.2 in the context of the Aharonov-Bohm effect. As a result, identical particles confined to a two-dimensional configuration space need not be members of one of the only two classes allowed in three dimensions; their wave functions can have more complicated properties under exchange than simple symmetry or antisymmetry: under exchange their wave functions may change by arbitrary phase factors. Such particles, which have come to be known as *anyons*, play significant roles in the physics of the solid state, where two-dimensional films and surface structures come into play. We shall not pursue this topic further in this book.⁸

If a wave function is symmetric or anti-symmetric at one time, it will retain this property for all time. This is because $\psi(\mathbf{r}) = \exp(-i\mathbf{H}t/\hbar)\psi(\mathbf{Q})$, and we must have $[\mathcal{E}_{ij}, \mathbf{H}] = 0$, or else the particles would be dynamically distinguishable. Therefore if $\mathcal{E}_{ij}\psi(\mathbf{Q}) = \pm\psi(\mathbf{Q})$, then

$$\mathcal{E}_{ij}\psi(t) = \exp(-i\mathbf{H}t/\hbar)\mathcal{E}_{ij}\psi(\mathbf{Q}) = \pm \exp(-i\mathbf{H}t/\hbar)\psi(\mathbf{Q}) = \pm\psi(t).$$

The next question is how to construct such totally symmetric or anti-symmetric wave functions. Suppose that $\psi(1, 2, \dots, N)$ is an arbitrary wave function of N identical particles. In order to construct a symmetric function, we simply add all the wave functions obtained by exchanging pairs of particles:

$$\psi_S(1, 2, \dots, N) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \sum_{j=1}^N \psi(j, 1, \dots, N),$$

⁸For a good survey, see [Claughton] or also [Bergshoeff].

where the sum runs over all permutations. Similarly, an anti-symmetric function is constructed by

$$\psi_{\text{antisym}}(1, 2, \dots, N) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \sum_{\text{perm}} \epsilon_{ijk\dots} \psi(i, j, \dots, N),$$

where $\epsilon_{ijk\dots}$ is the sign of the permutation; that is, $\epsilon_{ijk\dots} = 1$ if $i, j, \dots$ is an even permutation of $1, 2, \dots$ (it takes an even number of exchanges to get from one to the other), and $\epsilon_{ijk\dots} = -1$ if $i, j, \dots$ is an odd permutation of $1, 2, \dots$ (it takes an odd number of exchanges).⁶

As an example take the case of N non-interacting identical particles. Any eigenfunction of the Hamiltonian $\mathbf{H} = \sum_{i=1}^N \mathbf{H}_i$ of such a system can be written as a linear combination of product wave functions, each of which are eigenfunctions of identical individual Hamiltonians $\mathbf{H}_i$:

$$\psi = \psi_{n_1}(1) \psi_{n_2}(2) \cdots \psi_{n_N}(N),$$

where

$$\mathbf{H}_i \psi_{n_i} = E_{n_i} \psi_{n_i}, \quad \text{and} \quad E = E_{n_1} + E_{n_2} + \cdots + E_{n_N}.$$

Each function, however, are generally neither symmetric nor anti-symmetric. Since there clearly is exchange degeneracy (unless all the E_{n_i} are equal)—that is, the total energy of the system is invariant under exchange—we can take linear combinations of such product wave functions with the same total energy and still have an energy eigenfunction. So to form a symmetric energy eigenfunction we simply take

$$\psi_{\text{sym}}(1, 2, \dots, N) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \frac{1}{\sqrt{N!}} \sum_{\text{perm}} \psi_{n_1}(i_1) \psi_{n_2}(i_2) \cdots \psi_{n_N}(i_N), \quad (9.24)$$

and the exchange degeneracy is thereby generally removed.

A simple way to form an anti-symmetric wave function is to take the *Slater determinant*,⁷

$$\psi_{\text{antisym}}(1, 2, \dots, N) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \frac{1}{\sqrt{N!}} \begin{vmatrix} \psi_{n_1}(1) & \psi_{n_1}(2) & \cdots & \psi_{n_1}(N) \\ \psi_{n_2}(1) & \psi_{n_2}(2) & \cdots & \psi_{n_2}(N) \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \psi_{n_N}(1) & \psi_{n_N}(2) & \cdots & \psi_{n_N}(N) \end{vmatrix}. \quad (9.25)$$

If the one-particle wave functions are all orthonormal and each state is occupied by one particle, the wave functions defined by (9.24) and (9.25)

⁶You should check that any exchange of two particles in ψ_{antisym} , as defined above changes the sign of that wave function.

⁷Why is this wave function anti-symmetric?

are properly normalized. To see this, take the square of the norm of the symmetric wave function,

$$\langle\psi_S|\psi_S\rangle = \frac{1}{N!} \sum_{\text{perm}} |\psi_S(1), \psi_S(2), \psi_S(3), \psi_S(4), \dots, \psi_S(N)|^2 = \frac{1}{N!} \sum_{\text{perm}} 1 = 1.$$

(As an exercise, I will ask you to calculate the proper normalization factor if some levels are occupied by more than one particle.) The argument for the anti-symmetric case is the same as for the symmetric case.

If two particles described by an anti-symmetric wave function are in the same state, the wave function, of course, has to vanish. Therefore such particles obey the *Pauli exclusion principle*: no state can accommodate more than one of them. The distinction between the two kinds of particles that exist in nature can therefore be put most simply by saying: One kind is subject to the Pauli principle and the other kind is not. This distinction has important consequences in statistical mechanics. When in thermodynamic equilibrium at the temperature T , the energies E_k of fundamentally indistinguishable particles not subject to the Pauli principle are distributed according to Bose-Einstein statistics:

$$P(E_k) \propto \frac{1}{e^{(E_k - \mu)/kT} + 1}, \quad (8.27)$$

where k is Boltzmann's constant and μ is the so-called chemical potential. [For a derivation, see (8.47) below.] On the other hand, if they are subject to the exclusion principle, they obey Fermi-Dirac statistics,

$$P(E_k) \propto \frac{1}{e^{(E_k - \mu)/kT} + 1}. \quad (8.28)$$

[For a derivation, see (8.48).] The first are therefore called *bosons* and the second, *fermions*. (Now you may appreciate why the other kind of particles possible in two-dimensional or multiply connected three-dimensional structures are called *anyons*.) Inspection of the two distributions shows that both approach Maxwell-Boltzmann statistics for high energies, but for low energies (compared to kT) they deviate markedly from $e^{-E_k/kT}$ as well as from one another.

Of the known particles, electrons, protons, neutrons, mesons, and neutrinos are examples of fermions; photons and pions are bosons. It is one of the most fundamental facts of physics that all fermions have half (odd) integral spin, while all bosons have integral spin. The ultimate explanation of this spin-statistics connection rests on the theory of relativity and on quanta fields that go beyond the scope of this book;⁸ in Chapter 18 we shall see a partial explanation. The spin-statistics connection holds not only for

⁸For a good review, see [Dah].

elementary particles but also for compound systems such as atoms and nuclei: those of integral spin act like bosons, and those of half-integral spin like fermions. For example, the fact that C^{12} -molecules behave bosonically itself is their neutral scattering by a constructive interference peak at 90° in their center-of-mass system because the two scattering amplitudes for direct and exchange scattering have to be added, were they fermions, the two amplitudes would have to be subtracted, which would result in destructive interference and a minimum.

Perhaps the most dramatic manifestation of the fact that even bound systems of integral spin behave like bosons is their observed behavior at extremely low temperatures. As we shall see in the next section, bosons are, in fact, actually attracted into states that are already heavily occupied, the result of which is called Bose-Einstein condensation. The atoms of liquid ^4He all congregate in the state of lowest energy when cooled to near 0° Kelvin, whereas those of ^3He behave quite differently; as is appropriate for them as fermions they must all occupy different states and thus fill the lowest energy levels as high as necessary, the top level being called the *Fermi surface*.

A gas that is a Bose-Einstein condensate, whose existence was predicted by Satyendra Nath Bose and Albert Einstein in 1924, is not to be confused with an ordinary collection of atoms or molecules all of which are in their lowest energy state. In the condensate, the N -particle state is pure, and the entire system consisting of many atoms is describable by a wave function in its $3N$ -dimensional configuration space rather than by a density matrix; the states of all the atoms are phase-correlated. Such a state of a gas at ultra-low temperature was first observed experimentally only a few years ago.

9.2.1 Fock space

In view of the essential indistinguishability of identical particles, a way of labelling states of more than one of them that is more convenient than trying to specify which particle is in which state, is to use the occupation-number representation already introduced in Section 1.4.3, which is a natural expression of the view that particles are no more than manifestations of an underlying quantum field. Here one defines a standard order of the states (which requires infinitely many tags), for example, by increasing energy and some fixed conventional order for degenerate states, and labels the states of the system by identifying which of them are occupied and by how many particles, as in

$$\Phi(0, 1, 0, 0, 2, 0, \dots) \equiv \Phi_{[a]} \equiv |a\rangle,$$

where $|a\rangle$ denotes the set of occupation numbers in the standard order. This is clearly a more appropriate manner of dealing with the fact that

the particles have no identity than attempting to specify which of them is where. It is called the *occupation-number representation* and the Hilbert space whose basis vectors are so labelled is also called *Fock space*, after the Russian physicist V. Fock. Whenever the occupation numbers are restricted, for fermions, of course, none of them can exceed 1.

As we saw in Section 1.4.3, the proper mathematical tools for the description of these states are the annihilation and creation operators, which are conventionally written as a_i and $a_i^\dagger$, respectively (these are the same as the $\hat{b}_i$ and $\hat{b}_i^\dagger$ in Section 1.4.2). For bosons they satisfy the commutation relations

$$[a_i, a_j^\dagger] = \delta_{ij}, \quad [a_i, a_j] = 0. \quad (8.22)$$

In terms of the occupation-number operator for state i , $N_i \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} a_i^\dagger a_i$, we then have

$$N_i |n\rangle = n_i |n\rangle. \quad (8.23)$$

The total number operator,

$$N \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \sum_i N_i = \sum_i a_i^\dagger a_i, \quad (8.24)$$

has as its eigenstates all the states of a system containing a fixed, given number of particles, and its eigenvalues are these total numbers of particles. (The system is now a field rather than a collection of particles.)

As we saw,

$$a_i^\dagger |\dots, n_i, \dots\rangle = \sqrt{n_i + 1} |\dots, n_i + 1, \dots\rangle,$$

which can also be written as

$$a_i^\dagger |n\rangle = \sqrt{n_i + 1} |n\rangle + |n_i\rangle, \quad (8.25)$$

so that

$$|n\rangle = \frac{\dots (a_i^\dagger)^{n_i} \dots (a_i^\dagger)^{n_i}}{\sqrt{n_i! n_i!} \dots} |0\rangle = \frac{(a_i^\dagger)^{n_i} a_i^{n_i} \dots (a_i^\dagger)^{n_i}}{\sqrt{n_i! n_i!} \dots} |0\rangle, \quad (8.26)$$

as in (1.40) and (1.44).

For fermions, we have to be a little more careful about the order of these operators because they anti-commute:

$$[a_i, a_j^\dagger] = \delta_{ij}, \quad \{a_i, a_j\} = 0. \quad (8.27)$$

As we saw in Section 1.4.3 these anti-commutation relations lead to the Pauli exclusion principle, so that only occupation numbers 0 and 1 are allowed. In order to end up with consistent signs, the action of $a_i^\dagger$ has to include a sign factor such as

$$a_i^\dagger |n\rangle = (-1)^P (1 - n_i) |n\rangle + |n_i\rangle, \quad (8.28)$$

where p is the number of occupied states in $\{i\}$ higher than i . (This sign then of course depends on the order of states adopted by convention, but it will remain consistent once this order is fixed.) Let us check that this works correctly:

$$\begin{aligned} a_i^\dagger |0\rangle &= |1, 0, 0, \dots\rangle \\ a_j^\dagger |1, 0, 0, \dots\rangle &= |1, 1, 0, 0, \dots\rangle = -a_i^\dagger |0, 1, 0, 0, \dots\rangle = -a_i^\dagger a_j^\dagger |0\rangle \\ &= a_j^\dagger a_i^\dagger |0\rangle = a_j^\dagger |1, 0, 0, \dots\rangle. \end{aligned}$$

Had the factor $(-1)^p$ (or some other conventional sign factor) not been present in (9.30), this would not have come out consistent.¹⁹

The state vector of one-particle systems in which the particle occupies the state i are $\Phi_i = |i\rangle_i = a_i^\dagger |0\rangle$ and the completeness of the states used as a basis implies that $\sum_i |\Phi_i\rangle\langle i| = I_1$, or

$$\sum_i a_i^\dagger \langle i| |0\rangle\langle 0| = P_1, \quad (9.31)$$

where P_1 is the projection on the subspace of all one-particle states in the Fock space. Both P_1 and P_0 should, of course, be independent of the basis of states used in the definition, and they are.²⁰ This includes even spin-basis such as the configuration basis, which was employed in Section 1.4.2. Then,

$$\rho_{ij}^{(1)} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \rho^{(1)}(i) \rho^{(1)}(j)$$

is the density of particles in configuration space and

$$N = \int d^3x \rho^{(1)}(x) \rho^{(1)}(x)$$

their total number; the projection on the one-particle subspace is given by

$$P_1 = \int d^3x \rho^{(1)}(x) \rho^{(1)}(x) \rho^{(1)}(x).$$

In this language a general one-particle state is given by $|\psi\rangle_1 = \Phi_\psi = \sum_i c_i a_i^\dagger |0\rangle$, so that the probability of finding the particle in the state i is given by

$$|\langle i|\psi\rangle|^2 = |\langle i|\sum_j c_j a_j^\dagger |0\rangle|^2 = |\langle 0|\sum_j c_j a_i a_j^\dagger |0\rangle|^2 = |c_i|^2,$$

where the commutation relations (9.25) have been used and the fact that $a_i^2 |0\rangle = 0$. To obtain a one-particle wave function, we proceed as in Section

¹⁹Verify this.

²⁰Prove this as an exercise.

1.4.3. Using either (1.55) or (1.56), depending on whether the particles are bosons or fermions, and (1.45), with the result (1.46), and

$$\psi(\mathbf{r}) = \langle 0 | \hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\mathbf{r}) | 1 \rangle = \sum_j c_j \langle 0 | \hat{\Psi}^\dagger(\mathbf{r}) \hat{a}_j^\dagger | 0 \rangle = \sum_j c_j \psi_j(\mathbf{r}), \quad (3.27)$$

where $\psi_j(\mathbf{r})$ is the wave function of the state j .

If a new set of annihilation operators is introduced by a unitary transformation U in the sense that

$$\hat{a}_i' = \sum_j U_{ij} \hat{a}_j,$$

then for bosons

$$[\hat{a}_i', \hat{a}_j'] = \sum_{kl} U_{ik} U_{jl} [\hat{a}_k, \hat{a}_l] = U_{ij}, \quad (3.28)$$

and therefore, since $\hat{a}_i'^{\dagger} = \sum_k U_{ik}^* \hat{a}_k^\dagger$,

$$\langle 1' | = \hat{a}_i'^{\dagger} | 0 \rangle = \sum_j U_{ij}^* \hat{a}_j^\dagger | 0 \rangle = \sum_j U_{ij}^* \langle 1 |,$$

which means that the matrix U_{ij} is the transformation function connecting the two one-particle bases $|1\rangle_i$ and $|1\rangle'_i$, $U_{ij} = \langle \hat{\Psi}_i | \hat{\Phi}_j \rangle$. If the new "basis" is a *quasi-basis*, for example the *quasi-basis* for the configuration representation, then $U_{ij}(\mathbf{r}) = \langle \hat{\Phi}_i | \hat{\Phi}_j \rangle = \psi_j(\mathbf{r})$, the normalized one-particle wave function of the j^{th} state, and we have by (3.28),

$$\langle \hat{\Phi}_i | \hat{\Phi}_j \hat{a}_j' = \psi_j(\mathbf{r}). \quad (3.29)$$

For fermions the same equations hold, with the commutators in (3.28) and (3.29) replaced by anti-commutators. The commutators $[\hat{\Phi}_i(\mathbf{r}), \hat{a}_j]$, resp. anti-commutators $[\hat{\Phi}_i(\mathbf{r}), \hat{a}_j]$, of course, all vanish.

The general two-boson wavefunction is obtained by repeated application of (3.29), remembering that whenever $\hat{\Phi}(\mathbf{r})$ acts on $|0\rangle$ the result vanishes,¹¹

$$\begin{aligned} \psi(\mathbf{R}_1, \mathbf{R}_2) &= \langle 0 | \hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{R}_1) \hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{R}_2) | 1 \rangle = \sum_{i_1 i_2} c_{i_1 i_2} \langle 0 | \hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{R}_1) \hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{R}_2) \hat{a}_{i_1}^\dagger \hat{a}_{i_2}^\dagger | 0 \rangle \\ &\quad + \sum_j \sum_{i_1 i_2} \frac{c_j}{\sqrt{2}} \langle 0 | \hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{R}_1) \hat{\Psi}(\mathbf{R}_2) \hat{a}_j^\dagger | 0 \rangle \\ &= \sum_{i_1 i_2} c_{i_1 i_2} \psi(\mathbf{R}_1) \psi_{i_1}(\mathbf{R}_2) + \psi(\mathbf{R}_1) \psi(\mathbf{R}_2) + \sum_j c_j \sqrt{2} \psi_j(\mathbf{R}_1) \psi_j(\mathbf{R}_2) \\ &= \sum_{ij} A_{ij} \psi_i(\mathbf{R}_1) \psi_j(\mathbf{R}_2). \end{aligned} \quad (3.30)$$

¹¹ F.B. in the ensuing steps.

where $d_{ij} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} c_{ij} + c_{ji} = d_{ji}$ for $i \neq j$, and $d_{ii} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} c_{ii}^2/c_{ij}$. Thus $\psi(\vec{r}_1, \vec{r}_2)$ is automatically symmetric. The two-fermion wave function, on the other hand, is given by the anti-symmetric combination²³

$$\psi(\vec{r}_1, \vec{r}_2) = \sum_{ij} d_{ij} (\psi_i(\vec{r}_1) \psi_j(\vec{r}_2) - \psi_j(\vec{r}_1) \psi_i(\vec{r}_2)) = \sum_{ij} d_{ij} \psi_i(\vec{r}_1) \psi_j(\vec{r}_2), \quad (9.41)$$

where $d_{ij} = c_{ij} - c_{ji} = -d_{ji}$.

For N particles, we have similarly, $|\psi\rangle = \sum_{\{q\}} c_{\{q\}} |\psi_{\{q\}}\rangle$, and the n -particle wave function for bosons,

$$\begin{aligned} \psi(\vec{r}_1, \vec{r}_2, \dots) &= \langle \Omega \cdots \Phi(\vec{r}_1) \Phi(\vec{r}_2) \rangle_{\psi} \\ &= \sum_{\{q\}} \frac{c_{\{q\}}}{\sqrt{n_q! n_q! \cdots}} \langle \Omega \cdots \Phi(\vec{r}_1) \Phi(\vec{r}_2) \cdots \underbrace{\hat{a}_q^{\dagger n_q} \hat{a}_q^{\dagger n_q}}_{\text{}} \rangle_{\psi}, \end{aligned} \quad (9.42)$$

where the sum runs over all $\{q\}$ such that $n_1 + n_2 + \dots = N$, and the right-hand side can be expressed as a linear combination of products of N one-particle wave functions by successively commuting (or anti-commuting) all the $\Phi(q)$ to the right. For fermions, the result is automatically antisymmetric, and for fermions anti-symmetric.

The Hamiltonian in Fock space is expressed in terms of the operators a_q and $a_q^\dagger$. In the simplest instance,

$$H = \sum_{\vec{q}} H_{\vec{q}}^{(2)} a_{\vec{q}}^\dagger a_{\vec{q}}. \quad (9.43)$$

Acting on a one-particle state, in which the particle is in the state $\Phi_{\vec{q}_1}$, it results in

$$H|\vec{q}_1\rangle = \sum_{\vec{q}} H_{\vec{q}}^{(2)} a_{\vec{q}}^\dagger a_{\vec{q}} a_{\vec{q}_1} |\Omega\rangle = \sum_{\vec{q}} H_{\vec{q}}^{(2)} a_{\vec{q}}^\dagger |\Omega\rangle = \sum_{\vec{q}} H_{\vec{q}}^{(2)} |\vec{q}_1\rangle,$$

which identifies $H_{\vec{q}}^{(2)}$ as

$$H_{\vec{q}}^{(2)} = \langle \vec{q}_1 | H | \vec{q}_1 \rangle = \langle \Phi_{\vec{q}_1} | H | \Phi_{\vec{q}_1} \rangle.$$

Acting on a two-particle state, the result is

$$H|\vec{q}_1, \vec{q}_2\rangle = \sum_{\vec{q}} H_{\vec{q}}^{(2)} a_{\vec{q}}^\dagger a_{\vec{q}} a_{\vec{q}_1} a_{\vec{q}_2} |\Omega\rangle = \sum_{\vec{q}} H_{\vec{q}}^{(2)} |\vec{q}_1, \vec{q}_2\rangle \pm H_{\vec{q}}^{(2)} |\vec{q}_2, \vec{q}_1\rangle,$$

the sign being + for bosons and - for fermions. Similarly for N -particle states. As you can see, this Hamiltonian acts on one particle at a time,

²³Verify this.

taking it out of its original state and inserting it another, conserving the total number of particles,²⁹ $[\mathbf{H}, \mathbf{N}] = 0$.

For a system of identical non-interacting particles it is most convenient to use a representation that diagonalizes the one-particle Hamiltonians, so that the basis for the occupation number representation diagonalizes $\mathbf{H}^{(1)}$,

$$\mathbf{H} = \sum_i n_i^{\dagger} n_i \mathcal{E}_i^{(1)} = \sum_i n_i E_i,$$

E_i being the energy of a particle in the state i . The Fock states are eigenstates of this Hamiltonian:

$$\mathbf{H}|\nu\rangle = \sum_i E_i n_i |\nu\rangle = \sum_i n_i E_i |\nu\rangle.$$

Let us now add a one-particle perturbation $\mathbf{H}'$, so that

$$\mathbf{H} = \sum_i n_i E_i + \sum_{kl} n_k^{\dagger} R_{kl} n_l.$$

This perturbation may, for example, be an electromagnetic wave producing a transition from $|\nu\rangle$ to $|\nu'\rangle = |\nu\rangle + 1_k - 1_l$. In first-order perturbation theory, the transition probability is then proportional to $|\langle\nu'|\mathbf{H}'|\nu\rangle|^2$, and for $k \neq l$ we have the formula

$$\begin{aligned} \langle\nu'|\mathbf{H}'|\nu\rangle &= \langle\nu| + 1_k - 1_l \langle\nu|\mathbf{H}'|\nu\rangle = \mathcal{R}_{kl}^{\dagger} \langle\nu| + 1_k - 1_l \langle\nu| n_l^{\dagger} n_k |\nu\rangle \\ &= i(-1)^{P(\nu k)} (1 - n_k) n_l R_{kl} \end{aligned}$$

so that

$$|\langle\nu| + 1_k - 1_l \langle\nu|\mathbf{H}'|\nu\rangle|^2 = |\mathcal{R}_{kl}|^2 n_l (1 - n_k). \quad (8.44)$$

Suppose, on the other hand, that the particles are fermions. In that case we have $\langle\nu| + 1_k - 1_l \langle\nu| n_l^{\dagger} n_k |\nu\rangle = \sqrt{n_l(n_k + 1)}$ for $k \neq l$ and as a result,

$$|\langle\nu| + 1_k - 1_l \langle\nu|\mathbf{H}'|\nu\rangle|^2 = |\mathcal{R}_{kl}|^2 n_l (1 + n_k). \quad (8.45)$$

Thus both for fermions and for bosons, the transition probability is proportional to the number of particles in the initial state l (here, since the number of particles in the final state k after the transition). In the fermion case, if the final state is occupied, there can be no transition, a fact that may be interpreted as an effective repulsion. In the boson case, on the other hand, the transition probability is enhanced if the final state is occupied; there is, in effect, an attraction, as though bosons were gregarious and preferred to be in the same state.

²⁹Prove this.

The next more-complicated kind of Hamiltonian is of the form

$$H = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{klmn} H_{klmn}^{(2)} a_k^\dagger a_l^\dagger a_m a_n, \quad (9.45)$$

which annihilates two-particle states and which, on others, describes the interaction of two particles by extracting them from their original states and inserting them into new ones. It also conserves the total number of particles.¹⁴ (All operators that are products of the same number of creation as annihilation operators conserve the number of particles.)

For a system with one-particle and pairwise interactions (and again a representation is used that diagonalizes the one-particle Hamiltonian) the total Hamiltonian will be

$$H = \sum_k \epsilon_k c_k^\dagger c_k + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{klmn} H_{klmn}^{(2)} a_k^\dagger a_l^\dagger a_m a_n$$

and if there is no degeneracy, the first-order energy shift, resulting from the interaction will be given by

$$\Delta E_{(a)} = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{klmn} H_{klmn}^{(2)} \langle a | a_k^\dagger a_l^\dagger a_m a_n | a \rangle.$$

If the particles are fermions, we find that¹⁵

$$\langle a | a_k^\dagger a_l^\dagger a_m a_n | a \rangle = \epsilon_k \epsilon_l (\delta_{km} \delta_{ln} - \delta_{kn} \delta_{lm}).$$

Therefore,

$$\Delta E_{(a)} = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{klmn} \epsilon_k \epsilon_l (H_{klmn}^{(2)} - H_{klmn}^{(2)}),$$

where the second term on the right is called the exchange-energy term, which arises because the particles may be exchanged in the course of the interaction. For example, if the states k and l of two spin-1/2 particles simply differ by their spins, it is convenient to use the spin-exchange operator defined in (2.62), which leads to

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta E_{(a)} &= \frac{1}{2} \sum_{klmn} \epsilon_k \epsilon_l \langle \Phi_{kl} | H^{(2)} - H^{(2)} P_{\text{exch}} | \Phi_{kl} \rangle \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \sum_{klmn} \epsilon_k \epsilon_l \langle \Phi_{kl} | H^{(2)} \frac{1}{2} (1 + P^{(2)}) - P^{(2)} \frac{1}{2} (1 + P^{(2)}) | \Phi_{kl} \rangle. \end{aligned}$$

The exchange interaction of two spin-1/2 fermions can therefore in some circumstances be regarded as a spin-dependent term.

¹⁴Prove this.

¹⁵Show this.

For bosons, on the other hand, the corresponding result for the first-order energy shift is²⁰

$$\Delta E_{(s)} = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{\alpha} n_{\alpha} (n_{\alpha} + 1) R_{\alpha\alpha}^{(2)} + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{\alpha\beta} n_{\alpha} n_{\beta} (R_{\alpha\beta}^{(2)} + R_{\beta\alpha}^{(2)}).$$

The first term represents the interaction of two particles in the same state α , $\frac{1}{2} n_{\alpha} (n_{\alpha} + 1)$ being the number of pairs in the state, which is the fermion case, of course, valid too.

8.2.3 Bose-Einstein and Fermi-Dirac distributions

As an application, consider an assembly of bosons in equilibrium by collision with an atomic system (say, making up the walls of the container) at temperature T . The number of transitions from N_1 atoms at energy E_1 and n_{10} bosons of energy ϵ_{10} to N_2 atoms at energy E_2 and n_1 bosons of energy ϵ_1 will be, according to (8.45), $A N_1 n_{10} (n_1 + 1)$ with some constant A , whereas the number of transitions going in the reverse direction is $A N_2 n_1 (n_{10} + 1)$, so that at equilibrium

$$n_{10} (n_1 + 1) N_1 = n_1 (n_{10} + 1) N_2$$

and the conservation of energy requires $E_1 + \epsilon_{10} = E_2 + \epsilon_1$. At equilibrium, the ratio N_1/N_2 has to follow the Boltzmann law,

$$\frac{N_1}{N_2} = \exp\left[-\frac{E_1 - E_2}{kT}\right] = \exp\left[-\frac{\epsilon_1 - \epsilon_{10}}{kT}\right].$$

The result is the equation

$$\frac{n_{10}}{n_{10} + 1} \frac{n_1 + 1}{n_1} = \exp \frac{\epsilon_1 - \epsilon_{10}}{kT},$$

or

$$\left(1 + \frac{1}{n_1}\right) \exp\left[-\frac{\epsilon_1}{kT}\right] = \left(1 + \frac{1}{n_{10}}\right) \exp\left[-\frac{\epsilon_{10}}{kT}\right] = C,$$

where C is a constant, independent of the energies of the bosons. Therefore

$$n_{10} = \frac{1}{C \exp(\epsilon_{10}/kT) - 1}, \quad (8.47)$$

and C is determined by the constraint

$$N = \sum_{\alpha} n_{\alpha} = \sum_{\alpha} \frac{1}{C \exp(\epsilon_{\alpha}/kT) - 1}.$$

²⁰Here this.

Eq. (9.47) is the Planck distribution law for bosons, or Bose-Einstein statistics.

For fermions (9.44) has to be used instead of (9.43) and the result is¹⁷ the Fermi-Dirac statistical distribution

$$n_{\alpha} = \frac{1}{C \exp(n_{\alpha}/kT) + 1}, \quad (9.48)$$

where, again, C has to be calculated from the constraint that the total number of particles is fixed.

¹⁷Check this.

9.3 Problems and Exercises

1. Use Fermi's golden rule (5.6) to calculate the Auger transition probability per unit time for a helium atom from its $(3s)^2$ state. (Enclose the atom in a large cubic box to discretize the continuous spectrum.)
2. Suppose that state s_1 of a given system is occupied by m_1 identical, non-interacting particles, state s_2 by m_2 , etc. Express the properly normalized multiparticle wave function in terms of the single-particle functions.
3. Suppose two spin-1/2 particles are in a state in which the total angular momentum is a good quantum number; if they are in a singlet state, what is their lowest possible orbital angular momentum? What if they are in a triplet state?
4. Suppose that a new orthonormal basis is used for the definition of occupation numbers in Fock space, $\Phi_i = \sum_j U_{ij} \Phi_j$. How are the new annihilation operators a_j related to the old ones? Show that the total number operator N and the projection operator on one-particle states P_1 are invariant under such a change in basis.
5. Let two identical spin-1/2 particles interact via a spin-independent attractive central potential strong enough to bind.
 - (a) What are the values of the total angular momentum J and of the parity in the ground state?
 - (b) For a given value of J and a given parity, how many possible states are there? Disregard the different orientations (i.e., m values) and make a list of the possible states (i.e., their l values and their total spin values) in each of the four relevant kinds of cases.
6. Consider a helium atom in the simplest approximation, in which the electrons don't interact with one another. If the electrons had spin 1, and hence obeyed Bose-Einstein statistics, what would be their total spin in the ground state?
7. Two identical spin-0 particles are free to move along a line; they do not interact with one another, but each is subject to a harmonic force from the origin that corresponds to the classical frequency ω . The two-particle system is in an eigenstate of the total energy with the eigenvalue $3\hbar\omega$.
 - (a) Write down the density matrix of the system.
 - (b) Calculate both the expectation value and the root-mean-square deviation from that expectation of the energy of one of the particles alone, with the other one ignored.

10

Relativistic Electron Theory

10.1 Preliminaries

The Lagrangian (2.26) for the nonrelativistic matter field had been adopted because it leads to the equation of motion (2.28) and the Hamiltonian (2.23), which is equivalent to (2.24) for a quantum, and the latter equation is the quantum version of the Newtonian energy-momentum relation for a particle. In order to arrive at the appropriate relativistic field equation, it suggests itself that one proceed analogously with the relativistic energy-momentum relation, which for a free particle of mass M reads

$$E^2 = p^2 c^2 + M^2 c^4,$$

where c is the velocity of light. The result of thus defining the Hamiltonian operator to be $H \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \sqrt{p^2 c^2 + M^2 c^4}$ is a Schrödinger equation that reads either

$$i\hbar \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial t} = \sqrt{p^2 c^2 + M^2 c^4} \psi \quad (10.1)$$

or else its more involved version

$$-i\hbar^2 \frac{\partial^2 \psi}{\partial t^2} = (p^2 c^2 + M^2 c^4) \psi. \quad (10.2)$$

In the configuration representation, (10.1) would then lead to the equation

$$i\hbar \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial t} = \sqrt{-\hbar^2 c^2 \nabla^2 + M^2 c^4} \psi,$$

which would be hard to handle because of the square root on the right, while (13.2) would lead to the more manageable

$$-M^2 \frac{\partial^2 \psi}{\partial t^2} = \left[-M^2 c^2 \nabla^2 + M^2 c^4 \right] \psi,$$

or

$$\left[-M^2 \left(\nabla^2 - \frac{1}{c^2} \frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2} \right) + M^2 c^4 \right] \psi = 0. \quad (13.3)$$

The field producing quanta whose one-particle wave function satisfies this equation can be generated from the Lagrangian density

$$\mathcal{L} = \partial^0 \psi^\dagger \psi - \partial^0 \nabla \psi^\dagger \cdot \nabla \psi - M^2 c^4 \psi^\dagger \psi,$$

which leads to the canonically conjugate momentum operator

$$\Pi = i^2 \dot{\psi}^\dagger$$

and the Hamiltonian¹

$$H = \int d^3x \{ M^2 c^4 \Pi \Pi^\dagger + M^2 c^4 \nabla \psi^\dagger \cdot \nabla \psi + M^2 c^4 \psi^\dagger \psi \}. \quad (13.4)$$

In the presence of an electromagnetic field described by the scalar potential ϕ and a vector potential $\mathbf{A}$, the covariant relativistic Schrödinger equation in the configuration representation for a particle of charge e then is the following:

$$\left(i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} - e\phi \right)^2 \psi = \left[c(-i\hbar \nabla - e\mathbf{A})^2 + M^2 c^4 \right] \psi, \quad (13.5)$$

which is, in fact, the equation proposed by Schrödinger as the appropriate relativistic generalization of his original, nonrelativistic equation. Eq. (13.5) is known as the Klein-Gordon equation.²

Eqs. (13.3) and (13.4), while relativistically invariant, have two serious flaws as proposed wave-equations for electrons: first, while the field Hamiltonian (13.4) is positive definite, its eigenvalues are the squares of the energies, and there is no way of forcing these energies to be positive; they automatically come out both positive and negative. Second, if (13.5) is used for an electron in a hydrogen atom, it, by itself, does not account correctly for the fine structure of the spectrum, as we saw in Section 5.11/5; the Pauli term would have to be added ad hoc, in a Lorentz-variant manner. Therefore, to describe the behavior of the wave function (or the underlying field) of an electrically charged particle of spin 1/2, such as the electron, a totally new equation is needed. (However, the Klein-Gordon equation does have its use as a relativistic wave equation for particles of spin 0.)

¹ Show it.

² After O. Klein and W. Gordon.

10.1.1 Relativistic spin

In order to be able to exploit the extensive analogy that exist between Lorentz transformations, which leave $x_0^2 + x_1^2 + x_2^2 - |x|^2$ invariant, and rotations, which leave the Euclidean distance invariant, let us temporarily introduce a four-dimensional Euclidean space by setting $x_4 \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} ix_0 \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} ixt$. This means that, at the expense of having to deal with a purely imaginary x_4 , the Lorentz group is replaced by the rotation group $O(4)$, which leaves $x_1^2 + x_2^2 + x_3^2 + x_4^2$ invariant. Furthermore, for reasons that will become apparent, it will be most convenient to generalize such objects as rotation and reflection operators from 3 to 4 dimensions, then dealing with $O(4)$, and subsequently to descend to 4, the dimensionality of spacetime.

Recall what we know about the spin-1/2 rotation generators $\frac{1}{2}\vec{S}$ in three dimensions. The unitary rotation operator for the spin degree of freedom is given in terms of them by

$$\hat{R} = \exp(i\frac{\vec{S}}{\hbar} \cdot \vec{\theta}), \quad (10.1)$$

if the rotation axis and angle are $\vec{R}$ and ω , respectively. The three components of $\vec{S}$ form an axial vector and are, more properly, the components of an anti-symmetric tensor of rank two, as in (3.50), so that $\frac{1}{2}\sigma_{23}$ is the generator of rotations that leave the (R) -plane invariant. The appropriate commutation relations for such rotation generators are (3.50), and the anti-commutation relations for spin-1/2 are (3.57).

Next, define R_k as the unitary operator for a reflection through the k -axis for spinors, so that, for example, R_1 corresponds to the transformation: $x_1' = x_1$, $x_2' = -x_2$, $x_3' = -x_3$. Since the σ_{ij} are the components of a tensor of rank 2, they must transform like

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma_{12}' &= R_1^{-1} \sigma_{12} R_1 = R_1^{-1} \sigma_{23} R_1 = \sigma_{23} = \sigma_{12}, \\ \sigma_{13}' &= R_1^{-1} \sigma_{13} R_1 = -\sigma_{13} = -\sigma_{31}, \\ \sigma_{23}' &= R_1^{-1} \sigma_{23} R_1 = -\sigma_{23} = -\sigma_{32}, \end{aligned}$$

etc., which implies

$$R_1^{-1} \sigma_k R_1 = \begin{cases} \sigma_k & \text{for } k=1 \\ -\sigma_k & \text{for } k \neq 1, \end{cases}$$

(In other words, R_k commutes with σ_k and anti-commutes with the other σ_k) so

$$R_k^{-1} \sigma_{r,s} R_k = \begin{cases} -\sigma_{rs} & \text{for } k=r \text{ or } k=s \\ \sigma_{rs} & \text{for } k \neq r, k \neq s. \end{cases}$$

Because R_1 is a reflection operator through the 1-axis, it is equivalent to a rotation by π in the (23) -plane and must therefore be

$$R_1 = \exp\left[i\pi\frac{\sigma_{23}}{2}\right] = i\sigma_{23} = i\sigma_{32}$$

according to (10.6) and (5.46), and similarly for the others:

$$\mathbf{R}_k = i\alpha\sigma_k. \quad (10.7)$$

As reflection operators, the $\mathbf{R}_k$ must be the components of an axial vector, just like σ_k , and hence the sign in (10.7) must be the same for all three of them. They are thus skew-Hermitian and, since we are dealing with spin-1/2, it follows from (10.7) that they satisfy the anti-commutation relations

$$\frac{1}{2}[\mathbf{R}_k, \mathbf{R}_l] = -i\epsilon_{kl}. \quad (10.8)$$

Furthermore, we find that

$$\mathbf{R}_1\mathbf{R}_2\mathbf{R}_3 = (i\alpha)^3\sigma_1\sigma_2\sigma_3 = i\mathbf{1}$$

and if the plus sign in (10.7) is adopted by convention, i.e., $\mathbf{R}_k = +i\sigma_k$, then

$$\mathbf{R}_1\mathbf{R}_2\mathbf{R}_3 = \mathbf{1}. \quad (10.9)$$

From (5.26) we obtain the commutation relations

$$\frac{1}{2i}[\mathbf{R}_k, \sigma_{lm}] = \delta_{km}\sigma_l - \delta_{lm}\sigma_k. \quad (10.10)$$

Finally, notice that

$$\mathbf{R}_1\mathbf{R}_3 = -\sigma_2\sigma_2 = -i\sigma_3 = -i\sigma_{13},$$

or that more generally,

$$\mathbf{R}_k\mathbf{R}_l = -i\sigma_{kl} = \exp\left[-i\frac{\pi}{2}\sigma_{kl}\right], \quad (10.11)$$

which expresses a rotation by π in the (kl) -plane as two reflections, through the k - and l -axes.

In any dimension, the number $n(n-1)/2$ of real parameters in $O(n)$ equals the number of components of anti-symmetric tensors of rank 2, so that rotations can be generated by $\frac{1}{2}\sum_{k,l=1}^{n-1}\sigma_{kl}\sigma_{kl}$ in terms of the rotation generators σ_{kl} . Alternatively, they may be viewed as products of $n(n-1)/2$ individual rotations $\frac{1}{2}\sigma_l\sigma_{kl}$, each of which keeps a plane invariant and requires only a single parameter. The rotation generators σ_{kl} are therefore the most basic objects needed.

10.1.2 The γ -coefficients

We now turn to $O(3)$. Using Greek indices ranging from 1 to 3, there are 3D rotation generators $\Sigma_{\alpha\beta} = -\Sigma_{\beta\alpha}$, and 3 reflection operators, which we

shall call γ_μ for a reflection through the μ -axis. The rotation operators have to satisfy commutation relations analogous to (3.26),

$$\frac{1}{2i}[\mathbf{U}_{\mu\nu}, \mathbf{S}_{\alpha\beta}] = \delta_{\mu\alpha}\mathbf{S}_{\nu\beta} - \delta_{\mu\beta}\mathbf{S}_{\nu\alpha} + \delta_{\nu\alpha}\mathbf{S}_{\mu\beta} - \delta_{\nu\beta}\mathbf{S}_{\mu\alpha}, \quad (18.12)$$

and because they are supposed to be a representation for spin(1/2), the anti-commutation relations

$$\frac{1}{2}[\mathbf{U}_{\mu\nu}, \mathbf{S}_{\alpha\beta}] = \delta_{\mu\alpha}\delta_{\nu\beta} - \delta_{\mu\beta}\delta_{\nu\alpha} \quad (18.13)$$

analogous to (3.27), provided that one number of the pair $(\mu\nu)$ agrees with one of the pair $(\alpha\beta)$. [Equation (18.12) implies that $[\mathbf{U}_{\mu\nu}, \mathbf{S}_{\alpha\alpha}] = 0$ if all four of the indices are different.]

In order to obtain the relation between the reflection operators and the rotation generators, we have to realize that whereas in three dimensions a reflection through the z -axis is equivalent to a rotation by π in the (23) -plane, in five dimensions it is accomplished by a rotation in the (23) -plane combined with a rotation in the (45) -plane. Therefore, in place of (18.7), we must have, except possibly for an arbitrary sign, $\gamma_1 = (U_{23})(U_{45})$, and take conventionally

$$\gamma_1 = S_{23}S_{45}, \quad (18.14)$$

and its cyclic permutations of the indices. As a result, we find that $\gamma_\mu^2 = \mathbf{1}$, and the reflection operators are Hermitian, whereas in three dimensions $\Pi_\mu^2 = -\mathbf{1}$ and they are skew-Hermitian. For $\mu \neq \nu \neq \kappa$ we find from (18.12) and (18.14),²

$$\gamma_\mu \gamma_\nu = U_{\mu\nu} = \exp\left\{i\frac{\pi}{2}\mathbf{S}_{\mu\nu}\right\} \quad (18.15)$$

and hence

$$\frac{1}{2i}[\gamma_\mu \gamma_\nu] = U_{\mu\nu}. \quad (18.16)$$

We also obtain from (18.14) and the commutation relations of the $S_{\alpha\beta}$

$$\gamma_1 \gamma_2 \gamma_3 \gamma_4 \gamma_5 = -\mathbf{1}. \quad (18.17)$$

In fact, as you should verify for yourself, all the properties of the rotation operators imply those of the reflection operators and vice versa.

It is instructive to write down the entire list

$$\begin{aligned} \gamma_1 &= S_{23}S_{45} = U_{23}U_{45} = U_{45}U_{23} \\ \gamma_2 &= S_{34}S_{51} = U_{34}U_{51} = U_{51}U_{34} \\ \gamma_3 &= S_{45}S_{12} = U_{45}U_{12} = U_{12}U_{45} \\ \gamma_4 &= S_{51}S_{23} = U_{51}U_{23} = U_{23}U_{51} \\ \gamma_5 &= S_{12}S_{34} = U_{12}U_{34} = U_{34}U_{12} \end{aligned}$$

²Check this.

Note particularly that the expressions for γ_1 , γ_2 , and γ_3 are just like those for the β 's in three dimensions, except that they are all multiplied by Σ_{40} .

So here we have 16 linearly independent Hermitian operators,

$$1, \Sigma_{12}, \gamma_1, \gamma_2, \quad \mu, \nu = 1, \dots, 3,$$

which form the basis of a linear algebra. [The product of a γ with a Σ can be expressed as a multiple of a Σ by means of (15.15) and (15.17), the product of two γ 's in terms of a Σ by (15.15), and the product of two Σ 's in terms of γ 's by (15.15) and (15.17). This is the reason for going to five dimensions rather than directly to four, where the rotation and reflection operators, together with the unit operator, would not form the basis of an algebra.] Therefore, for a representation of these 16 operators by means of 16 linearly independent matrices, these matrices can be no smaller than 4×4 .

How many of these 4×4 matrices can be chosen to be real and how many purely imaginary? Since the operators are Hermitian, so must be the matrices; hence a real matrix has to be symmetric and an imaginary one antisymmetric. Among the 16 independent 4×4 matrices, exactly ten can be chosen symmetric and six antisymmetric; therefore ten of the Hermitian matrices can be taken to be real and six imaginary. The only consistent choice, as you should check for yourself (for example, all six γ 's real would lead to all ten Σ 's imaginary, which is too many), is to have three real and two imaginary γ 's, which yields four imaginary Σ 's and six real ones; since 1 is real, this works out correctly. So we choose γ_1 , γ_2 , and γ_3 to be real (thereas eventually, the first three coordinates play a different physical role from the others) and γ_4 and γ_5 purely imaginary.

When descending to four dimensions, from now on unless otherwise noted, Greek subscripts will be understood to run from 1 to 4, with 5 implicitly written out. Since physics demands a Lorentzian rather than Euclidean metric, the requirement is that the fourth component of any "real" vector be imaginary, while the first three have to be real. Similarly, all the components of a tensor of rank two have to be real, except those with one subscript equal to 4, which are imaginary. Applied to the tensor $\langle \Sigma_{\mu\nu} \rangle$, this implies that, even though $\Sigma_{\mu\nu}$ is Hermitian, we must have

$$\langle \Sigma_{\mu\nu} \rangle^* = \begin{cases} -\langle \Sigma_{\mu\nu} \rangle & \text{for } \mu \text{ or } \nu = 4 \\ \langle \Sigma_{\mu\nu} \rangle & \text{for } \mu, \nu \neq 4 \end{cases},$$

which implies

$$(\Sigma_{\mu\nu})^* = (\gamma_4 \Sigma_{\mu\nu} \gamma_4). \quad (15.18)$$

Because the carrier space corresponding to the 4×4 rotation matrices is four-dimensional, the vectors α in this space, i.e., the relativistic spinors,

have to have four components⁴ ψ_{α} , $\alpha = 1, \dots, 4$, and we shall regard them as column matrices, writing $(\psi, \psi) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \sum_{\alpha} \psi_{\alpha}^{\dagger} \psi_{\alpha} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \psi^{\dagger} \psi = \psi^{\dagger} \psi$. However, if we were to define $(\psi_{\mu\nu}) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \psi^{\dagger} \psi_{\mu\nu} \psi$ for normalized spinors ψ , as we did nonrelativistically, the result would be $(\psi_{\mu\nu})^{\dagger} = (\psi_{\mu\nu})$, rather than (10.15). The expectation value therefore has to be defined relativistically as⁵

$$(\psi_{\mu\nu}) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \psi^{\dagger} \gamma_{\mu} \psi_{\nu} \psi.$$

It is consequently convenient to define an *adjoint spinor* by

$$\bar{\psi} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \psi^{\dagger} \gamma_0 = \psi^{\dagger} \gamma_0, \quad (10.16)$$

so that

$$(\psi_{\mu\nu}) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \bar{\psi} \gamma_{\mu} \psi_{\nu} \psi = \bar{\psi} \psi_{\mu\nu} \psi, \quad (10.17)$$

as well as generally for any operator A acting on relativistic spinor wave functions,

$$(\bar{A}) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \bar{\psi} A \psi, \quad (10.18)$$

(assuming ψ is normalized, see below) from which it follows that

$$(\bar{A})^{\dagger} = (\gamma_0 A^{\dagger} \gamma_0),$$

implying that (γ_0) is real and (γ_1) and $(\gamma_3 \gamma_0)$ have the correct reality properties of four-vectors. For example, let us test the reality property of (γ_1) with this new definition of the expectation value. We find that for $\mu = 1, 2, 3$,

$$(\gamma_1)^{\dagger} = (\gamma_1^{\dagger} \gamma_0 \gamma_1 \psi)^{\dagger} = -\bar{\psi} \gamma_1 \gamma_0 \gamma_1 \psi = \bar{\psi} \gamma_1 \psi = (\gamma_1),$$

whereas $(\gamma_1)^{\dagger} = -(\gamma_1)$, which is just the way a “real” four-vector ought to behave. Similarly for $(\gamma_3 \gamma_0)$.

There is, however, another difficulty. The interpretation of $\bar{\psi} A \psi$ as the expectation value of A is based on the assumption that $\psi \psi = 1$. But, although $\bar{\psi} \psi$ is real, there is no assurance that it is positive for all ψ , so that we cannot necessarily be made equal to 1 by rescaling of ψ .

For infinitesimal rotations in the (ψ) -plane by an angle $\epsilon \ll \pi$ the rotation operator that transforms spinors according to $\psi' = \hat{S} \psi$ is given by

$$\hat{S} = 1 + \frac{i}{2} \epsilon (\mathbf{L}_{\text{spin}}),$$

⁴There are spinor components, but not to be confused with four space-time components!

⁵Exercise: Show that this definition satisfies (10.10).

which leads to the rotation operator for finite rotations by the angle φ in the $(\mu\nu)$ -plane,

$$\hat{R} = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left(1 + \frac{i}{2n} \mathcal{E}_{\mu\nu} \right)^n = \exp\left(\frac{i}{2}\varphi \mathcal{E}_{\mu\nu}\right) = 1 + \cos \frac{\varphi}{2} + i \mathcal{E}_{\mu\nu} \sin \frac{\varphi}{2}. \quad (13.22)$$

The most general rotation in 5 dimensions is the product of 10 such operators, analogous to the way in which a general rotation in three dimensions is the product of three rotations by Euler angles. However, the general rotation matrix for infinitesimal rotations can also be written in the form

$$\hat{R} = 1 + \frac{i}{2} \sum_{\mu < \nu} t_{\mu\nu} \mathcal{E}_{\mu\nu} = 1 + \frac{i}{4} \sum_{\mu, \nu=1}^4 t_{\mu\nu} \mathcal{E}_{\mu\nu},$$

where $t_{\mu\nu} = -t_{\nu\mu}$, $|t_{\mu\nu}| \ll 1$, but this cannot be simply reparametrized as in (13.22).

The inverse of the rotation matrix (13.22) is of course given by

$$\hat{R}^{-1} = \exp\left(-\frac{i}{2}\varphi \mathcal{E}_{\mu\nu}\right) = 1 + \cos \frac{\varphi}{2} - i \mathcal{E}_{\mu\nu} \sin \frac{\varphi}{2},$$

which for real φ is equal to $\hat{R}^\dagger$, because $\mathcal{E}_{\mu\nu}$ is Hermitian, but for actual Lorentz transformations, including boosts, for which one of the indices μ or ν equals 4, the angle φ has to be taken imaginary (see below), so that in that case $\hat{R}^\dagger = \hat{R}$. These cases can all be combined in the formula

$$\hat{S}^\dagger = \gamma_4 \hat{S}^{-1} \gamma_4, \quad (13.23)$$

then $\hat{S}$ is generally not unitary. As a result of (13.23), if under a Lorentz transformation a spinor u goes over into

$$u' = \hat{S}u,$$

then its adjoint becomes

$$u' = u^\dagger \gamma_4 = u^\dagger \hat{S}^\dagger \gamma_4 = u \hat{S}^{-1},$$

so that

$$(\hat{A})' = u' \hat{A} u' = u \hat{S}^{-1} \hat{A} \hat{S} u = (\hat{S}^{-1} \hat{A} \hat{S}). \quad (13.24)$$

The matrices $\hat{S}$ form a four-dimensional representation of the Lorentz group which is different from the defining representation given by the 4×4 matrices that transform space-time four-vectors, and the carrier space of this representation is the space of relativistic spinors which transform like

$$u' = \hat{S}u.$$

We now abandon imaginary fourth components of vectors and use $\mu, \nu = 0, 1, 2, 3$, defining $\gamma_0 \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} -i\gamma_4$, and the Lorentz matrix $\gamma_{\mu\nu} = \eta_{\mu\nu} = g_{\mu\nu} = \delta_{\mu\nu} = 1$, $g_{\mu\nu} = 0$ for $\mu \neq \nu$, and $g_{\mu\mu} = g^{\mu\mu}$; then

$$\gamma_\mu \gamma_\nu = g_{\mu\nu} + i\Omega_{\mu\nu}. \quad (10.22)$$

According to (10.17), the Hermitian matrix γ_0 is related to the other γ matrices by

$$\gamma_\mu = -i\gamma_0 \gamma_\mu \gamma_0 = i\gamma_0 \gamma_1 \gamma_2 \gamma_3 \gamma_\mu \quad (10.23)$$

and the adjoint spinor, in terms of which expectation values are defined as in (10.21), is given by

$$\psi^\dagger \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \psi^\dagger \gamma_0.$$

The γ matrices play a central role in the relativistic formulation of quantum mechanics and it is important to study their properties.

Let us, then, verify that $\langle \gamma_\mu \rangle$ behaves like a vector under rotations. (Since we found $\langle \gamma_4 \rangle$ to be imaginary, $\langle \gamma_0 \rangle$ is real, so that all four components of $\langle \gamma_\mu \rangle$, $\mu = 0, \dots, 3$ are real.) You will easily check,³ using (10.23), that for (10.22), that is, for a rotation in the $(\mu\nu)$ -plane,

$$S^{-1} \gamma_\mu S = \gamma_\mu \cos \varphi + \gamma_\nu \sin \varphi,$$

$$S^{-1} \gamma_\nu S = \gamma_\nu \cos \varphi - \gamma_\mu \sin \varphi,$$

whereas S leaves the other three γ_α unchanged. It therefore follows that under the rotations (10.22) in the $(\mu\nu)$ -plane, for $\mu, \nu = 1, 2, 3$,

$$\langle \gamma_\mu \rangle' = \cos \varphi \langle \gamma_\mu \rangle + \sin \varphi \langle \gamma_\nu \rangle,$$

$$\langle \gamma_\nu \rangle' = -\sin \varphi \langle \gamma_\mu \rangle + \cos \varphi \langle \gamma_\nu \rangle,$$

and for $\alpha \neq \mu, \nu$,

$$\langle \gamma_\alpha \rangle' = \langle \gamma_\alpha \rangle.$$

For an actual Lorentz transformation describing boosts, say, of velocity v along the x -axis, we have to take $\mu = 1$, $\nu = 4$, and set $\varphi = i\phi$, where

$$\sinh \phi \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \frac{v/c}{\sqrt{1 - (v/c)^2}}, \quad \cosh \phi = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - (v/c)^2}},$$

which makes

$$S = \exp\left\{-\frac{i}{2}\phi \gamma_{14}\right\} = 1 \cosh \phi - \gamma_{14} \sinh \phi.$$

The result is

$$\langle \gamma_1 \rangle' = \cosh \phi \langle \gamma_1 \rangle + \sinh \phi \langle \gamma_4 \rangle,$$

³The δ .

$$|\psi_{10}\rangle' = -\sinh\theta |\psi_{11}\rangle + \cosh\theta |\psi_{10}\rangle,$$

or

$$|\psi_{10}\rangle' = \frac{|\psi_{10}\rangle - \beta\gamma v |\psi_{11}\rangle}{\sqrt{1 - \beta\gamma v^2}},$$

$$|\psi_{11}\rangle' = \frac{|\psi_{11}\rangle - \beta\gamma v |\psi_{10}\rangle}{\sqrt{1 - \beta\gamma v^2}}.$$

Thus for general proper, orthochronous Lorentz transformations given by

$$x'_\mu = \sum_{\nu=0}^3 A_{\mu\nu} x_\nu, \quad \mu = 0, 1, 2, 3,$$

(where now only real coordinates have been employed, with $x_0 = ct$), we have

$$\psi^{-1}\gamma_\mu\psi = \sum_{\nu=0}^3 A_{\mu\nu} \gamma_\nu, \quad \mu = 0, 1, 2, 3, \quad (18.37)$$

and therefore

$$|\psi_\mu\rangle' = \sum_{\nu=0}^3 A_{\mu\nu} |\psi_\nu\rangle, \quad \mu = 0, 1, 2, 3,$$

which means that the four quantities $|\psi_\mu\rangle$, $\mu = 0, 1, 2, 3$, transform like the coordinates x_μ and therefore form a Lorentz four-vector.

We similarly find[†] that under proper rotations and Lorentz transformations, $\langle\psi_\mu|$ is invariant and $\langle\psi_\mu\gamma_\nu|$ is a four-vector, while under space reflection, for which $\mathbf{R} = \gamma_3$, $\langle\psi_\mu|$ is a scalar, $|\psi_0\gamma_\mu|$ a pseudo-vector, $\langle|||$ a scalar, and $\langle\gamma_\mu|$ a pseudo-scalar, and under time reversal, with $\mathbf{R} = \gamma_0\gamma_3$, $\langle|||$ change sign, $\langle\psi_\mu|$ is invariant, $|\psi_\mu|$ is a pseudo-vector, and $\langle\psi_\mu\gamma_\nu|$ is a vector. The operator $\mathbf{R} = \gamma_3$ does a complete space-time reflection, and under this transformation $||\rangle$ and $|\psi_0\rangle$ are pseudo-scalars, while $|\psi_\mu\rangle$ and $\langle\psi_\mu\gamma_\nu\rangle$ are pseudo-vectors.

Just as it was useful axiomatically to define a spin exchange matrix by (18.29), so we define here the matrix

$$\mathfrak{S} \equiv \frac{1}{4} \sum_{A=1}^{16} \mathfrak{S}_A^{(1)} \otimes \mathfrak{S}_A^{(2)}, \quad (18.38)$$

where $\mathfrak{S}_A$ is one of the 16 Hermitian matrices (all of which are such that $\mathfrak{S}_A^2 = \mathbf{I}$) $\mathbf{I}, \gamma_\mu, \gamma_{\mu\nu}$, $\mu, \nu = 1, \dots, 3$, and the superscript distinguishes between the two systems, $\mathfrak{S}_A^{(1)}$ acting on system (1) and $\mathfrak{S}_A^{(2)}$ acting on (2). It has the property that

$$\mathfrak{S}_C^{(2)} \mathfrak{S}_C^{(1)} = 2\mathfrak{S}_C^{(2)}, \quad C = 1, \dots, 16, \quad (18.39)$$

[†]Verify all these statements.

as well as

$$\mathbf{S}_C^{(2)}\mathbf{Z} = 2\mathbf{S}_C^{(1)}, \quad C = 1, \dots, 16. \quad (10.30)$$

Moreover, as you will prove in a homework problem,

$$\mathbf{Z}^2 = \mathbf{I}, \quad (10.31)$$

where $\mathbf{I}$ is the unit matrix both in the space $\mathcal{H}_1$ and in $\mathcal{H}_2$.

Since the $\mathbf{R}_A$ form the basis of an algebra, we have for $A \neq B$,

$$\mathbf{R}_A \mathbf{R}_B = \sum_C c_{AB,C} \mathbf{R}_C. \quad (10.32)$$

The coefficients $c_{AB,C}$ can be calculated by taking traces, and we find (as I will ask you to prove in a homework problem)

$$c_{AB,C} = \frac{1}{4} \text{tr} \mathbf{R}_A \mathbf{R}_B \mathbf{R}_C, \quad (10.33)$$

which implies that

$$c_{AB,C} = c_{BA,C} = c_{CB,A}.$$

Consequently we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{R}_C^{(2)}\mathbf{Z} &= \sum_A \mathbf{R}_C^{(1)} \mathbf{R}_A^{(1)} \mathbf{R}_A^{(2)} \mathbf{Z} = \mathbf{R}_C^{(2)}\mathbf{Z} = \sum_{AB} c_{AB,C} \mathbf{R}_C^{(2)} \mathbf{Z} = \mathbf{R}_C^{(2)}\mathbf{Z} \\ &= \sum_{AB} \mathbf{R}_C^{(2)} \oplus c_{AB,C} \mathbf{R}_C^{(2)} = \sum_C \mathbf{R}_C^{(2)} \oplus \mathbf{R}_C^{(2)} \mathbf{R}_C^{(2)} = 2\mathbf{R}_C^{(2)}. \end{aligned}$$

Equation (10.30) is proved analogously.

Therefore $\mathbf{Z}$ is the exchange operator between $\mathcal{H}_1$ and $\mathcal{H}_2$, and because of (10.31), its eigenvalues are ± 1 . If two particles are in a state that is symmetric under spin exchange, then $\mathbf{Z} = \mathbf{I}$, and if they are in an anti-symmetric spin state, $\mathbf{Z} = -\mathbf{I}$. The exchange operator can also be expressed in terms of the γ -matrices,

$$\mathbf{Z} = \mathbf{I} - \frac{i}{2} \left(\mathbf{I} - \sum_{\alpha} \gamma_{\alpha}^{(1)} \otimes \gamma_{\alpha}^{(2)} \gamma \right), \quad (10.34)$$

as I will ask you to prove in a homework problem. It therefore follows that for anti-symmetric states,

$$\sum_{\alpha} \gamma_{\alpha}^{(1)} \otimes \gamma_{\alpha}^{(2)} = \begin{Bmatrix} -2\mathbf{I} & \\ & 2\mathbf{I} \end{Bmatrix},$$

while for states symmetric under spin exchange

$$\sum_{\alpha} \gamma_{\alpha}^{(1)} \otimes \gamma_{\alpha}^{(2)} = \mathbf{I},$$

Let

$$\sum_1^4 \psi_1^{(1)} \otimes \psi_2^{(2)} = 1 + \psi_1^{(1)} \otimes \psi_2^{(2)}, \quad (13.26)$$

and

$$\sum_{\mu=1}^4 \psi_{\mu}^{(1)} \otimes \psi_{\mu}^{(2)} = 21,$$

which implies that for symmetric states

$$\sum_{\mu=1}^4 \psi_{\mu}^{(1)} \otimes \psi_{\mu}^{(2)} = 1 + \psi_1^{(1)} \otimes \psi_1^{(2)}. \quad (13.27)$$

As an application, suppose that $\psi^{(1)}$ and $\psi^{(2)}$ are the same state, so that $\psi^{(1)} \otimes \psi^{(2)} = \psi \otimes \psi$ is symmetric under exchange. It then follows from (13.26) that

$$= \sum_{\mu=1}^4 (\psi \gamma_{\mu} \psi) \psi^{\mu\mu} (\psi \gamma_{\mu} \psi) = (\psi \psi)^2 + (\psi \gamma_3 \psi)^2 > 0, \quad (13.28)$$

since both $\psi \psi = \psi^T \gamma_0 \psi$ and $\psi \gamma_3 \psi$ are real. Therefore, (γ_{μ}) is a timelike four-vector. If (13.28) is multiplied by $\gamma_1^{(12)} \otimes \gamma_1^{(21)}$, the result is

$$\sum_1^4 (\psi \gamma_{\mu}^{(1)} \gamma_{\mu}^{(2)}) \otimes (\psi \gamma_{\mu}^{(2)} \gamma_{\mu}^{(1)}) = 1 + \gamma_1^{(12)} \otimes \gamma_1^{(21)},$$

which, when expectation values are taken, leads to

$$\sum_1^4 (\psi \gamma_{\mu} \gamma_{\mu} \psi)^2 = \sum_{\mu=1}^4 (\psi \gamma_{\mu} \gamma_{\mu} \psi) \psi^{\mu\mu} (\psi \gamma_{\mu} \gamma_{\mu} \psi) = (\psi \psi)^2 + (\psi \gamma_3 \psi)^2 > 0, \quad (13.29)$$

implying that $(\gamma_{\mu} \gamma_{\mu})$ is a spacelike four-vector. Not only that, but since multiplication of (13.28) by $\gamma_1^{(12)}$ yields

$$\sum_{\mu=1}^4 \gamma_1^{(12)} \gamma_{\mu}^{(1)} \otimes \gamma_{\mu}^{(2)} = \gamma_1^{(12)} - \gamma_3^{(12)},$$

it follows that

$$\sum_1^4 (\psi \gamma_{\mu} \gamma_{\mu} \psi) (\psi \gamma_{\mu} \psi) = \sum_{\mu=1}^4 (\psi \gamma_{\mu} \gamma_{\mu} \psi) \psi^{\mu\mu} (\psi \gamma_{\mu} \psi) = 0, \quad (13.30)$$

which says that $(\gamma_{\mu} \gamma_{\mu})$ and (γ_{μ}) are orthogonal to one another.

In a similar manner we find from (18.35) that

$$\sum_{\mu \in \text{rank}} (i\mathcal{E}_{\mu\nu} u)^\mu = \sum_{\mu \in \text{rank}, \lambda \in \text{rank}} (i\mathcal{E}_{\mu\nu} u)(g^{\mu\lambda} g^{\nu\sigma} (i\mathcal{E}_{\lambda\sigma} u)) = (iu)^2 - (iu\gamma_3 u)^2 \quad (18.43)$$

as well as

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{\mu \in \text{rank}} (iu\gamma_3 \mathcal{E}_{\mu\nu} u)^\mu &= \sum_{\mu \in \text{rank}, \lambda \in \text{rank}} (iu\gamma_3 \mathcal{E}_{\mu\nu} u)(g^{\mu\lambda} g^{\nu\sigma} (iu\gamma_3 \mathcal{E}_{\lambda\sigma} u)) \\ &= -(iu)^2 + (iu\gamma_3 u)^2 \end{aligned} \quad (18.44)$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{\mu \in \text{rank}} (iu\gamma_3 \mathcal{E}_{\mu\nu} u)(i\mathcal{E}_{\mu\nu} u) &= \sum_{\mu \in \text{rank}, \lambda \in \text{rank}} (iu\gamma_3 \mathcal{E}_{\mu\nu} u)(g^{\mu\lambda} g^{\nu\sigma} (i\mathcal{E}_{\lambda\sigma} u)) \\ &= 2(iu)(iu\gamma_3 u). \end{aligned} \quad (18.45)$$

These equations imply that, under proper Lorentz transformations, which leave iu and $(iu\gamma_3 u)$ invariant, $\langle \mathcal{E}_{\mu\nu} \rangle$ and $\langle \gamma_3 \mathcal{E}_{\mu\nu} \rangle$ behave like tensors of rank two.

Charge conjugation

There is another important transformation of the γ matrices, which, for reasons that will become clear in Section 18.2.5, is called *charge conjugation*. It is defined by a unitary matrix C , $C^\dagger C = I$, that takes a spinor u into

$$u^c \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} C\bar{u}, \quad (18.46)$$

and which is such that for $\mu = 0, \dots, 3$

$$C^{-1}\gamma_\mu C = -\gamma_\mu. \quad (18.47)$$

Such a transformation leaves the anti-commutation relations implied by (18.25) unchanged, and it may be shown to be $C = \gamma_2$ if the last γ -matrix, $\gamma_3, \dots, \gamma_4$ are taken to be real. (The four-component objects u^c are spinors under proper Lorentz transformations,² that is, they are such that $u^c = S u^c$ if $u = S u$.)

It is easy to check³ that the definition (18.46) implies

$$u^c = -S C^{-1} u.$$

²It will be a homework exercise to show this.

³The $\bar{u}$.

and therefore

$$\partial^0 \psi' = -\alpha \psi.$$

Similarly, we find that

$$\partial^1 \psi_\mu \psi' = \beta \gamma_\mu \alpha,$$

as well as

$$\partial^2 \psi_\mu \psi' = -\beta \gamma_\mu \alpha,$$

and

$$\partial^3 \psi_\mu \psi' = -\beta \gamma_\mu \gamma_5 \alpha.$$

So, under charge conjugation, $\{\psi_\mu\}$ remains invariant, while $\{\bar{\psi}_\mu\}$, $\{\gamma_\mu/\gamma_5\}$, and $\{\gamma\}$ change sign.

10.2 The Dirac Equation

We now have the tools to construct a suitable differential operator that can be used in a relativistically invariant field equation. Since the set γ_μ transforms under Lorentz transformations as in (10.27), it follows that

$$\gamma_\mu \frac{\partial}{\partial x_\mu} \xrightarrow{\Lambda} \gamma'_\mu \frac{\partial}{\partial x'_\mu}$$

in such that in a new coordinate frame

$$(\gamma'_\mu \partial')^{\Lambda} \xrightarrow{\Lambda} \gamma_\mu \frac{\partial}{\partial x_\mu} = \gamma_\mu \partial^{\Lambda^{-1}}.$$

(From now on we shall use the summation convention, so that repeated indices are automatically summed over from 0 to 3.) This operator will be denoted by $\not{p}$:

$$\not{p} \equiv \gamma_\mu \partial^\mu = \gamma \cdot \nabla + \gamma_5 \frac{1}{i} \frac{\partial}{\partial t}.$$

(Here γ denotes the three-vector with the components $\gamma_1, \gamma_2, \gamma_3$) so that under Lorentz transformations

$$\not{p}' = \not{p} \Lambda^{-1}, \quad (10.44)$$

where $\not{p}' \equiv \gamma'_\mu \partial'^\mu$. (Note particularly that in every frame the same set of γ matrices may be used.) According to (10.25)

$$\not{p}^2 = \frac{1}{4} (\gamma_\mu \gamma_\nu) \not{p}^\mu \not{p}^\nu = g_{\mu\nu} \not{p}^\mu \not{p}^\nu = \nabla^2 - \frac{1}{c^2} \frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2}. \quad (10.45)$$

Thus $\not{p}$ may be regarded as a square root of the relativistically invariant d'Alembert operator $\nabla^2 - \partial^2/\partial t^2$.

Let us, then, write down the simplest candidate for a Lorentz-invariant Lagrangian density for a free spinless field:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{L} &= \Phi \left(\frac{1}{2} \partial_0 \Phi - \frac{1}{2} \partial_0 \Phi_{,0} + M^2 \Phi \right) \Phi \\ &= \Phi^2 \left(\frac{1}{2} \partial_{\mu 0} \Phi \cdot \nabla + \frac{1}{2} \partial_{0\mu} \Phi \cdot \nabla_{,0} \right. \\ &\quad \left. + i \frac{\hbar}{2} \frac{\partial}{\partial t} + i \frac{\hbar}{2} \frac{\partial}{\partial t_{,0}} + m^2 c^2 \right) \Phi, \quad (13.47)\end{aligned}$$

(where the subscript $_{,0}$ indicates that the differentiation is to operate toward the left.) If we assume the field Φ to have four components that transform like those of a relativistic spinor, i.e., $\Phi \rightarrow S\Phi$ under Lorentz transformations, [We will see shortly what the physical meaning of the constant term $M^2\Phi$ in (13.47) is.] The Lagrangian equation of motion obtained from (13.47) for the free field then reads¹²

$$(\not{\partial} + M)\Phi = 0, \quad (13.48)$$

which is the Dirac equation. The result of multiplying it by $(\not{\partial} - M)\Phi$ is, according to (13.46),

$$\left(\frac{\hbar^2}{2^2} \frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2} - \hbar^2 \nabla^2 + M^2 \hbar^2 \right) \Phi = 0, \quad (13.49)$$

so that every solution of (13.48) must also solve (13.49), which is identical to (10.5). Thus M in the Lagrangian (13.47) will be the mass of the quanta produced by the field. The Hamiltonian is obtained just like (3.11),

$$\mathbf{H} = - \int d^3x \Phi (\partial_{\mu 0} \Phi \cdot \nabla + M^2 \Phi). \quad (13.50)$$

That (13.48) is a covariant equation follows immediately from the fact that the Lagrangian from which it is generated is invariant, but we also find directly that after a Lorentz transformation (13.48) reads

$$(\not{\partial}' + M')\Phi' = 0.$$

It thus has the same form in the moving or rotated laboratory as before, with the same γ -matrices.

Before we can find out what kinds of particles will be produced by the field that satisfies (13.48), we have to look at the solutions of the same equation as applied, not to a field but to a numerical spinor function:

$$(\not{\partial} + M)\psi(\mathbf{r}, t) = 0. \quad (13.51)$$

¹²Where this is an overclaim.

This equation will obviously have plane wave solutions of the form

$$\psi(\mathbf{r}, t) = \exp[i(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t)] = \exp(i\mathbf{r}_\perp \cdot \mathbf{k}_\perp),$$

where $k^0 \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} -\omega/c$ and the constant spinor ψ must satisfy the equation

$$(\gamma_0 \gamma_\mu k^\mu + M)\psi = 0, \quad (15.12)$$

Multiplication of this equation by $(\gamma_0 \gamma_\mu k^\mu - M)$ yields $(k^0 k^0 + k^2 k^2 - M^2)\psi = 0$, which implies that ω is related to $\mathbf{k}$ by

$$\omega = \pm \sqrt{\frac{M^2 c^2}{k^2} + c^2 k^2}.$$

For a given vector $\mathbf{k}$ and a given value of M , the Hermitian 4×4 matrix $\Gamma(\mathbf{k}) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \gamma_0(-i\gamma^i \mathbf{k}_i + M)$ must have four linearly independent eigenvectors, two of them belonging to the eigenvalue $\lambda_{\pm}(\mathbf{k}) = \pm \sqrt{M^2 c^2 + M^2 k^2}$ and two to $\lambda_{\pm}(\mathbf{k}) = -\sqrt{M^2 c^2 + M^2 k^2}$. To label the degenerate states, we introduce the Hermitian matrix $\hat{\Sigma}(\mathbf{k})$ where $\hat{\Sigma}_0 \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \Sigma_{33}$, and its cyclic permutations, $\hat{\Sigma}_{\alpha\beta}$ is given by (15.15), and $\hat{\Sigma} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \hat{\Sigma}_i \hat{\Sigma}_i$; this matrix, which has the eigenvalues ± 1 called positive and negative helicity, commutes with $\Gamma(\mathbf{k})$ and can be employed to label the states by $\psi_{\pm}(\hat{\Sigma}, \mathbf{k})$. Moreover, (15.15) together with the facts that the components of $\hat{\Sigma}$ are Hermitian while γ_0 is skew-Hermitian, leads to

$$C\Gamma^*(\mathbf{k})C^{-1} = -\Gamma(-\hat{\Sigma}),$$

from which it follows by (15.12) that if $\Gamma(\mathbf{k})\psi(\hat{\Sigma}) = (\lambda_{\pm}/c)\psi(\hat{\Sigma})$, then

$$\Gamma(\mathbf{k})\psi^*(-\hat{\Sigma}) = -(\lambda_{\pm}/c)\psi^*(-\hat{\Sigma}).$$

Therefore every negative-frequency solution equals the charge conjugate of a positive-frequency solution, and vice versa. We also find¹¹ that if $\sum_i k_i = 0$, then $\hat{\Sigma}(\mathbf{k})^2 = -1$. Thus there are four mutually orthogonal eigenvectors of $\Gamma(\mathbf{k})$, which can be labeled $u_{\pm, \pm}$, the first $\pm$ indicating positive or negative helicity and the second the eigenvalue $\omega = \pm \sqrt{M^2 c^2 + M^2 k^2}$. [However, since $u_{\pm, -}(\hat{\Sigma}) = -[u_{\pm, \pm}\Gamma(-\hat{\Sigma})]$, we can equally well take the first $\pm$ to be $u_{\pm, \pm}$, $u_{\mp, \pm}$ and their charge conjugates.] We will assume that the $u_{\pm, \pm}(\hat{\Sigma})$ are normalized, $u_{\pm, \pm}^*(\hat{\Sigma})u_{\pm, \pm}(\hat{\Sigma}) = 1$. This implies¹² that

$$u_{\pm, \pm}(\hat{\Sigma})u_{\pm, \pm}(\hat{\Sigma}) = \frac{M^2}{k_{\omega}}u_{\pm, \pm}^*(\hat{\Sigma})u_{\pm, \pm}(\hat{\Sigma}) = \frac{M^2}{k_{\omega}}.$$

¹¹ Show this.

¹² Show this.

The spinor functions $u_{k,\omega,+}(\vec{k}) \exp(i\vec{k} \cdot \vec{r} - i\omega t)$ and $u_{k,\omega,-}(\vec{k}) \exp(i\vec{k} \cdot \vec{r} + i\omega t)$, with $\omega = +\sqrt{c^2\vec{k}^2 + M^2c^4}/\hbar$, form a complete set of solutions of (13.54) and the spinor field $\Psi(\vec{r}, t)$ subject to (13.55) can be expanded in the form

$$\begin{aligned}\Psi(\vec{r}, t) = (2\pi)^{-3/2} \int d^3k \sum_{\omega} \left[e^{i(\vec{k} \cdot \vec{r} - \omega t)} u_{k,\omega,+}(\vec{k}) a_k(\vec{k}) \right. \\ \left. + e^{i(\vec{k} \cdot \vec{r} + \omega t)} u_{k,\omega,-}(\vec{k}) b_k^\dagger(\vec{k}) \right], \quad (13.56)\end{aligned}$$

where the coefficients $a_k(\vec{k})$ and $b_k(\vec{k})$ are operators given by

$$\begin{aligned}a_k(\vec{k}) = (2\pi)^{-3/2} \int d^3r u_{k,+}^\dagger(\vec{k}) \Psi(\vec{r}, t) e^{-i(\vec{k} \cdot \vec{r} - \omega t)} \\ b_k^\dagger(\vec{k}) = (2\pi)^{-3/2} \int d^3r u_{k,-}^\dagger(\vec{k}) \Psi(\vec{r}, t) e^{-i(\vec{k} \cdot \vec{r} + \omega t)}.\end{aligned}$$

Since Ψ is a spinor field, it has no-similarity anti-commutation relations (the spin-statistics connection) as in (2.89), (2.91), and (2.92), where one looks to the anti-commutators¹³

$$\{a_k(\vec{k}), a_{k'}^\dagger(\vec{k}')\} = \delta_{kk'} \delta(\vec{k} - \vec{k}'), \quad \{a_k(\vec{k}), b_{k'}^\dagger(\vec{k}')\} = \delta_{kk'} \delta(\vec{k} - \vec{k}'), \quad (13.57)$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}\{a_k(\vec{k}), a_k(\vec{k})\} = 0, \quad \{b_k(\vec{k}), b_k(\vec{k})\} = 0, \\ \{a_k(\vec{k}), b_k(\vec{k})\} = 0, \quad \{a_k^\dagger(\vec{k}), b_k^\dagger(\vec{k})\} = 0.\end{aligned}$$

These anti-commutation relations are now employed to construct the new bar representation as in Section 1.4.2: the vacuum state $|0\rangle$ is defined by

$$a_k(\vec{k})|0\rangle = b_k(\vec{k})|0\rangle = 0$$

for all $\vec{k}$ and $k = \pm$, and the state of one particle of helicity k in the state $\vec{k}$ with $\omega > 0$ is generated from $|0\rangle$ by

$$|k\rangle = a_k^\dagger(\vec{k})|0\rangle,$$

while the one-particle state with helicity k and $\omega < 0$ is generated by

$$|k\rangle = b_k^\dagger(\vec{k})|0\rangle.$$

There are no states with more than one particle of the same $\vec{k}$, the same helicity, and the same sign of ω . The Hamiltonian (13.53) turns out to be¹⁴

$$H = \int d^3k \hbar \omega \sum_{\omega} \left[a_k^\dagger(\vec{k}) a_k(\vec{k}) + b_k^\dagger(\vec{k}) b_k(\vec{k}) \right].$$

¹³Show this.

¹⁴Check this.

At this point it is best to discretize the $\vec{k}$ -values, as we did before. Using the discretized version of (13.54f), we then obtain, apart from an infinite constant, after returning to the continuous form,

$$\begin{aligned} H &= \int d^3k \, \hbar \omega \sum_{\vec{k}} \left[a_{\vec{k}}^\dagger(\vec{k}) a_{\vec{k}}(\vec{k}) + b_{\vec{k}}^\dagger(\vec{k}) b_{\vec{k}}(\vec{k}) \right] \\ &= \int d^3k \, \hbar \omega \sum_{\vec{k}} \left[N_{\vec{k},+}(\vec{k}) + N_{\vec{k},-}(\vec{k}) \right], \end{aligned} \quad (13.55)$$

where $N_{\vec{k},+}(\vec{k}) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=}} a_{\vec{k}}^\dagger(\vec{k}) a_{\vec{k}}(\vec{k})$ and $N_{\vec{k},-}(\vec{k}) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} } b_{\vec{k}}^\dagger(\vec{k}) b_{\vec{k}}(\vec{k})$ are the number operators for a given $\vec{k}$, helicity λ , and positive and negative frequencies, respectively. Each of the particles with wave vector $\vec{k}$ produced by the field then has the positive energy $\hbar\omega$. You should particularly note that this is the case only because of the employment of anti-commutation relations. Had we instead used commutation relations, the negative-frequency particles would have had negative energy. By contrast, recall that for the electromagnetic field we had to use commutation relations: there are specific instances of the spin-statistics connection.

The total momentum operator is also easily calculated by means of (13.47),¹⁹ with the result

$$\vec{P} = \int d^3k \, \hbar \sum_{\vec{k}} \left[N_{\vec{k},+}(\vec{k}) + N_{\vec{k},-}(\vec{k}) \right] \vec{k}. \quad (13.56)$$

Thus we have found that, for each given $\vec{k}$, the particles produced by the field $\vec{P}$ have the energy $E = \hbar\omega > 0$ and the momentum $\vec{p} = \hbar\vec{k}$, and since $\omega^2 = \vec{P}^2 c^2 + \hbar^2 \omega^2 / \hbar^2$, their energy and momenta are connected by the equation $E^2 = \vec{p}^2 c^2 + \hbar^2 \omega^2$, which implies that they have the mass $\hbar\omega$ and satisfy the correct relativistic energy-momentum relation. Furthermore, the physical meaning of the helicity $\vec{S} \cdot \vec{k} = \vec{S} \cdot \vec{p}$ is the projection of the spin on the particle's momentum direction, a coordinate-invariant use of the spin projection.

The general one-particle-configuration-space wave function is defined by

$$\psi(\vec{r}, t) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} } |\vec{P}^\dagger \psi\rangle \langle \vec{Q}|,$$

(the transpose has to be taken in order to have the spinor ψ come out as a column vector) and as a result of (13.48f), the equation satisfied by the one-particle wave function is²⁰

$$i\hbar \partial_t \psi + \vec{p} \cdot \vec{p} \psi = 0.$$

¹⁹Do it.

²⁰Show this.

If the four γ -matrices $\gamma_0, \dots, \gamma_3$ are taken to be real, as we chose them, this becomes

$$(\not{\partial} + M)\psi = 0; \quad (18.57)$$

for other choices, the γ -matrices in (18.57) and (18.48) differ by a unitary transformation without physical effect.

Equation (18.57) can be rewritten in the form of a Schrödinger equation after multiplying it by γ_0 and defining $\beta \equiv \gamma_0$, $\boldsymbol{\alpha} \equiv \gamma_0 \boldsymbol{\gamma} = \boldsymbol{\beta}^{-1} \boldsymbol{\gamma}$, $\beta^{-1} \equiv \gamma_0 = \beta$,

$$i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \psi = (\beta M c^2 + \boldsymbol{\gamma} \cdot \boldsymbol{\nabla} - \beta M c^2) \psi = H\psi \quad (18.58)$$

if the Hamiltonian is defined as

$$H \equiv i\hbar(\boldsymbol{\alpha} \cdot \boldsymbol{\nabla} + \beta M c^2) = -i\hbar \boldsymbol{\alpha} \cdot \boldsymbol{\beta}^{-1} \boldsymbol{\nabla} + \beta M c^2, \quad (18.59)$$

which is not to be confused with the field Hamiltonian $\mathcal{H}$ of (18.55), and where $\boldsymbol{\beta}$ is the momentum operator of the particle. The vector $\boldsymbol{\alpha}$ has the components $\alpha_i = -\Sigma_{ik}$, so that it is the generator of a relativistic boost in the direction i , and $\{\alpha_i, \alpha_j\} = 2\delta_{ij}$. Since $\alpha_i^2 = 1$, the eigenvalues of α_i are ± 1 .

Equation (18.58) may be treated just like the nonrelativistic Schrödinger equation, and we may calculate the velocity of the particle by

$$\frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dt} = \frac{1}{i\hbar} [\mathbf{r}, H] = -\frac{ic}{\beta} [\boldsymbol{\beta}, \boldsymbol{\alpha} \cdot \mathbf{p}] = -c\boldsymbol{\alpha},$$

which implies that, remarkably enough, the eigenvalues of any component of the particle's velocity are $\pm c$. Whenever an instantaneous measurement of the speed of an electron is made, it can therefore come out only as the velocity of light, in one direction or the other. You have to remember that relativistically, the velocity is not simply a multiple of the momentum, and in order to measure it, two closely spaced, precise position measurements have to be made, which renders the particle's corresponding momentum quite uncertain. (If all momenta are equally likely, the expectation or average value of the momentum is infinite.) The expectation value of any component of its velocity, which of course is always less than that of light, comes about as a result of a rapidly oscillatory motion (which has come to be known by the German word *Zitterbewegung*) over a distance equal to the electron's Compton wavelength $\hbar/Mc$.

The Heisenberg equation of motion for the velocity of the electron is given by

$$i\hbar \dot{\mathbf{r}} = [\mathbf{r}, H] = 2i\hbar c \boldsymbol{\alpha},$$

so that $\dot{\mathbf{r}} = c\boldsymbol{\alpha}$; therefore

$$\dot{\mathbf{r}} = \dot{\mathbf{r}}_0 e^{2i\pi\nu t/\hbar},$$

and as a result,

$$d = \frac{i\hbar}{2} d\mathbf{p}^{-1} = c\mathbf{p}^{-1} = \frac{i\hbar}{2} d_0 e^{i\mathbf{p}\cdot\mathbf{r}/\hbar} \mathbf{r}^{-1} = c\mathbf{p}^{-1}.$$

Consequently,

$$\dot{\mathbf{q}} = -cd = -\frac{i\hbar c}{2} d_0 e^{i\mathbf{p}\cdot\mathbf{r}/\hbar} \mathbf{r}^{-1} + c\mathbf{p}^{-1}.$$

The first term on the right-hand side oscillates rapidly with an amplitude equal to half the Compton wavelength. Any practical velocity measurement takes much longer than the period $\hbar/2Mpc^2 \approx 10^{-14}$ sec of this oscillation, so that the first term averages to zero and the result of the measurement is only the second term, which has the classical value $\dot{\mathbf{q}} = c\mathbf{p}^{-1}$. It is the rapidly oscillating first part that gives such component of the velocity the eigenvalue $\pm c$.

The adjoint equation of (13.27) reads

$$\bar{\psi}(\mathbf{q}_L - M\psi) = 0,$$

and if this equation, multiplied by ψ , is added to (13.27), multiplied on the left by $\bar{\psi}$, the result is

$$i\partial^\mu \bar{\psi} \gamma_\mu \psi = 0, \quad (13.33)$$

which has the form of a current conservation equation $\nabla \cdot \vec{j} + \partial_0 j_0 = 0$ if the relativistic probability-current density four-vector is defined by $j_\mu = \frac{i\hbar}{2m} (\partial \pi / \partial x_\mu)$, so that $\vec{j} = \frac{i\hbar}{2m} (\nabla \pi)$ and $j_0 = \frac{i\hbar}{2m} (\partial \pi / \partial t) = q^2 \psi$ for normalized ψ .

Solving the free Dirac equation.

Up to this point we have had no need to write down the γ -matrices explicitly. All that was ever required were the commutation and anti-commutation relations implied by (13.23) and those of the rotation generators $\mathbf{S}_{\text{spin}}$ for spin-1/2, though it was sometimes convenient to assume the four matrices $\gamma_0, \dots, \gamma_3$ to be real. Let us now, instead, choose the matrices $\vec{\alpha}$ and β to have the form

$$\vec{\alpha} = i \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \vec{\sigma} \\ -\vec{\sigma} & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \beta = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{1} & 0 \\ 0 & -\mathbf{1} \end{pmatrix}, \quad (13.34)$$

which implies that¹⁷

$$\vec{\sigma} = \begin{pmatrix} \sigma & \vec{\sigma} \\ \vec{\sigma} & \sigma \end{pmatrix}, \quad \Sigma = \begin{pmatrix} \vec{\sigma} & \mathbf{1} \\ \mathbf{1} & \vec{\sigma} \end{pmatrix}. \quad (13.35)$$

(Here $\mathbf{1}$ denotes the 2×2 unit matrix, and the components of $\vec{\sigma}$ are the Pauli spin matrices.)

¹⁷ Show this also shows that these matrices satisfy the correct commutation and anti-commutation relations.

After setting $\psi(\vec{r}, t) = u \exp[i(\vec{k} \cdot \vec{r} - p_0 t)/\hbar]$, (10.55) turns into the set of algebraic equations for u

$$(\vec{k} \cdot \vec{\beta} + \beta M)c u = -\frac{p_0}{c} u.$$

Write the four-component spinor u in terms of two two-component spinors v and w ,

$$u \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \begin{pmatrix} v \\ w \end{pmatrix},$$

and you obtain the two equations

$$(\vec{k} \cdot \vec{\beta} + M)c v = -\frac{p_0}{c} v, \quad (\vec{k} \cdot \vec{\beta} + M)c w = \frac{p_0}{c} w,$$

which imply that $p_0^2 = M^2 c^4 + \vec{p}^2 c^2$; using the subscript $\pm$ for the helicity, $\vec{k} \cdot \vec{\beta} v_{\pm} = \pm |\vec{k}| v_{\pm}$, we obtain the equations¹³

$$v_{\pm} = \mp \frac{i|\vec{k}|}{|\vec{p}| + M c^2} w_{\pm}, \quad \text{for } \omega = p_0/\hbar > 0,$$

$$w_{\pm} = \mp \frac{i|\vec{k}|}{|\vec{p}| + M c^2} v_{\pm}, \quad \text{for } \omega = p_0/\hbar < 0.$$

In the nonrelativistic limit, the momentum is small compared to the rest mass Q (i.e., $|\vec{k}| \ll M$). Therefore for $\omega > 0$, $|v| \ll |w| \approx 1$, while for $\omega < 0$ it's the other way around, $|w| \ll |v| \approx 1$; the upper two components of a spinor u (in this representation) are thus referred to as the "small components" when $\omega > 0$, whereas for $\omega < 0$, the lower two are the "small components." The large components are then the signature of the ordinary, nonrelativistic, two-component spin in the momentum direction, $\vec{k} \cdot \vec{\beta}$.

10.2.1 Electrons in an electromagnetic field

In the presence of an electromagnetic field generated by the potentials $\vec{A}$ and ϕ , these potentials have to enter the matter-field equations in the usual manner together with the derivatives, so that $i\hbar \nabla$ is replaced by $i\hbar \nabla + e\vec{A}$ and $i\hbar \partial_t$ by $i\hbar \partial_t - e\phi$. Since the four quantities ψ and $\bar{\psi}$ behave under Lorentz transformations like the components of a four-vector, this means that if we define $\hat{H} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} -\hat{p}$, the Dirac equation for the field ψ , in the presence of the electromagnetic potentials $\hat{A}^\mu$ reads

$$[\gamma_\mu (\hat{H}^\mu - e \hat{A}^\mu) + M c] \psi = 0, \quad (10.58)$$

¹³Check this.

and the Dirac equation for the one-particle wave function of the quanta produced by the field reads similarly,

$$[\gamma_\mu (\partial^\mu - i\frac{e}{c}A^\mu) + M]\psi = 0, \quad (13.64)$$

which implies that the quanta of the matter field are coupled to the electromagnetic field and have the electric charge e .

The new version of (13.63) in the presence of the electromagnetic potentials is obtained by multiplying (13.64) by $\gamma_\mu (\partial^\mu - i\frac{e}{c}A^\mu) - M$, so that if ψ indeed satisfies (13.64) it also satisfies the equation

$$\left[\gamma_\mu (\partial^\mu - i\frac{e}{c}A^\mu) \gamma_\nu (\partial^\nu - i\frac{e}{c}A^\nu) - M^2 \right] \psi = 0.$$

Use of (13.55) and the equations (13.52) connecting the potentials to the electric and magnetic fields leads to¹⁰

$$\begin{aligned} & \gamma_\mu (\partial^\mu - i\frac{e}{c}A^\mu) \gamma_\nu (\partial^\nu - i\frac{e}{c}A^\nu) \\ &= \gamma_{\mu\nu} (\partial^\mu - i\frac{e}{c}A^\mu) (\partial^\nu - i\frac{e}{c}A^\nu) + \frac{1}{2} \gamma_{\mu\nu} (\partial^\mu - i\frac{e}{c}A^\mu) (\partial^\nu - i\frac{e}{c}A^\nu) \\ &= -\gamma_{\mu\nu} (-\partial^\mu \partial^\nu - \frac{e}{c}A^\mu \partial^\nu - \frac{e}{c}A^\nu \partial^\mu) + \frac{e^2}{c^2} \mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{E} + \frac{ie\hbar}{c} \mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{E}. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore ψ has to solve the equation

$$[-M^2\psi^2 - \gamma_{\mu\nu}(\partial^\mu\partial^\nu - \frac{e}{c}A^\mu\partial^\nu - \frac{e}{c}A^\nu\partial^\mu) + ie\hbar\mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{E} + \frac{e^2\hbar^2}{c^2}\mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{E}]\psi = 0$$

If we define $\psi^2 \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (\partial\psi/\partial\psi)$, in the nonrelativistic approximation the last term in the bracket is dropped because $\partial \sim \partial/\partial x$, moreover,

$$\begin{aligned} & (\partial\psi^2 - \psi\partial^2 - M^2\psi^2 - (\partial\psi - e\mathbf{A})^2 + ie\hbar\mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{E}) \\ &= \left[\partial\psi^2 - \psi\partial - \sqrt{M^2\psi^2 + (\partial\psi - e\mathbf{A})^2 - ie\hbar\mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{E}} \right] \\ & \quad + \left[\partial\psi^2 - \psi\partial + \sqrt{M^2\psi^2 + (\partial\psi - e\mathbf{A})^2 - ie\hbar\mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{E}} \right] \\ &= (M\psi^2 + \dots) \left[\partial\psi^2 - \psi\partial - M\psi^2 - \frac{(\partial\psi - e\mathbf{A})^2}{2M\psi^2} + \frac{ie\hbar}{2M\psi} \mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{E} + \dots \right] \\ & \quad + M\psi^2 \left[E_{\text{em}} - \psi\partial - \frac{(\partial\psi - e\mathbf{A})^2}{2M\psi^2} + \frac{ie\hbar}{2M\psi} \mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{E} \right] \end{aligned}$$

where $E_{\text{em}} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \psi\partial^2 - M\psi^2$ is the nonrelativistic energy. The nonrelativistic time-independent Schrödinger equation obtained from (13.65) thus reads

$$\left[\frac{1}{2M} (\mathbf{p} - \frac{e}{c}\mathbf{A})^2 - \frac{ie\hbar}{2M\psi} \mathbf{p} \cdot \mathbf{E} + e\phi \right] \psi = E\psi,$$

¹⁰The details of this calculation.

which means that the Hamiltonian agrees with (7.34). The Dirac equation then automatically leads to the correct Schrödinger equation for spin-1/2 particles in the nonrelativistic limit, including the Pauli term with the Bohr-magneton strength and the correct gyromagnetic ratio.

Next, let us check what charge conjugation accomplishes, when applied to (13.43). Using (13.42) and (13.44), we find¹² that if Ψ satisfies (13.43), then its charge conjugate Ψ^c satisfies the equation

$$[\gamma_0(Mc^2 + c\vec{\gamma}\cdot\vec{p}) + Mc]\Psi^c = 0,$$

which implies that the field Ψ^c gives rise to particles whose wave functions satisfy (13.44) with the same mass but with the opposite sign of the charge. (That is why the transformation (13.43) is called charge conjugation.) Thus, the Dirac equation automatically contains the prediction of the existence of positrons (though this was recognized as a prediction only after the experimental discovery of positrons).

Here, then, is a summary of the remarkable features of Dirac's equation:

- It is Lorentz-invariant under Lorentz transformations.
- It describes a field that gives rise to spin-1/2 particles with the correct gyromagnetic ratio.
- Even though it has solutions of positive and negative frequency, the energy of its solutions is always positive, provided its solutions are assumed to obey anti-commutation relations and thus give rise to fermions; therefore it incorporates the spin-statistics connection.
- It contains within it the prediction of the existence of positrons.

Historical note: When Dirac invented his equation, it was in the form of the wave equation (13.44) rather than for a field. He therefore had to struggle with the problem of how to deal with the negative-frequency solutions, which appeared to have negative energies because $E = \hbar\omega$. His solution to this quandary was the ingenious *hole theory*: all the negative-energy states are normally occupied by an infinite sea of electrons, which as fermions obey Pauli's exclusion principle, so that under ordinary circumstances these negative-energy states are unavailable to the electrons we observe. When one of these states happens to be empty, creating a hole in the sea of negative-energy states, this hole, as an absence of a particle of negative energy and negative charge, acts like a particle of positive energy and positive charge. So the hole theory was a device to solve the negative-energy problem without using a field, but it made sense only if electrons were assumed to be fermions. Therefore, it too used the spin-statistics connection in an essential fashion. Using the Dirac equation for

¹² Show this.

the quantum field as a starting point, rather than as the result of “second quantization,” avoids the artificiality of the hole theory and solves the negative-energy problem by means of the spin-statistics connection in the form of anti-commutation rules for the spinor field.

The Dirac equation as a field equation, together with the Maxwell equations, with the electric four-current operator¹⁸

$$J_\mu \equiv i\bar{\psi}\gamma_\mu\psi$$

as a source term (the space part of J_μ is the ordinary electric current density and J_0 is the electric charge density), regarded as equations for the electromagnetic quantum field (so that the electromagnetic potentials in (10.53) are operators) make up the enormously successful theory of quantum electrodynamics (QED). However, it took another 30 years before the difficulties arising from the indication this theory leads to were overcome by Feynman, Schwinger, and Tomonaga, and it lies beyond the scope of this book.

10.3 The Dirac Equation for a Central Potential

In the presence of a static electric field generated by a central potential $\phi(r)$, the time-independent Dirac equation for the wave function of an electron reads

$$H_D\psi \equiv [-c\vec{\alpha} \cdot \vec{p} - \beta mc^2 + e\phi(r)]\psi = E\psi. \quad (10.55)$$

The orbital angular momentum $\hbar\vec{L}$ now is not a constant of the motion, but the total angular momentum $\hbar\vec{J} = \hbar(\vec{L} + \frac{1}{2}\vec{\Sigma})$ is since $\vec{p}$ and $\vec{r} \cdot \vec{p}$ are invariant under rotations, as is the entire Hamiltonian,

$$[\vec{J}^2, H_D] = 0,$$

and the total angular momentum is conserved. As usual, the diagonal use of $\vec{J}^2$ and J_z ($J = 1/2, 3/2, \dots$) Now, it follows from Eq. (9.76) that $\vec{J}^2 + \frac{1}{4} = (\vec{1} + \vec{\Sigma} \cdot \vec{L})^2$, which implies that $(\vec{1} + \vec{\Sigma} \cdot \vec{L})^2$, but not necessarily $\vec{1} + \vec{\Sigma} \cdot \vec{L}$ itself, is a constant of the motion. However, it turns out that the Hermitian operator

$$\mathbf{K} \equiv \beta(\vec{1} + \vec{\Sigma} \cdot \vec{L})$$

does commute with the Hamiltonian H_D ,

¹⁸ Since $\vec{L} \cdot \vec{\Sigma}$ commutes with β and with $\phi(r)$, it is only necessary to show that $[\beta\vec{L} \cdot \vec{\Sigma} + \frac{1}{4}, \mathbf{K}] = 0$ in order to prove that $[\mathbf{K}, H_D] = 0$. Furthermore, since β anti-commutes

¹⁹ Show that this current operator changes sign under charge conjugation.

with it, what needs to be shown is that $(\mathcal{L} \cdot \mathcal{L} + 1)(\mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{p}) = 0$. So let us calculate $\beta \hbar^{-1} (\mathcal{L} \cdot \mathcal{L})(\mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{p})$.

Since $(\mathcal{L} \cdot \mathbf{r})(\mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{p}) = 0$ and $\mathcal{L} \cdot \mathcal{L} = \mathcal{L} \cdot \mathcal{L} + \frac{1}{2}$, we have $\mathbf{K} = (\mathcal{L} \cdot \mathcal{L} - \frac{1}{2})(\mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{p}) = \mathcal{L}^2 (\mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{p}) - \frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{p})$. Now, use $\mathbf{r} = -\eta_0 \mathcal{L}$ and obtain $(\mathcal{L}^2)(\mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{p}) = -\eta_0 (\mathcal{L} \cdot \mathcal{L})(\mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{p}) = -4\eta_0 \mathbf{p}$, as a result of which $\mathcal{L}^2 (\mathcal{L} \cdot \mathbf{r})(\mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{p}) = -4\eta_0 (\mathcal{L} \cdot \mathbf{r})(\mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{p}) = \frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{p}) = \frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{r})(\mathbf{p} \cdot \mathbf{p})$. Therefore, $\mathbf{K} = -\frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{p})$, so that $(\mathcal{L} \cdot \mathcal{L} + 1)(\mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{p}) = 0$ and consequently, $(\mathbf{K} \cdot \mathcal{L} + 1)(\mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{p}) = 0$, which proves that $[\mathbf{K}, H_0] = 0$.

According to (3.76), $\mathbf{K}^2 = (\mathbf{1} + \mathcal{L} \cdot \mathcal{L})^2 = \mathcal{L}^2 + \frac{3}{4}$, so that the eigenvalues κ^2 of $\mathbf{K}^2$ are $j(j+1) + \frac{3}{4} = (j + \frac{1}{2})^2$, which implies that the eigenvalues of $\mathbf{K}$ are $\kappa = \kappa(j + \frac{1}{2})$, and the values of $| \kappa |$ are the positive integers. Moreover, since¹³ $\mathbf{K}^2 = \mathcal{L}^2 + 1 + \mathcal{L} \cdot \mathcal{L}$, we have

$$\mathcal{L}^2 = \mathbf{K}^2 - \beta \mathbf{K},$$

Therefore, in the representation (13.31), when $\beta = 1$ (the upper components of the four-spinors), then for $\kappa = j + \frac{1}{2}$ we must have $l(\mathbf{K} + 1) = (j + \frac{1}{2})^2 - (j + \frac{1}{2}) = (j + \frac{1}{2})(j - \frac{1}{2})$, so $l = j - \frac{1}{2} = \kappa - 1$, and for $\kappa = -(j + \frac{1}{2})$ we have $l(\mathbf{K} + 1) = (j + \frac{1}{2})^2 + (j + \frac{1}{2}) = (j + \frac{1}{2})(j + \frac{3}{2})$, so $l = j + \frac{3}{2} = -\kappa$, when $\beta = -1$ (the lower components) we find similarly that for $\kappa = j + \frac{1}{2}$, $l = j + \frac{1}{2} = \kappa$ and for $\kappa = -(j + \frac{1}{2})$, $l = j - \frac{1}{2} = -(\kappa + 1)$. So here is the table of values.

β	κ	l	$\frac{\mathcal{L}^2}{\hbar^2} = \mathcal{L}^2$
1	$j + \frac{1}{2}$	$j - \frac{1}{2}$	$\kappa - 1$
1	$-\kappa$	$j - \frac{1}{2}$	$\kappa - 1$
-1	l	$j - \frac{1}{2}$	$-(\kappa + 1)$
-1	$-(\mathbf{K} + 1)$	$j + \frac{1}{2}$	$-(\kappa + 1)$

Note that β is not a constant of the motion, but in the nonrelativistic limit it is: In the representation (13.31), $\beta = 1$ for the upper components and $\beta = -1$ for the lower ones. So if the small components are not equal to zero, as they are in the nonrelativistic approximation, the spinors ψ are eigenfunctions of β . For positive frequencies, the lower two components are the large ones and therefore $\beta = -1$ in the nonrelativistic limit; for negative frequencies, the upper components are large, so that $\beta = +1$. As a result, in the nonrelativistic limit the sign of the eigenvalues of $\mathbf{K}$ is in a one-to-one relation with the two cases $l = j \pm \frac{1}{2}$, but in general there is no such correspondence.

To expand the angle dependence of solutions of (13.23) we use the two-component spinor angle functions $\chi_{\kappa}^{\pm}$ defined by (3.73) and (3.74). How-

¹³Where this.

now, they will be relabeled, using s instead of l ,

$$Z_{\alpha\beta}^{\pm} \equiv \begin{cases} Z_{j+1/2}^{\pm} & \text{when } \alpha = j + \frac{1}{2} \\ Z_{j-1/2}^{\pm} & \text{when } \alpha = -j + \frac{1}{2} \end{cases},$$

so that

$$(\mathcal{P} \cdot \mathcal{L} + 1)Z_{\alpha\beta}^{\pm} = sZ_{\alpha\beta}^{\pm}.$$

Since, furthermore,²² with $\mathcal{P}^{\dagger} \mathcal{L}^{\dagger} \mathcal{P}^{\dagger} \mathcal{L}^{\dagger} \{ \mathcal{L} \cdot \partial_t \mathcal{L} \cdot \mathcal{L} + \mathbf{1} \} = 0$, it follows that

$$\partial_t \cdot \mathcal{P} Z_{\alpha\beta}^{\pm} = Z_{\alpha\beta}^{\pm}.$$

We can therefore write a four-component spinor representation of $\mathbf{K}$ that is also a function of r in the form

$$\Phi_{\alpha}(r) = \frac{1}{r} \begin{pmatrix} F(r) Z_{\alpha\beta}^{\pm} \\ -G(r) \mathcal{P} \cdot \mathcal{L} Z_{\alpha\beta}^{\pm} \end{pmatrix},$$

invention of which is $(\mathcal{M}\mathcal{M})_1$, together with the fact that

$$\partial_t \cdot \mathcal{P} \mathcal{P} \cdot \mathcal{P} = \mathcal{P} \cdot \mathcal{P} + i\partial_t \cdot \mathcal{L} = -2i\mathcal{M} = -i\partial_t \frac{\partial}{\partial t} = i\partial_t \cdot \mathcal{L},$$

$$\mathcal{P} \cdot \mathcal{P} \mathcal{P} \cdot \mathcal{P} = \mathcal{P} \cdot \mathcal{P} + i\partial_t \cdot \mathcal{L} = -i\partial_t \frac{\partial}{\partial t} + i\partial_t \cdot \mathcal{L},$$

yields the two coupled equations²³

$$\left(\frac{d}{dr} + \frac{s}{r} \right) G = \left(a_1 - \frac{sb}{2c} \right) F, \quad \left(\frac{d}{dr} - \frac{s}{r} \right) F = \left(a_1 + \frac{sb}{2c} \right) G,$$

where

$$a_1 \equiv \frac{M\omega^2 + E}{2c}, \quad a_2 \equiv \frac{M\omega^2 - E}{2c}.$$

Defining

$$g \equiv \sqrt{c^2 M^2 \omega^2 - E^2} / 2c$$

and the dimensionless radial distance $\rho \equiv r$, we obtain

$$\left(\frac{d}{d\rho} + \frac{s}{\rho} \right) G = \left(\frac{a_1}{c} - \frac{sb}{2c} \right) F, \quad (13.65)$$

$$\left(\frac{d}{d\rho} - \frac{s}{\rho} \right) F = \left(\frac{a_1}{c} + \frac{sb}{2c} \right) G. \quad (13.67)$$

²²From this.

²³From this as an exercise.

In the free case, when $\phi = 0$, these two equations can be uncoupled²⁰ to read

$$-G'' + \frac{\alpha(\alpha+1)}{\rho^2}G = \alpha Q, \quad -F'' + \frac{\alpha(\alpha-1)}{\rho^2}F = \alpha F,$$

and $\alpha = |\mathbf{p}|/\hbar = k$, so that $G = \rho j_{\alpha}(\rho)$ and $F = \rho j_{\alpha-1}(\rho)$. For general potentials, however, Eqs. (10.66) and (10.67) cannot be uncoupled.

10.3.1 The hydrogen atom

For a nuclear point charge of strength Ze , the Coulomb potential is given by $\phi = Ze/\epsilon_0 r$, and the potential energy seen by an electron is $v\phi = -Ze^2/r$ or

$$\frac{\alpha\hbar}{a_0 Z} = -\frac{Ze^2}{\hbar a_0} = -\frac{\gamma}{\rho}, \quad \gamma \doteq \frac{Ze^2}{\hbar a_0} = \alpha Z,$$

where $a_0 \doteq \hbar^2/\epsilon_0 m_e$ is the fine structure constant.

We proceed as in the nonrelativistic case, defining $F(\rho) \doteq f(\rho)e^{-\gamma/\rho}$ and $G(\rho) \doteq g(\rho)e^{-\gamma/\rho}$, thereby obtaining the equations for f and g ,

$$f' - g + \frac{\gamma}{\rho}g = \left(\frac{2\gamma}{a} + \frac{\gamma}{\rho}\right)f, \quad f' - f + \frac{\gamma}{\rho}f = \left(\frac{2\gamma}{a} - \frac{\gamma}{\rho}\right)g.$$

The Frobenius ansatz $f = \rho^a \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} c_n \rho^n$, and $g = \rho^a \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} b_n \rho^n$, leads to the recursion relations²¹ for $n \geq 0$

$$b_n(n+a+\gamma) - b_{n-1} = -\gamma b_n + \frac{a_1}{a}b_{n-1}, \quad (10.68)$$

$$c_n(n+a+\gamma) - c_{n-1} = -\gamma c_n + \frac{2a_1}{a}c_{n-1}, \quad (10.69)$$

and for $n = 0$ to the initial equations

$$(\gamma + a)b_0 - \gamma b_0 = 0, \quad \gamma b_0 + (a - \gamma)c_0 = 0,$$

which require that $a^2 - a^2 + \gamma^2 = 0$ and therefore for the solution regular at the origin,

$$a = +i\sqrt{a^2 - \gamma^2}.$$

Notice that, in contrast to the nonrelativistic Coulomb wave functions, the solutions are not polynomials, and they may even be singular at the origin (when $a < 1$).²² Now multiply (10.68) by a_1 , (10.69) by a_2 , and add the

²⁰The $\mathbf{p}$.

²¹Derive them.

²²If $a < \frac{1}{2}$, the derivative of the wave function is not square integrable at the origin, so that the expectation value of the momentum does not exist. For $a = 1$, to prevent this requires that $\gamma < \frac{1}{2}\hbar/a_0$, i.e., $Z < 136$. For heavier (quasi) nuclei the Dirac equation would lead to problems.

results to obtain

$$b_n [n(n+1+s) - a_1 \gamma] = a_2 [n(n+1-s) + a_1 \gamma],$$

which, together with (10.58), yields the recursion relation

$$\begin{aligned} b_n \left[(n+2+s) - \gamma \frac{n(n+1+s) - a_1 \gamma}{n(n+1-s) + a_1 \gamma} \right] \\ = b_{n-1} \left[1 + \frac{a_1 n(n-1+s-s) - a_1 \gamma}{n-a_1(n-1+s-s) + a_1 \gamma} \right], \end{aligned}$$

implying that, for $n \rightarrow \infty$,

$$\frac{b_n}{b_{n-1}} = \frac{a_2}{a_1} = \frac{1}{s}.$$

Therefore the tail end of the series behaves like e^{2n} , which means that the relations increase exponentially unless the series terminates. (That is, for real values of a_1 for $E > Mc^2$, s is imaginary and there is no need for the series to break up: these are the scattering states.) It follows from the recursion relations that both series must then end at the same point, and if b_N is the last nonzero term, we must have

$$2n(n'+s) = (a_1 - a_2)\gamma,$$

which, with the explicit values of a_1, a_2, a_3 , and γ , leads to the energy levels¹⁰

$$E = Mc^2 \left[1 + \frac{\alpha^2 Z^4}{(n' + \sqrt{n'^2 - \alpha^2 Z^2})^2} \right]^{-1/2}. \quad (18.70)$$

The ground-state energy of a hydrogenic atom is therefore

$$E_{\text{min}} = Mc^2 \sqrt{1 - \alpha^2 Z^2},$$

as compared to the nonrelativistic ground-state energy $E_{\text{min}}^{\text{NR}} = -\frac{1}{2}\alpha^2 Z^4 Mc^2$ (which, of course, does not include the rest energy Mc^2). According to (18.70) the energies are independent of the sign of α , which is the analogue of the nonrelativistic l-degeneracy. For $\alpha Z \ll 1$ the energy eigenvalues may be expanded in powers of αZ , giving¹¹

$$E = Mc^2 \left[1 - \frac{\alpha^2 Z^4}{2n^2} - \frac{1}{2} \frac{\alpha^4 Z^6}{|n|^3} + \frac{3}{8} \frac{\alpha^4 Z^6}{n^4} + \dots \right],$$

where $n \stackrel{\text{def}}{=}} n' + |s|$, or

$$E = Mc^2 - \frac{\alpha^2 Z^4 Mc^2}{2n^2} - \frac{\alpha^4 Z^6 Mc^2}{2n^3} \left(\frac{1}{|n|} - \frac{3}{4n} \right) + \dots, \quad (18.71)$$

¹⁰Show this.

¹¹Check this.

which agrees with the previously calculated value (6.70) together with (7.26) for the fine structure.

Note that κ can take on positive or negative values, except when $\kappa' = 0$. In that particular case (10.68) says that $a_0/b_0 = -a_1/b_1 < 0$ and the radial equations are $\kappa_0/b_0 = \kappa + \kappa = \kappa + 1, (\kappa^2 - 1)^{1/2}$; therefore only $\kappa < 0$ is allowed for $\kappa' = 0$, which makes the ground state non-degenerate, with $\kappa' = 0$ and $\kappa = -1$. The energy of the first excited state is obtained from (10.70) by setting $\kappa' = 1$, and there still is a twofold degeneracy with $\kappa = \pm 1$, just as in the fine-structure correction to the nonrelativistic energy. As mentioned at the end of Section 7.2.1, this degeneracy is finally broken by the Lamb shift and explained by the "radiation corrections" of quantum electrodynamics.

For the calculation of the hydrogen wave functions by means of the Dirac equation, see [Rise]. [Note, however, that Rise uses a representation of $\hat{S}$ that differs from (10.61).]

10.4 Problems and Exercises

1. Prove the following equations for the reflection operators γ_μ in five dimensions:

$$\frac{1}{2}(\gamma_\mu \gamma_\nu + \gamma_\nu \gamma_\mu) = \delta_{\mu\nu}$$

$$\gamma_\mu^{-1} \Sigma_{\alpha\beta} \gamma_\mu = \begin{cases} -\Sigma_{\alpha\beta} & \text{for } \mu = \alpha \text{ or } \mu = \beta \\ \Sigma_{\alpha\beta} & \text{for } \mu \neq \alpha, \mu \neq \beta \end{cases}$$

and

$$\frac{1}{2}(\gamma_\mu \Sigma_{\alpha\beta}) = \delta_{\mu\alpha} \gamma_\beta - \delta_{\mu\beta} \gamma_\alpha$$

2. Prove (10.11).
3. Prove (10.12).
4. Prove (10.14).
5. Prove (11.16) for states of two particles that are symmetric under exchange.
6. Prove that if the matrix M commutes with all the matrices γ_μ , $\mu = 1, \dots, 4$, then M must be a multiple of the unit matrix.
7. Show that the charge conjugate spinors ψ^c are spinors under proper Lorentz transformations.
8. From the relativistic relation between the velocity and the momentum of a particle, find the velocity probability distribution if the momentum is uniformly distributed. Show from this that if the momentum is uniformly distributed, then $\langle v \rangle = c$.
9. (a) Show that if u_0 is the relativistic spinor of an electron in its rest system, then $u_j \gamma_0 / u_0 u_0 = 0$ for $j = 1, 2, 3$.
 (b) Supposing that the spin of the electron in its rest system is in the x -direction, calculate $\langle \vec{X} \rangle$ in a reference frame in which the electron has the momentum p in the x -direction.

Part II

Mathematical Appendices

This page intentionally left blank

A

The Dirac Delta Function

The Dirac delta function is defined by the property that for any continuous function $f(x)$ on the interval (a, b) with $a < 0 < b$,

$$\int_a^b dx f(x)\delta(x) = f(0). \quad (\text{A.1})$$

Of course, there really is no such function; $\delta(x)$ is, instead, a generalized function or a distribution.¹ It may be thought of as an idealization of an infinitely sharp spike of area 1, concentrated at the point 0, physically exemplified by a sharp pulse at the time $t = 0$. For example, we may define the function

$$\delta_\epsilon(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \frac{1}{2\epsilon} \left[\frac{1}{x + i\epsilon} - \frac{1}{x - i\epsilon} \right] = \frac{1/\epsilon}{x^2 + \epsilon^2} \quad (\text{A.2})$$

and the integral in the R.H.S. to be taken after the integral is carried out,

$$\int_{-1}^1 dx \delta_\epsilon(x) f(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \lim_{\epsilon \rightarrow 0} \int_{-1}^1 dx \delta_\epsilon(x) f(x) = f(0) \lim_{\epsilon \rightarrow 0} \frac{2}{\epsilon} \arctan \epsilon = f(0).$$

In a similar manner, the Cauchy principal value is defined by

$$\mathcal{P} \frac{1}{x} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \frac{1}{2} \left[\frac{1}{x + i0} + \frac{1}{x - i0} \right] \quad (\text{A.3})$$

¹ For more details, see, for example, [Lich], Chapter 6.

in the sense that

$$\mathcal{F} \int_{-1}^1 dx \frac{f(x)}{x} \equiv \lim_{\epsilon \rightarrow 0} \int_{-1}^1 dx f(x) \frac{1}{2} \left[\frac{1}{x+i\epsilon} + \frac{1}{x-i\epsilon} \right].$$

As a result we have the useful formula, in which it is understood that $0 < \epsilon < 1$,

$$\frac{1}{x+i\epsilon} = \mathcal{P} \frac{1}{x} - i\pi\delta(x). \quad (A.6)$$

Alternatively, we may take

$$\delta_\epsilon(x) \equiv \frac{\sin(\pi x/\epsilon)}{\pi x},$$

which is not sharply peaked at the origin but, instead, oscillates infinitely rapidly as $\epsilon \rightarrow 0$ everywhere except at the origin, which has the same effect. The Dirac delta function may also be regarded as the derivative of a unit step function, called the Heaviside function: $\theta(x) = 0$ for $x < 0$, while $\theta(x) = 1$ for $x > 0$. It is easily seen that $\theta'(x) = \delta(x)$, because for any $a < 0 < b$, by an integration by parts,

$$\begin{aligned} \int_a^b dx f(x)\theta'(x) &= f(b)\theta(b) - f(a)\theta(a) - \int_a^b dx f'(x)\theta(x) \\ &= f(b) - \int_a^b dx f'(x) = f(b). \end{aligned}$$

If the function $f(x)$ has a step-discontinuity at $x = 0$, the effect of multiplying it by $\theta(x)$ is ambiguous and the result depends on the context. In most instances it is convenient to define

$$\int_a^b dx f(x)\theta(x) = \frac{1}{2} [f(0+) + f(0-)], \quad (A.7)$$

where $f(0+)$ and $f(0-)$ are the limits from above and below, respectively and $a < 0 < b$.

Here are some properties of $\theta(x)$ that are very useful for formal manipulations. The first is that it is even:

$$\theta(-x) = \theta(x). \quad (A.8)$$

Furthermore, it follows from $\int_a^b dx \theta(x) = \int_a^b \int_0^x dy \delta(y) = \int_a^b dx \frac{1}{2}$ that for all real $x \neq 0$,

$$\theta(x) = \frac{1}{2} \delta(x). \quad (A.9)$$

The derivative of a delta-function is defined by integration by parts:

$$\int_a^b dx f'(x)\delta(x) = - \int_a^b dx \delta(x)f'(x). \quad (A.10)$$

We also have

$$\alpha f(x) = 0,$$

and

$$\delta'(-x) = -\delta'(x).$$

If $g(x)$ is monotonically increasing and passes through 0 between a and b , then a change of variables gives $\int_a^b dx f(x)\delta(g(x)) = \int dg f(x)\delta(g)/g'(x)$, where $g(x) = y$ so that $x = g^{-1}(y)$, from which we conclude that

$$\delta(g(x)) = \delta(y)/g'(g^{-1}(y)). \quad (\text{A.9})$$

The three-dimensional delta function $\delta^3(\mathbf{r}-\mathbf{r}')$, which is physically exemplified by the charge density of a unit point charge located at $\mathbf{r}'$, has to be handled carefully, depending on the coordinate system used. In Cartesian coordinates, it is simply given by

$$\delta^3(\mathbf{r}-\mathbf{r}') = \delta(x-x')\delta(y-y')\delta(z-z'),$$

but in spherical polar coordinates it has to be²

$$\delta^3(\mathbf{r}-\mathbf{r}') = \frac{\delta(r-r')}{r^2} \frac{\delta(\theta-\theta')}{\sin\theta} \delta(\varphi-\varphi'). \quad (\text{A.10})$$

²Wikipedia

This page intentionally left blank

B

Hilbert Space

B.1 Linear Vector Spaces

We begin by defining a complex linear vector space¹: a collection of objects called vectors, with the following properties²:

1. To any pair of vectors Φ_1 and Φ_2 in $\mathfrak{V}$, there corresponds a third vector $\Phi \in \mathfrak{V}$, called the sum of Φ_1 and Φ_2 , $\Phi = \Phi_1 + \Phi_2$, such that addition is (a) commutative, $\Phi_1 + \Phi_2 = \Phi_2 + \Phi_1$, and (b) associative, $\Phi_1 + (\Phi_2 + \Phi_3) = (\Phi_1 + \Phi_2) + \Phi_3$.
2. $\mathfrak{V}$ contains a unique vector 0 such that for all $\Phi \in \mathfrak{V}$, $\Phi + 0 = \Phi$.
3. For every $\Phi \in \mathfrak{V}$ there is a unique vector $-\Phi \in \mathfrak{V}$ such that $\Phi + (-\Phi) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \Phi + (-\Phi) = 0$.
4. For every complex number³ α (called a scalar) and every $\Phi \in \mathfrak{V}$ there is a vector $\alpha\Phi \in \mathfrak{V}$, called the product of the two, such that $1\Phi = \Phi$ and multiplication is associative: $\alpha(\beta\Phi) = (\alpha\beta)\Phi$.
5. Multiplication by scalars is distributive over vector addition, $\alpha(\Phi + \Psi) = \alpha\Phi + \alpha\Psi$ as well as over scalar addition, $(\alpha + \beta)\Psi = \alpha\Psi + \beta\Psi$.

¹It will help your intuition always to keep in mind the analogue of these properties for ordinary real Euclidean vector spaces and to think geometrically.

²If these numbers are restricted to be real, $\mathfrak{V}$ is a real linear vector space, such as ordinary three dimensional Euclidean space.

6. For any two vectors in $\mathfrak{H}$ an inner product is defined as a complex number such that

$$\langle \Phi, \Psi \rangle = \langle \Psi, \Phi \rangle^*, \quad \langle \Phi, \Phi \rangle \geq 0,$$

(where $*$ denotes the complex conjugate), $\langle \Phi, \Phi \rangle = 0$ if and only if $\Phi = 0$, and

$$\langle \Phi, c_1\Phi_1 + c_2\Phi_2 \rangle = c_1\langle \Phi, \Phi_1 \rangle + c_2\langle \Phi, \Phi_2 \rangle.$$

It then follows that¹

$$(c_1\Phi_1 + c_2\Phi_2, \Psi) = c_1^*(\Phi_1, \Psi) + c_2^*(\Phi_2, \Psi).$$

Any two vectors Φ and Ψ which are such that $\langle \Phi, \Psi \rangle = 0$ are called *orthogonal* to one another. Similarly, two sets of vectors S_1 and S_2 are called *mutually orthogonal* if all the vectors in S_1 are orthogonal to all the vectors in S_2 .

The norm, or "length," of a vector $\Phi \in \mathfrak{H}$ is defined by

$$\|\Phi\| = \sqrt{\langle \Phi, \Phi \rangle},$$

so that $\|\alpha\Phi\| = |\alpha| \|\Phi\|$, and $\|\Phi\| = 0$ if and only if $\Phi = 0$. A vector whose norm equals unity is called *normalized*; such a vector is also called a *unit vector*.

The inner product and the norm satisfy two extremely useful inequalities: Schwarz's inequality,

$$|\langle \Phi, \Psi \rangle| \leq \|\Phi\| \|\Psi\|, \quad (3.1)$$

where equality holds if and only if Φ and Ψ are multiples of one another or one of them vanishes, and the triangle inequality,

$$\|\Phi + \Psi\| \leq \|\Phi\| + \|\Psi\|, \quad (3.2)$$

in which equality holds if and only if there exists a real, non-negative number c such that either $\Psi = c\Phi$ or $\Phi = c\Psi$.

Schwarz's inequality is proved by a straightforward evaluation of the squared norm of the vector $\|\Phi\|^2 \Psi - \langle \Phi, \Psi \rangle \Phi$:

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &\leq \|\|\Phi\|^2 \Psi - \langle \Phi, \Psi \rangle \Phi\|^2 = \langle \|\Phi\|^2 \Psi - \langle \Phi, \Psi \rangle \Phi, \|\Phi\|^2 \Psi - \langle \Phi, \Psi \rangle \Phi \rangle \\ &= \|\Phi\|^2 (\|\Psi\|^2 \|\Phi\|^2 - |\langle \Phi, \Psi \rangle|^2), \end{aligned}$$

¹In other words, the inner product is linear in its second member and "antilinear" in the first, a definition that is universally customary among physicists. In the mathematical literature you will find that mathematicians usually employ an inner product linear in the first and antilinear in the second member.

which proves it. Note that $\|\Phi\|^2 = \langle \Phi, \Phi \rangle = 0$ if and only if Φ is a multiple of Φ or one of these variables. As for the triangle inequality, I will ask you to prove it as an exercise, using Schwarz's inequality.

The vectors in a set $\{\Phi_i, i = 1, \dots, n\}$ are called *linearly dependent* if there exists a set of complex numbers $\{c_i, i = 1, \dots, n\}$, not all of them equal to zero, such that $\sum_{i=1}^n c_i \Phi_i = 0$. If this equation holds for no set of complex numbers other than $\{c_i = 0, i = 1, \dots, n\}$, then the n vectors are called *linearly independent*.

Suppose that $\mathfrak{V}$ is such that there is a maximal number of linearly independent vectors in it, i.e., given any set of non-zero vectors with more than n members, they must be linearly dependent. The number n is then called the *dimension* of $\mathfrak{V}$. It follows that, given any set of n linearly independent vectors $\{\Phi_i \in \mathfrak{V}, i = 1, \dots, n\}$, every given vector $\Phi \in \mathfrak{V}$ can be written as a linear combination of the form $\Phi = \sum_{i=1}^n c_i \Phi_i$, and the set $\{\Phi_i \in \mathfrak{V}, i = 1, \dots, n\}$ is called a *basis* in $\mathfrak{V}$. The most useful kinds of bases are the *orthonormal* ones, for which $\langle \Phi_i, \Phi_j \rangle = \delta_{ij}$, $i, j = 1, \dots, n$.¹ In that case, the coefficients in the expansion $\Phi = \sum_{i=1}^n c_i \Phi_i$ are easily calculated, $c_i = \langle \Phi_i, \Phi \rangle$, and the inner product of two vectors becomes the sum of products of these coefficients: if $\Phi_1 = \sum_i c_i^{(1)} \Phi_i$ and $\Phi_2 = \sum_i c_i^{(2)} \Phi_i$, then $\langle \Phi_1, \Phi_2 \rangle = \sum_i c_i^{(1)*} c_i^{(2)}$, and as a special case, $\|\Phi\|^2 = \sum_i |c_i|^2 = \sum_i |\langle \Phi_i, \Phi \rangle|^2$, which is known as *Bessel's equality*.

A set of vectors in $\mathfrak{V}$ that forms a linear space by itself is called a *subspace*. For example, the set of linear combinations of $m < n$ linearly independent vectors $\{\Phi_i\}_{i=1}^m$ in an n -dimensional space $\mathfrak{V}$ form an m -dimensional proper subspace of $\mathfrak{V}$; it is called the *space spanned* by the vectors $\{\Phi_i\}_{i=1}^m$. On the other hand, the set of all vectors Φ in $\mathfrak{V}$ such that $\|\Phi\| \leq 1$ is not a subspace.² The *orthogonal complement* $\mathfrak{S}^\perp$ of a subspace $\mathfrak{S}$ is the set of all vectors in $\mathfrak{V}$ that are orthogonal to all vectors in $\mathfrak{S}$.³

Tensor products. Suppose $\mathfrak{V}^1$ and $\mathfrak{V}^2$ are two linear vector spaces with complete sets of orthonormal basis vectors, $\{\Phi_i^1\}_{i=1}^n$ and $\{\Phi_j^2\}_{j=1}^m$, respectively. We may then form $n \times m$ new orthonormal vectors $\Phi_{ij} = \Phi_i^1 \otimes \Phi_j^2$ by defining their inner products $\langle \Phi_{ij}, \Phi_{kl} \rangle = \langle \Phi_i^1, \Phi_k^1 \rangle \langle \Phi_j^2, \Phi_l^2 \rangle$. The $n \times m$ -dimensional linear vector space $\mathfrak{S}$ spanned by the vectors $\{\Phi_{ij}\}$ is called the *tensor product* of $\mathfrak{V}^1$ and $\mathfrak{V}^2$, written $\mathfrak{S} = \mathfrak{V}^1 \otimes \mathfrak{V}^2$. The members of $\mathfrak{S}$ can all be expressed in the form of linear combinations of the kind $\Phi = \sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{j=1}^m a_{ij} \Phi_i^1 \otimes \Phi_j^2$.

Direct sums. The direct sum of the two spaces $\mathfrak{V}^1$ and $\mathfrak{V}^2$ is a space $\mathfrak{S} = \mathfrak{V}^1 \oplus \mathfrak{V}^2$ of dimension $n + m$ whose vectors are pairs $\Phi = \Phi^1 \oplus \Phi^2$ with the inner product $\langle \Phi, \Phi \rangle = \langle \Phi^1, \Phi^1 \rangle_{\mathfrak{V}^1} + \langle \Phi^2, \Phi^2 \rangle_{\mathfrak{V}^2}$. Its first n basis

¹ δ_{ij} is the Kronecker symbol; its value equals 1 when $i = j$ and 0 otherwise.

²Why not?

³Is it a subspace?

vectors may be taken to be $(\Phi_k^1, 1)$ and its second or use $(\Phi_k^2, 1)$, so that every vector $\Phi \in \mathfrak{H}$ has the form $\Phi = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_k(\Phi_k^1, 1) + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} b_j(\Phi_j^2, 1)$, with the inner product $(\Phi, \Psi) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_k(\bar{a}_k + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \bar{b}_j b_j)$ if $\Psi = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (\bar{a}_k(\Phi_k^1, 1) + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \bar{b}_j(\Phi_j^2, 1))$.

B.2 Infinite-Dimensional Linear Vector Spaces

If there is no limit to the number of linearly independent vectors in $\mathfrak{H}$, its dimension is infinite, and various new considerations arise from requirements of convergence. Specifically, the space is called *complete* if Cauchy sequences converge in it. A sequence $S = \{\Phi_n\}_n^n$ of vectors in $\mathfrak{H}$ is called a *Cauchy sequence* if for every given $\epsilon > 0$ there exists an N such that for all $n, m \geq N$, $\|\Phi_n - \Phi_m\| < \epsilon$. Thus, if $\mathfrak{H}$ is complete and S is a Cauchy sequence $\{\Phi_n\}_n^n$ in it, then there exists a vector $\Phi \in \mathfrak{H}$ such that $\|\Phi_n - \Phi\| \rightarrow 0$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$. A Hilbert space is a complete linear vector space with an inner product. (Spaces of finite dimensionality are automatically complete.) The only Hilbert spaces we will be dealing with are complex. It is important to note that a subspace $\mathcal{S}$ of a Hilbert space $\mathfrak{H}$ is not necessarily a Hilbert space; $\mathcal{S}$ may not be complete, which means it may not contain all its limit points: a Cauchy sequence of vectors in $\mathcal{S}$ may converge to a vector $\Phi \in \mathfrak{H}$ but $\Phi \notin \mathcal{S}$. In order to make it into a Hilbert space it may have to be completed by adding all its limit points that were not already contained in it. The tensor product $\mathfrak{H}^1 \otimes \mathfrak{H}^2$ of two Hilbert spaces $\mathfrak{H}^1$ and $\mathfrak{H}^2$ is defined to be the Hilbert space that is the completion of the tensor product of the two vector spaces as defined earlier for finite-dimensional vector spaces.

A Hilbert space $\mathfrak{H}$ is called *separable* if it contains a countable set of vectors that is dense¹ in $\mathfrak{H}$. All the Hilbert spaces of interest in physics are separable.

A basis in an infinite-dimensional Hilbert $\mathfrak{H}$ space cannot be defined quite so simply as in a space of finite dimension. An infinite sequence of linearly independent vectors $\{\Phi_n\}_n^n$ in $\mathfrak{H}$ is called a *basis* in $\mathfrak{H}$ if every $\Phi \in \mathfrak{H}$ can be expanded in the form $\Phi = \sum_n c_n \Phi_n$. The meaning of this, more precisely, is that if we call the partial sums $S_m \equiv \sum_{n=1}^m c_n \Phi_n$, then $\lim_{m \rightarrow \infty} \|\Phi - S_m\| = 0$. Again, the most useful bases are those that are orthonormal, because for those the expansion coefficients can be calculated simply by $c_n = (\Phi_n, \Phi)$.

A vector Φ in $\mathfrak{H}$ is uniquely determined if we know its inner products (Φ, Φ_n) with all $\Phi_n \in \mathfrak{H}$. This is so because then, specifically, all the coefficients $c_n = (\Phi_n, \Phi)$ in its expansion $\Phi = \sum_n c_n \Phi_n$ on the orthonormal basis

¹A set $\mathcal{S}$ of vectors in a Hilbert space $\mathfrak{H}$ is dense in $\mathfrak{H}$ if for every given $\epsilon > 0$ and every $\Phi \in \mathfrak{H}$ there is a vector $\Psi \in \mathcal{S}$ such that $\|\Phi - \Psi\| < \epsilon$.

$\{\Psi_n\}$ are determined, therefore it is, in fact, sufficient to know all the inner products $c_n = \langle \Psi_n, \Psi \rangle$ with a set of basis vectors.

Example 1 An example of a Hilbert space is $L^2(\mathbb{R})$, the space of square-integrable functions $f(x)$ on the real line. Here the inner product is defined by

$$\langle f, g \rangle \equiv \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dx f^*(x)g(x),$$

and the norm, $\|f\|^2 \equiv \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dx |f(x)|^2$. Another example is provided by the space $\mathcal{D}$ of square-summable sequences $x = \{x_n\}_1^\infty$, for which the inner product is

$$\langle x, y \rangle \equiv \sum_1^\infty x_n^* y_n,$$

and the norm $\|x\|^2 \equiv \sum_1^\infty |x_n|^2$. (The expansion of vectors in $\mathcal{D}$ on a basis constitutes a one-to-one linear mapping of $\mathcal{D}$ on $\mathcal{D}$.) The space $L^1(\mathbb{R})$ of integrable functions, on the other hand, is not a Hilbert space. The Hilbert space $L^2(\mathbb{R}^3)$ of square-integrable functions $f(\mathbf{r})$ on the three-dimensional Euclidean space $\mathbb{R}^3$ is the tensor product $L^2(\mathbb{R}) \otimes L^2(\mathbb{R}) \otimes L^2(\mathbb{R})$ of three copies of $L^2(\mathbb{R})$.

B.3 Operators

A linear operator $\mathbf{M}$ on $\mathcal{H}$ is a linear mapping that sends every vector Φ in some subspace $\mathcal{D}(\mathbf{M}) \subseteq \mathcal{H}$ into a unique vector $\Phi' \equiv \mathbf{M}\Phi$ in a linear space $\mathcal{R}(\mathbf{M})$ which may or may not be a subspace of $\mathcal{H}$. $\Phi' = \mathbf{M}\Phi$ (the linearity of the mapping means that $\mathbf{M}(c_1\Phi_1 + c_2\Phi_2) = c_1\mathbf{M}\Phi_1 + c_2\mathbf{M}\Phi_2$). The product of two operators is defined by associativity, $(\mathbf{M}\mathbf{N})\Phi \equiv \mathbf{M}(\mathbf{N}\Phi)$ (assuming that $\mathcal{D}(\mathbf{M}) \subseteq \mathcal{R}(\mathbf{N})$), and they may or may not commute. The space $\mathcal{D}(\mathbf{M})$ on which $\mathbf{M}$ is defined is called its domain, and the set $\mathcal{R}(\mathbf{M})$ of images of $\mathcal{D}(\mathbf{M})$ under the mapping $\mathbf{M}$ is called its range; thus, $\mathbf{M}$ maps its domain $\mathcal{D}(\mathbf{M})$ into its range $\mathcal{R}(\mathbf{M})$. Most, but not all, of the operators $\mathbf{M}$ of interest for us are such that both $\mathcal{D}(\mathbf{M}) \subseteq \mathcal{H}$ and $\mathcal{R}(\mathbf{M}) \subseteq \mathcal{H}$.

If $\mathcal{R}(\mathbf{M}) \subseteq \mathcal{H}$ and the “matrix elements” $\langle \Upsilon, \mathbf{M}\Phi \rangle$ of $\mathbf{M}$ are known for all Φ in the domain of $\mathbf{M}$ and all $\Upsilon \in \mathcal{H}$, then the operator $\mathbf{M}$ is uniquely determined, because we can evaluate the numbers $c_n \equiv \langle \Psi_n, \mathbf{M}\Phi \rangle$, which are the expansion coefficients of the image $\Phi' = \mathbf{M}\Phi$ of Φ on the orthonormal basis $\{\Psi_n\}$.

The norm of the operator M is defined by the upper limit of the norms of the images of all the unit vectors in $\mathcal{H}_1$ ²⁰

$$\|M\| \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \sup_{\|\Phi\|=1} \|M\Phi\| \quad (3.3)$$

or equivalently

$$\|M\| \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \sup_{\Phi, \Phi'} \|(M\Phi, M\Phi')\|^{1/2} \quad (3.4)$$

If this number is finite, the operator is called *bounded*; otherwise it is unbounded. A *bounded operator* on $\mathcal{H}$ is defined on all of $\mathcal{H}$: $\mathcal{D}(M) = \mathcal{H}$, and its range is a subspace of $\mathcal{H}$: $\mathcal{R}(M) \subset \mathcal{H}$; on the other hand, if M is unbounded, its domain $\mathcal{D}(M)$ is not all of $\mathcal{H}$, i.e., $\mathcal{D}(M) \subset \mathcal{H}$.

As an example, take a projection operator P onto a non-dimensional subspace $\mathcal{S}$ spanned by the unit vector Φ , defined by $P\Phi \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (\Phi, \Phi)\Phi$. If $\mathcal{S}$ is n -dimensional, spanned by the orthonormal set $\{\Phi_i\}$, P is defined by $P\Phi = \sum_{i=1}^n (\Phi_i, \Phi)\Phi_i$. In either case, P is both Hermitian (see below) and idempotent: $P^2 = P$. Such operators are defined on all of $\mathcal{H}$, so $\mathcal{D}(P) = \mathcal{H}$, and their range is $\mathcal{S}$. The norm of a projection operator is always equal to one: $\|P\| = 1$.²¹

The operator norm satisfies both Schwarz's inequality,

$$\|MN\| \leq \|M\| \|N\|, \quad (3.5)$$

and the triangle inequality:²²

$$\|M + N\| \leq \|M\| + \|N\|. \quad (3.6)$$

The Hermitian conjugate (also called Hermitian adjoint) $M^\dagger$ of M is defined by

$$(M, M^\dagger\Phi) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (\Phi, M\Phi), \quad (3.7)$$

and the operator M is called Hermitian if $M = M^\dagger$. Such operators are singled out for representing physical observables because it immediately follows from (3.7) that all expectation values of a Hermitian operator are real numbers:

$$\langle \mathcal{O}(M) \rangle = 0 \quad \text{if} \quad M = M^\dagger. \quad (3.8)$$

If these expectation values are all positive, $\langle M \rangle \geq 0$, M is called *positive definite*; if $\langle M \rangle \geq 0$, it is called *positive semi-definite*.

²⁰“sup” means “least upper bound.”

²¹“Idempotent.”

²²It is not too hard to prove these as exercises.

To be mathematically careful, however, we have to pay attention to questions of domain here. Equation (D.7) makes sense only on the assumption that there are vectors Y and Z in $\mathcal{H}$ such that for all $\Phi \in \mathcal{D}(\mathbf{M})$, $\langle \Phi, \mathbf{M}\Phi \rangle = \langle \Phi, Y \rangle$. If such pairs of vectors exist, then the vectors Z form the domain of $\mathbf{M}^\dagger$ and the vectors Y its range. Note also that if the domain of $\mathbf{M}$ is a proper subspace of $\mathcal{H}$, the right-hand side of (D.7) is not defined on all of $\mathcal{H}$, and hence not all the matrix elements of $\mathbf{M}^\dagger$ are defined by this equation; specifically, its range is not completely defined. For example, we could, without changing the equation, add to $\mathbf{M}^\dagger$ any operator whose range is orthogonal to $\mathcal{D}(\mathbf{M})$, if such an operator exists. The strict definition of a Hermitian operator, of course, depends on such domain questions, and the equation $\mathbf{M}^\dagger = \mathbf{M}$ implies that $\mathcal{D}(\mathbf{M}) = \mathcal{D}(\mathbf{M}^\dagger)$. Only then do mathematicians call $\mathbf{M}$ self-adjoint, and only then are certain important theorems applicable. If the domain question is left open, $\mathbf{M}$ is called symmetric by mathematicians. It is such subtleties, and ones that we usually ignore as physicists, which does not mean, however, they are unimportant!¹

As an important example, take $\mathcal{H}$ to be the space $L^2(a, b)$ of square-integrable functions of x , $a \leq x \leq b$ and consider the operator $\mathbf{p} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} -i\hbar d/dx$. Since the functions in L^2 are not all differentiable, the domain of $\mathbf{p}$ can be no larger than the subspace of differentiable functions in L^2 . (However, this subspace is not a Hilbert space. To complete it, its limit points have to be added. The most convenient way of doing so is to define the derivative operator in terms of Fourier transforms.) Furthermore, since

$$\int_a^b dx \, f^*(x) \left[-i\hbar \frac{d}{dx} \right] g(x) = \int_a^b dx \left[-i\hbar \frac{d}{dx} f(x) g(x) + (f^*(x)g(x) - f^*(b)g(b)), \right.$$

the operator is Hermitian only if its domain is restricted to the functions for which the end-point terms are absent. This can be accomplished, for example, by adopting boundary conditions such that all the functions in the domain of $\mathbf{p}$ vanish at the points a and b , or by assuming them to be periodic, $f(b) = f(a)$. If a is taken to be $-\infty$ and $b = \infty$, then the possible end-point boundary terms are ignored. (Remember that a square-integrable function need not necessarily vanish at infinity.) Again, the best way of doing this is to start with the Fourier-transform space of L^2 -functions $\tilde{f}(k)$ and the (unbounded) multiplication operator k , whose domain of definition $\mathcal{D}(k)$ is the space of functions such that $k\tilde{f}(k) \in L^2$. The inverse Fourier transform of the operator of multiplication by k is then the unbounded operator $-i\hbar d/dx$ and its domain is the space of functions that are the Fourier transform of functions in $\mathcal{D}(k)$, a proper subspace of $L^2(\mathcal{R})$.

Suppose a bounded operator $\mathbf{M}$ maps all of $\mathcal{H}$ one-to-one into all of $\mathcal{H}$. In that case, it clearly has an inverse $\mathbf{M}^{-1}$, the operator that inverts the mapping, also defined one-to-one from $\mathcal{H}$ onto $\mathcal{H}$. The assumption that the

¹ For further mathematical details on these questions, see, for example, [Reed].

mapping of $\mathbf{M}$ is one-to-one, however, excludes the possibility that there is a vector $\Phi \neq 0$ in $\mathfrak{H}$ that is annihilated by $\mathbf{M}$: $\mathbf{M}\Phi = 0$, because if such an Φ exists, then $\mathbf{M}\Phi = \mathbf{M}(\Phi + \Gamma)$, implying that the mapping is not one-to-one. Conversely, if there are two vectors Φ_1 and Φ_2 such that $\mathbf{M}\Phi_1 = \mathbf{M}\Phi_2$, then $\mathbf{M}(\Phi_1 - \Phi_2) = 0$. The set of nonzero vectors $\Phi \in \mathfrak{H}$ that are annihilated by $\mathbf{M}$ is called its *nullspace*,¹² which we shall denote by $N(\mathbf{M})$; it is a subspace. Thus the necessary and sufficient condition for a bounded operator to have an inverse is that its nullspace be trivial, which means it contains only the zero-vector.

Just as the introduction of an orthonormal basis $\{\mathbf{T}_n\}_1^\infty$ in $\mathfrak{H}$ allows us to represent vectors Φ by the sequence of their projections on these basis vectors, we now can represent operators by matrices. This is done by defining

$$A_{nm} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \langle \mathbf{T}_m, \mathbf{M}\mathbf{T}_n \rangle, \quad (3.10)$$

or in Dirac notation, writing $\mathbf{T}_n = |n\rangle$,

$$A_{nm} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \langle n | \mathbf{M} | m \rangle, \quad (3.11)$$

so that the representation of the image $\mathbf{M}\Phi$ of Φ under the mapping $\mathbf{M}$ is given by the sequence

$$\langle n | \mathbf{M} | \rangle = \sum_m A_{nm} \langle m | \rangle, \quad n = 1, 2, \dots$$

where $| \rangle \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \Phi$. Operator multiplication is thereby converted into matrix multiplication: if $\mathbf{C}$ is the matrix representing the product $\mathbf{MN}$, then $C_{nm} = \sum_k A_{nk} N_{km}$, which is most easily seen by using, between the two operators $\mathbf{MN}$, the equality statement

$$\sum_n |n\rangle \langle n| = \mathbf{I} \quad (3.12)$$

of the assumption that the sequence $\{\mathbf{T}_n = |n\rangle\}$ forms an orthonormal basis in $\mathfrak{H}$. (The meaning of (3.12) resides entirely in what it leads to when acting on an arbitrary vector $\Phi = | \rangle \in \mathfrak{H}$, which is $| \rangle = \sum_n |n\rangle \langle n | \rangle$.) It is, however, important to remember that the matrices we are dealing with here are infinite-dimensional ones, because of convergence problems of the infinite series involved in their products, they lack some of the familiar properties of finite-dimensional matrices, as we shall see.

B.3.1 Hermitian operators and their spectra

The spectrum of a Hermitian operator $\mathbf{M}$ consists of two sets of points, one of which, but not both, may be empty. The first set, called the *point*

¹²It is also sometimes called its *kernel*.

spectrum or discrete spectrum, consists of those numbers α , if any, for which there exists a vector $\Phi^\alpha \in \mathcal{H}$ such that:¹³

$$(\mathbf{M} - \alpha)\Phi^\alpha = 0. \quad (3.12)$$

These numbers, called *eigenvalues* of $\mathbf{M}$, are necessarily real, because (3.12) implies $\langle \Phi, \mathbf{M}\Phi \rangle / \langle \Phi, \Phi \rangle = \alpha$, the left-hand side of which is real, according to (3.8). They form a denumerable, discrete set of points (which we shall not prove here).

The second part of the spectrum of a Hermitian operator consists of those numbers α , if any, with the property that for any given $\epsilon > 0$ there exists a unit vector $\Phi_\epsilon^\alpha \in \mathcal{H}$ such that

$$\|(\mathbf{M} - \alpha)\Phi_\epsilon^\alpha\| < \epsilon, \quad (3.13)$$

but there exists no $\Phi^\alpha \in \mathcal{H}$ such that $(\mathbf{M} - \alpha)\Phi^\alpha = 0$. These numbers form the continuous spectrum of $\mathbf{M}$, and we shall call them *quasi-eigenvalues*. The continuous spectrum of a Hermitian operator also lies on the real line, as is proved by a simple calculation for any complex $\alpha = \alpha_1 + i\alpha_2$ and $\|\Phi\| = 1$,

$$\|(\mathbf{M} - \alpha)\Phi\|^2 = \|(\mathbf{M} - \alpha_1)\Phi\|^2 + \alpha_2^2 \geq \alpha_2^2,$$

which implies that for a given $\alpha_2 \neq 0$, the left-hand side cannot be arbitrarily small. Thus the entire spectrum of a Hermitian operator lies on the real line. The "continuous spectrum" of a Hermitian operator indeed forms a continuum (which we shall also not prove here).¹⁴

If α is an eigenvalue of $\mathbf{M}$, there may be more than one corresponding eigenvector: the nullspace $\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{M} - \alpha)$ (called the *eigenspace* of $\mathbf{M}$ at the eigenvalue α) may be multidimensional, with $n \geq 1$. The eigenvalue is then said to have *multiplicity* n or to be *n-fold degenerate*, and we can introduce n mutually orthogonal eigenvectors that span the eigenspace. The eigenvectors belonging to two different eigenvalues of a Hermitian operator, on the other hand, are automatically mutually orthogonal. [This can be seen by taking the inner product of $\mathbf{M}\Phi_1 = \alpha_1\Phi_1$ with Φ_2 and subtracting the complex conjugate of the inner product of $\mathbf{M}\Phi_2 = \alpha_2\Phi_2$ with Φ_1 , which results in $0 = \langle \Phi_1, \mathbf{M}\Phi_1 \rangle - \langle \Phi_1, \mathbf{M}\Phi_2 \rangle^* = (\alpha_1 - \alpha_2)\langle \Phi_1, \Phi_2 \rangle$, since α_1 and α_2 are real. Therefore $\langle \Phi_1, \Phi_2 \rangle = 0$ if $\alpha_1 \neq \alpha_2$.]

Let us define $\mathcal{P}_{\alpha_n}$ to be the projection on the nullspace $\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{M} - \alpha_n)$, so that $\mathcal{P}_{\alpha_n}^2 = \mathcal{P}_{\alpha_n}$, $\mathcal{P}_{\alpha_n}^\dagger = \mathcal{P}_{\alpha_n}$, and $(\mathbf{M} - \alpha_n)\mathcal{P}_{\alpha_n} = 0$. The extremely

¹³Strictly speaking, $\mathbf{M} - \alpha$ should be written as the form $\mathbf{M} - \alpha\mathbf{I}$, but it is customary to omit the unit operator $\mathbf{I}$.

¹⁴By contrast, the "continuous spectrum," which mathematicians call the "essential spectrum," of non-Hermitian operators may contain isolated points, and the "discrete spectrum" (i.e., the eigenvalues) may form a continuum. In some instances the two kinds of spectra of a Hermitian operator may overlap, that is, some point eigenvalues may be "absorbed" in the continuum.

important spectral theorem asserts that, if the spectrum of the Hermitian operator M consists of discrete eigenvalues only, the direct sum of all the nullspaces $\mathcal{N}(M - \alpha_n)$ is equal to all of $\mathcal{H}$; this means that the eigenvectors of M span the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$. As a result, the operator M can then be expanded in the form

$$M = \sum_n \alpha_n P_{\alpha_n}, \quad (3.14)$$

and we have the "resolution of the identity"

$$\sum_n P_{\alpha_n} = I, \quad (3.15)$$

from which (3.14) follows by multiplication by M . If we write $\{| \alpha_n \rangle\}$ for the set of orthonormal eigenvectors of M in the Dirac notation, (3.15) can also be written in the form¹⁸

$$\sum_n | \alpha_n \rangle \langle \alpha_n | = I, \quad (3.16)$$

generally called a completeness relation and its immediate consequence, Parseval's equality for any vector $| \psi \rangle \in \mathcal{H}$,

$$\langle \psi | \psi \rangle = \sum_n | \langle \alpha_n | \psi \rangle |^2. \quad (3.17)$$

Here is an instance of an important difference between finite-dimensional matrices and those representing operators on an infinite-dimensional Hilbert space. In the n -dimensional case the eigenvalues α of the matrix M can be found from the fact that if the nullspace $\mathcal{N}(M - \alpha I)$ is nontrivial, i.e., if there exists a vector $\psi \neq 0$ such that $(M - \alpha I)\psi = 0$, α must solve the n^{th} -order algebraic equation $\det(M - \alpha I) = 0$. In the infinite-dimensional case, however, this determinant is not necessarily well defined. In the next chapter we shall discuss conditions under which such infinite-dimensional determinants exist and how they can be calculated. Note also that, whereas the proof of the spectral theorem in the finite-dimensional case is trivial when there is no degeneracy, and when there is, consists simply of the demonstration that the geometric and algebraic degeneracies are equal, its proof for operators on an infinite-dimensional Hilbert space is more intricate and we shall not give it here.

The case of a continuous spectrum is more difficult to handle in the abstract, without introducing additional mathematical machinery. Let us begin by considering an example. Suppose our Hilbert space is the space $L^2(-a, a)$ of square-integrable functions from $-a$ to a : $f(x)$, $-a < x < a$.

¹⁸This notation is somewhat ambiguous. In the case of degeneracy, we still have to assume that when some α_n are equal, the corresponding eigenvectors are mutually orthogonal.

Let the operator M be $-\frac{d^2}{dx^2}$, defined on the domain of twice-differentiable functions with periodic boundary conditions $f(a) = f(-a)$, and $f'(a) = f'(-a)$; then the eigenvalues of M are the non-negative numbers $k_n^2 = (n\pi/a)^2$, $n = 0, 1, \dots$, and each eigenvalue is twofold degenerate (in each eigenvalue k_n^2 there correspond two normalized eigenfunctions $f_{\pm n}(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2a}}e^{\pm i k_n x}$). The Fourier theorem tells us that these functions form an orthonormal basis in $L^2(-a, a)$: every function $f(x) \in L^2(-a, a)$ can be expanded in the form $f(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2a}} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{+\infty} c_n e^{i k_n x/a}$, and the coefficients are given by $c_n = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2a}} \int_{-a}^a dx f(x) e^{-i k_n x/a}$. Let us next take the Hilbert space to be $L^2(\mathbb{R})$, the space of square-integrable functions from $-\infty$ to $+\infty$, with the same operator $M = -\frac{d^2}{dx^2}$, defined for functions whose second derivatives are also square-integrable. In that case, the spectrum consists of the continuous of all non-negative numbers k^2 , and to each quasi-eigenvalue there again correspond two quasi-eigenfunctions $(2\pi)^{-1/2} e^{\pm i k x}$, but these functions are not square-integrable: they are not in the Hilbert space.¹⁹ Nevertheless, the Fourier integral theorem says that any function $f(x) \in L^2(\mathbb{R})$ can be represented as an integral of the form

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} dk \left[g(k) e^{i k x} + g(k) e^{-i k x} \right] = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} dk g(k) e^{i k x}, \quad (\text{B.18})$$

where the function $g(k)$ is given by

$$g(k) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} dx f(x) e^{-i k x}. \quad (\text{B.19})$$

The two formulas (B.18) and (B.19) can be combined in the symbolic form²⁰

$$\frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} dk e^{i k(x-x')} = \delta(x - x'), \quad (\text{B.20})$$

which yields (B.18) and (B.19) on multiplication by $f(x)$ and integrating. Furthermore, the "normalization" of the quasi-eigenfunctions $f_{\pm}(x) = (2\pi)^{-1/2} e^{\pm i k x}$ is such that

$$\int dx f_{\pm}(x) f_{\pm}(x) = \delta(k - k'). \quad (\text{B.21})$$

¹⁹In some ways even the spectrum of this operator may be thought of as arising from the operator on $L^2(-a, a)$ by letting $a \rightarrow \infty$, in which case its eigenvalues become more and more closely spaced. Note, however, that the normalized eigenfunctions vanish in the limit.

²⁰Caution: Theorem of the Dirac delta function (in the context of a Hilbert space-like L^2) is inherently ambiguous, because functions in L^2 are not defined pointwise and need not be continuous. For example, the δ -function in L^2 , which is such that $\int dx \delta(x) f(x) = f(0)$, can differ from 0 at infinitely many points.

For a general Hermitian operator M with a continuous spectrum $\mathcal{D}$ (and no point spectrum), the points of which we shall denote by α , the situation is analogous. To every $\Psi \in \mathcal{H}$ there corresponds a square-integrable complex-valued function $f_M(\alpha)$,

$$\Psi \leftrightarrow f_M(\alpha),$$

defined on $\mathcal{D}$, such that

$$M\Psi \leftrightarrow f_{M\Psi}(\alpha) = \alpha f_M(\alpha), \quad (3.22)$$

and Parseval's equality holds,

$$\|\Psi\|^2 = \int_{\mathcal{D}} d\alpha |f_M(\alpha)|^2,$$

with the property that if $\Psi \leftrightarrow f_M(\alpha)$ and $\Phi \leftrightarrow f_N(\alpha)$, then for all complex a and b , $a\Psi + b\Phi \leftrightarrow f_{a\Psi+b\Phi}(\alpha) = af_M(\alpha) + bf_N(\alpha)$ and

$$(\Psi, \Phi) = \int_{\mathcal{D}} d\alpha f_M(\alpha) f_N(\alpha).$$

The function $f_M(\alpha)$ corresponding to $\Psi \in \mathcal{H}$ will be denoted by $f(\alpha) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} f_M(\alpha)$, while $f^*(\alpha) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} f_M^*(\alpha)$. As a function of Ψ it has the linearity properties of an inner product of the vector $\Psi = | \rangle$ with the quasi-vector $| \alpha \rangle$, and the latter is such that, according to (3.22), $M| \alpha \rangle = \alpha| \alpha \rangle$, and

$$\int_{\mathcal{D}} d\alpha | \alpha \rangle \langle \alpha | = \mathbb{I}, \quad (3.23)$$

as well as

$$\langle \alpha | \alpha' \rangle = \delta(\alpha - \alpha'), \quad (3.24)$$

which implies that, analogous to Fourier integrals,

$$| \rangle = \int_{\mathcal{D}} d\alpha | \alpha \rangle \langle \alpha | = \int_{\mathcal{D}} d\alpha | \alpha \rangle \langle \alpha |. \quad (3.25)$$

The quasi-vector $| \alpha \rangle$ is not in $\mathcal{H}$, because a square-integrable function need not have a finite value at every point, so there is no assurance that for a given α the inner product $\langle \alpha |$ has to be finite for all $| \rangle \in \mathcal{H}$. (In fact, for every $\alpha \in \mathcal{D}$ there must exist an $| \rangle \in \mathcal{H}$ such that $\langle \alpha |$ is not finite, because otherwise α would be an eigenvalue of M rather than a quasi-eigenvalue.)²²

Let $\{f_n\}$ be an orthonormal basis in $\mathcal{H}$, then

$$\delta_{mn} = (f_n, f_m) = \int_{\mathcal{D}} d\alpha f_n^*(\alpha) f_m(\alpha) \quad (3.26)$$

²²For also the formulation in terms of rigged Hilbert spaces, e.g., [Jilkin, 4.]

as well as

$$\begin{aligned}(\Phi, \Phi) &= \sum_n (\Phi, \delta_n)(\delta_n, \Phi) \\&= \int_B dA \int_B d\sigma' f_A^*(\sigma)(f_A(\sigma')) \sum_n \delta_n(\sigma)(\delta_n^*(\sigma')) \\&= \int_B d\sigma f_A^*(\sigma)(f_A(\sigma)),\end{aligned}$$

from which we conclude that

$$\sum_n \delta_n(\sigma)(\delta_n^*(\sigma')) = \delta(\sigma - \sigma'). \quad (3.37)$$

To every function $f \in L^2(B)$, correspondingly, there corresponds a vector $\Phi \in \mathfrak{H}$. The expansion coefficients c_n of this Φ on a basis $\{\delta_n\}$ are given by

$$c_n = \int_B d\sigma \delta_n^*(\sigma) f(\sigma),$$

which by (3.26) implies that

$$\|\Phi\|^2 = \sum_n |c_n|^2 = \int_B d\sigma |f(\sigma)|^2.$$

To prove that $\mathfrak{H}$ indeed constitutes the continuous spectrum of the operator $\mathbf{M}$, choose any $\alpha \in \mathfrak{C}$, any normalised $\Phi \in \mathfrak{H}$, and let $\Phi_\alpha \in \mathfrak{H}$ be the normalised vector in $\mathfrak{H}$ corresponding to

$$f_\alpha(\sigma) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \sqrt{\frac{\alpha/\pi}{\sigma^2 + (\sigma - \alpha)^2}},$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned}\|(\Phi, (\mathbf{M} - \alpha)\Phi_\alpha)\|^2 &= \left| \int_B d\sigma (\sigma - \alpha) f_{\alpha,*}(\sigma) f_\alpha(\sigma) \right|^2 \\&\leq \int_B d\sigma |f_{\alpha,*}(\sigma)|^2 \int_B d\sigma \frac{(\sigma - \alpha)^2/\pi}{\sigma^2 + (\sigma - \alpha)^2} \leq \pi\end{aligned}$$

which implies that α is in the continuous spectrum of $\mathbf{M}$ (unless there exists an eigenvector $\Upsilon \in \mathfrak{H}$, with $(\mathbf{M} - \alpha)\Upsilon = 0$, which is not the case by construction).

If the spectrum of $\mathbf{M}$ is partly discrete and partly continuous, then the expansions consist in part of sums and in part of integrals.

For a general, abstract formulation of the spectral theorem for Hermitian operators, see proved as follows. Let $\mathbf{M}$ be a given Hermitian operator whose spectrum is consisted

the countable point spectrum $\mathcal{D}_p = \{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots\}$, with corresponding eigenvalues $\Phi_1, \Phi_2, \dots, \{\alpha_n\}$, and the continuous spectrum $\mathcal{D}_c = \mathcal{D} \setminus \mathcal{D}_p$. Define the spectral projection, which is a projection operator function $P(\alpha)$, $\alpha \in \mathcal{D}$, that is monotonically non-decreasing [which means that $P(\alpha)P(\alpha') = P(\alpha')P(\alpha) = P(\alpha)$ if $\alpha \leq \alpha'$ from 0 to 1, and such that $\langle M, P(\alpha) \rangle = 0$ for all $\alpha < 0$ and $\langle M, \int_{\mathcal{D}} dP(\alpha) \rangle$ is a Hermitian integral]. The spectral projection is defined so that for all $\Phi, \Phi' \in \mathcal{H}$,

$$\langle \Phi, P(\alpha)\Phi' \rangle = \sum_{\alpha_i \in \mathcal{D}_p} \langle \Phi | \alpha_i \rangle \langle \Phi', P(\alpha_i) \rangle + \int_{\mathcal{D}_c} d\alpha \langle \Phi | \alpha \rangle \langle P(\alpha) \Phi' | \alpha \rangle.$$

The spectral theorem consists of the equation (which we are not going to prove)

$$\int_{\mathcal{D}} dP(\alpha) = 1. \quad (8.28)$$

In terms of the notation $\langle P(\alpha), \Phi \rangle = \langle \alpha, \Phi \rangle$ and $P(\alpha)\Phi = \langle \alpha, \Phi \rangle$, the spectral projection may be written in the form

$$P(\alpha) = \sum_{\alpha_i \in \mathcal{D}_p} \langle \Phi | \alpha_i \rangle \langle \alpha_i | \rangle + \int_{\mathcal{D}_c} d\alpha \langle \Phi | \alpha \rangle \langle \alpha | \rangle,$$

and the spectral theorem is the “resolution of the identity”

$$\int_{\mathcal{D}} d\alpha \langle \alpha | \rangle \langle \alpha | \rangle + \sum_{\alpha_i \in \mathcal{D}_p} \langle \alpha_i | \rangle \langle \alpha_i | \rangle = 1, \quad (8.29)$$

meaning that for all $\Phi \in \mathcal{H}$,

$$\Phi = 1\Phi = \int_{\mathcal{D}} d\alpha \langle \alpha | \Phi \rangle \langle \alpha | \rangle + \sum_{\alpha_i \in \mathcal{D}_p} \langle \alpha_i | \Phi \rangle \langle \alpha_i | \rangle, \quad (8.30)$$

as well as the Parseval equality

$$\langle \Phi | \Phi \rangle = \langle 1 | \Phi \rangle \langle \Phi | 1 \rangle = \int_{\mathcal{D}} d\alpha \langle \alpha | \Phi \rangle \langle \Phi | \alpha \rangle + \sum_{\alpha_i \in \mathcal{D}_p} \langle \alpha_i | \Phi \rangle \langle \Phi | \alpha_i \rangle. \quad (8.31)$$

8.3.2 More on operators

An operator M that satisfies the equation $MM^\dagger = 1$ is isometric, which means it preserves the lengths of all $\Phi \in \mathcal{H}$: $\langle M\Phi | M\Phi \rangle = \langle \Phi | \Phi \rangle$. Furthermore, if two vectors Φ and Φ' are orthogonal, so are their images under the mapping M : if $\langle \Phi, \Phi' \rangle = 0$, then $1 = \langle \Phi, M^\dagger M \Phi' \rangle = \langle M\Phi, M\Phi' \rangle$. However, if the range of M is a proper subspace of $\mathcal{H}$, let $\chi \neq 0$ lie in the orthogonal complement²⁰ $\mathcal{H}^\perp(M)$ of $\mathcal{R}(M)$; then for all $\Phi \in \mathcal{H}$ we have $\langle M^\dagger \chi, \Phi \rangle = \langle \chi, M\Phi \rangle = 0$, and hence $M^\dagger \chi = 0$, as well as conversely: if $M^\dagger \chi = 0$, then $\langle \chi, \Phi \rangle = 0$ for all $\Phi \in \mathcal{R}(M)$. Therefore, $\mathcal{R}(M^\dagger) = \mathcal{R}^\perp(M)$. In such a case we must have $MM^\dagger \neq 1$, because the left-hand side annihilates any

²⁰Show that the so-defined function $P(\alpha)$ has all the properties mentioned.

²¹The existence of a vector orthogonal to $\mathcal{R}(M)$ implies that the range is not dense in $\mathcal{H}$.

vector in $N[M^†]$, whereas the right-hand side does not. So while for finite-dimensional matrices $M^†M = I$ implies $MM^† = I$, for operators on an infinite-dimensional space these two equations are independent. If, on the other hand, $M^†M = MM^† = I$, then M is called *unitary*. So for a unitary operator, $M^† = M^{-1}$. A unitary operator U transforms any orthonormal basis $\{\Phi_n\}$ in $\mathcal{H}$ into another orthonormal basis $\{\Phi_n\}$ by $\Phi_n \rightarrow U\Phi_n$.

Suppose now that the operator M is represented as a matrix $\mathcal{M}$ with elements $\mathcal{M}_{mn} = \langle \Phi_m | M \Phi_n \rangle$ on some given orthonormal basis $\{\Phi_n\}$. Then the new matrix $\mathcal{M}'$ representing M on the new basis $\{\Phi_n = U\Phi_n\}$ has the matrix elements

$$\mathcal{M}'_{mn} = \langle \Phi_m | M \Phi_n \rangle = \langle \Phi_m | U^† M U \Phi_n \rangle = \sum_{ij} U_{im}^* \mathcal{M}_{ij} U_{jn} \quad (\text{E.122})$$

where

$$U_{in} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \langle \Phi_i | U \Phi_n \rangle \quad (\text{E.123})$$

is the matrix representing U on the old basis $\{\Phi_n\}$, in terms of which the new vectors are given by

$$\Phi_n = \sum_i U_{in} \Phi_i. \quad (\text{E.124})$$

Conversely, any matrix $\mathcal{M}_{mn}$ given in the basis $\{\Phi_n\}$, together with the transformation property (E.122) defines an operator M on $\mathcal{H}$. Note that if M is Hermitian, then the matrix $\mathcal{M}$ is also Hermitian; the Hermitian property is preserved under unitary transformations.

If M is Hermitian and its spectrum consists of discrete points only, its eigenvectors χ_n , corresponding to the eigenvalues ϵ_n , can be assumed to form an orthonormal basis in $\mathcal{H}$, so that $M\chi_n = \epsilon_n\chi_n$ and as a result $\mathcal{M}'_{mn} = \langle \chi_m | M \chi_n \rangle = \epsilon_n \delta_{mn}$. This means that $\mathcal{M}'$ is diagonal and the unitary transformation defined by (E.122) has diagonalized the matrix $\mathcal{M}$ given a matrix U representing a Hermitian operator M . Finding its eigenvalues and eigenvectors is equivalent to diagonalizing $\mathcal{M}$. Moreover, it follows from (E.122) and (E.124) that if U is the diagonalizing matrix, then

$$\sum_n \mathcal{M}_{nn} U_{in} = \epsilon_i U_{in}, \quad (\text{E.125})$$

which means that the columns of the matrix U consist of the components of the eigenvectors of M on the old basis, the i^{th} column forming the eigenvector belonging to the i^{th} eigenvalue.

A very useful notion is that of the *trace* of an operator. If the operator $\mathbf{X}$ is given as a matrix X_{mn} in some representation, its trace is defined by $\text{tr} \mathbf{X} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \sum_n X_{nn}$, that is, the sum of its diagonal elements. An important property of the trace is its invariance under a change of basis. This is easily proved: $\text{tr} X^{(2)} = \sum_n X_{nn}^{(2)} = \sum_{nm} U_{nm}^{(2)\dagger} X_{nn}^{(1)} U_{nn}^{(2)} = \sum_n X_{nn}^{(1)} = \text{tr} X^{(1)}$,

by the unitarity property of $U^{(H)}$. Therefore it makes sense to refer to the trace of the operator, rather than specifying its matrix representation. If $\mathbf{X}$ is Hermitian, we may represent it in the basis of its eigenvectors, in which case the diagonal elements are its eigenvalues. So the trace is the sum of its eigenvalues. (In case of degeneracy, each eigenvalue has to be counted as many times as its degeneracy indicates.)

These things work, formally, equally well for a quasi-basis and the case of quasi-eigenvalues, provided that the integral formed $N(\beta, \gamma)$ that takes the place of the matrix N_{mn} , and which is formed by means of quasi-vectors, $N(\beta, \gamma) = (E\mathbf{M})\gamma$, exists, which, even for a bounded operator $\mathbf{M}$, cannot always be taken for granted.

The trace of an operator may be evaluated also using a quasi-basis, because

$$\int d\Omega \langle E(\mathbf{X})E \rangle = \sum_{\alpha} \int d\Omega U_{\alpha}^{(E)\dagger}(E) X_{\alpha\alpha} U_{\alpha}^{(E)}(E) = \sum_{\alpha} X_{\alpha\alpha} \quad (B.26)$$

or,

$$\text{tr } \mathbf{X} = \int d\Omega \langle E(\mathbf{X})E \rangle. \quad (B.27)$$

Equation (B.27) shows, however, that if the spectrum of the Hermitian operator $\mathbf{X}$ is continuous, then its trace cannot be finite. It is not the integral over its quasi-eigenvalues.

Finally, there is the important fact that if $\mathbf{M}$ and $\mathbf{N}$ are two Hermitian operators that commute with one another, $[\mathbf{M}, \mathbf{N}] = 0$, then there exists an orthonormal basis of common eigenvectors for them, which implies that they can be simultaneously diagonalized. This is proved as follows.

Suppose that $\mathbf{M}\chi = \alpha\chi$ then $\alpha\mathbf{N}\chi = \mathbf{N}\mathbf{M}\chi = \mathbf{M}\mathbf{N}\chi$, which means that $\mathbf{N}\chi$ is an eigenvector of $\mathbf{M}$ with the same eigenvalue α . Therefore, if α is not degenerate, we must have $\mathbf{N}\chi = \beta\chi$ and χ is an eigenvector of $\mathbf{N}$ as well. On the other hand, if α is m -fold degenerate, then $\mathbf{N}\chi$ must lie in the m -dimensional eigenspace of $\mathbf{M}$ at α , a space we may assume to be spanned by the orthonormal basis $\{\chi_{\alpha}\}_1^m$, so that $\mathbf{N}\chi_{\alpha} = \sum_{\beta} c_{\alpha\beta}\chi_{\beta}$, where $c_{\alpha\beta} = \langle \chi_{\alpha}, \mathbf{N}\chi_{\beta} \rangle$ is a Hermitian $m \times m$ matrix. Diagonalizing this matrix by introducing a new orthonormal basis in the eigenspace of $\mathbf{M}$ then has the effect of ending up with an orthonormal basis consisting of eigenvectors of both $\mathbf{M}$ and $\mathbf{N}$. $\square$

A complete set of commuting Hermitian operators on $\mathcal{H}$ is a set of such operators all of whose eigenspaces can be unambiguously labeled by their eigenvalues. If an eigenvalue of one of these operators is degenerate, the eigenspace is spanned by a basis of eigenvectors of the other operators in the set. For example, in $L^2(K)$ we may take the operator $\mathbf{M} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \frac{d^2}{dx^2}$, whose quasi-eigenvalues, as we saw, are twofold degenerate, and add the parity operator $\mathbf{P}$ defined by $\mathbf{P}f(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} f(-x)$, which commutes with $\mathbf{M}$. If $f_{\pm}(x) = e^{\pm i\pi x}$ are two linearly independent quasi-eigenfunctions of $\mathbf{M}$

with the eigenvalue N^2 , then the common quasi-eigenfunctions of $\mathbf{M}$ and $\mathbf{P}$ are the even and odd combinations of $J_{\pm N}$, which are $\cos(\lambda r)$ and $\sin(\lambda r)$. These functions, then, form a complete set of common quasi-eigenfunctions of the two Hermitian operators $\mathbf{M}$ and $\mathbf{P}$, with $\cos(\lambda r)$ belonging to the pair of quasi-eigenvalues $(N^2, +1)$ and $\sin(\lambda r)$ to the pair $(N^2, -1)$.

B.4 Problems and Exercises

1. Prove the triangle inequality (B.2) for vectors in a Hilbert space using Schwarz's inequality.
2. Prove that every finite-dimensional linear vector space (with an inner product) is complete.
3. Prove that (B.3) and (B.4) are equivalent.
4. Prove Schwarz's inequality (B.5) for the norm of the product of two linear operators on a Hilbert space.
5. Prove the triangle inequality (B.6) for the norm of the sum of two linear operators on a Hilbert space.
6. Prove the inequality $(\Phi, M\Phi)(\Psi, \Psi) \leq (\Phi, \Phi)^2$ for all $\Phi \in \mathcal{H}$, if $P(\lambda)$ is the spectral projection for M .
7. Take $\mathcal{H}$ to be the space of square-integrable functions $f(x)$ on the real line, $L^2(\mathbb{R})$, and let M be the operator of multiplication by the square-integrable function $h(x)$, defined on all of $\mathcal{H}$. Prove that $\mathcal{N}(M) \subseteq L^2(\mathbb{R})$. [Note that $L^1(\mathbb{R})$ is not a subspace of $L^2(\mathbb{R})$.]
8. Prove that the nullspace $\mathcal{N}(M)$ of a linear operator M on $\mathcal{H}$ is a subspace of $\mathcal{H}$.
9. Show that if M is a Hermitian operator, then its norm is equal to the absolute value of the upper or lower end of its spectrum, whichever is the larger.
10. Show that the operator defined by the left-hand side of (B.16) is a projection.
11. Let $\mathcal{H}$ be the space $L^2(\mathbb{R})$ of square-integrable functions $f(x)$, and consider the operator α of multiplication by x . Show that every real number x is a quasi-eigenvalue of α as defined by (B.18).
12. Let $\mathcal{H}$ be the space $L^2(\mathbb{R})$ of square-integrable functions $f(x)$, and consider the operator $p \equiv -i\frac{d}{dx}$. Show that every real number p is a quasi-eigenvalue of p as defined by (B.18).

C

Linear Integral Equations

C.1 Fredholm Methods

The integral equations we are dealing with in quantum mechanics are usually Fredholm equations, or they can be transformed into such. A Fredholm equation of the first kind is a homogeneous equation of the form¹

$$f(\mathcal{P}) = \lambda \int d\mathcal{P}' K(\mathcal{P}, \mathcal{P}') f(\mathcal{P}'),$$

which we shall write in the operator form, $f = \lambda \mathbf{K}f$, or

$$(\mathbf{I} - \lambda \mathbf{K})f = 0,$$

and its inhomogeneous version, called a Fredholm equation of the second kind,

$$f(\mathcal{P}) = g(\mathcal{P}) + \lambda \int d\mathcal{P}' K(\mathcal{P}, \mathcal{P}') f(\mathcal{P}'), \quad (\text{C.1})$$

or, in operator form,

$$(\mathbf{I} - \lambda \mathbf{K})f = g.$$

The inhomogeneity g is assumed to be square-integrable, the operator for integral kernel $\mathbf{K}$ is assumed to be compact, and we are looking for solutions f that are also square-integrable, so we are working on the Hilbert space of square-integrable functions.

¹We are taking the variables $\mathcal{P}$ and $\mathcal{P}'$ to be in three-dimensional Euclidean space, but they could be in other spaces.

Compactness of an operator means that it can be arbitrarily closely approximated by an operator of finite rank, i.e., by an operator whose range is of finite dimension and which is therefore representable as a finite-dimensional matrix. [If $\mathbf{K}$ is of finite rank, it can be written as a finite sum of the form $K(x, y) = \sum_{i=1}^N f_i(x)g_i(y)$.] Compact operators share many of the simple properties of finite matrices, particularly the fact that, except for the origin, their spectra consist of point eigenvalues only. Each of these eigenvalues has finite multiplicity, and they accumulate at the origin. Furthermore, if λ is an eigenvalue of $\mathbf{K}$, then λ^* is an eigenvalue of $\mathbf{K}^*$. [If $\mathbf{K}$ is compact, so is $\mathbf{K}^*$.]

If λ is an eigenvalue of $\mathbf{K}$, then for $\lambda = 1/\alpha$ the homogeneous version of (C.1) has a nontrivial solution $h \in L^2$, and since h can be added to any solution of (C.1), the solution of the inhomogeneous equation can, of course, not be unique. But can the inhomogeneous equation still have solutions? This works just as for matrices: suppose h is an eigenfunction of $\mathbf{K}$, $\mathbf{K}h = \alpha h$, and h' is an eigenfunction of $\mathbf{K}^*$ with the eigenvalue α^* . Taking the inner product of the inhomogeneous equation (C.1) with h' then immediately leads to the consequence $\langle h', g \rangle = 0$. Therefore, a necessary condition for the inhomogeneous equation (C.1) to have a solution is that the inhomogeneity g be orthogonal to all solutions of the adjoint homogeneous equation $h' = \lambda^* \mathbf{K}^* h'$. That this condition is also sufficient can be seen by restricting $\mathbf{K}$ to the orthogonal complement of its eigenvalue at $1/\lambda$.

The result of this reasoning is the Fredholm alternative: if the homogeneous version of (C.1) has no nontrivial solution in L^2 , then the inhomogeneous equation (C.1) has a unique solution in L^2 ; if the homogeneous form of (C.1) has a nontrivial solution in L^2 , then (C.1) has a solution in L^2 if and only if g is orthogonal to all solutions of the adjoint homogeneous equation $h' = \lambda^* \mathbf{K}^* h'$.

Assuming, then, that $1/\lambda$ is not an eigenvalue of $\mathbf{K}$, the next question is how to solve (C.1), i.e., how to construct the operator $\mathbf{M}^{-1} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (\mathbf{I} - \lambda \mathbf{K})^{-1}$, in terms of which the solution of (C.1) is given by $f = \mathbf{M}^{-1}g$. The Fredholm method is to proceed just as for finite-dimensional matrices, which is as follows. The matrix $\mathbf{M}^{-1}$ is a matrix $\mathbf{N}$, whose transpose consists of the cofactors of $\mathbf{M}$, divided by the determinant of $\mathbf{M}$, $\Delta^{-1} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \det \mathbf{M}$, so that

$$\mathbf{N}\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{M}\mathbf{N} = \mathbf{I}, \Delta. \quad (\text{C.2})$$

Now both Δ and $\mathbf{N}$ may be expanded in power series in λ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{N} &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \lambda^n \mathbf{N}_n, & \mathbf{N}_0 &= \mathbf{I}, \\ \Delta &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \lambda^n \Delta_n, & \Delta_0 &= 1. \end{aligned} \quad (\text{C.3})$$

For finite-dimensional matrices, of course, these power series terminate and become polynomials. Next use the familiar differentiation rule for determin-

namely,

$$\frac{dN}{dt} = \alpha N \frac{dM}{d\lambda} = -\alpha N K, \quad (C.4)$$

and combine it with (C.2):

$$-1 \pm \alpha N K = -N K + \frac{dN}{d\lambda} M = -K N + M \frac{dN}{d\lambda}.$$

Inserting the expansion (C.3) in this equation, we obtain the recursion relations for $n \geq 1$:

$$N_n = K N_{n-1} - \frac{1}{\alpha} (1 \pm K N_{n-1} - N_{n-1} K - \frac{1}{\alpha} (1 \pm K N_{n-1}), \quad (C.5)$$

and

$$\Delta = 1 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{2^n}{n!} \alpha K N_{n-1}. \quad (C.6)$$

These equations may now be used to construct the inverse in the form

$$M^{-1} = \frac{1}{\Delta} N^{-1/2} \left(1 + \frac{\lambda}{\Delta} Y \right) \quad (C.7)$$

by the series

$$Y = KN = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \lambda^n Y_n,$$

$$Y_n = KY_{n-1} + K\Delta_n - Y_{n-1}K + K\Delta_n, \quad n \geq 0, \quad Y_0 = K, \quad (C.8)$$

$$\Delta = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \lambda^n \Delta_n, \quad \Delta_n = -\frac{1}{n} (Y_{n-1}, \quad \Delta_0 = 1. \quad (C.9)$$

The function $\Delta(\lambda)$ is called the *Prichard determinant*, and Y is called the *first Prichard minor*.

Other expressions for Δ and Y are obtained by defining the determinants

$$\mathfrak{B}_{n+1}(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{F}'; \mathcal{F}_1, \dots, \mathcal{F}_n) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \begin{vmatrix} K(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{F}') & K(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{F}_1) & \dots & K(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{F}_n) \\ K(\mathcal{F}_1, \mathcal{F}') & K(\mathcal{F}_1, \mathcal{F}_1) & \dots & K(\mathcal{F}_1, \mathcal{F}_n) \\ \vdots & \vdots & \dots & \vdots \\ K(\mathcal{F}_n, \mathcal{F}') & K(\mathcal{F}_n, \mathcal{F}_1) & \dots & K(\mathcal{F}_n, \mathcal{F}_n) \end{vmatrix}, \quad (C.10)$$

and in terms of them, we find that

$$Y(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{F}') = K(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{F}') + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n}{n!} \int d\mathcal{F}_1 \dots d\mathcal{F}_n \mathfrak{B}_{n+1}(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{F}'; \mathcal{F}_1, \dots, \mathcal{F}_n), \quad (C.11)$$

as well as

$$\Delta = 1 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-2)^n}{n!} \int d^2r_1 \cdots d^2r_n \kappa_n(r_1, r_2, r_3, \dots, r_n). \quad (C.12)$$

Now we have to answer two questions: 1) What are the requirements on $\mathbf{K}$ for all the quantities in (C.8), (C.9), (C.11), and (C.12) to make sense? 2) Under what conditions do the power series in (C.8), (C.9), (C.11), and (C.12) converge? The answer to the first question is that $\text{tr} \mathbf{K}^n$ has to be finite for $n = 1, 2, \dots$, and that will be assured if $\text{tr} \mathbf{K} = \int d^2r K(r, r)$ is finite, and, in addition, $\mathbf{K}$ is in the Hilbert-Schmidt class, which means $\text{tr} \mathbf{K} \mathbf{K}^\dagger < \infty$, or, more explicitly,

$$\int d^2r d^2r' |K(r, r')|^2 < \infty. \quad (C.13)$$

Being in the Hilbert-Schmidt class ensures that $\mathbf{K}$ is compact; in fact, although it is not a necessary condition for compactness, the Hilbert-Schmidt test is the simplest one to perform, and many of the kernels of integral equations of physical interest pass it. On the other hand, in some important instances the trace of $\mathbf{K}$ fails to exist, so that the first terms in the two Fredholm expansions are not well defined. In that case there is a simple remedy: in (C.11), replace κ_{n+1} by

$$\kappa'_{n+1}(r, r'; r_1, \dots, r_n) \equiv \begin{vmatrix} K(r, r') & K(r, r_1) & \cdots & K(r, r_n) \\ K(r_1, r') & 0 & \cdots & K(r_1, r_n) \\ \vdots & \vdots & \cdots & \vdots \\ K(r_n, r') & K(r_n, r_1) & \cdots & 0 \end{vmatrix}, \quad (C.14)$$

and in (C.12) replace κ_n by

$$\kappa'_n(r_1, \dots, r_n) \equiv \begin{vmatrix} 0 & K(r_1, r_1) & \cdots & K(r_1, r_n) \\ K(r_1, r_1) & 0 & \cdots & K(r_1, r_n) \\ \vdots & \vdots & \cdots & \vdots \\ K(r_n, r_1) & K(r_n, r_1) & \cdots & 0 \end{vmatrix}. \quad (C.15)$$

The n defined modified first Fredholm minor,

$$T(r, r') \equiv K(r, r') + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-2)^n}{n!} \int d^2r_1 \cdots d^2r_n \kappa'_{n+1}(r, r'; r_1, r_2, r_3, \dots, r_n), \quad (C.16)$$

and the modified Fredholm determinant,

$$\Delta'_F(1 - \lambda \mathbf{K}) \equiv \Delta' = 1 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-2)^n}{n!} \int d^2r_1 \cdots d^2r_n \kappa'_n(r_1, r_2, \dots, r_n), \quad (C.17)$$

neither of which contain $K(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{C})$, can be used just like $\mathbf{Y}$ and Δ ; that is,

$$\mathbf{M}^{-1} = \mathbf{I} + \sum_{\mathbf{K}} \mathbf{Y}^{\mathbf{K}}.$$

In fact, it turns out that if $\text{tr} \mathbf{K}$ exists, then

$$\mathbf{Y}^{\mathbf{K}} = \mathbf{Y} e^{i\mathbf{K}}, \quad \Delta^{\mathbf{K}} = \Delta e^{i\mathbf{K}}, \quad (\text{C.15})$$

so that $\mathbf{Y}/\Delta = \mathbf{Y}^{\mathbf{K}}/\Delta^{\mathbf{K}}$ is an identity. On the other hand, since neither $\mathbf{Y}^{\mathbf{K}}$ nor $\Delta^{\mathbf{K}}$ contains $\text{tr} \mathbf{K}$, they will exist even when $\text{tr} \mathbf{K}$ does not.

As for the second question, the series in (C.1), (C.14), and (C.15) converge absolutely for all complex values of λ .² Therefore, the modified Fredholm procedure can be used for all integral kernels in the Hilbert-Schmidt class.

If, for a specific value $\lambda = 1/\alpha$, the Fredholm determinant (or its modified form) vanishes,

$$\det \mathbf{B} = (1/\alpha) \det \mathbf{K} = 0, \quad (\text{C.16})$$

then the homogeneous form of (C.1) has a nontrivial solution; that is to say, α is an eigenvalue of $\mathbf{K}$. In $\Delta(\lambda)$ [or $\Delta^{\mathbf{K}}(\lambda)$] we can look to construct the solution of (C.1) and also to find the eigenvalues of the operator $\mathbf{K}$.

C.2 The Born Series

Another possibility of solving the integral equation (C.1) is to expand the solution in a power series in λ —this is called a *Neumann series* by mathematicians and a *Born series* by physicists—i.e., to expand

$$(\mathbf{I} - \lambda \mathbf{K})^{-1} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \lambda^n \mathbf{K}^n,$$

which amounts to solving (C.1) by iteration. What is the radius of convergence of this power series? If a function $F(z)$ is holomorphic in a neighborhood of the origin and its singularity closest to 0 is λ_0 , then the power-series expansion of F converges absolutely for all $|\lambda| < |\lambda_0|$. Now, it follows from the Fredholm method that the expansion of the resolvent function $\mathbf{Y}$ in $(\mathbf{I} - \lambda \mathbf{K})^{-1}$ has an infinite radius of convergence; therefore, the relevant question here is, what is the radius of convergence R of the power series expansion of $1/\Delta(\lambda)$? Since the zero of Δ that is closest to the origin is $\lambda_0 = 1/\alpha_0$, where α_0 is the eigenvalue of $\mathbf{K}$ with the largest modulus, the answer is simply $R = 1/|\alpha_0|$. In contrast to the Fredholm procedure, which

²We shall not prove this here; for a proof, see, for example, [Newton 89], [Sachs 01/93], where (C.10), (C.12), and (C.15) are also proved.

converges for all values of λ , the Born series therefore always has a finite radius R of convergence, for $|\lambda| > R$ it diverges. While this expansion is simpler than the Fredholm method, its general lack of convergence is a serious drawback.

C.3 Application to the Lippmann-Schwinger Equation

In the case of the Lippmann-Schwinger equation, none of the assumptions made in the general theory given above are satisfied. However, if (4.1.22) is multiplied by $[2M(V(x)/V(x)^{1/2})e^{-ik|x|}]$, one obtains the equation

$$\psi(\vec{x}, \epsilon) = [2M(V(x)/V(x)^{1/2}) + \int d^3r' K(\vec{x}, \epsilon, r')] \psi(\vec{x}, r'), \quad (C.20)$$

where

$$K(\vec{x}, \epsilon, r') \equiv -2M(V(x)/V(x)^{1/2})e^{i\epsilon(x-r')} \frac{e^{i\epsilon(r'-r'') - i\epsilon(r-r'')}}{4\pi(r'-r'')^2} \quad (C.21)$$

and $\psi(\vec{x}) \equiv V(x)/V(x)^{1/2}$. Therefore, if $V \in L^1(\mathbb{R}^3)$, then the inhomogeneous term is square-integrable, and if V is in the Ryllak class, defined by¹

$$\int d^3r d^3r' \frac{V(r)V(r')}{|r-r'|^2} < \infty, \quad (C.22)$$

then K is Hilbert-Schmidt,

$$\text{tr}(KK^*) = \int d^3r d^3r' |K(\vec{x}, \epsilon, r')|^2 < \infty$$

for all k such that $\text{Im } k \geq 0$. On the other hand, $K(\vec{x}, \epsilon, r')$ is infinite, so it is appropriate to apply the modified Fredholm method to solve (C.20) and

$$\Delta k(\epsilon) \equiv \frac{1}{4\pi} [1 - K(\epsilon)]$$

is well defined and an analytic function of k that is holomorphic in the upper half plane (since each term in its Fredholm expansion is analytic in k). As a result, the solution ψ of (C.20) exists, is unique and square-integrable for all $\text{Im } k \geq 0$, except for values of $k = k_n$ such that $\Delta k(k_n) = 0$. For such k_n , the inhomogeneous version of (C.20) has a nontrivial square-integrable solution,

¹For example, if for some $\epsilon, \delta, C > 0$ and all $r, r' \in \mathbb{R}^3$ $V(r) < C(\epsilon + |r|)^{-\epsilon-\delta}$, then V is in the Ryllak class. Prove this.

which, for $\Omega > 0$, leads to a square-integrable solution of (4.122) and thus a bound state. It follows that the zeros of $\Delta(\omega)$ in the upper half plane must be confined to the imaginary axis, so that the bound-state energies $E_n^{(0)} = \hbar^2 k_n^2/2M^*$ are real. For potentials in the $\mathcal{R}_0$ -class, there can be no positive point eigenvalues, and hence no bound states of positive energy.

This page intentionally left blank

D

Special Functions

D.1 Spherical Harmonics

The partial-differential equation (4.8) can be separated by writing $V(\theta, \varphi) = Y(\theta)\psi(\varphi)$, which leads to the equation

$$\frac{\sin \theta}{r} \frac{d}{d\theta} \left(\sin \theta \frac{dY}{d\theta} \right) - \lambda \sin^2 \theta = -\frac{1}{\psi} \frac{d^2 \psi}{d\varphi^2}.$$

From this we conclude that both sides must be equal to a constant m^2 :

$$\frac{d^2 \psi}{d\varphi^2} = -m^2 \psi, \quad (\text{D.1})$$

and

$$\frac{1}{\sin \theta} \frac{d}{d\theta} \left(\sin \theta \frac{dY}{d\theta} \right) - \frac{m^2}{\sin^2 \theta} Y - \lambda Y = 0. \quad (\text{D.2})$$

Equation (D.1) is immediately solved by

$$\psi = e^{im\varphi},$$

and if V is to be single-valued as φ increases by 2π , m must be either zero or a positive or negative integer: $m = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots$ Equation (D.2), on the other hand, can be rewritten in the form of Legendre's differential equation by setting $x = \cos \theta$:

$$\frac{d}{dx} (1 - x^2) \frac{d}{dx} f(x) - \left(h + \frac{m^2}{1 - x^2} \right) f(x) = 0, \quad (\text{D.3})$$

Note that the differential equation (D.3) remains unchanged if x is replaced by $-x$. Therefore, the solutions may be chosen to be either even or odd functions of x .

D.1.1 Legendre polynomials

Consider first the case of $\alpha = 0$. The Frobenius ansatz $f(x) = x^{\sigma} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n$ then leads to the recursion relation¹

$$[(\sigma + n + 1)(\sigma + n + 3) - \lambda]a_{n+1} = [(\sigma + n)(\sigma + n + 1) + \lambda]a_n, \quad (\text{D.4})$$

with the indicial equation $\sigma(\sigma + 2) = 0$, which assures that $a_{-1} = 0$ and the series starts with $n = 0$. Therefore either $\sigma = 0$ or $\sigma = 1$; the choice of $\sigma = 0$ yields an even solution, whose expansion in powers of x^2 begins with the constant term a_0 and

$$a_{n+1} = \frac{n(n+2) + \lambda}{(n+1)(n+3)} a_n, \quad n = 0, 2, \dots,$$

that of $\sigma = 1$ leads to an odd solution, for which

$$a_{n+1} = \frac{(n+2)(n+1) + \lambda}{(n+3)(n+5)} a_n, \quad n = 0, 2, \dots,$$

the power series in x^2 being multiplied by x . For $\alpha \rightarrow \infty$ in both cases, $a_{n+1}/a_n \rightarrow 1$, so that the tail end of the series grows like $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} x^{2k}$, which diverges as $x \rightarrow \pm 1$. In order for the solution to be well-behaved at $x = \pm 1$ the series must therefore be required to terminate and become a polynomial, which can happen only if, for some even integer n either $\lambda = -n(n+1)$ or $\lambda = -(n+2)(n+3)$. So we must have $\lambda = -l(l+1)$, $l = 0, 1, 2, \dots$, and the solution is a polynomial of degree l , called the Legendre polynomial $P_l(x)$, with the parity $(-1)^l$:

$$P_l(-x) = (-1)^l P_l(x). \quad (\text{D.5})$$

They are conventionally normalized by setting $P_l(1) = 1$.

A useful way of generating the Legendre polynomials is by expanding the generating function

$$F(x, y) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - 2xy + y^2}}, \quad (\text{D.6})$$

in a power series in y for $|y| < 1$,

$$F(x, y) = \sum_{l=0}^{\infty} y^l P_l(x). \quad (\text{D.7})$$

¹ Show this.

That the coefficients are indeed the Legendre polynomials is proved by means of the partial differential equation¹

$$\left[(1-x^2) \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} - 2x \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + x \frac{\partial^2}{\partial y^2} \right] T(x, y) = 0. \quad (\text{D.8})$$

Insertion of the expansion (D.7) in (D.8) shows that the coefficient of y^l must satisfy Legendre's equation (D.3) with $m = 0$; furthermore, for $x = 1$ the equation (D.7) must go over into that of $1/(1-y)$, which requires that $P_l(1) = 1$. Note that (D.7), written in a different form, means that for $|x| < |y|$ and $\mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{y} = |x||y| \cos \theta$,

$$\frac{1}{|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y}|} = \sum_{l=0}^{\infty} (x^l/y)^{l+1} P_l(\cos \theta). \quad (\text{D.9})$$

The function T also satisfies the equation²

$$(1-x^2) \frac{\partial T}{\partial x} = xT + x(x-y) \frac{\partial T}{\partial y}, \quad (\text{D.10})$$

from which we obtain by inserting (D.7),

$$(x^2 - 1)P_l' = -lP_{l-1} + lxP_l. \quad (\text{D.11})$$

Similarly, the equation³

$$(1-x^2) \frac{\partial T}{\partial x} = y^2 \frac{\partial T}{\partial y} + yT$$
(D.12)

leads to

$$P_l' = xP_{l-1} + lP_{l+1}. \quad (\text{D.13})$$

Other recursion relations for the Legendre polynomials are

$$(l+1)P_{l+1} = (2l+1)xP_l + lP_{l-1} = 0, \quad (\text{D.14})$$

$$xP_l' - P_{l-1}' = lP_l, \quad (\text{D.15})$$

$$P_{l+1} - P_{l-1} = (2l+1)P_l,$$
(D.16)

the last two of which follow from the others.

The following representation, called *Schlöfli's integral*, sometimes comes in handy:

$$P_l(x) = \frac{1}{\pi} \frac{1}{2^l l!} \int_0^\pi d\theta \frac{(x^2 - 1)^l}{(1 - x \cos \theta)^{l+1}}, \quad (\text{D.17})$$

¹Check this.

²Check this.

³Check this.

where the contour integral in the complex plane runs counter clock wise around the point x . It is proved by inserting it in the left-hand side of (D.2) for $m = 0$ and finding

$$(1 - x^2)P_0'' - 2xP_0' + 0(1)P_0 = \frac{1-i}{2\pi i} \oint \frac{d}{dz} \frac{z^0 - 1^{0+1}}{(1-xz)^{0+1}} dz = 0.$$

Furthermore it is easily seen that for $x = 1$ the right-hand side of (D.17) equals 1.

Equation (D.17) can also be written in the form

$$P_l(x) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \left(\frac{d}{dz} \right)^l \frac{1}{2\pi i} \oint dz \frac{(z^2 - 1)^l}{1 - z},$$

and this integral is readily carried out, with the result

$$P_l(x) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \left(\frac{d}{dz} \right)^l (z^2 - 1)^l, \quad (\text{D.18})$$

which is known as *Rodriguez's formula*. It follows from this formula that $P_l(x)$ has exactly l zeros between -1 and $+1$.¹⁵ An alternative way of writing it is

$$P_l(\cos \theta) = \frac{1-l!}{2\pi i} \left(\frac{d}{d \cos \theta} \right)^l (\sin \theta)^{2l}. \quad (\text{D.19})$$

That two Legendre polynomials of different degrees are mutually orthogonal

$$\int_{-1}^1 dx P_l(x) P_{l'}(x) = 0, \quad l \neq l',$$

follows directly from multiplying Legendre's differential equation (D.2) for P_l by $P_{l'}$, integrating, and subtracting the same equation for $P_{l'}$, multiplied by P_l and integrated, using an integration by parts. The normalization integral is most simply calculated by using the generating function and the previous result:

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{-1}^1 dx \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-2xz+x^2}} &= \frac{1}{x} \log \frac{1+x}{1-x} = 2 \sum_l \frac{x^l}{2l+1} \\ &= \sum_l x^l \int_{-1}^1 dx P_l(x) P_0(x) = \sum_l x^l \int_{-1}^1 dx P_l^2(x), \end{aligned}$$

from which we conclude that

$$\int_{-1}^1 dx P_l(x) P_l(x) = \frac{2}{2l+1} dx. \quad (\text{D.20})$$

¹⁵Whitt.

The Legendre polynomials form an orthogonal basis on the Hilbert space $L^2(-1, 1)$. Furthermore, every polynomial of degree n can be expressed as a linear combination of Legendre polynomials of order $l \leq n$.

D.1.2 Associated Legendre Functions

The associated Legendre functions P_l^m are defined for $0 \leq m \leq l$ in terms of the Legendre polynomials by

$$P_l^m(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (1-x^2)^{m/2} \left(\frac{d}{dx} \right)^m P_l(x), \quad (\text{D.11})$$

or

$$P_l^m(\cos \theta) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (\sin \theta)^m \left(\frac{d}{d \cos \theta} \right)^m P_l(\cos \theta). \quad (\text{D.12})$$

[One of the exercises for this Appendix requires you to show that we must always have $|m| \leq l$, and (D.12) gives a consistent result only in that case.] For $m < 0$, it is convenient to define

$$P_l^{(-m)}(\cos \theta) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (-1)^m \frac{l! - |m|!}{l! + |m|!} P_l^m(\cos \theta), \quad (\text{D.13})$$

so that the following formula, derived from (D.11) and Rodrigues's (D.15),

$$P_l^m(\cos \theta) = \frac{(-1)^{l-m}}{2^l l!} \frac{l! + m!}{l! - m!} (\sin \theta)^{-m} \left(\frac{d}{d \cos \theta} \right)^{l-m} (\sin \theta)^{2l}, \quad (\text{D.14})$$

holds for $-l \leq m \leq l$. The function $P_l^m(x)$ has the parity $(-1)^{l-m}$:

$$P_l^m(-x) = (-1)^{l+m} P_l^m(x), \quad (\text{D.15})$$

D.1.3 Spherical Harmonics

We are now ready to assemble the functions $P_l^m(\cos \theta)$ and $e^{im\phi}$ into spherical harmonics, adopting a convenient phase convention (which varies from one author to another):

$$Y_l^m(\theta) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} Y_l^m(\theta, \phi) = (-1)^m \ell! \left[\frac{2}{4\pi} \frac{l! - m!}{l! + m!} \right]^{1/2} e^{im\phi} P_l^m(\cos \theta), \quad (\text{D.16})$$

where θ and ϕ are the polar angles of the unit vector $\hat{n}$. These functions have the complex conjugation property

$$Y_l^{m*} = (-1)^{l+m} Y_l^{-m}, \quad (\text{D.17})$$

the parity $(-1)^l$

$$Y_l^m(-\hat{n}) = (-1)^l Y_l^m(\hat{n}), \quad (\text{D.18})$$

and they form an orthonormal basis in the Hilbert space of square-integrable functions on the unit sphere:

$$\int d\Omega Y_l^{m*}(\Omega) Y_l^m(\Omega) = \delta_{ll} \delta_{mm}, \quad (D.29)$$

$$\sum_{l=0}^{\infty} \sum_{m=-l}^l Y_l^m(\Omega) Y_l^{m*}(\Omega') = \delta^2(\Omega, \Omega'), \quad (D.30)$$

where $d\Omega$ is the solid-angle element and $\delta^2(\Omega, \Omega')$ is the Dirac delta-function on the unit sphere such that

$$\int d\Omega' \delta^2(\Omega, \Omega') f(\Omega') = f(\Omega).$$

The meaning of the symbol in (D.30) is that every square-integrable function $f(\Omega)$ on the unit sphere can be expanded in the form

$$f(\Omega) = \sum_{l=0}^{\infty} \sum_{m=-l}^l a_l^m Y_l^m(\Omega), \quad \text{where } a_l^m = \int d\Omega Y_l^{m*}(\Omega) f(\Omega). \quad (D.31)$$

The Legendre polynomial $P_l(\hat{\Omega} \cdot \hat{\Omega}') = P_l(\cos\theta)$, where θ is the angle between $\hat{\Omega}$ and $\hat{\Omega}'$, can be expressed in terms of spherical harmonics of $\hat{\Omega}$ and $\hat{\Omega}'$ of the same order:

$$P_l(\hat{\Omega} \cdot \hat{\Omega}') = \sum_{m=-l}^l Y_l^m(\Omega) Y_l^{m*}(\Omega') = (2l+1) P_l(\hat{\Omega} \cdot \hat{\Omega}'), \quad (D.32)$$

which implies that any well-behaved rotationally invariant function of $\hat{\Omega}$ and $\hat{\Omega}'$ can be expanded in terms of spherical harmonics of equal m -value:

$$f(\hat{\Omega}, \hat{\Omega}') = \sum_l \sum_{m=-l}^l a_l Y_l^m(\Omega) Y_l^{m*}(\Omega'),$$

with coefficients a_l that are independent of m .

D.1.4 Zonal harmonics

Instead of forming complex spherical harmonics, it is also possible to assemble real solutions of Eq. (D.6). This is done by choosing as the two linearly independent solutions of (D.1), $p = \sin(m\varphi)$ and $p = \cos(m\varphi)$ rather than $p = e^{im\varphi}$. The resulting real functions

$$Y_l^{m0}(\theta, \varphi) = \sqrt{\frac{2l+1}{2\pi} \frac{(l-m)!}{(l+m)!}} \sin(m\varphi) P_l^m(\cos\theta), \quad (D.33)$$

$$Y_l^{m0}(\theta, \varphi) = \sqrt{\frac{2l+1}{2\pi} \frac{(l-m)!}{(l+m)!}} \cos(m\varphi) P_l^m(\cos\theta), \quad (D.34)$$

are called *solid harmonics*. Their solid surfaces are circular cones about the z -axis (the zeros of the Legendre functions) and planes through the z -axis (the zeros of the trigonometric functions).

D.2 Spherical Bessel Functions

Dividing Eq. (D.10) by x^2 and setting for $\frac{d}{dx}$ a transform it into the simpler equation

$$u'' - \frac{1}{2} \frac{d^2}{dx^2} u + u = 0, \quad (\text{D.22})$$

which, upon defining $U(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} x^{-1/2} u(x)$, turns into Bessel's equation,

$$x^2 U'' + xU' + [x^2 - \frac{1}{4}]U = 0.$$

Therefore, the radial functions that solve (D.20) for $\lambda = -(\frac{1}{2}) + 1$ differ by a factor of $x^{-1/2}$ from Bessel functions of half-integral order. Since $x = 0$ is a regular singular point of this differential equation, there is a regular and an irregular solution. The regular solution is conventionally defined in terms of a Bessel function by

$$j_\ell(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2x}} J_{\ell+1/2}(x) \quad (\text{D.23})$$

and is called a *spherical Bessel function*. Two kinds of irregular solutions are the *spherical Neumann function*,

$$n_\ell(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (-1)^{\ell+1} \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2x}} J_{-\ell-1/2}(x), \quad (\text{D.24})$$

and the *spherical Hankel function*,

$$h_\ell^{(1)}(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2x}} H_{\ell+1/2}^{(1)}(x) = j_\ell(x) + in_\ell(x). \quad (\text{D.25})$$

The functions j_ℓ and n_ℓ are both real and of the general form $P(x)\sin x + Q(x)\cos x$, where P and Q are polynomials in $1/x$, while $h_\ell^{(2)}(x)$ has the form of a polynomial in $1/x$ times e^{ix} such that $h_\ell^{(2)}(ix)$ is real.

The solutions of (D.20) differ from the functions defined above by a factor of x , and they are called *Siccardi-Bessel*, *Siccardi-Neumann*, and *Siccardi-Hankel functions*, respectively:

$$u_\ell(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} x j_\ell(x),$$

$$v_\ell(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} x n_\ell(x),$$

and

$$w_1^{(j+1)}(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \zeta(-1)^{j+1} x^j w_1(x) = \zeta(-1)^{j+1} [u(x) - \sin(x)],$$

making the Frobenius ansatz $u(x) = x^{\sigma} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n$ near the origin to solve (D.34), we obtain² the indicial equation $\sigma(\sigma-1) = \zeta(\zeta+1)$, whose solutions are $\sigma = \zeta+1$ and $\sigma = -\zeta$. Thus the regular solution goes as $x^{\zeta+1}$ near the origin, and the irregular solution goes as $x^{-\zeta}$. More precisely,

$$w_1(x) = \frac{x^{\zeta+1}}{(\zeta+1)!} + \dots, \quad (\text{D.35})$$

where $(\zeta+1)! \stackrel{\text{def}}{=}} 1 \cdot 2 \cdot 3 \cdots (\zeta+1)$, and

$$u(x) = -(\zeta-1)\zeta x^{-\zeta} + \dots \quad (\text{D.36})$$

The function $w_1(x)$ has the parity $(-1)^{\zeta+1}$ and $u_1(x)$ has the parity $(-1)^{\zeta}$. [The functions $x^{\zeta+1}u_1(x)$ and $x^{\zeta}w_1(x)$ can be expanded in power series in x^{ζ} .] The asymptotic behavior of these functions as $x \rightarrow \infty$ is as follows:

$$w_0(x) \propto \sin(x - \tfrac{1}{2}\pi\zeta), \quad u_0(x) \propto -\cos(x - \tfrac{1}{2}\pi\zeta), \quad w_1^{(j+1)}(x) \propto e^{i(j+1)\pi\zeta}. \quad (\text{D.41})$$

For $\zeta = 0$ these functions are simply $w_0 = \sin x$, $u_0(x) = -\cos x$, and $w_0(x) = e^{i\pi}$.

D.5 Hermite Polynomials

The Hermite polynomials satisfy the differential equation on the real axis, $-\infty < x < \infty$,

$$H'' - 2xH' + (2n-1)H = 0. \quad (\text{D.42})$$

In order for a solution of this equation not to grow like e^{x^2} at infinity (and thereby overwhelm the factor $e^{-x^2/2}$ needed to form a solution of the Schrödinger equation for a simple harmonic oscillator), it must be an odd integer, $2n = 2m+1$, $m = 0, 1, \dots$, in which case H is a polynomial of degree m and with the parity of m .³ [Note that (D.42) is invariant under reflection, so you expect its solutions to be odd or even functions.] They can be defined by the generating function

$$S(x, z) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} e^{-z^2/4 + xz} = \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \frac{z^m}{m!} H_m(x). \quad (\text{D.43})$$

²Show it.

³Prove these assertions.

To show that the coefficients B_n satisfy (D.42), insert the expansion in the differential equation

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial x} \mathcal{F} = 2x\mathcal{F},$$

comparing coefficients leads to the conclusion that

$$B'_n(x) = 2nB_{n-1}(x), \quad (\text{D.43})$$

whereas by inserting in the equation

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial x} \mathcal{F} = 2(x - 1)\mathcal{F}$$

leads to

$$B_{n+1}(x) = 2x B_n(x) - 2n B_{n-1}(x). \quad (\text{D.44})$$

Differentiation of (D.44) and use of (D.43) then leads to (D.42). Furthermore, since

$$\frac{\partial^n}{\partial x^n} \mathcal{F} = (2)^n \mathcal{F},$$

the expansion of which in powers of x starts with x^n , we conclude that $(d/dx)^n B_m(x) = 0$ for $m < n$, so that the coefficient $B_m(x)$ must be a polynomial of order m . The normalization of the Hermite polynomials is fixed by (D.43).

Equation (D.40) implies that $B_{n+1}(x) = e^{1/2}(x - d/dx)e^{-1/2} B_n(x)$, and therefore

$$B_{n+1}(x) = \left(2x - \frac{d}{dx}\right) B_n(x), \quad (\text{D.45})$$

which can also be written in the form

$$B_{n+1}(x) = -e^{x^2} \frac{d}{dx} \left(e^{-x^2} B_n(x) \right), \quad (\text{D.47})$$

implying that

$$B_n(x) = (-1)^n e^{x^2} \left(\frac{d}{dx} \right)^n e^{-x^2}. \quad (\text{D.48})$$

The first few of these polynomials are given by

$$\begin{aligned} B_0 &= 1 \\ B_1 &= 2x \\ B_2 &= 4x^2 - 2. \end{aligned}$$

The Hermite polynomials are mutually orthogonal with the weight function e^{-x^2} . This can be proved by means of the generating function (D.45):

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dx e^{-x^2} (2n x e^{-x^2})^{(1)} (2m x e^{-x^2})^{(2)} = -e^{x^2} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dx e^{-(x^2-4n)(x^2-4m)} (x e^{-x^2})^{(1)} (x e^{-x^2})^{(2)}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= e^{bx^2} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dx e^{-x^2} = e^{bx^2} \sqrt{\pi} = \sqrt{\pi} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(2b)^n}{n!} \\
 &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(2b)^n}{n!} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dx e^{-x^2} H_n(x) H_n(x),
 \end{aligned}$$

from which we conclude that

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dx e^{-x^2} H_n(x) H_m(x) = \delta_{nm} \sqrt{\pi} 2^n n!. \quad (D.46)$$

In a similar manner we find that

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dx x^2 e^{-x^2} H_n^2(x) = \sqrt{\pi} 2^n n! (n + \frac{1}{2}). \quad (D.47)$$

The value of $H_n(x)$ at the origin can also be obtained from the generating function, and we find that

$$H_n(0) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for odd } n \\ (-1)^{n/2} n! / (n/2)! & \text{for even } n \end{cases} \quad (D.48)$$

Finally, the Hermite polynomials form a complete set in the sense

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{\alpha(x) - \frac{1}{2}(x^2 - x'^2)}{\sqrt{\pi} 2^n n!} H_n(x) H_n(x') = \delta(x - x'), \quad (D.49)$$

meaning that for all $f \in L^2(\mathbb{R})$,

$$f(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi} 2^n n!} e^{-x^2/2} c_n H_n(x), \quad (D.50)$$

where

$$c_n = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dx f(x) e^{-x^2/2} H_n(x), \quad (D.51)$$

D.4 The Hypergeometric Function

The hypergeometric function is defined by the hypergeometric series

$$F(a, b, c, x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} 1 + \frac{ab}{c}x + \frac{a(a+1)b(b+1)}{2c(c+1)}x^2 + \dots \quad (D.52)$$

and it satisfies the differential equation

$$x(1-x)F'' + [c - (a+b+1)x]F' - abF = 0. \quad (D.53)$$

Setting $x = x_1/k$ and $F(x) = G(x)$, we obtain

$$x \left(1 - \frac{x}{k}\right) G'' + \left(x - \frac{n+k+1}{k}x\right) G' - nG = 0,$$

which, in the limit as $k \rightarrow \infty$, goes over into the equation

$$xG'' + (x - n)G' - nG = 0, \quad (D.37)$$

whose regular solution

$$\begin{aligned} F(x|x) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} F(x_1/k, n, \frac{x}{k}) = 1 + \frac{n}{x}x + \frac{n(n+1)}{2x(x+1)}x^2 + \dots \\ &= \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \frac{\Gamma(n+1)\Gamma(j+1)}{\Gamma(n-j+1)\Gamma(j+1)} \frac{x^j}{j!} \end{aligned} \quad (D.38)$$

is called the *coefficient hypergeometric function*.

The asymptotic behavior of this function for large x is as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} F(x|x) &\approx \Gamma(n) \left\{ \frac{1}{\Gamma(n)} e^{x+(n-1)\log x} \left(1 + \frac{(1-n)(n-1)}{x} + \dots \right) \right. \\ &\quad \left. + \frac{1}{\Gamma(n-1)} e^{x+\log(n-1)} \left(1 + \frac{n(n-1+1)}{x} + \dots \right) \right\} \quad (D.39) \end{aligned}$$

D.5 Laguerre Polynomials

The Laguerre polynomials are defined by the generating function

$$G(x, z) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \frac{e^{-xz/(1-z)}}{1-z} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{z^n}{n!} L_n(x), \quad (D.40)$$

which shows that

$$L_0(x) = 1. \quad (D.41)$$

Since G satisfies the partial differential equation⁴

$$\left(x \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + (1-x) \frac{\partial}{\partial z}\right) G + x \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} G = 0,$$

the coefficients solve the differential equation

$$x \frac{d^2}{dx^2} L_n(x) + (1-x) \frac{d}{dx} L_n(x) + n L_n(x) = 0, \quad (D.42)$$

⁴Check this.

which has a regular singular point at $x = 0$. The generating function leads to the following recurrence relations,

$$L_n' = nL_{n-1}' - nL_{n-2}, \quad (D.65)$$

$$L_{n+1} = (2n+1-x)L_n - n^2L_{n-1}, \quad (D.66)$$

and they can be explicitly expressed in the form

$$L_n(x) = e^x \frac{d^n}{dx^n} (e^{-x} x^n) = \left(\frac{d}{dx} + 1 \right)^n x^n, \quad (D.67)$$

which shows them to be polynomials of order n .

The associated Laguerre polynomials² are defined by

$$L_n^\alpha(x) = (-1)^n \frac{d^n}{dx^n} L_{n+\alpha}(x), \quad (D.68)$$

which shows that they are also polynomials of degree n , and they satisfy the differential equation (sometimes called Lopelex's equation)

$$x \frac{d^2}{dx^2} L_n^\alpha(x) + (n+1-x) \frac{d}{dx} L_n^\alpha(x) + n L_n^\alpha(x) = 0. \quad (D.69)$$

They are special cases of confluent hypergeometric functions defined by (D.58).

$$L_n^\alpha(x) = \frac{\Gamma(n+\alpha)!}{n! \alpha!} J(-n, n+\alpha+1|x), \quad (D.69)$$

and their generating function is

$$\frac{e^{-xt}(1-t)^{-\alpha-1}}{(1-t)^{n+1}} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{t^n}{(n+\alpha)!} L_n^\alpha(x), \quad (D.70)$$

from which their normalization integral can be obtained as

$$\int_0^\infty dx x^\alpha e^{-x} L_n^\alpha(x) L_m^\alpha(x) = \delta_{nm} \frac{[n! \Gamma(n+\alpha)!]}{n!}. \quad (D.71)$$

When n is not an integer, these functions are still defined by (D.68), but they are not polynomials, and the integrals in (D.71) diverge.

²Some authors use $(-1)^n L_{n+\alpha}^\alpha$ to denote the polynomials here denoted by L_n^α .

D.6 Problems and Exercises

1. Derive the recursion relation (D.4) for the coefficients in the power series expansion $f(x) = x^n \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k x^k$ of a solution of Legendre's differential equation for $m = 0$.
2. Let $f(x)$ be a solution of Legendre's equation for $m > 0$ and define $g(x) = (1 - x^2)^{-m/2} f(x)$. Find the differential equation satisfied by g , expand it in the form $g(x) = x^n \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} b_k x^k$, and find the recursion relation for the coefficients b_k . Show thereby again that in order for g to be continuous at $x = \pm 1$, the expansion must break up, and this happens if and only if l is an integer such that $l \geq m$.
3. Show that the function (D.5) satisfies the partial differential equation (D.6) and that, if $T(x, y)$ is expanded in a power series in y , the coefficients, as functions of x , must satisfy Legendre's equation for $m = 0$.
4. Show that $T(x, y)$ satisfies the partial differential equation (D.8) and use this equation to derive (D.11).
5. Show that $T(x, y)$ satisfies the partial differential equation (D.10) and use it to derive (D.13).
6. Show that the function P_l^m defined by (D.21) satisfies Legendre's equation. (Hint: Use Schläfli's integral representation.)
7. Let P_l be the l th Legendre polynomial. Show that $L^2 P_l(x^2 - x'^2) = L^2 P_l(x^2 - x'^2)$ and $(L + L') P_l(x^2 - x'^2) = 0$. Use these two equations to prove (D.32).
8. Show that the Racah's polynomial $P_n(x)$ has n real zeros. (Hint: Use (D.47).)
9. Show that

$$P_n(x) = \left(2x - \frac{d}{dx}\right)^n 1.$$
10. Prove (D.50).
11. Prove (D.51).
12. Prove that the associated Laguerre polynomial $L_n^{\alpha}(x)$ has n positive zeros.

This page intentionally left blank

E

Group Representations

E.1 Groups

A group G is a collection of mathematical objects, such as transformations of a physical system or of a reference frame, for which an associative binary operation called multiplication is defined [i.e., $(AB)C = A(BC)$] that satisfies the following axioms:

1. The collection is closed, i.e., if $A \in G$ and $B \in G$ then $AB \in G$.
2. G contains a unit element E such that for all $A \in G$, $EA = AE = A$.
3. For every $A \in G$ there is a unique inverse A^{-1} such that $A^{-1}A = AA^{-1} = E$.

There is no general requirement for multiplication to be commutative, $AB = BA$; if all elements of a group G commute, G is called Abelian. The number of elements in G is called its order. Any subset of a group G that forms a group by itself (with the multiplication law inherited from G) is called a subgroup; its order must be a divisor of the order of G (Lagrange's theorem). Two groups are called isomorphic if there is a one-to-one mapping between them that preserves multiplication—i.e., if $A \mapsto A'$ and $B \mapsto B'$, then $AB \mapsto A'B'$. If the mapping is not one-to-one, so that more than one element of G is mapped on the same element of G' , they are called homomorphic.

The set of permutations of n objects is an example of a group of finite order; this group is called S_n , and its order is $n!$. Cayley's theorem asserts that every group of order n is isomorphic to a subgroup of S_n .

If $A, X \in G$, then the element XAX^{-1} is called *conjugate* to A ; $XAX^{-1} = A$. Conjugation is an equivalence relation: it is reflexive ($A \sim A$), transitive (if $A \sim B$ and $B \sim C$, then $A \sim C$), and symmetric (if $A \sim B$, then $B \sim A$). Elements of a group that are all conjugate to one another form a *class*. The unit element E is, of course, in a class by itself, and the whole group G can be divided into disjoint classes. A subgroup that contains all the elements of its elements is called an *invariant*, or *normal*, or *self-conjugate* subgroup, or also a *normal divisor*.

The group S_3 of permutations of three objects may serve as an example. Calling $E = (123)$, $A = (132)$, $B = (213)$, $C = (121)$, $D = (231)$, $F = (312)$, where $(123)(ab) = (aib)$, etc., the multiplication table of the group is as follows:

E	A	B	C	D	F
A	E	D	F	B	C
B	F	E	C	A	D
C	D	F	E	A	B
D	C	A	B	F	E
F	B	C	A	E	D

This group contains three classes: E ; D, F ; A, B, C and four subgroups, all of which are Abelian: E, A ; E, B ; E, C ; E, D, F , the last being self-conjugate.¹

If G_1 and G_2 are two groups of orders n_1 and n_2 with the elements $E_1, A_1, B_1, \dots$ and $E_2, A_2, B_2, \dots$, respectively, we can form the direct product group $G_1 \times G_2$ of order $n_1 n_2$ with the elements $A_1 \times B_2, A_1 \times A_2, A_1 \times E_2, \dots, E_1 \times E_2, \dots$ and the obvious multiplication law. An example would be the permutations of pairs $\{ab, cd\}$ of three balls and four cubes, such that

$$\{ab, cd\} \rightarrow \{ack, dby\} = (132) \times (234),$$

etc. Then $E_1 \times E_2, E_1 \times A_2, E_1 \times B_2, \dots$ is isomorphic to G_1 , and $E_1 \times E_2, A_1 \times E_2, B_1 \times E_2, \dots$ is isomorphic to G_2 , so that both G_1 and G_2 are (normal) subgroups of $G_1 \times G_2$, and each element in $G_1 \times G_2$ is uniquely expressible as a product of elements in G_1 and G_2 : $A_1 \times B_2 = (A_1 \times E_2)(E_1 \times B_2)$. Furthermore, the elements in the two subgroups G_1 and G_2 commute. Conversely, if G_1 and G_2 are two mutually commuting subgroups of G , such that each element of G can be uniquely written as a product of an element of G_1 and an element of G_2 , then we say that $G = G_1 \times G_2$.

¹ Here all of this is an overkill.

E.2 Representations

A representation $\Gamma(G)$ of the group G is a mapping of the elements g of G to a set of square matrices $\Gamma(g)$, such that group multiplication corresponds to matrix multiplication. The n -dimensional linear vector space in which the $n \times n$ matrices act is called the carrier space of the representation.

There are two kinds of representations: (a) *isomorphic* or *faithful* ones, i.e., those that are one-to-one, so that each matrix corresponds to one and only one group element, and (b) *homomorphic* or *unfaithful* ones, in which the same matrix may represent more than one group element. It is customary to assume that all the matrices are non-singular and $\Gamma(E) = \mathbf{1}$, where $\mathbf{1}$ is the unit matrix, so that $\Gamma(g^{-1}) = \Gamma^{-1}(g)$. If a representation is unfaithful, more than one group element must be mapped into $\mathbf{1}$.² Every group has the trivial (unfaithful) representation that associates each element with the unit matrix.

Here is our first important theorem:

Theorem E.1 *A matrix representation (using non-singular matrices) of a group of finite order can always be made unitary by a non-singular transformation.*

To prove this, call the matrices in the representation A_g and define the Hermitian matrix

$$B \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \sum_g A_g A_g^\dagger,$$

where the summation runs over all the elements of the group. The matrix B can be diagonalized by a unitary matrix U :

$$U B U^{-1} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} b = \sum_g (U A_g U^{-1})(U A_g^\dagger U^{-1}) = \sum_g A'_g A'_g{}^\dagger, \quad A'_g \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} U A_g U^{-1},$$

so that the diagonal elements are given by

$$b_{ii} = \sum_g \sum_j |A'_{ij}|^2 b_{ii} = \sum_g \sum_j |A'_{ij}|^2 > 0.$$

Because $\det A'_g = \det A_g \neq 0$. Therefore, we can take the inverse of the square root:

$$1 = b^{-1/2} \sum_g A'_g A'_g{}^\dagger b^{-1/2}.$$

The new matrices

$$A''_g \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} b^{-1/2} A'_g b^{1/2} = b^{-1/2} U A_g U^{-1} b^{-1/2} U^{-1}$$

are now unitary:

$$\begin{aligned} A''_g A''_g{}^\dagger &= b^{-1/2} A'_g A'_g{}^\dagger b^{-1/2} = b^{-1/2} \sum_j A'_{gj} A'_{gj}{}^\dagger A'_{gj} A'_{gj}{}^\dagger b^{-1/2} \\ &= b^{-1/2} \sum_j |A'_{gj}|^2 A'_g A'_g{}^\dagger b^{-1/2} = b^{-1/2} \sum_j A'_{gj} A'_{gj}{}^\dagger b^{-1/2} = \mathbf{1}. \end{aligned}$$

²Prove this.

because $(\mathcal{D}_g^{-1})^T$ runs through the entire group.

□

Any two representations that are related by a canonical transformation, $D^g(D_g^*) = SD(S)^{-1}$ for all $S \in \mathcal{G}$, are called *equivalent*, written as $D^g \sim D_g$, so the theorem says that every representation is equivalent to a unitary one. We may therefore restrict ourselves always to unitary representations.

Suppose now you take two representations of a group $\mathcal{G}$, with matrices A_g and B_g , and form the new matrices

$$\begin{pmatrix} A_g & 0 \\ 0 & B_g \end{pmatrix}$$

with the blocks A_g and B_g on the main diagonal, thus forming a new representation. If this construction is followed by a canonical transformation, its origin is no longer apparent.² A representation that can be transformed by a canonical transformation (the same for all the group elements) into such block form (the same kinds of blocks for all the elements) is called *fully reducible*³; otherwise it is *irreducible*. You can see the significance of this distinction: irreducible representations are the only new ones; a fully reducible representation is just equivalent to one placed together out of old ones by a direct sum.

For example, the group S_3 , whose multiplication table was given above, has the six-dimensional representation that assigns the unit matrix to the elements E, D , and F , while A, B , and C are represented by the matrix

$$G = \begin{pmatrix} -1/2 & -\sqrt{3}/2 \\ \sqrt{3}/2 & 1/2 \end{pmatrix}.$$

The Hermitian matrix G can be diagonalized by a canonical transformation, which, of course, leaves the unit matrix representing E, D , and F unchanged. Therefore, this representation is reducible, since the eigenvalues of G are ± 1 ; it is made up of two one-dimensional representations, one of which is the trivial representation that assigns the number 1 to all six group elements, and the other is $E, D, F = 1$ and $A, B, C = -1$.

Now, think about the carrier space S of a given representation $\Gamma(\mathcal{G})$, and let U be a subspace of S . If for every vector $u \in U$ and every $D_g \in \Gamma(\mathcal{G})$ we have $D_g u \in U$, then U is called an *invariant subspace* of S for the group $\mathcal{G}$. The question of whether Γ is reducible is equivalent to the question whether its carrier space has any invariant subspaces for $\mathcal{G}$. If so, we can find an orthogonal basis such that each basis vector lies entirely in one invariant

²Note that a similar means rearrangement of rows and corresponding columns can be accomplished by a canonical transformation.

³An n -dimensional representation is called *reducible* if it is equivalent to one in which all the matrices have an $m \times m$, $m < n$, block of zeros in the lower left-hand corner. A reducible unitary representation is necessarily fully reducible.

subspaces, i.e., different subsets of these basis vectors span different invariant subspaces; the matrices in Γ are then in block form and the representation has been reduced.¹

The following lemma is a useful tool for deciding whether a given representation is irreducible.

Lemma 8.1 *A matrix M that commutes with all the matrices in a given irreducible representation Γ of a group is necessarily a multiple of the unit matrix; and conversely, if the only matrix that commutes with all the matrices in Γ is a multiple of the unit matrix, Γ is irreducible.*

Proof. If the representation is reducible, then there certainly exists a matrix other than I that commutes with all the matrices in Γ . When the representation is in block form, we need only take a diagonal matrix that has different constants on the diagonal for each of the blocks (i.e., it is a different multiple of the unit matrix for each of the blocks separately). Therefore, if the only matrix that commutes with them all is of the form cI , then the representation is irreducible. To prove the converse, i.e., that if the representation Γ is irreducible, then there exists no matrix other than a multiple of the unit matrix that commutes with all the matrices in Γ , we assume that the matrix M that commutes with all the matrices in Γ can be diagonalized by a canonical transformation S . (First, make the representation unitary, in this form it follows that both M and $M^\dagger$ commute with all the matrices, and therefore so do the Hermitian matrices $M + M^\dagger$ and $i(M - M^\dagger)$, which can be diagonalized.) Now apply the canonical transformation S to all the matrices in Γ (i.e., that a diagonal matrix M commutes with another matrix only if the latter is in block form, with blocks corresponding to the eigenvalues of M that are equal). Therefore all the matrices in the representation must now be in block form, and the representation is reducible, unless all the eigenvalues of M are the same, which makes M a multiple of the unit matrix. $\square$

Lemma 8.2 can now be used to prove the following important proposition, known as Schur's lemma:

Lemma 8.2 *Let $\Gamma^{(1)}(R)$ and $\Gamma^{(2)}(R)$ be the matrices of two irreducible representations of G of dimensions n_1 and n_2 , respectively, and let M be a rectangular matrix so that for all $R \in G$, $\Gamma^{(1)}(R)M = M\Gamma^{(2)}(R)$. If $n_1 \neq n_2$, then $M = 0$; if $n_1 = n_2$, either $M = 0$ or else it has an inverse, in which case the two representations are equivalent.*

To prove this, assume, without loss of generality, that the representations are unitary. It then follows from $M^\dagger\Gamma^{(1)}(R) = \Gamma^{(2)}(R)M^\dagger$ that $M^\dagger\Gamma^{(1)\dagger}(R) = \Gamma^{(2)\dagger}(R)M^\dagger$, so that $M^\dagger[\Gamma^{(1)}(R^{-1})] = [\Gamma^{(2)}(R^{-1})M^\dagger]$ and therefore for all $R \in G$, $M^\dagger[\Gamma^{(1)}(R) =$

¹A matrix that leaves a subspace invariant does not necessarily leave its orthogonal complement invariant. So it is not necessarily in block form, or fully reduced. However, a unitary matrix does, that is why for a unitary representation, reducible implies fully reducible.

$D^{(1)}(p)M^2$, which implies $MM^2D^{(1)}(R) = MD^{(1)}(p)M^2 = D^{(1)}(R)M^2M^2$. Therefore, by Lemma E.5, $MM^2 = cI$. Hence, if $n_1 = n_2$, so that M^2 is a square matrix, either $c = 0$, in which case $\sum_{\lambda \in \Lambda} (M_{\lambda\lambda})^2 = 0$ and hence $M^2 = 0$, or $c \neq 0$, in which case $M^{2-1} = \frac{1}{c}M^2$. If $n_1 \neq n_2$, say, $n_1 > n_2$, we make M square by filling up the square matrix with zeros on the right, thereby forming the square matrix N , so that $ND^{(1)} = MMD^{(1)} = cI$. But now $\det N = 0$, so it has no inverse, which makes it impossible that $c \neq 0$. It follows that $c = 0$ and hence $M = N = 0$. $\square$

The following orthogonality theorem plays an important role in the construction of irreducible representations.

Theorem E.6 Let $D^{(\lambda)}(R)$ and $D^{(\mu)}(R)$ be matrices of two inequivalent irreducible representations of a group G of order h . Then

$$\sum_{R \in G} D_{\lambda\mu}^{(\lambda)}(R) D_{\mu\lambda}^{(\mu)}(R^{-1}) = 0$$

for all $\mu, \nu, \lambda, \kappa$, and

$$\sum_{R \in G} D_{\lambda\mu}^{(\lambda)}(R) D_{\mu\lambda}^{(\lambda)}(R^{-1}) = \delta_{\lambda\mu} \delta_{\mu\lambda} \delta_{\lambda\mu} / n_{\lambda},$$

where n_{λ} is the dimension of the representation $D^{(\lambda)}$.

Of course, if the representation is unitary, then $D_{\lambda\mu}(R^{-1}) = (D^{-1})_{\mu\lambda}(R) = D_{\mu\lambda}^*(R)$.

Proof. Define the following matrix

$$M = \frac{1}{h} \sum_{R \in G} D^{(\lambda)}(p) R D^{(\mu)}(R^{-1}),$$

where R is an arbitrary $n_1 \times n_2$ matrix. Now

$$MD^{(1)}(p) = \sum_{R \in G} D^{(\lambda)}(R) R D^{(\mu)}(R^{-1}) n_1 = \sum_{R \in G} D^{(\lambda)}(p) R D^{(\mu)}(R^{-1}) = D^{(\lambda)}(p) M.$$

Therefore by Schur's lemma if $n_1 \neq n_2$, then $M = 0$; choosing $R_{\lambda\lambda} = \delta_{\lambda\mu} \delta_{\lambda\mu}$, now yields the first equation of the theorem. If $n_1 = n_2$, then, since the two representations are assumed to be inequivalent, again $M = 0$ and we get the first equation. If we take the two representations to be equal, as in the second equation, then, by Lemma E.5(i), M must be a multiple of the unit matrix, and the same choice of R as before yields

$$M_{\lambda\lambda} = \sum_{R \in G} D_{\lambda\mu}^{(\lambda)}(R) D_{\mu\lambda}^{(\lambda)}(R^{-1}) = c \delta_{\lambda\mu} \delta_{\lambda\mu},$$

the trace of which gives

$$c \delta_{\lambda\mu} \delta_{\lambda\mu} = \sum_{\lambda} M_{\lambda\lambda} = \sum_{\lambda} D_{\lambda\lambda}^{(\lambda)}(R) D_{\lambda\lambda}^{(\lambda)}(R^{-1}) = \sum_{\lambda} D_{\lambda\lambda}^{(\lambda)}(R) = h \delta_{\lambda\mu}.$$

E.1.1 Character

The character of a group element in a given representation is the trace of the matrix representing it: $\chi_i(R) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{tr}[\Gamma_i(R)]$. By the character of a representation we mean the collection of the numbers that are the traces of all the matrices. Note that the character is a class function, since $\chi_i(ABR^{-1}) = \text{tr}[\Gamma_i(ABR^{-1})] = \text{tr}[\Gamma_i(R)\Gamma_i(B)R^{-1}\Gamma_i(A)] = \text{tr}[\Gamma_i(R)] = \chi_i(R)$. For similar reasons, equivalent representations have the same characters. The character of an irreducible representation is called *primitive*.

Taking traces of the two formulas in Theorem E.4 leads to the orthogonality theorem for primitive characters:

Theorem E.5

$$\sum_C \sqrt{N_C/k} \chi^{(i)*}(C) \sqrt{N_C/k} \chi^{(j)}(C) = \delta_{ij},$$

where the sum runs over the classes of the group, N_C is the number of elements in the class C , $\chi^{(i)}$ and $\chi^{(j)}$ denote the characters of irreducible representations i and j , respectively, and k is the order of the group.

(This theorem implies, incidentally, that for all but the trivial representation, $\sum_C \chi(C) = 0$.)¹ We may therefore form an k -dimensional complex linear vector space, in which the different primitive characters form mutually orthogonal vectors; in fact, the dimensionality of the space need only be equal to the number of classes in the group. Hence it follows immediately that the number of irreducible representations of a given group G cannot be larger than the number of classes in G . Indeed, the following, stronger proposition holds. (Its proof will be given a little later, when we have all the needed tools.)

Theorem E.6 *The number of inequivalent irreducible representations of a group G is equal to the number of classes in G .*

Since this theorem, together with Theorem E.5, implies that the primitive characters form an orthogonal basis in a linear vector space whose dimensionality equals the number of classes in G , it is equivalent to the statement that

$$\sum_i \chi^{(i)*}(C) \chi^{(i)}(C') = \delta_{CC'} k/N_C, \quad (\text{E.7})$$

(where the sum runs over all the inequivalent irreducible representations, that is, over all the primitive characters) which says they form a complete set. Indeed, Theorem E.5 and Eq. (E.7) together are equivalent to Theorem E.6.

¹Why?

Theorem E.5 allows us to determine how many times each irreducible representation $\Gamma^{(i)}$ of a group $\mathcal{G}$ is contained in a given representation Γ , which is written in the form

$$\Gamma = k_1\Gamma^{(1)} \oplus k_2\Gamma^{(2)} \oplus \dots = \bigoplus_i k_i\Gamma^{(i)},$$

meaning that when Γ is reduced to block form, the block corresponding to the irreducible representation $\Gamma^{(i)}$ appears k_i times. Taking the trace of this implies $\chi(R) = \sum_i k_i\chi^{(i)}(R)$, multiplication of which by $\chi^{(j)*}(R)$ and summing over R then yields, according to Theorem E.5,

$$k_i = \frac{1}{h} \sum_R k_i\chi(R)\chi^{(i)*}(R). \quad (\text{E.6})$$

It follows from this that the number of times an individual irreducible representation is contained in a given representation is independent of the way the reduction was performed; it is unique. The theorem also implies that a necessary and sufficient condition for two irreducible representations to be equivalent is that their characters are the same. (Clearly, if they are equivalent, their characters are the same; if they are inequivalent, the theorem says that their characters are orthogonal.) The same then follows for all representations, since their content of irreducibles must be unique.

Suppose now that $\Gamma = \bigoplus_i k_i\Gamma^{(i)}$, so that $\chi(R) = \sum_i k_i\chi^{(i)}(R)$, and from the orthogonality theorem,

$$\sum_{R \in \mathcal{G}} |\chi(R)|^2 = \sum_R k_i k_j \chi^{(i)}(R)\chi^{(j)*}(R) = \sum_i k_i^2 \sum_R |\chi^{(i)}(R)|^2 = h \sum_i k_i^2, \quad (\text{E.7})$$

which immediately implies that h for a given representation $\sum_{R \in \mathcal{G}} |\chi(R)|^2 > h$, then it must be reducible.

The regular representation is another useful tool. It is defined by the following matrices⁷

$$D_{\text{reg}}(R_i) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } R_i^{-1}R_j = R_i \\ 0 & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases} \quad (\text{E.8})$$

What this amounts to is writing down the $h \times h$ multiplication table for the group, but with the inverse of the elements in the left column. For the

⁷ Prove that this defines a representation.

group S_3 this looks as follows:

	E	A	B	C	D	F
E^{-1}	E	A	B	C	D	F
A^{-1}	A	E	D	F	B	C
B^{-1}	B	F	E	D	C	A
C^{-1}	C	D	F	E	A	B
D^{-1}	D	E	C	A	E	D
F^{-1}	F	C	A	B	F	E

The 6×6 matrix representing A then has the entry 1 whenever A appears and zeros everywhere else, etc.

How many times does the regular representation contain the i^{th} irreducible representation? We see that $k b_i = \sum_{j \in G} \chi^{(i)}(A) \chi^{(j)}(B)$, but for the regular representation $\chi^{(j)}(B) = 0$ unless $B = E$, in which case $\chi^{(j)}(E) = k$ and $\chi^{(j)}(E) = n_i$. Therefore $k b_i = n_i$: the regular representation contains each irreducible representation $\Gamma^{(i)}$ as many times as the dimensionality of $\Gamma^{(i)}$. Since the left-hand side of the equation $\chi^{(i)}(C) = \sum_{j \in G} n_j \chi^{(j)}(C)$ vanishes unless $C = E$, in which case it equals k , we have the general formula:

$$\sum_i n_i \chi^{(i)}(E) = \begin{cases} k & \text{if } C = E \\ 0 & \text{if } C \neq E \end{cases}. \quad (1.5)$$

Using (1.5) for the regular representation leads to the result that $A^2 = k \sum_i A_i^2 = k \sum_i n_i^2$, which implies another general formula,

$$\sum_i n_i^2 = k. \quad (1.6)$$

We are now ready to prove Theorem 1.1.

Proof of Theorem 1.1. In any given irreducible representation of a given group G with the matrices $\Gamma(g)$, form the following character:

$$\chi(C) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \sum_{g \in C} \text{tr} \Gamma(g), \quad (1.7)$$

C being a class in G . Multiplying two of them, we obtain

$$\chi(C) \chi(D) = \sum_{g \in C} \sum_{h \in D} \text{tr} \Gamma(g) \text{tr} \Gamma(h) = \sum_{g \in C} \sum_{h \in D} \text{tr} \Gamma(g h), \quad (1.8)$$

where gh runs through whole classes in G and F (in, with the result that

$$\chi(C) \chi(D) = \sum_{g \in F} n_{CD} \chi(g), \quad (1.9)$$

in which the coefficients n_{CD} are non-negative integers that simply count the number of times the class C^2 appears in the sum.

Note that for any $A \in G$

$$\chi(C) \chi(A) = \sum_{g \in C} \text{tr} \Gamma(g) \chi(A) = \chi(A) \sum_{g \in C} \text{tr} \Gamma(A^{-1} g A) = \chi(A) \sum_{g \in C} \text{tr} \Gamma(g) = \chi(A) \chi(C),$$

Since $\chi(C)$ commutes with all the matrices in the group, we conclude by Lemma 8.1 that

$$\chi(C) = \alpha \mathbf{1},$$

for some α which yields $\chi(C) = N_C \chi(C) = \alpha n$, where n is the dimension of the representation and N_C is the number of elements in the class C ; thus, $\alpha = N_C \chi(C)/n$,

$$\chi(C) = \frac{N_C}{n} \chi(C) \mathbf{1},$$

so that, according to (8.6)

$$\chi(C) \chi(C') = \frac{N_C N_{C'}}{n^2} \chi(C) \chi(C') \mathbf{1} = \sum_{C''} a_{CC'}(C'') \frac{N_{C''}}{n} \chi(C'') \mathbf{1},$$

or, for the ℓ^2 irreducible representation,

$$\sum_{C''} a_{CC'}(C'') \frac{N_{C''}}{N_C N_{C'}} \chi^{(C'')}(C'') = \chi^{(C'')}(C) \chi^{(C'')}(C').$$

Summing this formula over i , that is, over all the irreducible representations, and using (8.10), we obtain

$$\sum_i \chi^{(C'')}(C) \chi^{(C'')}(C') = \sum_{C''} \frac{N_{C''}}{N_C N_{C'}} \frac{N_{C''}}{N_C N_{C'}} \sum_i a_{CC'}(C'') \chi^{(C'')}(C'') = \frac{N_{C''}}{N_C N_{C'}} \frac{N_{C''}}{N_C N_{C'}} \mathbf{1}.$$

Now, if A and B are in the same class C , then A^{-1} and B^{-1} are also in the same class, which we'll call C^{-1} ; so we have

$$\chi(C) \chi(C^{-1}) = a_{CC^{-1}} \chi(C) \chi(C^{-1}) + \dots$$

But you can get B only if $B = B^{-1}$ in (8.10), and that happens N_C times; therefore

$$a_{CC^{-1}} \mathbf{1} = N_C = N_{C^{-1}} \mathbf{1}.$$

On the other hand, if $C' \neq C^{-1}$, then we will never get B , so that

$$a_{CC'} \mathbf{1} = 0 \quad \text{for} \quad C' \neq C^{-1}.$$

The fact that $\chi(C^{-1}) = \chi^*(C)$ then leads to (8.11), and therefore proves the theorem. $\square$

8.3.3 Real representations

Here we want to study conditions under which a given irreducible representation Γ of a group G , if it is not already real, is equivalent to a real representation, i.e., when there exists a canonical transformation that makes all the matrices in Γ real. A look at the character of Γ allows us to make an immediate distinction: if all the characters are real, then $\Gamma = \Gamma^*$; if they are not, $\Gamma \neq \Gamma^*$. Clearly then, if Γ is equivalent to a real representation, its character has to be real. We can therefore distinguish between three classes of representations:

1. The characters are all real, so that $\Gamma = \Gamma^*$; in that case, either
 - a) Γ is equivalent to a real representation, in which event the representation is called of type *I* (or "integer"), or else
 - b) Γ is not equivalent to a real representation, in which event it is designated of type *II* (or "half-integer").

2. The characters are not all real (so that $\Gamma \neq \bar{\Gamma}$), in which case the representation is called of type 2.

Lemma 11.7 *A given irreducible representation Γ is of type 1 if and only if there exists a symmetric matrix N such that the matrix K defined by*

$$K \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \sum_{g \in G} \Gamma(g) X \Gamma(g) \quad (11.14)$$

is $\neq 0$; it is of type 2 if and only if there exists an anti-symmetric X such that $K \neq 0$; it is of type 3, if for all X , $K = 0$. If a representation is of odd dimension and all its characters are real, it is necessarily of type 1.

Proof. Assume that Γ is irreducible and unitary, and suppose we have case (i), so that $\bar{\Gamma} = \Gamma^* = \Gamma^{-1}$. There then exists a matrix matrix M such that for all $g \in G$, $M \Gamma(g) M^{-1} = \Gamma^*(g) = \Gamma^{-1}(g)$, or

$$\bar{\Gamma}(g) M \Gamma(g) = M.$$

The transpose of this equation reads

$$\bar{\Gamma}(g) M^T \Gamma(g) = M^T,$$

and its inverse reads

$$\Gamma^{-1}(g) M^{-1} \bar{\Gamma}^{-1}(g) = M^{-1}.$$

Multiplying these two equations leads to $M^{-1} \bar{M} = \Gamma^{-1}(g) M^{-1} \bar{M} \Gamma(g)$, or

$$\Gamma(g) M^{-1} \bar{M} = M^{-1} \bar{M} \Gamma(g).$$

Because Γ is irreducible, Schur's lemma implies that $M^{-1} \bar{M}$ must be a multiple of the unit matrix, or

$$\bar{M} = \alpha M,$$

where α equals to $M = \alpha \bar{M} = \alpha^2 M$, and therefore $\alpha^2 = 1$, and M must be either symmetric or anti-symmetric. Since $\det M = \det \bar{M}$ and $\det(-M) = (-1)^n \det M$ if the dimensionality of M is n , $\alpha = -1$ can occur only for a representation of even dimension; if the dimension of Γ is odd, M must be symmetric.

Suppose now that $\alpha = +1$, so that M is symmetric and unitary; in that case the representation Γ is of type 1. To prove this, we define the matrix symmetric matrix N such that $N^2 = M^2$, and we have $N^T \Gamma(g) N^{-1} = \Gamma^*(g)$, which implies

$$\Gamma^*(g) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} M \Gamma(g) N^{-1} = M^{-1} \Gamma^*(g) N = M^{-1} \Gamma^*(g) M^{-1} = (M \Gamma(g) M^{-1})^* = \Gamma^*(g).$$

The representation $\bar{\Gamma} = \Gamma$ is then real and the representation is of type 1. Moreover, because $\bar{\Gamma}$ and Γ are both unitary, so is $\bar{\Gamma}^*$; therefore $\bar{\Gamma}$ is real, orthogonal.

For any given irreducible, unitary representation Γ , we now define a matrix K by (11.14), where X is an arbitrary square matrix. We then have

$$\Gamma^*(g) X = \Gamma(g)^{-1} X = \sum_{h \in G} \bar{\Gamma}(h) X^{-1} M \Gamma(h) = \sum_{h \in G} \bar{\Gamma}(h) M \Gamma(h) X^{-1} = M \Gamma(h)$$

for all h in the group. In case (ii), i.e., if the representation is of type 1, it follows by Schur's lemma that $K = 0$, no matter what X is, whereas in case (i), i.e., if the

¹Prove that such an N always exists.

representation is of type 1 or 2, R is invertible and contains T^* with T in the sense that

$$T^*(R) = RT(R)^{-1}.$$

Similarly, we find $T^*(R)R = R^*T(R)$, and hence $T(R)R^* = R^*T^*(R)$, from which it follows that

$$R^*RT(R) = T(R)R^*R.$$

In case (i) we can therefore conclude from Schur's lemma that, unless $R = 0$, we must have $R^*R = cI$ for some $c > 0$. We can then multiply R by $c^{-1/2}$ so that the new R is unitary, $R^{-1} = R^*$. The matrix R defined by (E.10) therefore has precisely the property assumed above for the matrix M . Thus, if the representation is of type 2, R must vanish for all N if for some choice of N , R fails to vanish and is symmetric; the representation is of type 1.

Conversely, assume that the representation Γ is of type 1, so that there exists unitary transformation T that makes it real:

$$T\varphi = T\Gamma(N)T^{-1}, \quad T^*\varphi = T^*\Gamma(N).$$

In that case

$$R = \sum_{N \in G} T\varphi(N)T\varphi(N) = T^{-1} \sum_{N \in G} T\varphi(N)T^*T\varphi(N)T^{-1},$$

and

$$R^* \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} T^*RT = \sum_{N \in G} T^*\varphi(N)T^*\varphi(N),$$

where $T \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} T^*T$. The new R has the same symmetry as R : if $R = cR$, then $R^* = T^*RT = c^*RT^* = cR^*$. Stationed out in detail, we have, according to Theorem E.4, if h is the order of the group and n the dimension of the representation,

$$R_{\mu\nu} = \sum_{\alpha \in G} \sum_{\lambda \in G} T_{\lambda\mu}(\alpha)T_{\lambda\nu}(\beta)T_{\mu\lambda}(\beta) = \frac{h}{n} \sum_{\alpha \in G} T_{\mu\mu}(\alpha)T_{\nu\nu}(\alpha) = \frac{h}{n} \delta_{\mu\nu}T_{\mu\mu}(\alpha),$$

which implies that R^* is symmetric, such as is R . Therefore, a necessary and sufficient condition for the representation to be of type 1 is that there exist a matrix R such the R of (E.10) fails to vanish and is symmetric. Moreover, if one such R exists, every matrix R leads to a R that either vanishes or is symmetric.

The formula (E.10) shows that the symmetric part, $\frac{1}{2}(R + R^*)$ of R is produced by the symmetric part of T , and its anti-symmetric part is produced by the anti-symmetric part of T . Since, for any given R , R is either symmetric or anti-symmetric, we need to test only symmetric matrices R if and only if there exists a symmetric R that leads to a $R \neq 0$. Γ is of type 1. $\square$

E.3.3 Kronecker products

Suppose that the matrices $D^{(\alpha)}(R)$ form the d^α irreducible representation of a group G . We can then form the Kronecker product (also called the direct product) of two of these representations, $D^{(\alpha)}(R) \otimes D^{(\beta)}(R) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} D^{(\alpha)}(R) \otimes D^{(\beta)}(R)$, defined by²

$$D_{\mu\nu}^{(\alpha, \beta)}(R) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} D_{\mu\lambda}^{(\alpha)}(R) D_{\nu\sigma}^{(\beta)}(R).$$

²Prove that this is a representation of the group.

(Here the rows are numbered by the two indices μ, ν and the columns by the two indices λ, κ . They can, of course, be renumbered by single indices, but that would complicate the notation.) This representation will, in general, be reducible and contain the $\Gamma^{(k)}$ irreducible representation $k_{\mu\lambda}$ times, so that we have the Clebsch-Gordan series,

$$\Gamma^{(\mu) \otimes \Gamma^{(\nu)} \supset \Gamma^{(\lambda)} = \bigoplus_{\lambda} k_{\mu\lambda} \Gamma^{(\lambda)}, \quad (\text{E.11})$$

or, for the matrices,

$$[\Gamma^{(\mu) \otimes \Gamma^{(\nu)}}]_{\lambda\kappa} = \bigoplus_{\lambda} k_{\mu\lambda} [\Gamma^{(\lambda)}]_{\lambda\kappa}.$$

The coefficients $k_{\mu\lambda}$ are easily found by the use of Theorem E.3,

$$k_{\mu\lambda} = \frac{1}{h} \sum_{\alpha\beta\gamma} \chi^{(\lambda)}(R) \chi^{(\mu) \otimes \Gamma^{(\nu)}}(R) \chi^{(\mu) \otimes \Gamma^{(\nu)}}(R). \quad (\text{E.12})$$

For example, the number of times the trivial representation is contained in $\Gamma^{(\mu) \otimes \Gamma^{(\nu)}}$ is

$$k_{00} = \frac{1}{h} \sum_{\alpha\beta\gamma} \chi^{(0)}(R) \chi^{(\mu) \otimes \Gamma^{(\nu)}}(R),$$

which is zero unless $\Gamma^{(\mu)}$ and $\Gamma^{(\nu)}$ are equivalent, in which case it equals 1.

Note that if $k_{\mu\lambda}$ is defined to be the number of times $\Gamma^{(\lambda)}$ is contained in $\Gamma^{(\mu)} \otimes \Gamma^{(\nu)}$, i.e.,

$$\Gamma^{(\mu)} \otimes \Gamma^{(\nu)} = \bigoplus_{\lambda} k_{\mu\lambda} \Gamma^{(\lambda)},$$

then $k_{\mu\lambda}$ is completely symmetric in all its indices:

$$k_{\mu\lambda} = \frac{1}{h} \sum_{\alpha\beta\gamma} \chi^{(\lambda)}(R) \chi^{(\mu) \otimes \Gamma^{(\nu)}}(R) \chi^{(\mu) \otimes \Gamma^{(\nu)}}(R). \quad (\text{E.13})$$

E.3.4 Carrier spaces

Let us look at all this from the perspective of the carrier space. Suppose that the group G , such as a group of symmetry of a physical system, is implemented by unitary operations $\{\Omega_R\}_{R \in G}$ on a Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$, so that $\Omega_R \Omega_S = \Omega_{RS}$, and the unitary matrices $[\Gamma^{(k)}]_{\lambda\kappa}$ form the k^{th} irreducible representation of G . Define a set of operators

$$\mathbf{P}_{\mu\nu}^{(\lambda)} \equiv \frac{1}{h} \sum_{\alpha\beta\gamma} \Gamma_{\mu\alpha}^{(\lambda)}(R) \Omega_{R\alpha\beta}, \quad (\text{E.14})$$

and you find,¹⁶ by the use of Theorem E.4, that

$$\mathbf{P}_{\mu\nu}^{(R)} \mathbf{P}_{\mu\nu}^{(R)} = \delta_{\mu\nu} \delta_{\mu\nu} \mathbf{P}_{\mu\nu}^{(R)}. \quad (E.15)$$

The operators

$$\mathbf{P}_\nu^{(R)} \equiv \mathbf{P}_{\mu\nu}^{(R)} = \frac{1}{h} \sum_{\mu \in G} \mathcal{D}_{\mu\nu}^{(R)}(R) \mathbf{O}_\mu \quad (E.16)$$

then have the property

$$\mathbf{P}_\nu^{(R)} \mathbf{P}_\nu^{(R)} = \delta_{\nu\nu} \delta_{\nu\nu} \mathbf{P}_\nu^{(R)}. \quad (E.17)$$

Furthermore,

$$\mathbf{P}_{\mu\nu}^{(R)} = \frac{1}{h} \sum_{\lambda \in G} \mathcal{D}_{\nu\lambda}^{(R)}(R^{-1}) \mathbf{O}_{\lambda\mu} = \mathbf{P}_{\nu\mu}^{(R)},$$

as a result of which, the $\mathbf{P}_\nu^{(R)}$ are Hermitian; they are orthogonal projection onto mutually orthogonal subspaces. We also find

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{O}_\nu \mathbf{P}_{\mu\nu}^{(R)} &= \frac{1}{h} \sum_{\mu \in G} \mathcal{D}_{\mu\nu}^{(R)}(R) \mathbf{O}_{\mu\nu} = \frac{1}{h} \sum_{\mu \in G} \mathcal{D}_{\mu\nu}^{(R)}(R^{-1}R) \mathbf{O}_\mu \\ &= \frac{1}{h} \sum_{\mu \in G} \mathcal{D}_{\mu\nu}^{(R)}(R^{-1}) \sum_{\lambda \in G} \mathcal{D}_{\mu\lambda}^{(R)}(R) \mathbf{O}_\lambda \\ &= \sum_{\lambda \in G} \mathcal{D}_{\nu\lambda}^{(R)}(R) \mathbf{P}_{\lambda\nu}^{(R)}. \end{aligned} \quad (E.18)$$

You take any normalized eigenvector of $\mathbf{P}_\nu^{(R)2/3}$ so that

$$\mathbf{P}_\nu^{(R)} \psi_\nu^{(R)} = \psi_\nu^{(R)},$$

and form $n_\nu - 1$ partners of $\psi_\nu^{(R)}$

$$\psi_\nu^{(R)} \equiv \mathbf{P}_{\mu\nu}^{(R)} \psi_\nu^{(R)}.$$

This is defined orthonormal¹⁷ set of n_ν vectors $(\psi_\nu^{(R)})_{\mu=1, \dots, n_\nu}$ that has the property

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{O}_\nu \psi_\nu^{(R)} &= \mathbf{O}_\nu \mathbf{P}_{\mu\nu}^{(R)} \psi_\nu^{(R)} = \sum_{\lambda \in G} \mathcal{D}_{\nu\lambda}^{(R)}(R) \mathbf{P}_{\lambda\nu}^{(R)} \psi_\nu^{(R)} \\ &= \sum_{\lambda \in G} \mathcal{D}_{\nu\lambda}^{(R)}(R) \psi_\lambda^{(R)}. \end{aligned}$$

¹⁶Prove this.

¹⁷There generally is more than one; that is, the range of the projection $\mathbf{P}_\nu^{(R)}$ is generally not one-dimensional.

¹⁸Prove that they are orthonormal.

Herein under the group G , expressed in terms of the operators $\{O_{\alpha}\}_{\alpha \in \mathfrak{g}}$, the $\psi_{\alpha}^{(k)}$ transform among themselves: they form an invariant subspace, which is the carrier space of the k^{th} irreducible representation. One says that $\psi_{\alpha}^{(k)}$ belongs to the k^{th} row of the k^{th} irreducible representation. Each of the partners $\psi_{\alpha}^{(k)}$ of the original $\psi_{\alpha}^{(k)}$ has the property $\mathbf{P}_{\alpha}^{(k)}\psi_{\alpha}^{(k)} = \psi_{\alpha}^{(k)}$,¹³ so it does not matter which of these vectors you start with. Furthermore, if $\mathbf{P}_{\alpha}^{(k)}\psi_{\alpha}^{(k)} = \psi_{\alpha}^{(k)}$, then

$$\psi_{\alpha}^{(k)} = \mathbf{P}_{\alpha}^{(k)}\psi_{\alpha}^{(k)} = \mathbf{P}_{\alpha}^{(k)}\mathbf{P}_{\alpha}^{(k)}\psi_{\alpha}^{(k)} = \mathbf{P}_{\alpha}^{(k)}\psi_{\alpha}^{(k)}.$$

Hence $\mathbf{P}_{\alpha}^{(k)}\psi_{\alpha}^{(k)} = \psi_{\alpha}^{(k)}$ is a necessary and sufficient condition for $\psi_{\alpha}^{(k)}$ to have $n_k - 1$ partners such that $\psi_{\alpha}^{(k)} = \mathbf{P}_{\alpha}^{(k)}\psi_{\alpha}^{(k)}$, and they belong to the k^{th} row of the k^{th} irreducible representation. Define $\mathcal{R}^{(k)} \equiv \mathcal{R}$ to be the n_k -dimensional invariant subspace spanned by all the partners of one of the $\psi_{\alpha}^{(k)}$. (The label $\mathcal{R}$ refers to the fact that the range of the projection $\mathbf{P}_{\alpha}^{(k)}$ may not be one-dimensional, and there are other, possibly infinitely many, subspaces of $\mathcal{R}_{\alpha}^{(k)}$ with which we could have started the procedure of this paragraph.)

Note that whenever a set of vectors in $\mathcal{R}$ transform among themselves, so that

$$O_{\alpha}v_{\alpha} = \sum_{\beta} D_{\alpha\beta}(\mathcal{R})v_{\beta},$$

the matrices $D_{\alpha\beta}(\mathcal{R})$ form a representation of the group G .¹⁴

Finally, we define the projection operators

$$\mathbf{P}^{(k)} \equiv \frac{1}{n_k} \sum_{\alpha} \mathbf{P}_{\alpha}^{(k)} = \frac{n_k}{k} \sum_{\alpha \in \mathfrak{g}} \chi^{(k)}(\alpha) O_{\alpha} = \frac{n_k}{k} \sum_{\gamma \in \mathfrak{g}} \chi^{(k)}(\gamma) C(\gamma), \quad (\text{E.18})$$

where $C(\gamma) \equiv \sum_{\alpha \in \mathfrak{g}} O_{\alpha}$ is the analogue on $\mathcal{R}$ of the matrix $C(\gamma)$ defined in (E.7). The operator $\mathbf{P}^{(k)}$ is idempotent, $\mathbf{P}^{(k)} = \mathbf{P}^{(k)2}$ and such that if $\psi^{(k)} = \sum_{\alpha} v_{\alpha} \psi_{\alpha}^{(k)}$, then $\mathbf{P}^{(k)}\psi^{(k)} = \psi^{(k)}$.¹⁵ So any vector in an invariant subspace $\mathcal{R}^{(k)}$ belonging to the k^{th} irreducible representation is an eigenvector of $\mathbf{P}^{(k)}$. One says that $\psi^{(k)}$ belongs to the k^{th} irreducible representation. The space $\mathcal{R}^{(k)}$ on which $\mathbf{P}^{(k)}$ projects is the direct sum $\mathcal{R}^{(k)} = \bigoplus_{\alpha} \mathcal{R}^{(k),\alpha}$.

Lemma E.8 The mutually orthogonal¹⁷ projection operators $\mathbf{P}^{(k)}$ add up to the unit operator; i.e., their eigenvectors span the entire Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$.

¹³Prove this.

¹⁴Prove this.

¹⁵Prove this.

¹⁶Prove this.

¹⁷Prove that they are mutually orthogonal.

Proof. We have

$$\sum_i P^{(i)} = \frac{1}{g} \sum_{\alpha \in G} O_{\alpha} \sum_i \chi_i^{(i)}(R) = \frac{1}{g} \sum_i O_{\alpha} \chi_i^{(i)}(R),$$

where $\chi_i^{(i)}$ is the character of the regular representation. But $\chi^{(i)}(R) = 0$ unless $R = E$, in which case $\chi^{(i)}(E) = 1$. Therefore

$$\sum_i P^{(i)} = \alpha E = 1,$$

where 1 is the unit operator on $\mathcal{H}$. $\square$

This lemma implies that $\mathcal{H}$ can be decomposed into a direct sum of mutually orthogonal subspaces $\mathcal{H}^{(i)}$, each belonging to one of the irreducible representations of G , and each $\mathcal{H}^{(i)}$ in turn can be decomposed into a direct sum of (generally infinitely many) invariant subspaces $\mathcal{H}^{(i,\mu)}$ of dimension n_i (the dimension of the i^{th} irreducible representation) such that $\mathcal{H}^{(i,\mu)}$ is spanned by n_i mutually orthogonal vectors that are all partners of one another, and every vector $\Phi \in \mathcal{H}$ can be written as a superposition of the form $\Phi = \sum_{i,\mu} a_{i,\mu} \Phi_i(w_{i,\mu})$, where $\Phi_i(w_{i,\mu}) \in \mathcal{H}^{(i,\mu)}$ and $\Phi_i(w_{i,\mu})$ belongs to the μ^{th} row of the i^{th} irreducible representation, all the vectors $\Phi_i(w_{i,\mu})$, $\mu = 1, \dots, n_i$ with fixed i and w_i being partners of one another.

Suppose now that the Hermitian operator $\mathbf{H}$ on $\mathcal{H}$ is invariant under the group G , i.e., it commutes with all the operators O_R , $R \in G$, and hence also with all the projections $P_{\mu}^{(i)}$. There then exists a complete orthonormal set of eigenfunctions or quasi-eigenfunctions $\{E_i(w_{i,\mu})\}$ labeled by the eigenvalues or quasi-eigenvalues E of $\mathbf{H}$ and by the row μ of the i^{th} irreducible representation of G . What is more, if $\mathbf{H}E_i(w_{i,\mu}) = E\{E_i(w_{i,\mu})\}$, then also

$$\begin{aligned} E\{E_i(w_{i,\mu})\} &= EP_{\mu}^{(i)}\{E_i(w_{i,\mu})\} = P_{\mu}^{(i)}\mathbf{H}\{E_i(w_{i,\mu})\} = \mathbf{H}P_{\mu}^{(i)}\{E_i(w_{i,\mu})\} \\ &= \mathbf{H}\{E_i(w_{i,\mu})\}, \end{aligned}$$

so that all the partners of a row of an irreducible representation have the same eigenvalue or quasi-eigenvalue E and thus E must have the degeneracy of the dimension of that representation. Moreover, according to (B.12),

$$\begin{aligned} \langle E_i(w_{i,\mu}) | \mathbf{H} | E_j(w_{j,\nu}) \rangle &= \langle E_i(w_{i,\mu}) | P_{\mu}^{(i)} \mathbf{H} P_{\nu}^{(j)} | E_j(w_{j,\nu}) \rangle \\ &= \langle E_i(w_{i,\mu}) | \mathbf{H} P_{\mu}^{(i)} P_{\nu}^{(j)} | E_j(w_{j,\nu}) \rangle = 0 \end{aligned}$$

if $i \neq j$. As a result, and in view of Lemma B.3, we have

Theorem B.6 Let the Hermitian operator $\mathbf{H}$ on a Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ be invariant under a group G of transformations whose irreducible representations have dimensions $n_1, n_2, \dots$. Then $\mathcal{H}$ is spanned by a set of orthonormal vectors $\{E_i(w_{i,\mu})\}$, such that $\{E_i(w_{i,\mu})\}$ belongs to the μ^{th} row of the i^{th} irreducible representation of G , E is an eigenvalue of $\mathbf{H}$, $\mathbf{H}|E_i(w_{i,\mu})\rangle =$

$E(E, i, n, \mu)$, and for each fixed i , the values of E are equal for all $1 \leq \mu \leq n_i$; thus, the eigenvalue is n_i -fold degenerate. Furthermore, all matrix elements of $\mathbf{H}$ connecting two different irreducible representations vanish. (If $\mathbf{H}$ is a pseudo-observable, the wording of this statement has to be changed accordingly.)

If there is no further degeneracy, i.e., if any two n -labelled eigenfunctions $|E, i, n, \mu\rangle$ and $|E', i, n, \mu\rangle$ with $i \neq i'$ have $E \neq E'$, then the degeneracy is called *normal*; any additional degeneracy is called *accidental*.

E.2.1 Clebsch-Gordan coefficients

If the normalized vectors belonging to the i^{th} irreducible representation of a group G are $\{v_i^{(n)}\}_{n=1, \dots, n_i}$, and we wish to decompose the vectors $v_i^{(n)} \otimes v_j^{(m)}$ in the carrier space of the Kronecker product of the i^{th} and the j^{th} irreducible representation into a sum of vectors that belong to individual runs of irreducible representations, the i^{th} representation will appear k_{ij} times, and we have

$$v_i^{(n)} \otimes v_j^{(m)} = \sum_{\mu=1}^{k_{ij}} \sum_{\nu=1}^{n_{ij\mu}} c(\mu, \nu) \otimes v_i^{(n)} v_j^{(m)}, \quad n = 1, \dots, k_{ij}, \quad (\text{E.20})$$

where the $c(\mu, \nu) \otimes v_i v_j$ are called *Clebsch-Gordan coefficients*. Since clearly there must be as many basis functions of one kind as of the other, it follows that

$$\sum_j k_{ij} n_j = n_i n_j.$$

Assuming the irreducible representations to be unitary, so that the basis functions are orthonormal, the matrix of Clebsch-Gordan coefficients is unitary,

$$\sum_{\nu=1}^{n_{ij\mu}} c(\mu, \nu) \otimes v_i v_j c(\mu', \nu) \otimes v_i' v_j' = \delta_{\mu\mu'} \delta_{ijij'}, \quad (\text{E.21})$$

as well as

$$\sum_{\mu=1}^{k_{ij}} c(\mu, \nu) \otimes v_i v_j c(\mu, \nu') \otimes v_i' v_j' = \delta_{\nu\nu'} \delta_{ijij'}, \quad (\text{E.22})$$

where

$$c(\mu, \nu) \otimes v_i v_j = c(\mu, \nu) \otimes v_i v_j^*,$$

and the relation (E.20) can be inverted to read

$$v_i^{(n)} v_j^{(m)} = \sum_{\mu=1}^{k_{ij}} c(\mu, \nu) \otimes v_i v_j v_i^{(n)} v_j^{(m)}. \quad (\text{E.23})$$

Since $v_i^{(n)} v_j^{(m)} = |v_i^{(n)}, 0_{ij} v_j^{(m)}\rangle$, these relations lead to corresponding relations between the Kronecker products of the representation matrices,

namely,

$$D_{\mu\lambda}^{(\alpha)}(R) D_{\nu\tau}^{(\beta)}(R) = \sum_{\alpha'\tau'} \langle \alpha, \beta | \alpha' \tau' \rangle D_{\alpha'\tau'}^{(\alpha')} (R) \langle \alpha' \tau' | \lambda, \tau \rangle. \quad (E.24)$$

This equation implies that the Clebsch-Gordan coefficients make up the matrix that reduces the Kronecker product to block form. However, if some of the blocks are equal, so that the same irreducible representation occurs more than once, the reduction is ambiguous. We have assumed in these formulas that the various repetitions $\psi_a^{(\alpha)}$ transform equally, and not under equivalent but unequal representations. The complicating issue of repetitions of the same irreducible representation becomes simplified for groups that are simply reducible, which cover all the groups of physical interest now. Here is the definition of a simply reducible group: 1) for each $R \in \mathcal{G}$ there exists an $A \in \mathcal{G}$ such that $R^{-1} = AR A^{-1}$; in other words, every member of the group is in the same class as its inverse; 2) the Kronecker product representation of two irreducible representations contains no irreducible representation more than once. The first of these implies that all the primitive characters are real.²⁹

Use of Theorem E.4 together with (E.24) leads to

$$\sum_{\lambda\tau} D_{\mu\lambda}^{(\alpha)}(R) D_{\nu\lambda}^{(\beta)}(R) D_{\alpha\tau}^{(\alpha')} (R) = \frac{h}{n_{\alpha}} \sum_{\tau} \langle \alpha, \beta | \alpha' \tau \rangle \langle \alpha' \tau | \lambda, \tau \rangle \lambda, \tau \rangle, \quad (E.25)$$

and for simply reducible groups this reduces to the following:

$$\sum_{\lambda\tau} D_{\mu\lambda}^{(\alpha)}(R) D_{\nu\lambda}^{(\beta)}(R) D_{\alpha\tau}^{(\alpha')} (R) = \frac{h}{n_{\alpha}} \langle \alpha, \beta | \alpha' \rangle \langle \alpha' | \lambda, \tau \rangle, \quad (E.26)$$

where the index τ now no longer appears. If the question is reduced to how many times does the Kronecker product contain $\overline{\psi}^{(\alpha)}$, which we shall indicate by a bar over the $\bar{\alpha}$, and we lump the factor $\sqrt{h_{\alpha}}$ into the CG-coefficient, the results are called *3j-symbols*:

$$[\bar{\alpha}\beta\gamma] \alpha_1 \alpha_2 \alpha_3 \alpha_4^{-1/2} \equiv \begin{pmatrix} \bar{\alpha} & \beta & \gamma \\ \alpha_1 & \alpha_2 & \alpha_3 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (E.27)$$

It follows that

$$\sum_{\tau} D_{\alpha_1\tau}^{(\bar{\alpha})}(\overline{R}) D_{\alpha_2\tau}^{(\beta)}(R) D_{\alpha_3\tau}^{(\gamma)}(\overline{R}) = h \begin{pmatrix} \bar{\alpha} & \beta & \gamma \\ \alpha_1 & \alpha_2 & \alpha_3 \end{pmatrix}^* \begin{pmatrix} \bar{\alpha} & \beta & \gamma \\ \alpha_1 & \alpha_2 & \alpha_3 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (E.28)$$

This formula implies that

$$\left| \begin{pmatrix} \bar{\alpha} & \beta & \gamma \\ \alpha_1 & \alpha_2 & \alpha_3 \end{pmatrix} \right|^2$$

²⁹Wigner

is symmetric under the interchange of any two of its columns. Phase can always be chosen in such a way that the $\mathcal{X}$ -elements are even under even permutations and odd under odd permutations of its columns.

E.3 Lie Groups

Many groups of interest to physics have infinitely many elements, labeled by a set of p -continuous, real parameters, as in $R(x)$, where x denotes the entire set, $x = (x_1, \dots, x_p) \in \mathbb{R}^p$ (we usually discuss $R(\mathbb{R}) = \mathbb{R}$, if by $\mathbb{R}$ we mean $(\mathbb{R}, 0, \dots, 0)$). The multiplication law is given by

$$R(x)R(y) = R(z), \quad \text{where } z = \phi(x, y), \quad (\text{E.39})$$

so that the function ϕ takes the place of the multiplication table; because of the associativity law of the group, it must have the property

$$\phi(\phi(x, y), z) = \phi(x, \phi(y, z)). \quad (\text{E.40})$$

Let us denote the parameter for $[R(x)]^{-1}$ by $\bar{x}$, so that $R(x)R(\bar{x}) = E$, and the equation $\phi(x, \bar{x}) = \phi(\bar{x}, x) = 0$ is solved by $\bar{x} = \bar{R}(x)$. If the functions ϕ and $\bar{R}$ are analytic, the group is called a **Lie group**; it is called **compact** if the p -dimensional parameter space is bounded and closed.

E.3.1 Coordinate transformations

Most of the groups of physical interest are transformations of coordinates in an n -dimensional space (which need not necessarily be the real, physical space). Here are some examples:

- The **linear group** in n dimensions, called $GL(n)$: a group of linear transformations of the form

$$x'_i = \sum_{j=1}^n M_{ij} x_j, \quad i = 1, \dots, n, \quad \text{with} \quad \det M_{ij} \neq 0.$$

This is the group of $n \times n$ nonsingular, real matrices. It has n^2 parameters varying from $-\infty$ to ∞ and is thus not compact.

- The **special linear group** $SL(n)$, which is the group of nonsingular $n \times n$ matrices, i.e., such that $\det M = 1$. It has $n^2 - 1$ parameters.

- The **orthogonal group** $O(n)$. These are the real-coordinate transformations such that $\sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2 = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i'^2$, which means that the matrices have to be orthogonal,

$$\sum_{i=1}^n M_{ik} M_{ij} = \delta_{kj}.$$

¹⁰It is assumed that there are all essential and cannot be reduced to a smaller set.

They have $n(n-1)/2$ parameters.⁴⁶ The orthogonality condition implies that $\det M = \pm 1$, but only the matrices with $\det M = 1$ are continuously connected to the unit matrix. The orthogonal, unimodular matrices form the orthogonal group $SO(n)$ of pure rotations; if reflections are to be included, $O(n)$ is a related continuous group, with an additional discrete parameter. For example, $O(2)$ is a mixed one-parameter group (one angle), and $O(3)$ is a mixed three-parameter group (3 Euler angles), and they include reflections.

■ The unitary group $U(n)$ is made up of unitary $n \times n$ matrices,

$$\sum_j U_{ij} U_{jk}^\dagger = \delta_{ik}.$$

These are the complex coordinate transformations such that $\sum_{i=1}^n |x_i|^2 = \sum_{i=1}^n |x'_i|^2$. Each matrix has n^2 free real parameters,⁴⁷ and since each element must lie ≤ 1 , the parameter space is closed and $U(n)$ is compact; it has $O(n)$ as a subgroup.⁴⁸

■ The special unitary group $SU(n)$ is a (n^2-1) -parameter subgroup of $U(n)$ consisting of the unitary matrices with $\det U = +1$.

■ The right motion in three-dimensional Euclidean space,

$$x'_i = \sum_{j=1}^3 T_{ij} x_j + a_i \quad i = 1, 2, 3,$$

where the matrices $\{T_{ij}\}$ are real and orthogonal, the right motions form a six-parameter group, whose parameter space is not closed.

■ If we add the dilations, $x'_i = \alpha x_i$, we have the seven-parameter similarity group.

■ The addition of inversions on spheres (see Figure E.1) to the group of right motions embeds it into the ten-parameter conformal group.

E.3.3 p_0 -dimensional generators

For general coordinate transformations (not necessarily linear), writing x for the set of n coordinates and a for the set of p parameters, we have

$$x = f(x', a), \quad x' = f(x'', a'), \quad x = f(f(x'', a'), a) = f(x'', \tilde{a}), \quad f(x, \tilde{a}) = a, \quad (\text{E.34})$$

with the multiplication law

$$\tilde{a} = \delta(a, \tilde{a}), \quad \delta(a, \tilde{a}) = \delta(\tilde{a}, a) = a.$$

⁴⁶ Prove this.

⁴⁷ Prove this.

⁴⁸ Why?



FIGURE 8.1. Inversion on a sphere of radius r ; the points P and P' are such that $\text{Re}(z)zP' = \text{CP}' = r$.

On the assumption the group elements depend on the parameters continuously and differentially, so that we are dealing with a Lie group, it is most convenient to look at infinitesimal transformations.

The transformation

$$u_1 = g_1(z', z) \quad (8.14)$$

can be varied infinitesimally in two different ways:

$$(u_1 + \delta u_1) = g_1(z', z + \delta z) = g_1(z, \delta z).$$

The change δz is a variation of the parameter z alone in the group, while δz is a variation in the identity $z = 0$ that is, in the neighborhood of the identity transformation. If the second way is adopted, we have

$$\delta u_1 = \sum_i \frac{\partial g_1(z', z)}{\partial z_i} \bigg|_{z=0} \delta z_i = \sum_i u_{1i} \delta z_i, \quad (8.15)$$

where

$$u_{1i} = \left(\frac{\partial g_1}{\partial z_i} \right) \bigg|_{z=0} \quad \text{for } i_1 = 1, 2, \dots, k \text{ or } i_1 = 0. \quad (8.16)$$

At the same time, the multiplication law $u_1 = g_1(z_1, z_2)$ together with $u_1 = g_1(z_1, 0) = g_1(0, z_2)$ leads to

$$u_1 + \delta u_1 = \delta u_1 + u_1,$$

and therefore

$$\delta u_1 = \sum_i \delta z_i u_{1i} u_{1i}. \quad (8.17)$$

where

$$A_{ik} \equiv \left. \frac{\partial h(x, y)}{\partial x_i} \right|_{x=y}. \quad (E.35)$$

The $p \times p$ matrix $\{A_{ik}\}$ must be nonsingular; this is because the set of equations $x_i = h(x, y)$ defining multiplication in the group has to be uniquely solvable for the x_i in terms of the y_i , and the y_i as well as for the y_i in terms of the x_i and the x_j , which requires that the Jacobian of the system not vanish. But that Jacobian is equal to $\det A$, so we must have

$$\det A \neq 0, \quad (E.36)$$

and it is legitimate to define B as the inverse of A : $B \equiv A^{-1}$, i.e.,

$$\sum_j B_{ij} A_{jk} = \delta_{ik}. \quad (E.37)$$

Therefore Eqs. (E.35) may be inverted to read

$$dx_i = \sum_j B_{ij} dy_j, \quad (E.38)$$

so that (E.33) becomes

$$dx_i = \sum_j n_{ij} B_{ik} dy_k,$$

or

$$\frac{dx_i}{dy_k} = \sum_j n_{ij} (x) B_{jk}(x), \quad (E.39)$$

which implies that

$$n_{ij} = \sum_k \frac{\partial x_i}{\partial y_k} A_{kj}. \quad (E.40)$$

If the x_i are thought of as functions varying with the y_j , (E.39) may be regarded as a set of partial differential equations, whose solution is given by (E.39), with the x_i^0 serving as initial conditions.

The question now is, how does an arbitrarily given differentiable function $F(x)$, which depends on the parameters x_i via the y_j , change when the x_i are varied near zero? The answer is

$$\Delta F(x) = \sum_i \frac{\partial F}{\partial x_i} dx_i = \sum_j \frac{\partial F}{\partial x_i} n_{ij} dy_j = \sum_j A_{ij} B_j F, \quad (E.41)$$

where the B_j are a set of differential operators,

$$B_j \equiv \sum_i n_{ij}(x) \frac{\partial}{\partial x_i}. \quad (E.42)$$

called the *infinitesimal generators* (or simply the *generators*) of the group. There are as many of them as there are parameters: a p -parameter group has p infinitesimal generators. With the x_i regarded as functions of the a_j , these infinitesimal generators may, according to (E.41) also be written in the form

$$X_i = \sum_j \frac{\partial x_i}{\partial a_j} A_j \frac{\partial}{\partial x_i} = \sum_j A_j a_j \frac{\partial}{\partial a_j}. \quad (\text{E.42})$$

As a simple example, take $F = x_1$. It then follows from (E.42) that $X_1 x_i = x_i \delta_{1i}$.

We next calculate the commutation relations between the infinitesimal generators, and we find (see below)

$$[X_i, X_j] = \sum_k c_{ij}^k X_k, \quad (\text{E.43})$$

where the c_{ij}^k are given as functions of the group parameters by

$$c_{ij}^k = \sum_l \left[A_{il} \frac{\partial A_{jl}}{\partial a_l} - A_{jl} \frac{\partial A_{il}}{\partial a_l} \right] x_{kl}, \quad (\text{E.44})$$

and in terms of the x_i

$$\sum_l \left(x_{il} \frac{\partial x_{jl}}{\partial a_l} - x_{jl} \frac{\partial x_{il}}{\partial a_l} \right) = \sum_k x_{kl} c_{ij}^k. \quad (\text{E.45})$$

From (E.44) and (E.45) we may draw the important conclusion that the c_{ij}^k are independent of the x_i and of the group parameters; they are called the *structure constants* of the Lie group. They are real numbers, even though in some specific realization of the group, the x_i may be complex. Furthermore, the functions x_{ij} satisfy the following equation in terms of these constants, known as *Maurer's relation*:

$$\frac{\partial^2 x_{ij}}{\partial a_j \partial a_i} - \frac{\partial^2 x_{ji}}{\partial a_i \partial a_j} = \sum_k c_{ij}^k x_{ki} \frac{\partial}{\partial a_k}. \quad (\text{E.46})$$

Proof of (E.46). We can proceed in two ways. First, use (E.44):

$$\begin{aligned} [X_i, X_j] &= \sum_l \left[A_{il} \frac{\partial}{\partial a_l} A_{jl} \frac{\partial}{\partial a_j} - A_{jl} \frac{\partial}{\partial a_l} A_{il} \frac{\partial}{\partial a_i} \right] \\ &= \sum_l \left[A_{il} \frac{\partial A_{jl}}{\partial a_l} - A_{jl} \frac{\partial A_{il}}{\partial a_l} \right] \frac{\partial}{\partial a_j} \\ &= \sum_l \left[A_{il} \frac{\partial A_{jl}}{\partial a_l} - A_{jl} \frac{\partial A_{il}}{\partial a_l} \right] \frac{x_{kl}}{x_{kl}} \frac{\partial}{\partial a_j} \\ &= \sum_l \left[A_{il} \frac{\partial A_{jl}}{\partial a_l} - A_{jl} \frac{\partial A_{il}}{\partial a_l} \right] x_{kl} X_k. \end{aligned}$$

by the use of (E-45), which proves (E-46) and (E-47).

However, we can also proceed as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} [R_i, R_j] &= \sum_{\alpha} \left(u_{\alpha} \frac{\partial}{\partial u_i} u_{\alpha} \frac{\partial}{\partial u_j} - u_{\alpha} \frac{\partial}{\partial u_j} u_{\alpha} \frac{\partial}{\partial u_i} \right) \\ &= \sum_{\alpha} \left(u_{\alpha} \frac{\partial u_{\alpha}}{\partial u_i} - u_{\alpha} \frac{\partial u_{\alpha}}{\partial u_j} \right) \frac{\partial}{\partial u_j} \end{aligned}$$

from which (E-47) may be concluded because the right-hand side has to equal $\sum_{\alpha} c_{ij}^{\alpha} R_{\alpha}$. $\square$

Proof that the c_{ij}^{α} are constants: Remember that (E-45) has (E-46) as a solution, with the c_{ij}^{α} as independent integration constants. Now, (E-46) expresses the c_{ij}^{α} in terms of the u_{α} alone, so since the u_{α} are functions of the x_i and the independent integration constants c_{ij}^{α} , the c_{ij}^{α} cannot depend on the x_i .

Suppose now that we change the u_{α} and the c_{ij}^{α} together in such a way that the x_i remain fixed. Then differentiation of (E-46) with respect to u_{α} gives

$$\sum_{\alpha} u_{\alpha, \beta} \left(c_{ij}^{\alpha} \frac{\partial u_{\alpha}}{\partial u_{\beta}} \right) = 0$$

for all α and all j , and β . This implies that for all α

$$\frac{\partial c_{ij}^{\alpha}}{\partial u_{\beta}} = 0,$$

because otherwise the functions $u_{\alpha}(x)$ would be linearly dependent, which by (E-45) would imply that the number of parameters chosen is not minimal. Therefore, contrary to the assumption of (E-46), the c_{ij}^{α} must be independent of the group parameters as well as of the u_{α} . $\square$

Proof of (E-48). From the fact that A and B are inverses of one another it follows that

$$\begin{aligned} C_{ij} &= \sum_{\alpha} \left[A_{\alpha} \frac{\partial A_{\alpha}}{\partial u_i} - A_{\alpha} \frac{\partial A_{\alpha}}{\partial u_j} \right] R_{\alpha} \\ &= \sum_{\alpha} \left(-A_{\alpha} A_{\alpha} \frac{\partial u_{\alpha}}{\partial u_i} + A_{\alpha} A_{\alpha} \frac{\partial u_{\alpha}}{\partial u_j} \right) \\ &= \sum_{\alpha} (A_{\alpha} A_{\alpha} - A_{\alpha} A_{\alpha}) \frac{\partial u_{\alpha}}{\partial u_i} \\ &= \sum_{\alpha} A_{\alpha} A_{\alpha} \left(\frac{\partial u_{\alpha}}{\partial u_i} - \frac{\partial u_{\alpha}}{\partial u_j} \right), \end{aligned}$$

which implies (E-48). $\square$

The structure constants are obviously anti-symmetric in their lower indices,

$$C_{ij}^{\alpha} = -C_{ji}^{\alpha}, \quad (\text{E-49})$$

and it follows from the Jacobi identity for commutators,¹⁰

$$[[A, B], C] + [[B, C], A] + [[C, A], B] = 0, \quad (\text{E-50})$$

¹⁰Where this is an exercise.

that they obey the identity

$$\sum_i (c_{ik}c_{im} + c_{im}c_{ki} + c_{km}c_{ik}) = 0. \quad (\text{E.34})$$

Sylvester proved that equations (E.43) and (E.34) are sufficient conditions for a set of A_{ij} , and hence a set of $B_{\alpha\beta}$, to exist such that the differential equations (E.30) are solvable and functions f_i as in (E.32) exist that form the group. (We shall not prove this.) It is then always possible to return from infinitesimal transformations to the full Lie group of finite transformations.

E.3.3 The Lie algebra

We now form a finite-dimensional linear vector space whose members are of the form $A = \sum_i a_i X_i$, with real a_i , and make up an algebra by defining products of such linear combinations in terms of products of the X_i by using (E.43). In this algebra, the left-hand side of (E.43) will be interpreted as the product of X_k and X_l rather than as the commutator. The result is called the Lie algebra of the group. If the coefficients a_i are allowed to be complex, we obtain its complex extension.²⁸ Note that multiplication in a Lie algebra is general is neither commutative nor associative: $[A, B] = -[B, A]$ and in general

$$[A, B][C] \neq [A, [B, C]].$$

Example: Take a one-parameter group defined by $x_j = f_j(x', t)$. Then $v_j(x) = \partial f_j / \partial t|_{x'}$, $\partial f = A f / \partial t$, and $B = 1/A$, while

$$A = \sum_j v_j(x) \frac{\partial}{\partial x_j} = A \frac{\partial}{\partial t},$$

and $v_j = X x_j$. So we have the differential equation

$$\frac{dx_j}{dt} = v_j B(t) = B(t) X x_j$$

which is easily solved by

$$x_j(t) = e^{tB} x_j(0), \quad t(t) \equiv \int_0^t dt' B(t').$$

In terms of the canonical parametrization γ , rather than t , we thus find that, if $x_j = e^{i\gamma} x_j^0$ and $x_j^0 = e^{i\gamma} x_j'$, then $x_j = e^{i\gamma + i\gamma} x_j^0 = e^{i\gamma + i\gamma} x_j'$. So that

²⁸Two different Lie algebras may have the same complex extension. For example, two Lie algebras may differ by having several structure constants of opposite signs, but the products may be made to agree by multiplying some of the generators by i .

group is Abelian: every one-parameter Lie group is Abelian, and in terms of its canonical parametrization it is such that $K(\eta_1)K(\eta_2) = K(\eta_2)K(\eta_1) = K(\eta_1 + \eta_2)$, which means that $c(\eta_1, \eta_2) = c(\eta_2, \eta_1)$.

For a two-parameter non-Abelian group we must have

$$[X_1, X_2] = aX_1 + bX_2.$$

It is then always possible¹² to form new generators

$$X'_1 = a_{11}X_1 + a_{12}X_2, \quad X'_2 = a_{21}X_1 + a_{22}X_2,$$

so that

$$[X'_1, X'_2] = X'_2.$$

For a three-parameter non-Abelian group there are only the following three possibilities:

a) $[X_1, X_2] = X_3$, and all others zero. This means that X_3 commutes with the others and defines an invariant subgroup.

b)

$$[X_1, X_2] = X_3, \quad [X_1, X_3] = X_3, \quad [X_2, X_3] = X_3.$$

c)

$$[X_3, X_4] = X_1, \quad [X_3, X_5] = -X_3, \quad [X_1, X_4] = -X_3.$$

Case (b) is exemplified by $SO(3)$, as is discussed in more detail further on. (Note that a simple change of $X_3 \rightarrow -X_3$ for all 3, changes the signs of all three commutators.) Case (c) is that of the 3-dimensional "Lorentz group," which leaves $x^2 + y^2 - z^2$ invariant.

A Lie algebra $\mathfrak{G}$ is called *simple* if it contains no ideals other than 0 and $\mathfrak{G}$ itself. (A subset $\mathfrak{H}$ of $\mathfrak{G}$ is an *ideal* of $\mathfrak{G}$ if $[X, Y] \in \mathfrak{H}$ for all $X \in \mathfrak{H}$ and all $Y \in \mathfrak{G}$.) If it contains no nonzero Abelian ideals, it is called *semisimple*. (A Lie algebra $\mathfrak{G}$ is called *Abelian* if $[X, Y] = 0$ for all $X, Y \in \mathfrak{G}$.)

E.4 Representations of Lie Groups

Just as for groups of finite order, a representation of a Lie group is a mapping of the group elements R on matrices $R \mapsto T(R)$, but the $T(R)$ are now allowed to be infinite-dimensional, or equivalently, bounded operators on a Hilbert space (the generally nonlinear transformations f are to be represented by linear operators on a finite-dimensional or infinite-dimensional linear vector space. Since each group element is uniquely labeled by the set

¹² Prove this.

of parameter α , so will be the representing invertible matrices or operators $D(\alpha)$, and since the multiplication law is extended in (E.28), the same must hold for the D :

$$D(c)D(\alpha) = D(c), \quad \text{where } c = c(\alpha, \mathbf{H}). \quad (E.32)$$

In order to ensure that as many of the results for representations of finite groups as possible also hold for Lie groups, it is necessary that whenever summations over group elements appear in the formulas, they can be replaced without error by integrals in the parameter space. This requires the adoption of integration measures or weight functions with special properties. If you recall the proofs of Schur's lemma or of the orthogonality theorem, the essential steps were of the following kind, in which $R = AR$:

$$\sum_{R \in G} f(R) = \sum_{R \in G^{-1}G} f(AR) = \sum_{R \in G} f(AR) = \sum_{R \in G} f(AR),$$

which works because the summation is over the entire group G , and $A^{-1}G = G$ for any $A \in G$. Therefore, if the sums over all group elements are to be replaced by integrals

$$\int d\mu(\alpha) \dots = \int d^p \alpha \, \rho(\alpha) \dots$$

in the parameter space and these are to be invariant under left multiplication, as above, we need

$$\int d^p \alpha \, \rho(\alpha) f(\alpha) = \int d^p \beta \, \rho(\beta) f(\beta F) = \int d^p \alpha \, \rho(\alpha) f(\alpha F)$$

if $F = CF$. The resulting integral is called the *Haar invariant integral* and the measure is called *Haar measure*. The left-invariant measure turns out to be

$$\mu_L(\alpha) = 1/|\det(\partial\theta_i/\partial\alpha_j)|_{j=1}^n, \quad (E.33)$$

while the right-invariant measure is

$$\mu_R(\alpha) = 1/|\det(\partial\theta_i/\partial\alpha_j)|_{j=1}^n. \quad (E.34)$$

Comparison with (E.28) shows that therefore

$$\rho_L = 1/|\det A|, \quad (E.35)$$

and it is important to note that for compact groups, the left and right-invariant measures are equal:

$$\rho_L = \rho_R$$

which we shall not prove.¹⁶

Proof of (E.15). Suppose that $H = HA$, $G = GB$, and $F = CHA = CB = CA$, and we denote the Jacobian by J ; then we have

$$d^2f = J(g, h)d^2h = J(g, J_1J_2)g(d^2u = J(g, u)d^2u,$$

which implies that $J_1J_2g(u, v) = J(g, u)g(J_1J_2, v)$ and for $u = h$

$$J(g, h) = J(g, J_1J_2, h) = J(g, J_1J_2, h).$$

Therefore, since $d^2g = J(g, h)d^2h$, it follows that

$$\frac{d^2g}{J(g, h)} = \frac{d^2h}{J_1J_2}.$$

But since $g = gh(u)$ for $G = CB$, the Jacobian is given by $J(g, u) = \det(\partial g(u)/\partial u/\partial u)$ and hence

$$J(g, u) = \det \left[\frac{\partial g_1(u, h)}{\partial u} \right]_{u=h}.$$

Thus the left-invariant measure is given by (E.15), and similarly, the right-invariant measure is given by (E.16). $\square$

Example. For the two-parameter group defined by the transformation $x' = (1 + \alpha_1)x + \alpha_2$, which is not compact, we find that¹⁷ $\mu_1 = (1 + \alpha_1)^{-2}$, so that $d\mu_1(x) = d\alpha_1 d\alpha_2/(1 + \alpha_1)^2$, whereas $\mu_2 = (1 + \alpha_2)^{-1}$, so that $d\mu_2(x) = d\alpha_1 d\alpha_2/(1 + \alpha_2)$. This is an example of a non-compact group for which the left and right-invariant measures are compact.

For compact groups, all the summations over group elements that are used for groups of finite order can be replaced by integrals, and, if these integrals are over continuous functions, they necessarily converge. The order $k = \sum_{g \in G}$ of the group in all the needed theorems will simply be replaced by

$$k = \int d^2u \rho(u) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \int d\rho(u),$$

which may be called the volume of the group. So Theorem E.1 holds for finite-dimensional matrix representations of compact groups, and it follows that if such a representation is reducible, it is fully reducible. (This statement holds also for noncompact groups that are unimodular.) Lemmas E.2 and E.3, of course, hold again. Next, look at Theorem E.4: it is valid for compact groups with the sum replaced by a Riemann integral. But suppose that one of the representations is infinite-dimensional; that would imply that $\int d\rho(u) [\sum_{\alpha} \langle \alpha | \rho | \alpha \rangle]^2 = k$, for all ρ and α , which is impossible. Therefore we conclude—

Lemma E.10. All the irreducible representations of a compact Lie group are finite-dimensional.

¹⁶For a proof, see, e.g., [Bourbaki], pp. 333f.

¹⁷Prove this as an exercise.

The result of Theorem 1.5 for compact groups reads

$$\int d\mu(x) \chi^{(R)}(x) \chi^{(R^*)}(x) = d_R \delta, \quad (1.55)$$

for any two primitive characters. So, if a given representation Γ is reducible to the direct sum $\Gamma = (\oplus_i d_i \Gamma^{(i)})$, containing the $\Gamma^{(k)}$ irreducible representation d_k times, then $\chi_\Gamma(x) = \sum_i d_i \chi^{(i)}(x)$, and the number of times the representation $\Gamma^{(k)}$ is contained in Γ is given by

$$d_k = \frac{1}{d_k} \int d\mu(x) \chi^{(R^*)}(x) \chi_\Gamma(x)$$

as a result we have the analogue of (1.5)

$$\int d\mu(x) | \chi_\Gamma(x) |^2 = d \sum_i d_i^2. \quad (1.57)$$

The regular representation of a Lie group is defined as an integral operator on the parameter space (that is, it is an infinite-dimensional representation):¹²

$$\int d\mu(x) \mathbb{P}^{(R)}(a, b, x) f(b) = f(a) \chi_R(a), \quad (1.58)$$

which means that $\mathbb{P}^{(R)}(a, b, x)$, representing the group element $R(x)$, can be written in the form

$$\mathbb{P}^{(R)}(a, b, x) = \delta^{(p)}(b) \delta(a, R(x)) / \chi_R(x),$$

where $\delta^{(p)}$ is the Dirac delta-function in the p -dimensional parameter space; its character is given by

$$\chi^{(R)}(a) = d \mathbb{P}^{(R)}(a).$$

To show this in a mathematically nonrigorous way, consider

$$\chi^{(R)}(a) = \int d\mu(b) \mathbb{P}^{(R)}(a, b, b) = \int d^p b \mathbb{P}^{(R)}(a - a(b), b),$$

which vanishes when $a = 0$. But

$$\begin{aligned} \int d^p b \mathbb{P}^{(R)}(a) &= \int d^p b \mathbb{P}^{(R)} \left[a - a(b), b + \sum_i \frac{\partial a_i}{\partial b_i} \right]_{a=0} \\ &= \int d^p b_1 \det \left(\partial a_i / \partial b_j \right)_{i,j=1}^p = \int d\mu(b) = d, \end{aligned}$$

which implies that $\chi^{(R)}(a) = d \mathbb{P}^{(R)}(a)$.

¹²Here that still is a representation.

We therefore have

$$\chi^{(R)}(x) = \sum_i k_i \chi^{(i)}(x),$$

where k_i is the number of times the i^{th} irreducible representation is contained in the regular representation, which implies that¹⁰ $k_i = n_i$; just as for finite groups, the regular representation of a compact Lie group contains the i^{th} irreducible representation $\Gamma^{(i)}$ as many times as the dimensionality of $\Gamma^{(i)}$. Remember that, according to Lemma II.10, all the n_i are finite. But the delta-function cannot be expressed as a finite sum of functions $\chi^{(i)}$. It follows that the number of inequivalent irreducible representations of a compact Lie group is infinite.

The Casimir operator

Define the symmetric matrix $\{a_{ij}\}$ by

$$a_{ij} = c_{ij}^{-1} \equiv \sum_{\alpha} c_{\alpha}^i c_{\alpha}^j, \quad (5.59)$$

in terms of the structure constants of a given Lie algebra, and its inverse $\{a^{ij}\}$,

$$\sum_{\alpha} a^{\alpha\beta} a_{\alpha\gamma} = \delta_{\gamma}^{\beta}. \quad (5.60)$$

(It is a theorem by Cartan that this inverse exists if and only if the algebra is semisimple.) The Casimir operator of the Lie algebra is defined by

$$C \equiv \sum_{\alpha} a^{\alpha\beta} E_{\alpha} E_{\beta} \quad (5.61)$$

it has the important property that it commutes with all the infinitesimal generators:

$$[C, E_i] = 0, \quad i = 1, \dots, n. \quad (5.62)$$

Equation (5.62) is proved by calculating

$$\begin{aligned} [C, E_i] &= \sum_{\alpha} a^{\alpha\beta} [E_i, E_{\alpha} E_{\beta}] \\ &= \sum_{\alpha} [a^{\alpha\beta} c_{\beta i}^{\gamma} (E_{\alpha} E_{\gamma}) + a^{\alpha\beta} c_{i\beta}^{\gamma} (E_{\alpha} E_{\gamma}) + \sum_{\gamma} a^{\alpha\beta} c_{\alpha\beta}^{\gamma} (E_i E_{\gamma})] \\ &= \sum_{\alpha\beta\gamma} a^{\alpha\beta} a^{\gamma\delta} a_{\alpha\beta\delta} (E_i E_{\gamma}) + E_i E_{\gamma} = \sum_{\alpha\beta\gamma} (a^{\alpha\beta} a^{\gamma\delta} + a^{\beta\gamma} a^{\alpha\delta}) a_{\alpha\beta\delta} E_i E_{\gamma}. \end{aligned}$$

¹⁰Weyl's theorem.

where

$$c_{abc} = -c_{bac} = \sum_i c_{iab}c_{ic} = \sum_{i,j} c_{ia}c_{ib}c_{jci}$$

and these constants are totally antisymmetric in all their indices.¹⁰ It therefore follows that

$$\sum_{i,j} c_{ij}^a c_{ij}^b + c_{ij}^a c_{ij}^b c_{abc} = 0,$$

and hence (E.42).

□

Now take a representation of the Lie algebra; this leads to a representation of $\mathfrak{G}$, and the matrix representing $\mathfrak{G}$ commutes with all the matrices in the group. Therefore, if the representation is irreducible, by Lemma E.3, the matrix representing $\mathfrak{G}$ must be a multiple of the unit matrix, i.e., it must be simply a number, a number that can be taken to characterize the irreducible representation. Therefore every irreducible representation may be labeled by an eigenvalue of the Casimir operator. For a compact, semisimple Lie algebra, it is always possible to choose a basis in which

$$c_{ab} = -\delta_{ab}$$

(which we shall not prove); in that case we have $c_{ij}^a = -c_{ji}^a$ and

$$\mathfrak{C} = \sum_i \mathbf{E}_i \mathbf{E}_i. \quad (\text{E.43})$$

E.4.3 Multiple-valuedness

If the group manifold of a Lie group $\mathfrak{G}$ is not simply connected, there is the possibility that some representations of a Lie group are multi-valued functions of the parameters,¹¹ and there is no way to simply disconnect or disregard the redundant region of the parameters. The universal covering group $\tilde{\mathfrak{G}}$ of $\mathfrak{G}$ is a group that is mapped homomorphically on $\mathfrak{G}$ and whose manifold is simply connected, so that all its irreducible representations are single-valued functions of the parameters.

For example, take the group $\mathfrak{G}$ defined by the functions $R(\varphi) = e^{i\varphi\alpha}$, α not an integer, for which $R(\varphi)R(\varphi') = R(\varphi_1 + \varphi_2)$, and whose manifold is the unit circle (which is doubly connected). The parameter φ cannot be restricted to $0 \leq \varphi < 2\pi/\alpha$ without violating the continuity of the multiplication law $\varphi_1 = \varphi_1 + \varphi_2$; hence there is no way of avoiding the multi-valuedness of functions on the group manifold, and as a result there are multi-valued representations of the group. The group $\tilde{\mathfrak{G}}$ formed by the points α , with $-m < m < m$, and the multiplication law defined by addition, $R(\alpha)R(\beta) = R(\gamma)$ if $\alpha = \beta + k$,¹² is the universal covering group

¹⁰ Prove this, using (E.41).

¹¹ When is this impossible if the group manifold is simply connected?

¹² What is the unit element of this group?

of G ; the mapping from G to G' via $R(\rho) = \tilde{R}(\rho)$ is a homomorphism, but the irreducible representations of G' are single valued.

E.4.3 The group $O(n)$

The rotation groups in n dimensions are formed by those transformations $x'_i = \sum_{j=1}^n R_{ij}x_j$, $i = 1, \dots, n$, on n -dimensional Euclidean space that leave the length invariant: $\sum_i x_i^2 = \sum_i x'^2_i$. It may also be defined as the group of real orthogonal $n \times n$ matrices.¹² We distinguish between the pure rotation group, which consists of those matrices M with $\det M = +1$, and the rotation-reflection group, for which $\det M = \pm 1$.¹³ We now consider the specific case of two dimensions.

The elements of the pure rotation group may be taken to be the 2×2 matrices

$$R(\varphi) = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \varphi & -\sin \varphi \\ \sin \varphi & \cos \varphi \end{pmatrix}, \quad (\text{E.44})$$

in the sense that if the coordinate system is rotated counter-clockwise by φ , the coordinates of a point are changed from (x, y) to (x', y') , where

$$x' = x \cos \varphi + y \sin \varphi, \quad y' = -x \sin \varphi + y \cos \varphi, \quad (\text{E.45})$$

i.e.,

$$(x', y') = (x, y)R(\varphi).$$

The matrices (E.44), of course, form their own two-dimensional representation $D(\varphi)$. You find easily¹⁴ that

$$R(\varphi)R(\varphi') = R(\varphi + \varphi') = R(\varphi')R(\varphi),$$

which implies that the group is Abelian. Therefore its irreducible representations are all one-dimensional. Indeed, the matrix

$$S = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & i \\ 1 & -i \end{pmatrix}$$

diagonalizes all the matrices in the representation,

$$D(\varphi) = SD(\varphi)S^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} e^{i\varphi} & 0 \\ 0 & e^{-i\varphi} \end{pmatrix},$$

¹²To not confuse the dimensionality of a representation of this group with the dimensionality of the defining matrices, the latter, of course, form a representation, but there are infinitely many others.

¹³The matrices with $\det M = -1$ form a subgroup!

¹⁴The $\mathbf{E}$.

which means it has been reduced to the direct sum of the two one-dimensional representations $D^{+1/2}(\varphi) = e^{i\varphi/2}$ and $D^{-1/2}(\varphi) = e^{-i\varphi/2}$.

The functions v_1 are given by $v_1 = y$ and $v_2 = -x$, so that the generator, in its two forms, is given by

$$E = x \frac{\partial}{\partial x} = x \frac{\partial}{\partial y} = \frac{\partial}{\partial \varphi}. \quad (\text{E.4.22})$$

Since the multiplication law is given by

$$v_1 = \theta(v_1, v_2) = v_1 + v_2$$

we find that the Haar measure is $d\varphi(\varphi) = d\varphi$, the Hurwitz invariant integral is simply $\int_0^{2\pi} d\varphi \dots$ and the "volume" of the group is $\Delta = \int_0^{2\pi} d\varphi = 2\pi$. Now, all functions of the form $e^{im\varphi}$ are representations of the group, but unless m is chosen to be from a positive or negative integer, these representations are multi-valued. (The existence of such multi-valued representations was to be expected, since the group manifold is not simply connected.) If we wish to restrict ourselves to single-valued ones, we have to choose $m = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots$

$$D^{(m)}(\varphi) = e^{im\varphi}.$$

We then have, as is required by the orthogonality theorem E.4,

$$\int_0^{2\pi} d\varphi D^{(m)}(\varphi) D^{(n)*}(\varphi) = 2\pi \delta_{mn},$$

and if there are any other irreducible representations, they have to be orthogonal to all of these, by Theorem E.4. The Fourier theorem, however, tells us that there are no such (square-integrable) functions. Therefore, these are all the single-valued irreducible representations of the pure rotation group in two dimensions. From a physics point of view, it will become clear that we are interested also in the double-valued representations, and for these m can take on half-integer values as well. The coordinates in which the diagonalized matrices $D(\varphi)$ act are given by

$$(X, Y)S^{-1} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(x - iy, x + iy) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (X, Y),$$

so that the rotations are $X' = e^{i\varphi}X$, $Y' = e^{-i\varphi}Y$.

Consider now the rotation-reflection group in two dimensions; the reflections here are on a line, not through the center. (The latter are equivalent to a rotation by 180° in two dimensions.) This is a mixed continuous group, with elements $R_+(\varphi)$ of determinant $+1$ and elements $R_-(\varphi)$ of determinant -1 . This means we add the matrices

$$R_-(\varphi) = \begin{pmatrix} -\cos \varphi & \sin \varphi \\ \sin \varphi & \cos \varphi \end{pmatrix}$$

to the previously defined

$$R_z(\varphi) = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \varphi & -\sin \varphi \\ \sin \varphi & \cos \varphi \end{pmatrix},$$

and the canonical transformation by S turns the matrix R_z into

$$D^S(\varphi, -) = SR(\varphi, -)S^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & e^{-i\varphi} \\ e^{i\varphi} & 0 \end{pmatrix}.$$

This group is not Abelian, and the defining representation is not reducible. There are two one-dimensional representations, the trivial representation $D^{(0)}(\varphi, +) = D^{(0)}(\varphi, -) = 1$, and

$$D^{(2)}(\varphi, +) = 1, \quad D^{(2)}(\varphi, -) = -1,$$

and the two-dimensional representations²⁶

$$D^{(m)}(\varphi, +) = \begin{pmatrix} e^{im\varphi} & 0 \\ 0 & e^{-im\varphi} \end{pmatrix},$$

$$D^{(m)}(\varphi, -) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & e^{-im\varphi} \\ e^{im\varphi} & 0 \end{pmatrix},$$

with $m = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots$. The rotations with reflections are all in one class,²⁷ that is why they all have the same character $\chi^{(m)}(\varphi, -) = 0$.

Figure E.2 shows four examples of three-dimensional objects that have the symmetry of the two-dimensional rotation group, some with, some without reflections. Cases (a) and (c) have irreducible representations of one and two dimensions, while the irreducible representations of cases (b) and (d) are all one-dimensional.

E.4.3 The group $SO(3)$

The three-dimensional proper rotation group is formed by the group of real, orthogonal, unimodular matrices T . As discussed in Section 5.2, it can be parametrized by an angle of rotation $0 \leq \varphi \leq \pi$ and two polar angles θ and φ that specify the orientation of the axis of rotation, as in (3.80).

The Haar measure for the group, in terms of the three angles φ, θ , and φ , is given by $2[1 - \cos \varphi] \sin \theta d\varphi d\theta d\varphi$, so that the Haar integral is of the form

$$2 \int_0^\pi d\varphi (1 - \cos \varphi) \int_0^\pi d\theta \int_0^\pi d\varphi \sin \theta \dots, \quad (E.47)$$

and the "volume" of the group is $k = 8\pi^2$.

²⁶Prove that these are irreducible.

²⁷Prove this.

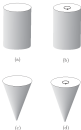


FIGURE 3.1 Four three-dimensional objects with rotational symmetry about the z -axis: (a) two-dimensional rotation-reflection symmetry, plus reflections through the center; (b) two-dimensional rotation symmetry plus reflections through the center; (c) two-dimensional rotation-reflection symmetry; (d) two-dimensional rotation symmetry only. Only object (d) has a mirror image.

To calculate the Euler measure, we begin by using the three components x_1, x_2, x_3 of the vector x defined in (3.40) as group parameters. We then have to compare the changes dx_i starting from arbitrary x_0 to the changes dx_i starting from zero. The matrix for an infinitesimal rotation is given by

$$X_i = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -dx_3 & dx_2 \\ dx_3 & 1 & dx_1 \\ -dx_2 & -dx_1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

and an arbitrary rotation T represented by a small increment is $T' = T_i T$. We may choose the coordinate system so that T is of the form

$$T^{(3)} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \varphi & -\sin \varphi & 0 \\ \sin \varphi & \cos \varphi & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix},$$

in which case we find that

$$T' = T + \begin{pmatrix} -dx_3 \sin \varphi & -dx_2 \cos \varphi & dx_2 \\ dx_3 \cos \varphi & -dx_1 \sin \varphi & -dx_1 \\ -dx_2 \cos \varphi + dx_1 \sin \varphi & dx_2 \sin \varphi + dx_3 \cos \varphi & 0 \end{pmatrix}.$$

The new rotation angle φ obtained by taking the trace

$$1 + 2\cos\varphi^2 = 1 + 2\cos\varphi + 2\sin^2\varphi,$$

from which we conclude that $\cos\varphi^2 = \cos\varphi + \sin^2\varphi$, or $\varphi^2 = \varphi + \sin\varphi$. The triple ratio

$$u_1 : u_2 : u_3 = (I_{33} - T_{33}) : (I_{23} - T_{23}) : (I_{13} - T_{13})$$

for the components of φ leads to

$$\begin{aligned} u_1^2 &= u_3 = \varphi(\sin\varphi\cos\varphi + \sin^2\varphi) + \cos\varphi\varphi, \\ u_2^2 &= u_3 = \varphi(-\sin\varphi\cos\varphi + \sin^2\varphi) + \cos\varphi\varphi, \\ u_3^2 &= u_1 + u_2 = \varphi(2\sin\varphi\cos\varphi + 2\sin\varphi). \end{aligned}$$

To find φ , calculate (always keeping only linear terms in $\sin\varphi$)

$$\varphi^2 = \sum_1^3 u_i^2 = \varphi^2(4\sin^2\varphi + 4\sin\varphi\cos\varphi + \cos^2\varphi),$$

and from this,

$$\varphi^2 = \varphi + \sin\varphi = 2\sin\varphi(1 + \sin\varphi\cos\varphi),$$

so that

$$\varphi = \frac{\varphi + \sin\varphi(1 - \varphi\sin\varphi)}{2\sin\varphi},$$

therefore, if we define $\mathcal{A}_i = \sum_j A_{ij}a_{ij}$ as in (E.30), we find that

$$\mathcal{A} = \begin{pmatrix} \varphi \frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial^2 \varphi}{\partial \varphi^2} & \frac{1}{2} \varphi & \frac{\sin\varphi}{\varphi} \\ -\frac{1}{2} \varphi & \varphi \frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial^2 \varphi}{\partial \varphi^2} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix},$$

whose determinant is given by

$$\det \mathcal{A} = \frac{\varphi^2}{2(1 - \cos\varphi)}.$$

The weight function in the Haar measure is therefore

$$\mu = \frac{2(1 - \cos\varphi)}{\varphi^2}$$

and the measure is found to be $da = da_1 da_2 da_3(2) = \varphi \sin\varphi(4/\varphi^2)$. Finally, the function for expressing the measure in terms of the angles $\varphi, \varphi_{1,2,3}$ is nothing but the familiar expression for the volume element in spherical polar coordinates, with φ in place of r ,

$$\left| \frac{\partial(a_1, a_2, a_3)}{\partial(\varphi, \varphi_{1,2})} \right| = \varphi^2 \sin\varphi,$$

and as a result we obtain (E.37).

As discussed in Section 5.1, the Cayley-Klein parameters define a homeomorphism between $SO(3)$, whose manifold is doubly connected, and its universal covering group $SU(2)$ of unitary, unimodular 2×2 matrices $\mathcal{U}$, given by (5.37) and (5.38) in terms of the Euler angles of the rotation.

To find the irreducible representations of the rotation group, we analyze the solutions of the Laplace equation (1.6), the free-Schrodinger equation at zero energy)

$$\nabla^2 f(\mathbf{r}, \varphi, \varphi) = 0, \quad (5.40)$$

which is invariant under rotations. Every solution of (E.88) that is a homogeneous polynomial of x, y , and z of order l can be expressed in the form

$$f = \sum_{m=-l}^l a_m^{(l)} Y_l^m(\theta, \varphi)$$

if (E.88) is separated in spherical polar coordinates as in (4.8), where the Y_l^m are the spherical harmonics. If the coordinate system is rotated by $R_{\alpha, \beta, \gamma}$ (in terms of the Euler angles α, β, γ), so that $R, \varphi \mapsto R', \varphi'$, the homogeneous polynomial solutions of (E.88) of order l transform among themselves, and we must have

$$r^l Y_l^m(R', \varphi') = O_{\alpha, \beta, \gamma} r^l Y_l^m(R, \varphi) = \sum_{m'} D_{mm'}^{(l)}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma) r^l Y_l^{m'}(R, \varphi),$$

if $O_{\alpha, \beta, \gamma}$ denotes the rotation operator. It follows that the matrices $D_{mm'}^{(l)}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma)$ form a $(2l+1)$ -dimensional representation of the rotation group.¹⁰ [The same conclusion can be drawn from the fact that, according to (4.18), the Y_l^m for a given l are eigenfunctions of the rotationally invariant operator $\hat{L}^2$ with the eigenvalue $l(l+1)\hbar^2$.]

Now, because the Euler angle α is a rotation of the z -axis and $Y_l^m(R, \varphi)$ has the form given in (D.53), we have¹¹

$$O_{\alpha, \beta, \gamma} Y_l^m(R, \varphi) = e^{-im\alpha} Y_l^m(R, \varphi),$$

and hence

$$D_{mm'}^{(l)}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma) = e^{-im\alpha} \delta_{mm'}$$

simultaneously,

$$D_{mm'}^{(l)}(\beta, 0, \gamma) = e^{-im'\gamma} \delta_{mm'}.$$

We can therefore conclude that $D_{mm'}^{(l)}$ must have the form

$$D_{mm'}^{(l)}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma) = e^{-im\alpha} d_{mm'}^{(l)}(\beta) e^{-im'\gamma}. \quad (\text{E.89})$$

These representations are irreducible.

¹⁰The functions $D_{mm'}^{(l)}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma)$ are also the eigenfunctions of the Schrödinger equation for a symmetrical top, in which case ml and m' are the eigenvalues of the angular momentum projections on the body and space-fixed axes, respectively.

¹¹Where does the minus sign in $e^{-im\alpha}$ come from?

We prove that the representation $(\mathcal{D}, \mathcal{D})$ is irreducible by showing that the only matrix M that commutes with all of the matrices $\{T_{\alpha, \beta, \gamma}^{(i)}(a, b, c)\}$ for a fixed given value of i is a multiple of the unit matrix.

If M commutes with the matrices $\{T_{\alpha, \beta, \gamma}^{(i)}(a, b, c)\}$ for all a , it must be diagonal. Furthermore,

$$T_1^{(i)}(1, 0, 0) = P_{i+1, i} T_1^{(i+1)}(1, 0, 0) = \sum_m d_{m, m}^{(i+1)}(2\mathcal{D})^{m, m'}(1, 0, 0) = i \sqrt{\frac{2(i+1)}{i}} d_{m, m}^{(i)}(i).$$

according to (3.56). Since the left-hand side of this equation does not identically vanish, $d_{m, m}^{(i)}(i) \neq 0$. Therefore, for general values of β , $\gamma = \beta \mathcal{D}_{\beta, \beta} = M_{\beta, \beta} = \text{dim } W_{\beta, \beta}$, and hence $W_0 = W_{i+1}$, and M is a multiple of the unit matrix. $\square$

The $(2i+1)$ -dimensional matrices $\{d_{m, m'}^{(i)}(f)\}$ can be calculated from the fact that

$$T_1^{(i)}(0, \beta, 0) = \sum_{m'} d_{m, m'}^{(i)}(0) T_1^{m'}(0, \beta, 0),$$

with the result that for $m' \geq m$

$$\begin{aligned} d_{m, m'}^{(i)}(f) &= \sqrt{\frac{\frac{1}{2}(i+m)(i)-m^2 f}{\frac{1}{2}(i+m)(i)-m^2 f}} \left(\cos \frac{f}{2} \right)^{m+m'} \\ &\quad \times \left(\sin \frac{f}{2} \right)^{m'-m} P_{i-m}^{(m'-m, m')}(m)(\cos f) \\ &= (-1)^{m'-m} d_{m', m}^{(i)}(f), \end{aligned} \quad (3.70)$$

where the $P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}$ are Jacobi polynomials⁴⁰ special cases of which are the Legendre polynomials, $P_n = P_n^{(0, 0)}$.

The next question is, what are the primitive characters of $\text{SO}(3)$? Since we saw that all the elements of the group with the same total rotation angle belong to the same class, and the character $\chi(f)$ is a class function, we can take any convenient way of performing the rotation by f : take the Euler angles $(\alpha, \beta, \gamma) = (f, 0, 0)$; $T_{\alpha, \beta, \gamma}^{(i)}(f, 0, 0) = e^{-imf} \mathcal{D}_{m, m}$. This leads to the result

$$\begin{aligned} \chi^{(i)}(gf) &= \sum_{m=-i}^i e^{-imf} = 1 + 2\cos f + 2\cos 2f + \dots + 2\cos if \\ &= \sin \left(i + \frac{1}{2} \right) f / \sin \frac{1}{2} f. \end{aligned} \quad (3.71)$$

Are these representations of $\text{SO}(3)$ we have constructed all the irreducible representations of the group? The answer is a qualified yes. If there were

⁴⁰See [Griffys], vol. II, p. 168.

any others, their characters would have to be orthogonal to all the primitive characters $\chi^{(k)}$ in the sense of the Haar integral (see Theorem E.2), and therefore orthogonal to all $\chi^{(k)} = \chi^{(k-1)}$:

$$\int_G d\varphi (1 - \cos \varphi) \cos(j\varphi) \chi^{(k)}(\varphi) = 0, \quad \text{for all } k.$$

By the Fourier theorem it then follows that $\chi^{(j)}(\varphi) = 0$. Therefore, the $\{\chi_{\frac{1}{2}n}^{(j)}\}$ are all the single-valued irreducible representations of $\mathrm{SO}(2)$.

However, as we have seen, there is a homomorphism between $\mathrm{SU}(2)$ and $\mathrm{SO}(2)$, so that the representations of the rotation group form unshuffled representations of $\mathrm{SU}(2)$, in which the matrices representing S and $-S$ are equal; in addition, there are irreducible representations of $\mathrm{SU}(2)$ that form double-valued "representations" of $\mathrm{SO}(2)$. Let Γ be an irreducible representation of $\mathrm{SU}(2)$. Since the 2×2 matrix -1 (which belongs to $\mathrm{SU}(2)$) commutes with all the elements of the group, it must $\Gamma(-1)$ with all the matrices; consequently $\Gamma(-1)$ must be a multiple of the unit matrix. Because furthermore $\Gamma^2(-1) = \Gamma(1)$, it follows that

$$\Gamma(-1) = \pm \Gamma(1),$$

and the representations of $\mathrm{SU}(2)$ can be divided into odd and even ones. For general S we have

$$\Gamma(-S) = \Gamma(-1)\Gamma(S) = \pm \Gamma(S).$$

So the even irreducible representations of $\mathrm{SU}(2)$ are the irreducible representations of $\mathrm{SO}(2)$; the others are not really representations of $\mathrm{SO}(2)$ but may be dubbed quasi-representations, for which $\Gamma(P_k)\Gamma(P_k) = \pm \Gamma(P_k P_k)$, and the sign cannot be fixed. The matrices S themselves, of course, form an odd representation of $\mathrm{SU}(2)$ and hence a quasi-representation of $\mathrm{SO}(2)$.

The irreducible representations of $\mathrm{SU}(2)$ are found similarly as those of $\mathrm{SO}(2)$. The transformation

$$u' = (u - i^2 v), \quad v' = (u + i^2 v), \quad |u|^2 + |v|^2 = 1,$$

transforms the homogeneous polynomials of degree k in the two variables u and v , that is, linear combinations of the $2k+1$ products $u^{2k}, u^{2k-2}v, \dots, v^{2k}$, among themselves. Define

$$f_m = \frac{u^{2k-m} v^{2k+m}}{\sqrt{(k+m)! (k-m)!}}, \quad m = -k, \dots, k.$$

Then, using the complex numbers a and b as the group parameters (which, because $|a|^2 + |b|^2 = 1$, mean three real parameters), one finds

$$\begin{aligned} R_{ab} f_m(a, v) &= f_m(a' v') = \sum_{n=-k}^k R_{mn}^{(k)}(a, b) f_n(a, v) \\ &= \frac{(a - b^2 a^{2k+m} (b + a^2 v)^{2k-m}}{\sqrt{(k+m)! (k-m)!}} \\ &= \sum_{n=-k}^k \frac{a^{2k+m} (1 + |b|^2 |a|^2 - |b|^2)}{(1 + |a|^2 |b|^2 - |a|^2 |b|^2)} a^{2k-m} v^{2k+m} R_{mn}^{(k)}(a, b) f_n(a, v). \end{aligned}$$

From which we obtain the representation matrices

$$D_{\alpha\beta\gamma}^{(\rho)}(\alpha, \beta) = e^{i\alpha\beta} e^{i\beta\gamma - i\alpha\gamma} e^{i\beta\gamma} = \sum_{\mu} d_{\mu\alpha\beta}^{(\rho)} \left(-\frac{\beta\gamma}{\alpha\beta} \right)^{\mu}, \quad (E.72)$$

$$d_{\mu\alpha\beta}^{(\rho)} = \frac{(1 + \alpha\beta)(1 - \alpha\beta) + \alpha^2(\beta) - \alpha^2(\beta)^{1/2}}{(1 + \alpha - \rho)(\beta)^2 - \alpha^2 - \rho(\beta)^2 - \alpha + \beta^2}.$$

To express these matrices in terms of the Euler angles, use (E.67), with the result that upon $D_{\alpha\beta\gamma}^{(\rho)}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma) = e^{-i\alpha\beta\gamma + i\alpha^2\gamma} d_{\alpha\beta\gamma}^{(\rho)}$ and

$$d_{\alpha\beta\gamma}^{(\rho)} = \left(\cos \frac{1}{2} \beta \right)^{\rho} \cos \frac{1}{2} \beta \gamma^{2\rho - \rho} \sum_{\mu} d_{\mu\alpha\beta}^{(\rho)} (-1)^{\mu} \cos \frac{1}{2} \beta \gamma^{\rho}, \quad (E.73)$$

which shows that if ρ is an integer, the representation is even, and if ρ is a half-integer, the representation is odd. The proofs that these representations are irreducible and that there are no other irreducible representations of $SU(2)$ are the same as those for $SO(3)$.¹⁴

The infinitesimal generators in order to obtain the generators of $SO(3)$ it is simplest to take advantage of the fact that the rotations about the z -axis form a subgroup of $SO(3)$, and we found in (E.56) that the generators of this two-dimensional rotation group is $E_3 = x_3 \frac{\partial}{\partial x_1} - x_1 \frac{\partial}{\partial x_3}$. Similarly, the rotations about the other two axes are, separately, subgroups and their generators are formed in an analogous way. Therefore we may conclude that the three generators of $SO(3)$ are given by

$$E_i = - \sum_{j,k=1}^3 \epsilon_{ijk} x_j \frac{\partial}{\partial x_k}, \quad (E.74)$$

where $\epsilon_{ijk} = 1$ for $i, j, k = 1, 2, 3$ and ϵ_{ijk} is totally anti-symmetric in all its indices, that is,

$$E_3 = x_1 \frac{\partial}{\partial x_2} - x_2 \frac{\partial}{\partial x_1}$$

and its cyclic permutations. It is then an easy calculation to obtain the commutation relations

$$[E_1, E_2] = E_3, \quad [E_1, E_3] = E_2, \quad [E_2, E_3] = E_1. \quad (E.75)$$

This implies that the structure constants defined by (E.45) are $c_{12}^3 = c_{23}^1 = c_{31}^2 = 1$, and the Casimir operator, as defined by (E.51), is given by

$$C = -2 \sum_i E_i^2. \quad (E.76)$$

¹⁴ The proof that these representations are unitary is left as an exercise.

Clebsch-Gordan coefficients

Let $\Phi(j_1, m_1)$ and $\Phi(j_2, m_2)$ be vectors in the carrier spaces of irreducible representations of $\mathfrak{SU}(2)$ of dimensions $2j_1 + 1$ and $2j_2 + 1$, respectively, in other words, eigenvalues of two independent angular momenta $\hat{J}^{(1)}, \hat{J}^{(2)}$, and $\hat{J}_z^{(1)}, \hat{J}_z^{(2)}$, respectively. We now want to construct the Clebsch-Gordan coefficients, connecting the eigenvalues of the total angular momentum $\hat{J} = \hat{J}^{(1)} + \hat{J}^{(2)}$ to the Kronecker product of those of the two individual angular momenta, in the same notation as in (3.64),

$$\Phi(j, m) = \sum_{m_1+m_2=m} [j, m(j_1, m_1; j_2, m_2)]^{1/2} \Phi(j_1, m_1) \Phi(j_2, m_2),$$

where $\Phi(j_1, j_2, m_1, m_2) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \Phi(j_1, m_1) \otimes \Phi(j_2, m_2)$. In order to do that, define $\hat{J} = j(j+1)$ and $j_1(j_1+1)$ as in (3.7), and utilize (3.11) and (3.12). As we saw in Chapter 2, when $m = j$, then $J_+ \Phi(j, j) = 0$, so that, if

$$\Phi(j, j) = \sum_m \alpha_m \Phi(j_1, m) \otimes \Phi(j_2, j - m),$$

where $\alpha_m = [j, j(j_1, m; j_2, j - m)]$, we must have

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= (\hat{J}_+^{(1)} + \hat{J}_+^{(2)}) \Phi(j, j) \\ &= \sum_m \alpha_m [\sqrt{j(j-m)}(j_1+m+1) \Phi(j_1, m+1) \otimes \Phi(j_2, j-m) \\ &\quad + \sqrt{j_2(j_2-m)}(j_2-j+m+1) \Phi(j_1, m) \otimes \Phi(j_2, j-m+1)] \\ &= \sum_m \sqrt{j(j-m)}(j_1+m+1) \alpha_m \\ &\quad + \sqrt{j_2(j_2-m)}(j_2-j+m+1) \alpha_{m+1} [\Phi(j_1, m+1) \otimes \Phi(j_2, j-m)], \end{aligned}$$

which implies that

$$\alpha_{m+1} = - \sqrt{\frac{j(j-m)(j_1+m+1)}{j_2-j+m+1(j_1+j-m)}} \alpha_m. \quad (3.77)$$

This determines all the α_m in terms of its lowest, α_{-j_2} , and the latter can then be fixed (to within a phase, which is arbitrary) by normalization. In order to construct all the other Clebsch-Gordan coefficients, apply J_- to $\Phi(j, j)$ and use (3.12). Explicit expressions for all of them can be found in [Wigner].

Since $[j, m(j_1, m_1; j_2, m_2)] = \langle \Phi(j, m), \Phi(j_1, m_1) \otimes \Phi(j_2, m_2) \rangle$ and all three angular momentum eigenvalues are orthogonal, the Clebsch-Gordan coefficients

Scalar δ_{ij} is unitary matrix,⁴⁶

$$\sum_{j,k} (\delta_{ij} m(j_1, m_1, j_2, m_2) / j_1 m(j_1, m_1) \delta_{jk} m(j_2, m_2))^* = \delta_{m_1 m_2} \delta_{m_1 m_2} \quad (2.74)$$

as well as

$$\sum_{m_1, m_2} (j_1' m_1' / j_1' m(j_1', m_1', j_2, m_2) / j_1 m(j_1, m_1, j_2, m_2))^* = \delta_{j_1' j_1} \delta_{m_1' m_1}. \quad (2.75)$$

The group $O(3)$

The group of all real orthogonal 3×3 matrices T includes those with $\det T = -1$; these are the improper rotations, which combine a proper rotation with an inversion of the coordinate system. This group can be regarded as the direct product of $SO(3)$ with the Abelian group of order two whose two elements are E and I , with $I^2 = E$. The group $O(3)$ therefore has two irreducible representations, $D_{\pm}^{(j)}$ for each fixed irreducible representation $D^{(j)}$ of $SO(3)$, those for which

$$D_{+}^{(j)}(I) = D_{+}^{(j)}(E),$$

and those for which

$$D_{-}^{(j)}(I) = -D_{-}^{(j)}(E).$$

⁴⁶Note that j_1 and j_2 are always fixed and never summed over.

E.5 Problems and Exercises

1. Prove that a group whose order is a prime number must be Abelian.
2. Consider the group S_3 , whose multiplication table is given earlier in section E.1. Here are three representations:

$$1) D^{(1)} = 1 \text{ for all elements,}$$

$$2) D^{(2)}(E) = D^{(2)}(I) = D^{(2)}(F) = 1, \text{ and } D^{(2)}(A) = D^{(2)}(B) = D^{(2)}(C) = -1.$$

$$3)$$

$$D^{(3)}(E) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad D^{(3)}(A) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$D^{(3)}(B) = \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} -1 & \sqrt{3} \\ \sqrt{3} & 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad D^{(3)}(C) = \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} -1 & -\sqrt{3} \\ -\sqrt{3} & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$D^{(3)}(I) = \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} -1 & \sqrt{3} \\ \sqrt{3} & -1 \end{pmatrix} \quad D^{(3)}(F) = \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} -1 & -\sqrt{3} \\ \sqrt{3} & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Verify that these are, indeed, representations. Write down the characters. Is the third representation irreducible? If not, and use it; if it is, are there any other irreducible representations?

3. Prove that the representations of $SO(3)$ given in terms of (E.72) are unitary.
4. Prove that all the irreducible representations of a group G are one-dimensional if and only if G is Abelian.
5. Consider the tetrahedral group T , which consists of the 12 rotations that leave a regular tetrahedron invariant: there are 3 rotations C_2 by 180° , four rotations C_3 by 120° and four rotations C_3^2 by 240° . Show that they form four classes and find the dimensions of all the irreducible representations. Also construct the table of primitive characters, and, finally, all the irreducible representations. (The orthogonality theorems are the essential tools for this.)
6. Let $A \equiv \sum_i a_i X_i$ and $B \equiv \sum_i b_i X_i$ be two elements of a Lie algebra with the structure constants c_{ij}^k . Show that $[A, B] = C$ with $C = \sum_{i,j} c_{ij}^k X_k$, where $c_{ij}^k = \sum_l a_l b_l c_{ij}^k$.

This page intentionally left blank

References

- [Bamler] H. Bamler and C. Baylis, Group theory and the hydrogen atom, *Reviews of Modern Physics*, **33**, 333-345 and 345-357 (1960).
- [Belen, A.] A. Belen and M. Gellida, *Dima Kots, Gerasim Vichera and Gel'fand Teykots*, New York: Springer-Verlag, 1999.
- [Belen, D.] D. Belen, *Quantum Theory*, New York: Posidon Hall, 1951.
- [Chavright] G.S. Chavright and S.H. Givins, Fractional statistics: quantum possibilities in two dimensions, *Science* **247**, 1197-1201 (1999).
- [Chelton] E. Chelton and P.C. Sabatier, *Inverse Problems in Quantum Scattering Theory*, 2nd ed., New York: Springer-Verlag, 1999.
- [Chickson] J.H. Chickson, Phase-shift ambiguities for spin-independent scattering, *Nuovo Cimeto* **45**, 251 (1959).
- [Duck] I. Duck and E.C.G. Sudarshan, Toward an understanding of the spin-statistics theorem, *American Journal of Physics*, **39**, 373-376 (1971).
- [EPR] A. Einstein, B. Podolsky, and N. Rosen, Can quantum mechanical description of physical reality be considered complete?, *Physical Review* **47**, 777 (1935).

- [Erdelyi] A. Erdelyi et al., eds. *Higher Transcendental Functions*, New York: McGraw-Hill, 1962.
- [Feynman] R.P. Feynman and A.R. Hibbs, *Quantum Mechanics and Path Integrals*, New York: McGraw-Hill, 1965.
- [Ford 56a] K.W. Ford et al. Quantum effects near a barrier maximum, *Annals of Physics (NY)*, **7**, 226-258 (1959).
- [Ford 56b] K.W. Ford and J.A. Wheeler, Semiclassical description of scattering, *Annals of Physics (NY)*, **7**, 253-289, 297 (1959); Application of semiclassical scattering analysis, *ibid.*, 297-322.
- [Folman] M. Folman and P.D. Folman, *ITWEE Approximation*, Amsterdam: North-Holland Publ. Co., 1985.
- [Goldstein] H. Goldstein, *Classical Mechanics*, Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley, 1959.
- [Hamermesh] M. Hamermesh, *Group Theory*, Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley, 1962.
- [Jackson] J.D. Jackson, *Classical Electrodynamics*, 2nd ed., New York: John Wiley & Sons, 1975.
- [Klauder] J.R. Klauder and E.C.G. Sudarshan, *Fundamentals of Quantum Optics*, New York: W.A. Benjamin, 1968.
- [Libe] E.H. Libe and M. Loew, *Analysis*, 2nd ed., Providence, RI: American Mathematical Society, 2001.
- [Newton 61] E.G. Newton, The exponential decay law of unstable systems, *Annals of Physics* **14**, 339-345 (1961).
- [Newton 75] E.G. Newton, Optical theorem and beyond, *American Journal of Physics*, **44**, 650-642 (1975).
- [Newton 82] E.G. Newton, *Scattering Theory of Waves and Particles*, 2nd ed., New York: Springer-Verlag, 1982.
- [Newton 00] E.G. Newton, *Thinking about Physics*, Princeton: Princeton University Press, 2000.
- [Reed] M. Reed and B. Simon, *Methods of Modern Mathematical Physics*, New York: Academic Press, 1975.
- [Rose] M.E. Rose, *Relativistic Electron Theory*, New York: John Wiley & Sons, 1961.

- [Singer] A. Singer and F. Mink, eds. *Geometric Phase in Physics*, Singapore: World Scientific, 1999.
- [Wigner] E.P. Wigner. *Group Theory*, New York: Academic Press, 1959.

Index

k-normalized, 7

n-light, 354

n-light, 354

Abelian group, 353

absorption, 155

of photon, 144

probability, 155

acausal, 3

accidental degeneracy, see degeneracy,
accidental

action integral, 32

activation distance, 18

adiabatic approximation, 223, 255
change, 255

Airy integral, 135

aromatic molecule, 50

angular momentum, 45, 53, 54, 154
conservation in the Dirac equation, 50

approximation, 145

operator, 145, 145

antibilinear operators, 173

anti-commutation relations, 35, 15–
18

anti-commutation, 35, 35

antisense, 255

antisense operator, 145

antisymmetry operator, 173

antisymmetry transformation, 143

asymptotic, 255

associated Laguerre polynomials, 114,
252

A type effect, 255

auto-ionization, 257

back-propagator, 125

barrier penetration, 72

Bayesian's correlation, 55
change, 125

beam, 4, 217, 255

beam, 31, 45

Berry's phase, 255

Berry, M.V., 255

Bessel's equation, 147

Bloch functions, 52

Bloch theory, 11

Bloch, David, 18, 155

Boltzmann equation, 155, 255, 255, 255,
255

Boltzmann, 255

Boltz, 255, 111

Born approximation, 223, 243

Born series, 125, 227

- radius of convergence, 105
- Rao, Satyendra Nath, 259
- Rose-Blattlein condensation, 269
- Rose-Blattlein statistics, 25, 268, 277
- rotor, 103–173, 174
- rotor attraction, 174
- rotor state, 75, 239
 - embedded in the continuum, 101, 109
 - of zero binding energy, 105
- rounded operator, 100
- Driffield, L., 182
- rowster, 141
- rotational commutation relations, 15, 16, 18, 58, 60
- rotational moments, 37
- rotational transformation, 25, 35, 63, 106
- rotor space of a representation, 155, 264, 277, 278
- Cartan, E., 260
- rotorlike operator, 103, 264
 - of $SO(3)$, 104
- Rouché principal value, 111
- Rouché sequence, 108
- Rouché's theorem, 101
- Rouché-Klein parameters, 153, 300
- rov, *see* rotational commutation relations
- rotational-quantum condensation, *see* hyperrotational condensation
- rotor-of-mass motion, 38
- rotor-of-mass reference frame, *see* hyperrotational frame
- rotorifugal barrier, 110
- rotorifugal potential energy, 94
- slamwork, 161, 162
 - closed, 161
 - open, 162
- character of a representation, 261
- charge conjugate, 294, 294, 301
- circular polarization, 92
- class, 152, 160
- Clifford-Gordon
 - coefficients, 153, 303–305
 - for $SO(3)$, 165
 - series, 307
- coarse graining, 11, 42, 141
- collapse, 10
 - chapter of, 41
- collapse of the wave function, 24
- collective vibrations, 58
- commutator, 11
- commuting observables, 5, 22
 - complete set of, 5, 17
- commuting operators, 100
- compact Lie group, 279
- compact operator, 106, 116
- complete linear vector space, 115
- complete set of commuting Hermitian operators, 100
- completeness, 5, 17
- completeness relation, 100, 214
- complex structure of a Lie algebra, 279
- complex potential, 175
- composition law, 38
- Compton wavelength, 197
- conduction bands, 92
- configuration
 - representation, 30
 - space, 19
 - wave function, 43, 49
- confluent hypergeometric
 - equation, 119
 - function, 94
- conformal group, 174
- conjugate group element, 102
- conserving formula, 184
- conservation laws, 40
- conservation of flux, 71, 134
- conservation of probability, 126
- conserved quantities, 40
- constant of the motion, 146
- continuity equation, 45
- continuous spectrum, 78, 303
- continuum representation, 21
- current linear combinations for the
 - generalized perturbation theory, 200–204
- correlation, 1, 3, 10
- Coulomb barrier, 120
- Coulomb gauge, 59
- Coulomb potential, 111
- creation operators, 255
- cross section, 111
- crossing of energy levels, 109–110

- current density, 45
- current operator four-vector, 382
- cyclotron frequency, 325, 328
- cyclotron radius, 319
- δ -mass, 35
- deflection function, 182
- degeneracy, 5, 12, 38, 75, 94, 95, 113, 323
 - accidental, 304, 371
 - normal, 175, 371
- delta function, 331
 - three-dimensional, 331
- dense set of vectors, 318
- density matrix, 21, 300
- density of final states, 326, 342
 - for photons, 258
- density of particles, 271
- density operator, 13, 15, 41, 169
- diagonal, 29
- diagonalize, 30, 328
- differential operator, 31
- differential scattering cross section, 184
- dimension of a vector space, 317
- dipole approximation, 347, 350
- dipole transition, 345
- Dirac equation, 353, 359, 364
- Dirac notation, vii
- Dirac picture, 336
- Dirac, P.A.M., 113
- direct product, 260
 - of groups, 258
- direct sum, 317
- discrete spectrum, 323
- dispersion, 5, 11, 46
- dispersionless, 11
- distribution, 341
- disturbance, 4, 5, 9
- domain of an operator, 343, 344
- double-valued representations
 - of $SO(3)$, 387
 - of $SO(3)$, 393
- dynamical variables, 3, 19
 - embedded in the continuum, 323
- dysprosium, 323
 - Erwin A. coefficient, 351
 - Erwin B. coefficient, 349
 - Erwin, Albert, 353
- electric charge density, 300
- electric current density, 382
- electric dipole moment, 355, 349
 - effective, 313
 - induced, 355
- electric dipole radiation, 354
- electric field, 355
- electrical conduction, 93
- electromagnetic field, 155, 364, 374, 380, 386, 390
 - angular momentum, 41
 - conservation, 31
 - spin operators, 41
- electromagnetic radiation, 364
- emission of photons, 344
- energy, 40, 45
 - not conserved, 355
 - positive, 358
- energy bands, 41
- energy density, 38
- energy splitting, 79
- energy-momentum relation,
 - relativistic, 356
- ensemble, 34
- entanglement, 3, 5, 39, 155
- EPR, 5
- equations of motion, 35–38
- equivalent representations, 353
- essential spectrum, 323
- Euler angles, 353, 354, 354
- Euler's theorem, 145, 351
- Euler-Lagrange equations, 37
- even representations of $SO(3)$, 393
- exchange degeneracy, 367
- exchange energy, 375
- exchange reaction, 358
- exclusion principle, 37, 368
- expectation value, 3, 10, 320
 - relativistic, 385
- expected value, see expectation value
- exponential decay law, 340–343
- factorizing an operator, 338
- half-life representations, 337

- Fermi surface, 269
- Fermi's golden rule, 269
- Fermi-Dirac statistics, 369, 377
- Feynman, 369–370, 374
- Feynman, Richard, 113, 381
- Feynman-Hellmann formula, *see* Hellmann-
 - Feynman formula
- field operators, 22
- field quanta, 25
- fine structure, 226, 236, 337
- fine-structure constant, 236
- first Frobenius algebra, 335
- Floquet's theorem, 61
- flux, 71
 - density, 39
 - ratio, 184
- Fock space, 279, 281
- Fock, V., 279
- Fock-Dirac transitions, 179, 173, 245
- Fock-Dirac
 - alternatives, 150, 344
 - determinant, 185, 335
 - modified, 186
 - equation
 - of the first kind, 223
 - of the second kind, 222
 - method, 129, 130
- Fock-Dirac events, 113, 115, 125, 142, 145
- Fully reducible representation, 353
- g -factor, 332, 228
 - effective for atom, 228
- Gaussian factor, 128
- group isomorphism, 61
- group transformation, 101
 - non-algebraic, 61
 - of the first kind, 63, 64
 - of the second kind, 64, 65
- Gustaf coefficients, 142
- Gaussian integral, 39
- Gaussian wave packets, 97
- generating function
 - for associated Laguerre polynomials, 352
 - for Hermite polynomials, 349
 - for Laguerre polynomials, 351
 - for Legendre polynomials, 343
- generator, 23, 26, 45, 144
 - of a Lie group, 371
 - of rotations, 143, 154, 155, 355, 351
 - of SO(3), 354
 - of translations, 25, 51
- geometric phase, 265
- geometrical optics, 181, 184
- $GL(n)$, 373
- golden rule, 269
- good quantum number, 146
- Gordon, W., 190
- gradient, 179
- Green's function
 - complete, 178–180
 - free, 177, 180
- ground state, 124
- group of rigid motions, 274
- group velocity, 58
- gyromagnetic ratio, 182, 213, 351
- Haar measure, 153, 351
 - for $SO(3)$, 357
 - for $SO(2)$, 358
- half-bound state, 129
- half-integer representation, 354
- half-life, 140
- Hamilton's characteristic function, 157
- Hamilton's principal function, 149
- Hamilton's principle, 30
- Hamilton-Jacobi equation, 152
- Hamiltonian, 29, 44, 52, 209, 211, 239, 287
 - effective, 258
 - in Fock space, 279
 - of the field, 51
 - of the helium atom, 119
 - relativistic, 355
- Hamiltonian equations of motion, 77, 30
- Hamiltonian flow, 42, 244
- harmonic oscillator, 54–55, 92, 149
 - in two dimensions, 219
 - wave function, 61
- Hartree function, 332
- Heisenberg picture, 55, 46, 47
- Heisenberg's equation of motion, 30
- Heisenberg's uncertainty relation, 17
- identity, 62, 354, 359
- ideal gas, 259

- Hellmann-Feynman formula, 101, 108
- Heisenberg equation, 92
- Hermite polynomials, 59, 100, 111
- Hermition, 92
 - adjoint, 92
 - conjugate, 92
 - operator, 3, 111
- hidden variables, 11
- high energy, 118, 130
- Hilbert space, 1, 115
 - rigged, 115
 - separable, 115
- Hilbert-Schmidt class, 116, 117
- hole theory, 161
- homeomorphism, 10
- Hurwitz integral, 153, 161
- hydrogen atom, 112
 - Schrödinger equation, 102
- hydrogen spectrum, Dirac law, 112
- hyperbolic structure, 128–132
- hypergeometric equation, 115
 - series, 115
- idempotent, 126
- ignored outcome, 14
- improper solutions, 101
- incidence, 164
- infinitely divisible, 16, 17, 163
- inelastic scattering, 134, 135, 143, 157, 158
- infinitesimal generators, see groups
 - lie
- infinitesimal transformations, 175
- infinitesimal variations, 14
- initial condition, 78
- initial-value problem, 47
- inner product, 118
- integrable functions, 113
- integral kernel, 110
- integral operator, 18
- interaction picture, 128
- interference, 5, 18
- intermediate state, 144
- invariant subgroup, 106
- invariant subspaces, 95
- inverse of an operator, 92
- inversion on spheres, 173
- irreducible representations, 118
- isolated state, 1
- isometric, 109
- isomorphic, 105
- Jacobi identity, 174
- Jacobi polynomials, 101
- Jelliffe, J., 161
- Jost relation, 123
- kernel of an operator, 92
- Klein-Gordon equation, 97
- Klein, G., 140
- Klein-Gordon equation, 105
- Kramers's theorem, 178
- Kramers, H.A., 161
- Kronecker symbol, 117
- Kub, Polynarp, 102
- Lagrange, 113, 145–147, 160
- Laboratory frame, 145
- Lagrange's theorem, 103
- Lagrangian, 15, 16, 177
- Lagrangian density, 52, 11, 158, 160
- Lagrangian equations of motion, 17, 11, 16
- Laguerre polynomials, 107
- Lamb shift, 105, 107
- Landé g-factor, 160
- Laplace's equation, 101
- Laplace-Runge-Lenz vector, 114
- large components of a relativistic spinor, 106, 107
- Larmor frequency, 118
- Legendre polynomials, 101
- Legendre transformation, 17
- Legendre's differential equation, 141
- Leibniz's theorem, 119
- Lie algebra, 105
- Lie, Sophus, 179
- Melrose, 108, 141, 153, 164
- see irreducible, normal, 103
- Neveu group, 107
- Neveu operators, 119
- Neveu vector space, 111
 - real, 145
- Nearly independent, 147
- Niederhöf, 101
- Nipponm-Schrödinger equation, 105, 114, 118
- noncommutative, 138

- local wave number, 159
- local wavelength, 159
- logarithmic derivative, 75
- Loeblitz four-vector, 199
- Loeblitz group, 200
- Loeblitz transformation, 194, 196–199, 202, 204
- low energies, 188
- lowering operator, 35, 40
- Li coupling scheme, 189
- m-degeneracy, 148
- magnetic field, 518, 520
- magnetic moment, 517
 - anomalous of the electron, 517
 - effective, 518, 519
 - induced, 517
 - intrinsic, 517
 - of a nucleus, 519
 - of an atom, 518
 - of the neutron, 517
 - of the proton, 517, 519
- magnetic quantum number, 517
- Maxwellian equation, 122, 126
- matrix element, 319
- Minkowski relation, 177
- Maxwell equations, 58, 65, 102
- mean-square deviation, 5
- measurement, 3, 37, 41
- mechanical momentum, 64
- minimal coupling, 65
- minimal wave packet, 61
- mixed state, 11, 108
- mixing, degree of, 10
- momentum operator, 20
- momentum representation, 30, 65
- momentum space, 22
- momentum operators
 - discretized, 54
- momentum transfer, 116
- momentum-space wave function, 62
- motion reversal, 72
- multiplication law for Lie groups, 273
- multiply connected group manifold, 165
- Neumann series, 116, 117
- neutral carbon, 188
- nodes, 77, 78
- Newton's theorem, 41, 146
- nodal potential, 171, 146, 179
- normalized limit of the Dirac equation, 161
- norm
 - of a vector, 216
 - of an operator, 220
- normal dependency, 271
- normal derivative, 258
- normal subgroup, 265
- normalized, 919
- nuclear magneton, 182, 199
- nullspace, 315
- number operator, 35, 37
- $O(1)$, 179, 186
- $O(2)$, 179, 186
- $O(4)$, 117, 291
- $O(3)$, 304
- $O(4)$, 292, 374
- occupation-number representation, 35, 169, 279
- old representations of $SO(3)$, 382
- one-particle state, 271
- optical theorem, 106, 137
 - generalized, 106, 125, 134
- orbital, 106, 269
- order of a group, 165
- orthogonal, 9, 165
- orthogonal complement, 177
- orthogonal group, 374
- orthonormal basis, 27, 107
 - quasibasis, 7
- outgoing wave, 71
- outgoing-wave boundary condition, 171, 126
- p -wave, 66
- particle coordinates, 114–116, 119
- parity transformation, 68
- Pauli's equality, 217, 224, 226, 229
- partial-wave expansion, 105
- particle-wave duality, 2
- particle-wave quantum field, 55
- Pauli-Bloch effect, 150
- path integral, 69
- Pauli exclusion principle, 55, 569, 279, 361
- Pauli matrices, 116, 117

- Fock term, 159, 240
- Fock, Wolfgang, 222
- periodic potential, 92
- phase information, 2
- phase shift, 183
 - in the WKB approximation, 183
 - variational calculation, 212
- phase velocity, 92
- photons, 92, 97
- photons, 92, 195, 198
- Planck distribution, 252, 277
- Planck's formula, 251
- plane polarization, 92, 94
- point operators, 289, 329
- Politzer, Kenneth, 31
- polarization
 - degree of, 100
 - of reflection, 240
- polarization vector, 90
- positive definite, 329
 - semi-definite, 329
- positron, 301
- preionization, 329
- primitive character, 351
- principal quantum number, 112
- principal value, 211
- principle of stationary action, 30
- probabilistic predictions, 3
- probabilistic theories, 4, 261
- probability, 5
 - addition of, 18
- probability amplitude, 7
- probability conservation, 45
- probability density, 7, 72, 45, 48
- probability current density, 21
 - free vector, 209
- probability-density amplitude, 21, 22
- projection operator, 33, 329
- projection particles, 4
- propagator, 43, 95, 195
 - retarded, 43, 197
- pure rotation group, 288
- QED, *see* quantum electrodynamics
- quantum electrodynamics, 112, 114, 182, 325, 336, 350, 357
- quantum field, 3, 37, 195, 197
- quasi-local, 33, 330
- quasilinearization, 329
- quasi-eigenstates, 4, 329
- quasi-eigenstates, 4, 29
- quasi-vector, 329
- radial equation, 92
- radial Hamiltonian, 181
- radial quantum number, 112
- reflection coefficient, 240
- reflection field, 92
- reflection gauge, 58, 244
- reflectionless transition, 329
- reflectionless theory, 3, 21
- raising operator, 92
- Ramsey-Denard effect, 188
- range of an operator, 319
- ray in Hilbert space, 2, 6
- Rabi-Ramsey law, 252
- scarpidity, 182, 240
- scalar mass, 95, 112
- scalar matrix element, 172
- scalar representation, 262
- selection coefficient, 71, 77
- selection operator, 281-282
- selections, 45, 159
- regular representation, 351
 - of a Lie group, 351
- regular solution of the Schrödinger equation, 95, 120
- relative coordinate, 95
- relative motion, 95
- relativistic field equation, 272
- relativistic Schrödinger equation, 282
- representation of groups
 - Gauche-schell, 154, 191
 - even, 154
 - integer, 164
 - irreducible, 154, 191
 - odd, 154
 - of type 1, 164
 - of type 2, 164
 - of type 3, 165
- representation of vectors, 15, 27
- repulsion of energy levels, 189
- resolution of the identity, 324, 329
- resonant operator, 195
- resonance, 73, 187, 194, 115, 265, 264
 - Brick-Spitzer curve, 197
 - non-energy, 189
- resonance scattering, 277

- romance shape, 360
- rounding, 340
- Riesz-Bessel function, 95, 100, 147
- Riesz-Bessel function, 147
- Riesz-Neumann function, 100, 147
- Riemann-Lebesgue lemma, 62
- right translation, 42
- Rodriguez's formula, 344
- Rolink class, 339
- rot-anti-rot-derivation, 11
- rotation, 42
 - active, 145
 - generator, 161, 162
 - infinitesimal, 145
 - invariant, 42, 165, 145
 - matrix, 134
 - of the coordinate system, 140
 - of the physical system, 144
 - operator, 164, 165, 166
 - passive, 145
- rotation-reflection group, 165
 - in two dimensions, 167
- Rutherford cross section, 148, 149
- Rydhberg, 105
- S matrix, 165, 164
 - unitarity, 164
- s -wave, 91
- scalar potential, 58
- scattering amplitude, 106
 - FWA approximation, 102
 - phase shift measure, 104
- scattering wave solutions, 102
- scattering length, 105, 106
- Schrodinger integral, 143
- Schrodinger equation, 41, 45, 55, 55, 79
 - time-independent, 46, 47
- Schrodinger picture, 41, 42
- Schur's lemma, 107, 104, 109
- Schur's inequality, 5, 12, 100
 - for the operator norm, 100
- Schrodinger, Julian, 46, 112, 145, 102
- second quantization, 51, 102
- selection rule, 167, 169, 171, 169, 169, 164
- selfadjoint operator, 5, 141
- selfadjoint subgroup, 124
- semiclassical approximation, 101
- semisimple Lie algebra, 160
- shadow scattering, 101
- simple Lie group, 174
- simple Lie Algebra, 160
- simply reducible, 173
- singlet states, 164
- $SO(n)$, 173
- Slater coefficients, 163
- Slater determinant, 167
- slow changes, 165
- small components of a relativistic spinor, 165, 163
- $SO(3)$, 151, 165
- $SO(4)$, 174
- Susskind quantization rule, 109
- Susskind, Arnold, 112
- spatial translation, 42
- special linear group, 173
- special unitary group, 174
- spectral gaps, 51
- spectral intensity, 100
- spectral line shape, 101
- spectral projection, 109
- spectral theorem, 124, 127
- spectrum, 5, 1
 - continuous, 124, 129
 - of a Hermitian operator, 102
- spherical Bessel function, 95, 147
- spherical Bessel function, 147
- spherical harmonics, 51, 51
- spherical Neumann Function, 147
- spherical polar coordinates, 42, 59
- spherical vector, 106
- spin
 - density operator, 164
 - direction, 159
 - exchange operator, 165, 175, 169
 - of the photon, 171
 - operator, 169
 - generation, 102
- spin 1, 159, 160
- spin 1/2, 102
- spin-orbit
 - coupling, 124
 - energy shift, 125
- spin-orbitals interaction, 51, 104, 100, 104, 101
- spinors, 167, 164
 - adjoint, 165, 167

- relativistic, 294, 298, 300
- splittings of energy levels, 298
- spontaneous emission of radiation, 249
- spontaneous symmetry breaking, 39, 79, 95, 209
- square integrable functions, 319, 321
- square-summable sequences, 319
- states, 1
 - antisymmetric, 95
 - isolated, 2
 - preparation of, 4
 - pure, 1
 - two-particle, 95
 - unstable, 300
- stationary phase, 38, 71, 103, 104
- statistical mechanics, 42
- steady state, 75
- Sturm-Carlsbad experiment, 192
- strictly forbidden transitions, 249
- structure constants
 - of a Lie group, 377
 - of $SO(3)$, 384
- Sturm-Liouville problem, 77
- $SU(2)$, 334
- $SU(n)$, 374
- subgroup, 355
- subspace, 317
- subsystem, 2, 3, 34
- subset approximation, 295, 298, 243
- summation convention, 392
- superposition principle, 2, 18
- superselection rules, 1
- symmetric operator, 3, 321
- symmetrical top, 394
- tensor product, 3, 347, 419
- trajectories, 149
 - Cartesian, 179
 - spherical, 179–182
- triangular group, 387
- Thomas factor, 298
- translational, 298
- time delay, 51, 79, 34, 187, 300
 - classical, 79
- time reversal, 172
 - invariance, 186, 174, 174
 - effect on degeneracy, 173–176
 - operator, 172
- time-development operator, 89
- time-translation invariance, 49
- Time-energy, Ein-Stein, 131, 302
- total momentum, 43, 52
- total scattering cross section, 308
- trace of an operator, 12, 302
- transformation function, 32
- transformations
 - active, 144
 - passive, 144
- transition
 - energy nonconserving, 249
 - induced, 250
 - prohibiting, 171, 208, 274
 - per unit time, 234, 238
 - virtual, 239
- translation, 71
 - invariance, 52
- transmission coefficient, 71, 77
- trial functions, 210
- triangle inequality, 140
 - for the operator norm, 329
- triple states, 184
- tunneling, 71, 80, 388
- tuning point, 184
- transition wave function, 272
- unperturbed systems, 239
- Urbelt experiment, 2, 34
- $U(n)$, 374
- unitarily representations, 327
- unit vector, 314
- unitary
 - group, 374
 - operator, 329
 - representations, 329
 - transformation, 26, 348
- universal covering group, 154, 449
- unperturbed, 239
- unstable state, 298, 307, 343, 351, 355, 364
- vacuum state, 25
- valence, 5, 11, 46
- vector potential, 55, 88, 119, 249
 - disturbable effects, 300
- virial of Clausius, 44
- virial theorem, 44, 86
- virtual state, 344

- virtual transition, 216, 219
- volume of a Lie group, 362
- wave function, 26, 46
 - anti-symmetric, 71, 265, 270
 - collapse of, 41
 - normalization, 393
 - spreading, 50, 51
 - symmetric, 37, 265, 271
 - time reversal, 174
 - two-particle, 37
- Weyssel, G., 182
- width of a state, 203
- Wigner coefficients, 166
- Wigner's theorem, 143, 170
- Wigner, E. P., 143
- Wigner-Eckart theorem, 171
- WKB approximation, 150
- Wickman, 71
- Zemans effect
 - intermediate, 229
 - strong, 226
 - weak-field, 227
- zero-point energy, 59
- Zitterbewegung, 197
- zonal harmonics, 188